00048027

NOT TO BE
OUT OF THE LIBRARY.

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 02 January, 2016

A

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

DIVIDED INTO FOUR PARTS;

THE PRONUNCIATION, THE ACCIDENCE, THE SYNTAX, AND THE APPENDIX.

18027

PART I.

THE PRONUNCIATION.

By P. F. MERLET,

TEACHER OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE TO THE LONDON UNIVERSITY.

LIBRARY OF THE ROYAL BOMBAY BRANCH

J. M. RICHARDSON, 23, CORNHILL.

1828.

445
Mco IF
48027
48027

LONDON:
Printed by Anne Maurice, Fenchurch Street.

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

TREATISE ON PRONUNCIATION.

THIS short Treatise may be considered either as a separate publication, or as one of the four parts into which the author's grammar is divided.

The difficulties of French pronunciation, when the language is accurately examined, reduce themselves to the utterance of five sounds, namely, *u, un, on, in, an,* and to the difference of accentuation, as compared with other languages. Now, though such difficulties cannot be removed by written explanations, yet it is possible to furnish rules and observations, calculated to forward and establish the oral instruction of the master. These aids, therefore, are furnished, together with arbitrary instances in which the consonants are sometimes pronounced and sometimes not.

Spelling, or the naming of the letters in the order in which they compose a word, is of use for children in their own language, but can be of none to foreigners in learning French, any more than to natives of France in learning English; for, naming the letters, and uttering the syllables which they compose, are two very different things, and the one will rather tend to obstruct than assist or promote the other. That the pupil should know the names of the letters, and be able to write orthographically,* are, indeed, essentially necessary; but the repetition of the alphabet will teach the former, and practice in reading and writing will confer the latter, without the waste of time which is always sure to attend the

* See "Division of Syllables."

common way of using a French spelling-book by a young English learner.

With regard to the irregular pronunciation of numbers of words that are to be met with in the French language, the author has, for authorities, consulted the most modern works on the subject, published in Paris.

TREATISE ON PRONUNCIATION.

OF THE VOWEL SOUNDS.

Order.	Vowels or Sounds.	Similar Sounds in English.	Examples.	Directions.
1	OU	like *oo* in *cool*	*clou*, nail	The lips forward.
2	U	no similar sound	*du*, of the	The lips forward, but not quite closed, and the tongue kept away from the teeth.
3	E, eu, œu	like *e* in *er*	*heure*, hour *œuf*, egg	The lips more open.
4	EÛ, eux, œux, œufs	no similar sound	*eux*, them *œufs*, eggs *vœux*, vows	The mouth as in the 3d sound, but the lips forwarder. This sound partakes of the *u* in *eu*.
5	O, au	between *o* & *u* in *bond* & *bun*	*comme*, as *aurore*, aurora	
6	Ô, os, eau, aux	like *o* in *comb*	*dôme*, *os*, bone *beau*, fine	This is a broad sound.
7	I, y	like *ee* in *sheep*, but not so long	*ici*, here *y*, there	Sharp and slender.

Order.	Vowels or Sounds.	Similar Sounds in English.	Examples.	Directions.
8	É, ez, ai, & er (in Verbs)	somewhat like *a* in *ale*	*été*, been *chez*, at *je parlai*, I spoke	Sharp and slender, more so than *a* in *ale*.
9	È, ais	May	*les*, the *mer*, sea	Open.
10	Â, aî, ais, aix, ois, oient	like *a* in *air*	*être*, to be	Broad.
11	A, ame, emme	like *a* in *arm*	*il a*, he has *lame*, blade *femme*, woman	Open.
12	Â, aille	broader than *a* in *arm*, but not so much so as in *awe*	*âme*, soul *paille*, straw	Broad.
13	UN, um	no similar sound	*un*, a *humble*,	Utter, with a greater effort, the 2nd sound *u*, from the pit of the stomach, and convey it through the nose, taking care to keep the tongue down, in order to avoid the sound of the *n*.
14	IN, im, aim, ain, ien, yen	somewhat like *an* in *angry*	*Indes*, Indies *main*, hand *bien*, well *moyen*, means	Utter *i* after the same manner as the 13th sound.
15	ON, om	somewhat like *o* in *don't*	*bon*, good *ombre*, shade	Utter the *ó* after the same manner as the 13th sound.
16	AN, am, en, em	somewhat like *a* in *swan*	*an*, year *ambre*, *en*, in *membre*,	Utter *á* after the same manner as the 13th sound.

THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

Order.	Figure.		Name.		Similar Sounds in English.
1..	A	a	â	sounded	like *a* in *ah!*
2..	B	b	bé*	.....	*ba* in *bacon, baker.*
3..	C	c	cé	.....	*sa* in *sage.*
4..	D	d	dé	.....	*da* in *date.*
5..	E	e	é	.....	*a* in *ale.*
6..	F	f	effe	.....	the English *f.*
7..	G	g	gé	.....	*ja,* and articulated like *s* in *pleasure.*
8..	H	h	ache	.....	like *ash* in *mash.*
9..	I	i	i	.....	*ee* in *sheep.*
10..	J	j	gi	..... pronounced	*jee,* and articulated like *s* in *pleasure.*
11..	K	k	cà	.....	*cah.*
12..	L	l	elle	.....	as in English.
13..	M	m	emme	.....	as in English.
14..	N	n	enne	.....	as in English.
15..	O	o	ô	.....	as in English.
16..	P	p	pé	.....	like *pa* in *pace.*
17..	Q	q	qu	sounded	like the French *u* with *k* before it.
18..	R	r	erre	.....	like *air.*
19..	S	s	esse	.....	as in English.
20..	T	t	té	.....	like *ta* in *table.*
21..	U	u	u	.....	no similar sound.
22..	V	v	vé	.....	like *va* in *vapour.*
23..	X	x	ixe	.....	*eeks* in *leeks.*
24..	Y	z	i Grec	.....	*ee* in *sheep.*
25..	Z	y	zède	.....	as in English.

PRAXIS ON THE SIXTEEN VOWELS.

In order to read the following words properly, it will be necessary often to consult the article on the Consonants p. 9.

The italic letters are intended to be silent.

1..ou....	Où,	mou,	doux,	sou,	chou.	
	where,	*soft,*	*sweet,*	*penny,*	*cabbage.*	
2.. u....	Une,	du,	sucre,	lune,	flûte,	lutte.
	a or one,	*of the*	*sugar,*	*moon,*	*flute,*	*wrestling.*

* Now the consonants are pronounced as if they were followed by an *e* mute; *b*, for instance, is pronounced *be*; c, *ce*, &c.

3..eu....Me, heure, feu, sœur, beurre, peur.
me, hour, fire, sister, butter, fear.

4..eû....Eux, deux, queue, feux, ceux, bœufs.
them, two, tail, fires, those, oxen.

5.. o....Bonne, homme, poche, forme, bornes, sot.
good, man, pocket, form, bounds, fool.

6.. ô....Os, aux, hôte, eau, sots, eaux.
bone, to the, host, water, foots, waters.

7.. i....Ici, lit, y, dix, fifre, pipe.
here, bed, there, ten, fife, pipe.

8.. é....Et, été, j'ai, chez, nez, parler.
and, been, I have, at or to, nose, to speak.

9.. è....Ère, air, herbe, mer, mais, mes.
æra, air, herb, sea, but, my.

10.. ê....Etre, maître, seize, fraises, ils avoient.
to be, master, sixteen, strawberries, they had.

11.. a....A, arbre, hache, femme, calme, rame.
to, tree, axe, woman, calm, oar.

12.. â....Mâle, pas, âme, bas, las, hélas!
male, not, soul, low, tired, alas!

13..un....Un, brun, aucun, emprunt, humble.
one, brown, no one, loan, humble.

14..in....Fin, main, daim, nain, teint.
sly, hand, deer, dwarf, complexion.

15..on....Mon, don, ombre, nom, sombre, blond.
my, gift, shadow, name, dark, fair.

16..an....An, enfant, arpent, ambre, membre, rampant.
year, child, acre, amber, member, creeping.

The following words of *two* syllables, which are divided, are to be read with a *nearly equal accent* or *stress* upon each syllable. (See "Of the Accent.") The signs (— —́) are intended to show that a rather stronger stress is to be laid on the last syllable.

— —́
jou-jou, *plaything.*
bos-su, *humpbacked.*
heu-reux, *happy.*
heu-reux, *happy.*
com-plot, *plot.*
pin-ceau, *pencil.*
fi-ni, *finished.*
é-té, *been.*

— —́
ex-cès, *excess.*
ja-mais, *never.*
par-la, *spoke.*
ap-pas, *charms.*
dé-funt, *defunct.*
fes-tin, *feast.*
four-gon, *poker.*
en-fant, *child.*

The foregoing rule to be observed in the following words of three syllables.

a-ca-jou, *mahogany.*	in-com-plet, *incomplete.*
a-bat-tu, *pulled down.*	in-té-rêt, *interest.*
tra-duc-teur, *translator.*	o-do-rat, *smelling.*
mal-heu-reux, *unhappy.*	al-bâ-tre, *alabaster.*
a-bri-cot, *apricot.*	im-por-tun, *troublesome.*
a-ni-maux, *animals.*	par-che-min, *parchment.*
é-cri-vit, *wrote.*	nour-ris-son, *nursling.*
ma-jes-té, *majesty.*	par-ti-san, *partisan.*

The foregoing sounds laid down promiscuously.

ils tinrent, *they held,* chacun, *each,* aucun, *no one,* défunt, *defunct,* un peu, *a little,* long, *long,* cran, *notch,*

bambou, *bamboo,* bonbon, *sugar plum,* sang, *blood,* voulu, *been willing,* cousu, *sewn,* fendu, *cleft,* artisan, *artisan,*

gingembre, *ginger,* humain, *human,* abondance, *abundance,* clavecin, *harpsichord,* constance, *constancy,* malin, *malicious,*

maligne, *malicious,* fanfare, *flourish,* poudreux, *dusty,* menteur, *liar,* en un instant, *in an instant,*

étendue, *extent,* canton, ... comptant, *relying,* menton, *chin,* montant, *going up,*

tendant, *tending,* tendon, *tendon,* timpan, *drum of the ear,* houblon, *hops,* serin, *canary bird,* rampant, *creeping,*

carmin, *carmine,* mutin, *mutinous,* folâtre, *playful,* beau, *fine,* aurore, ...ra, automne, *autumn,* drôle, *droll,* folle, *foolish,*

rôle, *part in a play,* contrôle, *control,* en pleurant, *weeping,* toujours, *always,* muscle, *muscle,* fourche, *pitch-fork.*

SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

Formed from the Vowels.

Oueu,	ou *and* eu ; *or* weuh ;
Oueux,	ou....eu ;
Oui,	ou....i ; *or* wee ;
Oué,	ou....é ;
Ouet, ouait, ouoit,	ou....ê, *or* wair ;
Oi, oit, oè,	o....è ;
Ouets, ouois, ouoient,	ou....è ;
Ois, oient,	ou....ê, *or* wah ;
Ouas, ouât,	ou....â ;
Oua,	ou....a *open* ;

Formed from the Vowels

Ouon,	ou....on ;
Ouin,	ou....in, *or* win ;
Oin,	o....in ;
Ouan, ouen,	ou....an, *or* wan ;
Ueu,	u *and* eu ;
Ueux,	u....eû ;
Ui,	u....i ;
Ué,	u....é ;
Uè, uet, uoit,	u *and* è :
Uets, uois, uoient,	u....è ;
Ua,	u....a *open* ;
Ua, uas,	u....â *broad* ;
Uon,	u....on ;
Uin,	u....in ;
Uant,	u....an ;

Formed from the Vowels

Iou,	i *and* ou ;
Iu,	i....u ;
Ieu,	i....eu ;
Ieux,	i....eû ;
Iai, ié,	i....é ;
Iè, ioit,	i....è ;
Iois, ioient, iais,	i....ê ;
Ia,	i....a *open* ;
Iâ, ias,	i....â *broad* ;
Ian,	i....an ;
Ion,	i....on ;
Ien,	i....ain ;
Ien.	i....an.

Praxis on the French Consonants.

oueu.

joueur, m. *gamester.*

oueû.

bqueux, *muddy.*

oui, *as in we.*

oui,	*yes.*
jouir,	*to enjoy.*
joui,	*enjoyed.*
je jouis,	*I enjoy.*
il jouit,	*he enjoys.*
ils jouissent,	*they* —
ébloui,	*dazzled.*
enfoui,	*buried.*
réjoui,	*rejoiced.*
évanoui,	*vanished.*

Louis,	*Lewis.*
Louise,	*Louisa.*

oué, *as in Wales.*

jouer,	*to play.*
nouer,	*to tie.*
enjoué-e,	*cheerful.*
enroué,-e,	*hoarse.*
avouer,	*to own.*
dévouer,	*to devote.*

ouè, *as in wet.*

jouet, m.	*sport.*
souhait, m.	*wish.*
je souhaite,	*I wish.*
ouest, m.	*west.*

oi *has nearly the same sound.*

moi, *me.*	(mwah)
moi-même,	*myself.*
toi, *thee.*	(twah)
toi-même,	*thyself*
soi, *one's self.*	(swah)
soi-même,	*one's self*
foi, f. *faith.*	(swah)
doigt, m. *finger.*	(dwah)
soif, f. *thirst.*	(swah)
toit, m. *roof.*	(twah)
toile, f.	*cloth.*
quoi, *what,*	(kwah)
pourquoi,	*why.*
poisson, m.	*fish.*
poison, m.	*poison.*

il se noye, *he drowns himself.*
patrimoine, m. *patrimony.*
droit, droite, *upright, straight.*
droit, m. *right.*
tout droit, *straight on.*
à droite, *on the right.*
adroit,-te, *skilful.*
endroit, m. *place.*
froid, froide, *cold.*
étroit,-te, *narrow.*
il doit, *he owes.*
ils doivent, *they owe.*
il reçoit, *he receives.*
ils reçoivent, *they —*
il conçoit, *he conceives.*
framboises, *raspberries.*
autrefois, *formerly.*
quelquefois, *sometimes.*

oua.

joie, f. *joy.* (joa)
bourgeois, *citizen.*
avoir, *to have.*
pouvoir, *to be able.*
vouloir, *to be willing.*
savoir, *to know.*
s'asseoir, *to sit down.*
valoir, *to be worth.*
devoir, *to owe.*
recevoir, *to receive.*
pleuvoir, *to rain.*
noir,-e, *black.* (noar)
miroir, *looking-glass.*
mouchoir, m. *handkerchief.*
rasoir, m. *razor.*
arrosoir, m. *watering-pot.*
comptoir, m. *counting-house.*
espoir, m. *expectation.*
désespoir, m. *despair.*
éteignoir, m. *extinguisher.*
réservoir, *reservoir.*
boire, *to drink.* (boar)
croire, *to believe.* (croar)
armoire, f. *press.*
foire, f. *fair.* (foar)
gloire, f. *glory.* (gloar)
histoire, f. *history.*
écritoire, f. *standish.*
mémoire, f. *memory.*
mémoire, m. *bill, memoir.*

ouin, *nearly like wen in went.*

babouin, m. *baboon.*
marsouin, *porpoise.*

oin *has nearly the same sound.*

témoin, m. *witness.*
poing, m. *fist.* (poain)
appoint, m. *balance, odd money.*
foin, m. *hay.* (foain)
soin, m. *care.* (soain)
besoin, m. *want.*
loin, *far.* (loain)
bien-loin, *very far.*
plus loin, *farther.*
coin, *corner,* (coain)

ui.

je suis, *I am.*
puis, *then.*
depuis, *since.*
poursuite, f. *pursuit.*
cuire, *to do, to bake.*
conduire, *to conduct.*
cuir, m. *leather.*
cuivre, m. *copper.*
pluie, f. *rain.*
parapluie, *umbrella.*
huître, f. *oyster.*
truite, f. *trout.*
huile, f. *oil.*
tuile, f. *tile.*
fluide, *fluid.*
Druides, m. *Druids.*
ennui, m. *weariness.*
étui, m. *case.*
autrui, *others.*

ué.

nuée, f. *cloud.*
huer, *to hoot.*
tuer, *to kill.*
remuer, *to stir up.*
éternuer, *to sneeze.*

uê.

je saluois, *I was saluting.*
je remuois, *I was stirring up.*
ils remuoient, *they were stirring up.*
ils substituoient, *they were substituting.*

ua.

nuage, m. *cloud.*
il tua, *he killed.*
il continua, *he continued.*
il salua, *he saluted.*
il substitua, *he substituted.*

uon.

nous continuons, *we continue.*
nous tuons, *we kill.*

uin.

Juin, m. *June.*
suinter, *to leak.*

uan.

chat-huant, m. *owl.*
en saluant, *saluting.*
en ruant, *kicking.*
en muant, *moulting.*

iou.

Chiourme, f. *crew.*

iu.

Confucius, *Confucius.*
Fabius, *Fabius.*

ieu.

adieu, *adieu.*
essieu, m. *axle-tree.*
Monsieur, *sir.*

ieû.

ambitieux, ambitieuse, *ambitious.*
capricieux, capricieuse, *capricious.*
curieux, curieuse, *inquisitive.*

délicieux, délicieuse, } *delicious.*
envieux, envieuse, } *envious.*
factieux, m. *factious.*
furieux, furieuse, } *furious.*
glorieux, glorieuse, } *glorious.*
ingénieux, ingénieuse, } *ingenious.*
industrieux, industrieuse, } *industrious.*
ignominieux, ignominieuse, } *ignominious.*

sérieux, sérieuse, } *serious.*
superstitieux, superstitieuse, } *superstitious*
victorieux, victorieuse, } *victorious*

io.

médiocre, *middle.*
chariot, m. *waggon.*
patriote, *patriot.*
compatriote, *countryman.*
violon, m. *violin.*
violence, f. *violence.*

iô.

axiome, m. *axiom.*
idiome, m. *idiom.*
miauler, *to mew.*

ié.

amitié, f. *friendship.*
moitié, f. *half.*
pitié, f. *pity.*
le marié, m. *bridegroom.*
officier, m. *officer.*
fermier, m. *farmer.*
joaillier, m. *jeweller.*
lier, *to tie.*
lié, liée, *tied.*

iê.

de biais, *slanting.*
niais, m. *simpleton.*
j'étudiois, I studied.
ils étudioient, they studied.

ien.

bien, *well.*
fort bien, *very well.*
rien, *nothing.*
le mien, *mine.*
le tien, *thine.*
le sien, *his, her's.*
combien, *how much, how many.*
lien, m. *tie.*
chien, m. *dog.*
je viens, *I come.*
il vient, *he comes.*
je viendrai, *I shall come.*
il viendroit, *he would come.*
je tiens, *I hold.*
il tient, *he holds.*
je tiendrai, *I shall hold.*
il tiendroit, *he would hold.*
maintien, m. *maintenance.*
entretien, *discourse.*
il appartient, *it belongs.*

ion.

lion, m. *lion.*
action, *f. action.*
passion, f. *passion.*
question, f. *question.*
nation, f. *nation.*
portion, f. *share.*
nous étions, *we were.*
nous serions, *we should be.*
nous rions, *we laugh.*
nous oublions, *we forget.*
triomphe, *triumph.*

ian.

étudiant, m. *student.*
mendiant, m. *beggar.*
négociant, m. *merchant*
en riant, *laughing.*
en étudiant, *studying.*
friand, friande, *dainty.*
viande, f. *meat.*
orient, m. *east.*
client, m. *client.*
expédient, m. *expedient.*
ingrédient, m. *ingredient.*
expérience, f. *experience.*
alliance, f. *alliance*
confiance, f. *confidence.*

OF THE CONSONANTS.

General Rule.—Consonants are silent at the end of common words, but are sounded in proper names.

Observations.

B

Is sounded at the end of foreign names, as in *Oreb.* Also in the middle of words—Is silent in *plomb*, lead.

bb, in common words are articulated like one.

C

Is sounded like *k* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and like *s* before *e*, *i*, *y*. It is commonly sounded at the end of words, as in *avec*; except in *broc*, jug;

croc, accroc, rent; *marc d'argent,* a measure; *almanach; estomac; tabac; jonc,* reed; *blanc; franc; banc,* bench; *clerc,* a lawyer's clerk.

Sounds like *g* in *cicogne,* crane; *second; dracme.*

ç (with a cedilla) sound like *ss.*

D

Is sounded like *t* at the end of words, when joined to a following vowel, or *h* mute, as *un grand homme*—pron. *grant-homme, de pied-en cap*—pron. *de pié t'en cape.*

F

Is generally sounded at the end of words—except in *bœufs,* oxen, *nerfs, œufs,*—pron. *beû, ner; eû,* (in the singular of these three words the *f* is pronounced) *cerf,* stag; *clef,* key; (now usually spelt *clé,*) also in compound words, as in *chef-d'œuvre—Nef,* the nave. pron. *nèfe; Vif-argent*—pron. Vivargent. (See the pronunciation of Numerals.)

G

Is hard before *a, o, u,* and soft before *e, i.*

gn.. is sounded like *ng* in the English word *singer,* as in *magnanime;* except *gnome* and *stagnant; magnésie,* and *signet,* which is pron. *sinet.*

To articulate this sound, it is necessary to raise the middle of the tongue so as to touch the roof of the mouth. In pronouncing the word, suppose the syllables to be separated, keeping the *gn* together; then each syllable uttered accordingly, as in *ma-gnani-me.*

g.. sounds like *k* in *bourg;* and before a vowel, as in *un long-entretien, sang-et-eau*—pron. *lonkentretien, sankéau; rang honorable,* pron. *rankonorable.* But it is mute in *legs,* legacy—(pron. *lè;*) *poing,* fist; *étang,* pond; *vingt,* twenty; *hareng,* herring; *sangsue,* leech; *sting,* signature; *faubourg,* suburb.

gu.. In *gu,* the *u* only serves to make the *g* hard—as in *guerre, guirlande*—pron. *gairre, ghirlande.* Except in *aiguille,* needle; *aiguillon,* sting; *aiguiser,* to whet; *ciguë,* hemlock—pron. *ai-gu-ille, ai-guillon, cigu.*

gg.. are sounded in *suggérer,* which word is pronounced *sug-gérer.*

H

Is aspirated in about an hundred words: here follow the most common; but that aspiration is much less felt than in English, except in those marked with an asterisk. In the words in which the *h* is mute, it is kept merely for the sake of etymology.

hâbler,	*to romance, tell stories.*	hanche,	*hip.*
hache,	*axe.*	hanneton,	*a cock chafer.*
hagard,	*haggard, fierce.*	hangar,	*a shed.*
haïr,	*to hate.*	hanter,	*to keep company with.*
haine,	*hatred.*	happer,	*to snap at.*
haie,	*hedge.*	haquet,	*a dray.*
haillon,	*rag, tatter.*	hareng,	*a herring.*
hâle,	*drying wind, or weather.*	harangue,	*speech, oration*
hâlé,	*sun-burnt.*	harasser,	*to harass, tire*
* haleter,	*to pant.*	* harceler,	*to tire, tease*
halle,	*market-place.*	hardes,	*clothes*

halebarde,	*halbert.*	hardi,	*bold, daring.*
hardiment,	*boldly.*	hardiesse,	*boldness.*
* hargneux,	*cross, peevish.*	haut,	*high.*
haricots,	*French beans.*	hautain,	*haughty.*
haricot,	*a sort of French dish.*	hauteur,	*height.*
harnacher,	*to harness.*	hennir, (*pron.* hanir,)	*to neigh.*
harnois,	*to harness.*	hérault,	*herald.*
* harpe,	*harp.*	héros,	*a hero.*
harpon,	*a harpoon.*	hérisser,	*to stand on end.*
* harpie,	*harpy.*	hérisson,	*a hedge dog.*
hasard,	*chance.*	héron,	*a heron.*
hâte,	*haste.*	herser,	*to harrow.*
hâvre,	*haven, harbour,*	heurter,	*to knock.*
havre-sac,	*knapsac.*	hibou,	*an owl.*
haut-bois,	*hautboy.*	hideux,	*hideous, dreadful,*
hausser,	*to raise.*	Hollande,	*Holland.*

Beware not to join the *s* of *les* to *héros*, the heroes, or else it will sound like *les zéros*, the cyphers.

th..are pronounced like *t* as *thême*,—pron. *tême.*

ph..are sounded like *f*, as in English, as *philosophie.*

ch..are almost always sounded like *sh*, as in *charmant ;* but are sounded like *k* in some words, derived from the Greek and Hebrew ; as *chaos*, (pron *cow ;*)—*chiromancie, le chœur*, choir, *un orchestre, archange, un anachorete, Eucharistie, Chanaan, Achab.*

Rem. We say, without joining the *s* of *les* to the following vowel, *sur les une heure*, about one o'clock ; *sur les huit heures*, about eight o'clock.

Avoid giving the sound of this letter, in French, with *ssi* and *ti*, as it is done in English ; as, in *nation*, not *nashion.*

J

See alphabet, p. 4, *jamais*, never ; *joyeux*, joyous ; avoiding to give the sound of *d.*

* K

Used in foreign words only.

L

Is sounded at the end of words, as in *il, ils, mil, fil*, thread. Except in *baril*, cask ; *sourcil*, eye-brow ; *outil*, tool ; *gril*, gridiron ; *persil*, parsley ; *gentil*, pretty ; *fusil*, gun ; *fils*, son.

il..are generally sounded as one, as in *amollir*, to soften. Except in the following words—*Apollon, allusion, collusion, Pallas, belliqueux*, warlike ; *allégorie, gallicane, constellation, intelligent, intellectuel, pusillanime*, their derivatives and words compounded with *additional* and *negative* particles, coming from the Latin ; as *latéral, collatéral, légitime, illégitime.*

eil-le
œil
ille
aille
} are generally liquid.
pareil-le..like.
œil.....eye.
famille..family.
bataille..battle.

Also the following, in which the *l* is liquid—*Avril, Brésil, grésil,* hoar frost; *péril.*

Pronounce *gentilhomme, gentilshommes,—genti-iomme gentizommes.*

Rem. 1*st.* The liquid *l,* (in French *mouillée*) is pronounced two ways; the old way, recommended in the best works on pronunciation, is uttered by raising the middle of the tongue and touching the palate, being careful not to let the *i* be heard. The other, like two *ii's* as in *mouillé,* pron. *mouïé.* Though the former way is perhaps the best, still, as the latter is now adopted in genteel company, and even on the stage, it might seem ridiculous to dissent from the general custom in such a trifle; at any rate, words expressing objects of domestic use, as *paille,* straw; *bouteille,* bottle, &c. had better be pronounced as *pâïe, boutéie.*

2*nd.* The best way to pronounce a word that has the liquid *ll's,* is to utter the syllables as if divided, as in *ba-tâ-ille,* uttering each syllable without altering the sounds of the vowels; remembering, at the same time, that the *i* before the ll's is not sounded in the least, and only serves to make the ll's liquid.

l, not liquid.. In the following words the *l* is not liquid—*ville, mille, tranquille, subtil, imbécille, camomille,* and in their derivations—*Achille; armillaire; distiller; Idylle; pupille,* ward; *syllabe, vaciller,* and their derivatives—also those verbs formed from substantives which have only one *l,* as *désiller,* to open a person's eyes, because it comes from *cil,* eyelash, in which the *l* is not liquid.

ail and *aille*.. are always liquid, and generally pronounced broad, as in *paille,* straw; *bataille,* battle; except in *émail,* enamel; *bail,* lease; *travail,* work; *médaille,* medal; *portail,* front gate; *détail,* retail; *gouvernail,* rudder; *éventail,* fan; and a few more; also, *ailleurs,* elsewhere; *jaillir,* to spout out; and the derivatives of the preceding, in which the *a* is short.

The *l* is often left out by natives, in familiar conversation, as in *il parle, quelqu'un;* but it is a vulgarism.

M

Has generally a nasal sound in the beginning and at the end of words, as in *combler,* to fill up; *faim, parfum.* It has its original sound in proper names, as in *Jerusalem, Priam,* but not in *Adam, Absalom.*

mm.. in the middle of most common words, are sounded like one only, as in *commis,* clerk; except when preceded by an *i,* as in *immense, immortel,* in which the *mm's* are sounded, following the same rule as the *ll's,* both proceeding from the same cause.

emm and *enn,* like *ame* and *ane*.. In the word *femme,* and all adverbs ending in *emment,* the first *e* has the sound of *a,* therefore pronounce *femme, fame; différemment, différament; solennité, solanité; hennir, hanir; damner, dâner,* to damn; and their derivatives after the same manner.

emm, nasal.. In some words *en* (meaning *in* or *away*) is changed into *em,* which happens before *m, b, p,* the *emm* remain nasal, as in *emmener, emmagasiner,* &c.

N

At the end of words, or followed by a consonant, has the nasal sound, as in *brun, don, ingrédient;* but, when followed by a vowel, it forms

with that vowel another syllable, and consequently loses the nasal sound, as in *brun, brune ; an, ane.* This, of course, takes place when the *n* is double, as in *bonne, ennemi, homme.*

It is sounded at the end of *examen, hymen.*

When before a vowel, { *mon, ton, son* } sound like { *monne, tonne, sonne* } as in { *mon ami, ton ami, son ami* } pron. { *monnami, tonnami, sonnami* }

ent, as the plural of verbs, are quite silent, as *Ils parlent*—pron. *il parle,* but are sounded like *an* with substantives, adjectives, adverbs, &c. as in *couvent,* convent ; *souvent,* often.

n or *nn*.. have the nasal sound in the following words··*ennui,* weariness of mind ; *s'ennuyer, ennuyer, s'enorgueillir,* to grow proud—pron. *an-nui, s'an-norgueillir.*

Enivrer, to intoxicate, is pronounced *a-nivrer.*

ien.. page 3, 14th sound—except in *expédient.*

in··being sometimes a particle negative, and sometimes meaning *in, within,* and placed before adjectives, retains the nasal sound, if coming before a consonant, as in *in-supportable, induire,* but is sounded like i| *ne* if before a vowel, as in *inutile, inévitable*—pron. *i-nutile, i-névitable.* And if it be added to a word already beginning with *n,* both *n's* are sounded, following the same rule as the *ll's* and *mm's,* as *innombrable.*

P

Sounds in *cap, cep,* vine ; *jalep, julep; Alep ; pseaume,* psalm ; *psalmiste.* Is silent in *baptême, exempt, prompt ; compte,* account ; *sept,* seven ; *corps ;* as well as in all other words ending or beginning with *p,* except in *baptismal, psalmiste, psalmodier, Septembre, Septentrion.*

Though *ph* has the sound of *f,* still the word *phtisie* is pronounced *ptisie.*

Q

Is always followed by *u,* except in *coq* and *cinq,* and that *u* is generally silent ; but there are some words in which it is sounded, and even sometimes like *ou.*

questeur, *questor. (cuest.)*
équitation, *horsemanship. (cui)*
équiangle, *equiangular. (cui.)*
équidistant, *equidistant. (cui.)*
liquéfaction, *liquefaction. (cué.)*
quaterne, *quartern. (coua.)*
quadrupède, *quadruped. (coua.)*
équateur, *equator. (coua.)*
quadragénaire, 40 *years old. (coua.)*
quadrangulaire, *gular. (coua.)*
équestre, *equestrian. (cuest.)*
quintuple, *quintuple. (cuin.)*
équilateral, *equilateral. (cui.)*
équimultiple, *equimultiple. (cui.)*
liquéfier, *to liquefy. (ké.)*
quadruple, *four-fold. (coua.)*
aquatique, *watery. (coua.)*
équation, *equation. (coua.)*
quinquagénaire, 50 *years old. (cuin cuoa.)*
quadrature, *quadrature. (coua.)*

But we say, *la cadrature d'une montre,* the wheel-work of a watch.

R

Is almost always sounded in the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, of words ; except in words ending in *ier* and *er,* as *papier :* among these, the following must be excepted—*cuéiller,* spoon ; *hiver,* winter ;

amer, bitter; *fer*, iron; *fier*, proud; *enfer*, hell; *tiers*, third part; and in some proper names, as *Jupiter*.

In verbs of the 1st conjugation the termination *er* is sounded as an acute *é*, as *parler*—pron. *parlé*; except before a vowel, as in *parler à un homme*.

In *Monsieur* and *Messieurs* the *r* is silent—pronounce *mocieu*, *mècieú*.

In conversation, it is often left out in the following words,—*chirurgien*, *Mercredi*, *notre*, *votre*, (the two last before a consonant) pron. *chirugien*, *Mécredi*, *notte maison*, *votte livre*. This is not recommended.

Method of uttering the r.

The learner must be aware, that in English the *r* is uttered two different ways. The middle *r* as in *brook*, and the final as in *tour*. By some people it is improperly uttered from the throat; which is called, in English, the *burr*, and in French, *Parler gras*. This is a fault which, in England, some inhabitants of the North, and, in France, some natives of Paris, are apt to commit, and which should be carefully avoided.

Let the pupil begin with making the buzzing noise which constitutes the *z*, propelling his voice and breath with violence. Let him curl his tongue in a very slight degree from this position, keeping the middle part stiff, and the top flexible.

It may not be amiss to add, that in French the final syllable of a word ending with an *r* is always very long, and that the trilling of the *r* is heard very slightly, as in *toujours*.

Of the difference between the French and English final r.

The final *r* in English is sounded as if an *e* were put *before* it; but in French it is sounded as if an *e* were placed *after* it. Ex: the word *tour* is pronounced *tou-re*, in French, but in English *tou-er*, like *too-er*.

The double *r* is generally sounded as one, as in *guerre*, war; *tonnerre*, thunder; *serrer*, to make fast, &c.; except in *errer*, to err; *erreur*, *erroné*, *errata*, *arrhes*, earnest-money; *horrible*, horrible; as well as those adjectives which have the negative *ir* prefixed to them, as *irrégulier*, *irrépréhensible*.

Also, in the future and conditional tenses of *mourir*, *courir*, *acquérir*; but not in those of *voir*, *je verrai*, *je verrois*—pron. *je vèrai*, *je vèrois*.

S

Is silent in most common words, as in *pas*, *bas*, &c.; also in Christian names, as in *Thomas*, *Nicholas*, &c. and in *Paris* (city.) Is sounded in *hélas!* alas! *vis*, screw; *as*, ace; *lys*, lily; *Est*, East; *Ouest*, West. Also in proper names, as in *Joas*, *Gil Blas*, *Ménélas*, *Paris*, &c. and in Latin words; pronounce *Jésus Christ*, as *Jésu-Cri*; but the *s* is sounded in *le Christ*.

This letter has the hissing sound between a vowel and a consonant, and between two consonants, as in *consonne*, *posséder*, *possession*; except in *presbytère*, *balsamique*, *transiger*, *transition*, *transaction*.

Sounds soft like *z* between two vowels, as in *óser*, *user*, &c., except in some compound words, as *parasol*, *vraisemblable*, &c.

This letter generally makes the preceding vowel broad, as in *passer*, to pass; *raser*, to shave; *óser*, to dare, &c. See circumflex accent, p. 20.

Although the *s* is not sounded in *tous*, all, *fils*, son, when in dispassionate conversation, it frequently is pronounced in poetry and in energetic discourse.

T

Is sounded in *brut*, rough; *dot*, marriage-portion; *alert*, *fat*, coxcomb; *rapt*, rape; *correct*, *direct*.; *apiat*, *le Christ*; *exact*, *lest*, nimble; *zest*, (an interjection) *subit*, sudden; *Est*, East; *Ouest*, West.

Is always silent in the conjunction *et*, even before a vowel.

ti··are sounded *ci* in words which, in English, have *ti* sounded like *sh*, and in those which end in *cy*, as in *attention*, *intention*, *nation*; *Egyptien*, *Vénitien*, *Dalmatie*, *prophétie*, *aristocratie*.

ti··sounded like *ci*, make the preceding *a* broad, as in *nation*, *ration*, *application*.

See pronunciation of nouns of number.

X

Is sounded like *ks* in *réflexion*, *Alexandre*.
····· *gz* in *exercice*, *examen*.
····· *ss* in *Auxerre*, *Bruxelles*.
····· *z* in *deuxième*, *sixième*.

At the end of words, it is joined to the following vowel, like a *z*; *nouveaux amis*, *je veux aller*—pron. *nouvó·zamis*, *je-veû-zallé*.

Y

Coming after a consonant, is a vowel, and sounds like *i*, as in *lyre*; coming after a vowel, it is a kind of diphthong, standing for two *i*'s, the former of which belongs to the foregoing vowel, and the latter sounds of itself, as in *pays*; but when another vowel follows, this latter i is blended with that other vowel, with which it forms a liquid articulation, as in *paye*.

pays, m. country (pron.)	*pai-i.*	*ayant*, having. (pron.)	*ai-ian.*
paysage, m. landscape.	*pai-i-zage.*	*ayons*, let us have.	*ai-ion.*
paysan, m. peasant.	*pai-i-zan.*	*crayon*, m. pencil.	*crai-ion.*
paye, f. pay.	*pai-ie.*	*égayer*, to enliven.	*é-gai-ié.*
payement, payment.	*pai-ie-man.*	*essayer*, to try.	*es-sai-ié.*
payer, to pay.	*pai-ié.*	*rayure*, f. stripe.	*rai-iure.*

In the following words, it will clearly appear, that, by means of *y*, there are two diphthongs, one after another.

appuyer, to prop. (pron.)	*ap·pui-ié.*	*aboyer*, to bark. (pron.)	*a-boi ié.*
essuyer, to wipe.	*es-sui ié.*	*envoyer*, to send.	*en-voi-ié.*
bruyère, f. heath.	*brui-ière.*	*employer*, to employ.	*em·ploi-ié.*
fuyard, m. runaway.	*fui-iar.*	*déployer*, to display.	*dé·ploi-ié.*
royaume, kingdom.	*roi-iôme.*	*nettoyer*, to clean.	*né-toi-ié.*
tuyau, m. pipe.	*tui-ió.*	*voyager*, to travel.	*vo-ia-gé.*
aloyau, m. sirloin.	*a-loi-ió.*	*noyé*, drowned.	*noi-ié.*
joyaux, m. jewels.	*joi ió.*	*noyer*, m. walnut-tree.	*noi-ié.*
moyen, m. means.	*moi-iain.*	*loyer*, m. house-rent.	*loi-ié.*
croyable, credible.	*croi-iable.*	*loyal*, loyal.	*loi-ial.*
croyons, let us believe.	*croi-ion.*	*royal*, royal.	*roi-ial.*
soyons, let us be.	*soi-ion.*	*joyeux-se*, joyful.	*joi-ieû.*

Of ï, called trema.

That figure indicates likewise a liquid articulation. The two dots show that *i* must be detached from the foregoing, to be blended with the following, vowel.

aïeul, m. grandfather.	*a-ieul.*	*Maïenne.*	*Ma iene.*
aïeux, m. ancestors.	*a-ieú.*	*Maïence*, Mentz.	*Ma iance.*
faïence, f. delft ware.	*fa-iance.*	*baïonnette*, f. bayonet.	*ba-io-nette.*
païen, m. pagan.	*pa-iain.*	*théière*, f. tea pot.	*té-ière.*

Z

Is sounded as in English, except that, in some few proper names, as *Alvarez, Rhodèz, Metz, &c.* it is pronounced *Alvaréce, Rhodèçe, Mèce.*

&c.. Pronounce *ett-cé-té-ra*, the stress rather laid upon *ra*, not upon *cet.*

PRAXIS ON THE CONSONANTS.

B

Bon,	beau,	Oreb,	Achab,	plomb,
good,	*fine,*	....	.....	*lead.*

C

Cure,	façon,	façade,	garçon,	second,	cicogne,	secondement,
cure,	*make,*	*the front,*	*boy,*	.....	*stork,*	*secondly,*

accident,	accès,	succint,	arsenic,	broc,	clerc,	échecs,
.....	*fit,*	.....	.....	*jug,*	*clerk,*	*chess,*

estomac,	jonc,	porc,	tabac,	venez donc,
stomach,	*reed,*	*pork,*	*tobacco,*	*come then.*

D

Dé,	un grand esprit,	un grand ami,	de pied-en cap,	répondit-il,
a die,	*a great mind,*	*a great friend,*	*cap a-pie,*	*answers he,*

David,	Joad,
.....	....

F

Forfait,	œuf,	bœuf,	cerf,	nerf,	neuf,	œufs,	bœufs,	nerfs,
crime,	*egg,*	*ox,*	*stag,*	*nerve,*	*nine,*	*eggs,*	*oxen,*	*nerves,*

cerfs,	vif-argent,	chef-d'œuvre,
stags,	*mercury,*	*master-piece.*

G

Grand,	agneau,	magnanime,	signer,	vous peignez,	signet,	
great,	*lamb,*	.....*ous,*	*to sign,*	*you paint,*	*reading mark,*	
poing,	étang,	faubourg,	hareng,	legs,	doigt,	vingt,
fist,	*pond,*	*suburb,*	*herring,*	*legacy,*	*finger,*	*twenty,*

seing, Agag, sang et eau, long, entretien, guirlande,
signature, ... *blood and water, long, conversation, garland,*

guérre, aiguiser, aiguille, suggérer,
war, to sharpen, needle, to suggest.

H

Des haillons, des yeux hagards, il vous hait, il est hardi, des héros,
tatters, wild looks, he hates you, he is bold, heroes,

des haricots, un hareng, des effets de hasard, La Hollande,
French beans, herring, second-hand things, Holland,

du fromage d'Hollande, un héros.
Dutch cheese, a hero.

J

Jamais, joyeux, joli, aujourd'hui, jaillir, jet-d'eau,
never, joyous, pretty, to-day, to spout out, water-spout.

L

Leçon, parler, fil, il, ils, mil, baril, sourcil,
lesson, to speak, thread, he, they, thousand, barrel, eye-brow,

outil, gril, persil, gentil, fusil, fils, chenil, illégitime,
tool, gridiron, parsley, pretty, gun, son, dog-kennel, illegitimate,

illustre, illusion, belliqueux, collusion, allusion, gallicisme,
illustrious, ... *martial,* .... *gallicism,*

intelligent, pusillanime, collège, pareil, œil, soleil, recueil,
....*ous,* ..... *like, eye, sun, collection,*

péril, travail, sommeil, ville, mille, tranquille,
peril, work, sleep, town, thousand, quiet.

M

Même, combler, faim, parfum, prompt, commis,
same, to overwhelm, hunger, perfume, ... *clerk,*

commettre, immense, immortel, femme, différemment,
to commit, ...*tal, woman, differently,*

prudemment, solemnité, damner, condamner,
prudently, solemnity, to condemn, to condemn,

emmener, emmagasiner, Jerusalem,
to take away with one, to put into a warehouse, ...

Priam, Selim, Adam, Absalom,
....

N

Non, brun, don, un, une, brune, fin, fine, tien,
no, brown, gift, a, a, brown, fine, ... *thine,*

tienne, an, année, bon bonne, examen,
may hold, a, whole year, good, good, examination,

hymen, elles couvent, un couvent, ils aiment, vraiment,
..... *they lay on eggs,* *a convent,* *they love,* *truly,*

innombrable, inné, innover, ennui, ennuyer, ennivrer,
innumerable, *innate,* *to innovate,* *weariness,* *to weary,* *to intoxicate,*

enorgueillir, ennoblir, hennir, hennissement, utile,
to make proud, *to ennoble,* *to neigh,* *neighing,* *useful,*

inutile, inépuisable, inévitable, mon ami, ton argent,
useless, *inexhaustible,* *unavoidable,* *my friend,* *thy money,*

son oiseau, ancien, ami,
his bird, *ancient,* *friend.*

P

Pipe, cap, cep, jalap, julep, pseaume, psalmist, baptême,
.... *cape,* *vine,* .... *psalm,* ..... *baptism,*

exempt, prompte, compte, comte, sept, corps, baptismal,
..... *prompt,* *account,* *count,* *seven,* *body,* .....

psalmiste, septentrion, exemption, redemption, redempteur,
psalmist, *north,* *exemption,* ..... *redeemer,*

champ, camp, drap, sirop, beaucoup, trop, beaucoup aimé,
field, ... *cloth,* ..... *much,* *too much,* *much loved,*

trop estimé, philosophe, phrase, pharmacie, phtisie,
too much esteemed, *philosopher,* ..... *pharmacy,* *phthisic.*

Q

Coq, cinq, querelle, acquérir, équateur, aquatique,
cock, *five,* *quarrel,* *to acquire,* *equator,* *aquatic,*

quadrupède, équiangle, équestre, quintuple, cinq livres,
quadruped, *equiangular,* *equestrian,* *quintuple,* *five pounds,*

cinq amis,
five friends.

R

Rareté, hiver, amer, fer, cueillier, fier, enfer, tiers,
rarity, *winter,* *bitter,* *iron,* *spoon,* *winter,* *hell,* *third part,*

mer, Jupiter, danger, berger, papier, métier, bourbier,
sea, ... *shepherd,* *paper,* *trade,* *slough,*

barbier, monsieur, messieurs, aimer, parler, charmer,
barber, *sir,* *gentlemen,* *to love,* *to speak,* *to charm,*

parler à un ami, aimer à etudier, guerre, serrer,
to speak to a friend, *to love to study,* *war,* *to make tight,*

tonnerre, errer, erreur, erroné, errata, irrégulier,
thunder, *to wander,* *error,* *erroneous,* ..... *irregular,*

irréprehensible, mourir, courir, je mourrai, je courrai,
..... *to die,* *to run,* *I shall die,* *I shall run,*

Je verrai, je verrois, j'enverrai, j'enverrois.
I shall see, *I should see,* *I shall send,* *I should send.*

Praxis upon the final r.

ou	*i*	
cou-*re*	fini-*re*	du-*re*
jou-*re*	li-*re*	su-*re*
tou-*re*	cui-*re*	pu-*re*
pou-*re*	ci-*re*	fou-lu-*re*
amou-*re*	di-*re*	voi-tu-*re*
toujou-*re*	nui-*re*	me-su-*re*
séjou-re	fui-*re*	bu-*rent*

Praxis upon the middle r.

ils abo-*re*-dè-*rent*	ave-re-ti-*re*	a-re-mu-*re*
ils accou-*re*-ci-*rent*	der-*re*-mi-*re*	mu-re-mu-re
ils affe-re-mi-*rent*	du-re-ci-re	tou-re-nu-re
ils pa-re-lè-*rent*	engou-re-di-*re*	cou-re-ba-tu-*re*
ils ba-re-bouillè-*rent*	obscu-re-ci-*re*	ga-re-ni tu-re

S

Son, bas, las, pas, Jésus, Thomas, Nicholas, Paris, (city,)
sound, stocking, tired, not, ...

hélas! vis, as, lys, est, ouest, Joas, Gil Blas, Ménélas,
alas! screw, ace, lily, east, west, Josh, ... Menelaus,

Paris, (the Trojan,) posséder, possession, presbytère, balsamique,
..... *to possess, ... presbyter, balsamic,*

transiger, transition, transaction, rose, dose, râser, lisez,
to transact, ... to shave, read,

amuser, bossu, essayer, essuyer, poison, poisson,
to amuse, hump-backed, to try, to wipe, poison, fish,

Jésus, Jésus Christ, Le Christ, tous, fils, avis, alors,
.... *Christ, all, son, advice, then,*

dès que, divers, os, lorsque,
as soon as, divers, bone, when.

T

Ton, il tient, écrit, but, complot, méchant, brut, dot,
thy, he holds, written, end, plot, wicked, rough, portion,

alert, correct, direct, opiat, exact, lest, zest, subit,
.... *opiate, ... nimble, ... sudden,*

est, ouest, granit, luth, strict, tact, toast, zénith, amitié,
east, west, granite, lute, ... friendship,

moitié, pitié, partie, modestie, prophétie, ineptie, inertie,
half, pity, part, modesty, prophecy, stupidity, indolence,

démocratie, partial, essentiel, nation, satiété, insatiable,
democracy, ... essential, ... satiety, insatiable,

initier, balbutier, un charmant livre, un charmant oiseau,
initiate, mutter, a charming book, a charming bird.

X

Reflexion, Alexandre, exercice, examen, exhaucer,
reflection, Alexander, exercise, examination, to grant,

exorbitant, Auxerre, Bruxelles, deuxième, sixième, nouveaux,
.... *second, sixth, new,*

amis, dix-huit, je veux aller,
friends, eighteen, I wish to go.

Y

Pays, paysage, paysan, paye, payer, ayant,
country, landscape, countryman, pay, to pay, having

rayure, rayer, appuyer, essuyer, bruyère, aboyer,
stripe, to stripe, to prop, to wipe, heath, to bark,

employer, noyer, loyal, royal, aïeul, aïeux,
to employ, to drown, loyal, royal, grand-father, ancestors,

faïence, païen, baïonnette, théïère, yeux, il y a,
delft ware, pagan, bayonet, tea-pot, eyes, there is,

yacht, (*pron.* yac,)
.....

Z

Alvarez, Rhodèz, Mendèz, Metz.
....

A LIST OF WORDS GENERALLY CONSIDERED DIFFICULT TO BE PRONOUNCED.

Pronunciation of *gn*.

Montagne, Mŏn-tă-*gne*.
Mountain.

Campagne, Cam-pă-*gne*.
Country.

L'Allemagne, L'álle-mă-*gne*.
Germany.

L'Espagne, L'Es-pă-*gne*.
Spain.

Enseigne, En-sĕi-*gne*.
A sign.

Bourgogne, Boŭr-gō-*gne*. (*o* open.)
Burgundy.

Magnanime, Ma-gna-ni-me.
Magnanimous.

Vignoble, Vĭ-gnō-ble. (*o* open.)
Vineyard,

Espagnol, Es-pă-gnŏl.
Spanish.

Of the *ill's.*

Vieille, Vié-ïe. (p. 11, letter *l*.)
Old.

Vielle, Vĭ-ĕl-le. veille.
Hurdy-gurdy. the day before.

Vieillard, Vïe-ĭll-ard.
Old man.

Tranquille.
Quiet.

Soleil, Sŏ-lé-ille.
Sun.

Réveil, Rĕ-vé-ille.
Waking.

Pupille, letter *l.*
Ward.

Grenouille, Grĕ-nōu-ille.
Frog.

Gentilhomme.
Nobleman.

Gentilshommes.
Noblemen.

Œil, E-ille. (*o* open, p. 1. 3rd sound.)
Eye.

Deuil, De-ille.
Mourning.

Recueil, Rĕ-que-ille.
Collection.

Ail and *ailles*, p. 12.

Paille, Pâ-ï-e.
Straw.

Volaille, Vo-lâ ï.e.
Fowl.

Canaille, Ca-na ï.e.
Very low people.

Versailles, Vers-sâ-ille,
Town in France.

Funérailles, Fu-né-râ-illes.
Funerals.

Travail, Tra-va ï.e.
Labor.

Bétail, Bé-ta ï.e.
Cattle.

Ailleurs, A-ill-eurs.
Elsewhere.

Eventail, E-ven-ta ï.e.

Ayant, p. 15, letter *y.*

Aïeul, p. 15, letter *ï.*

ui.

Instruire, Ins-trŭï-re.
To instruct.

Induire, In-dŭ-i-re.
To induce.

Réflexion, ré-flec-ci-on, p. 15, letter *x.*

Exercice, eg-zer-ci-ce.
Auxesre, ĕ-cer-re.
A town.

Deuxième, deû-zi-é-me.

Faon, Fan.
Fawn.

Paon, Pan.
Peacock.

Taon, Tan.
An ox-fly.

Caen, Kan.
A town.

La Soane, Sône.
A river.

Août, Oû.
August.

Aoriste, ŏrīste.
Aorist.

In the following words, observe the difference between *ie* & *ei*, or *ai.*

Le mien.
Mine.

main.
hand.

tien.
thine.

teint.
complexion.

sien.
his.

sein.
bosom.

Monsieur,	Messieurs.
Sir,	*Gentlemen.*

Aimable, p. 22, on the articulation of *ble*, *cle*, &c.

In the following words, *en* is pronounced like *in* nasal.

Mentor, pron.	măintōr.
Benjamin,	bĕnjămăin.
Européen,	ĕu-rŏ-pĕ-ăin.
Agenda,	ă-jăin-dâ.

A memorandum.

Citoyen, Moyen, Rien, Bien } words in *ien* are sounded like *iaian*. letter *n*.

To be sounded like *an*.

Expédient, letter *n*.
Emolient.
Patient, patience.
Orient.

Solemnel, Solemnité, Condamner, Hennir. } of the *m* and *u*.

Nef, *the nave of a church*, of the F.

Coignée, *a hatchet*, now pronounced and spelt *cognée*.

Petit, *small*, pron. p‿tit.

Ce‿qui, ski. p. 22, *e* mute.
That which.

Ce‿que ske.
That which.

Ce‿dont sdont.
That of which.

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ?
What is that ?
(Pron.) Caisse-ke-cek-sla ?

OF THE ACUTE, GRAVE, AND CIRCUMFLEX ACCENTS, &c.

The acute accent, (´) going from right to left, is placed over the *e* only. Vide p. 3, 8th sound, in adjectives and participles : As in *aisé*, easy ; *aimé*, loved.

The *grave* accent (`) going from left to right is usually placed on the *e*, vide p. 3, 9th sound. It also is placed over *à*, meaning *to*, *at*, to distinguish it from *a*, has, as well as over *où*, where, to distinguish it from *ou*, or.

The *circumflex* (^) is the meeting of both, vide p. 3, 10th sound. It serves to give a broad sound to the vowel over which it is placed. Thus, over *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, it supplies the place of an *s*, which was formerly used after those letters, as in *âme*, soul, *être*, to be, *gîte*, home, *côte*, coast, *flûte*, flute ; which were spelt *asme*, *estre*, &c.

Also the *apostrophe* (') shewing the elision of some letter ; as, *j'aime*, for *je aime*, *l'âme*, for *la âme*, &c. ; therefore, let the pupil be careful not to let the hiatus be heard.

The *trema*, or *diæresis*, (¨) is placed over the *e* and the *i*, to denote that the preceding vowel retains its natural sound, as in *aiguë* and *in aïeul*, vide *y*, p. 15.

The *cedilla* is placed under the c (ç) in order to make it sound like *ss* ; je reçus, pronounce *je ressus*.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE e MUTE.

1st. After any consonant, the *e*, not accented, causes that consonant to have its full sound ; therefore, after *un*, *on*, *in*, *an*, the *n* is no longer nasal, but is pronounced as if it were double, *unne*, *onne*, *inne*, *anne* ; this rule, of course, takes place when the *n* is double.

2nd. The *e* not accented, in the middle, and at the end, of words of more than one syllable, is not sounded : as

Amplement, *pron.* ampl‿ment.
follement.....foll‿ment.
aimable .....aimabl.
agréable .....agréabl.
petit.....ptit *(like* e *in* begin.)

Articulation of ble, *&c.*

English learners being always inclined to sound *e* before *l* or *r*, as they do in their own language, the finals *ble, cre, tre,* &c. articulating *humble, humbel; acre, aker; mitre, miter;* &c. the following lesson should be carefully repeated after the teacher,

ble	une table,	*a table*
	affable,	*affable*
	ils s'ensablent,	*they run aground*
bre	un‿arbre,	*a tree*
	des chambres,	*chambers*
	ils‿ombrent,	*they shade*
cle	un miracle,	*a miracle*
	articles,	*articles*
	ils bouclent,	*they buckle*
cre	du sucre,	*sugar*
	âcres,	*sharp*
	ils massacrent,	*they murder*
dre	de la poudre,	*powder*
	des cadres,	*frames*
	ils poudrent,	*they powder*
fle	souffle,	*breath*
	des buffles,	*buffaloes*
	ils soufflent,	*they blow*
fre	un gouffre,	*an abyss*
	des coffres,	*trunks*
	ils‿offrent,	*they offer*
gle	un‿aveugle,	*a blind man*
	des‿aigles,	*eagles*
	les‿ongles,	*the nails*
gre	un nègre,	*a negro*
	maigre,	*lean*
	aigre,	*tart*
ple	souple,	*supple*
	simples,	*herbs*
	ils couplent,	*they couple*
pre	rompre,	*to break*
	propre,	*proper*
	pampre,	*a vine leaf*

tre	antre,	*a natural cave*
	des montres,	*watches*
	ils ◡ entrent,	*they enter*

GENERAL RULE.—The *e* mute is (especially in conversation) cancelled in point of sound; so that the last syllable of the preceding word, or the first of the following, becomes more strongly accented, and is, as it were, incorporated with it. Ex:

Je ne vous le donnerai pas; *pron.* Jēne* voūle doūnerai pas.
I will not give it to you.

Lĕ ◡ tēms est ◡ lĕ trésor du sage, ēt ◡ lĕ fardeaū ◡ dĕ l'oisif.
Time is the treasure of the wise, and the burthen of the idle.

When the monosyllables je, me, te, de, *&c. meet together.*

1. One monosyllable followed or preceded by a consonant †—

de la, *pron.* dla; je parle, *pron.* j ◡ parle.
of the. *I speak.*

je suis, *pron.* j ◡ suis; suis-je, *pron.* suije; parlè-je, *pron.* parlèje.
I am. *am I.* *do I speak.*

2. When two monosyllables meet together, a stress is to be laid on the first. Ex:

Je ne veux pas; *pron.* Jē ◡ ne veux pas.
I will not.

Il me le dit; *pron.* il mē ◡ lĕ dit.
He tells me so.

Où me menez-vous? *pron.* Oū ◡ me mĕnēz-vous?
Where do you take me?

Lē ◡ lĕvant; cē ◡ sĕcret.
The east. *this secret.*

3. When three monosyllables come together, the first or second may have the stress.* Ex:

Je mē ◡ le propose. Jē ◡ ne le veux pas.
I propose it to myself. *I will not have it.*

4. When four monosyllables come together, divide them two by two, and lay the stress as mentioned in the 3rd case.

Jē ◡ ne mē ◡ le propose pas. Nē ◡ me lē ◡ rĕjĕtez pas.
I do not propose it to myself. *Do not throw it back to me.*

Many more rules might be given on this subject; but much, after all, must be left to practice, where harmony and distinctness are to be consulted.

The *e* mute before *f, l, m, n, r, s,* is sounded exactly like the letters themselves; therefore, *er* always sounds like *aire; effets* like *aiffait,* &c.

---

* Still preserving the sound of the *e* mute, 3rd sound, p. 2.

† *Le,* after an Imperative, (if not followed by another pronoun,) should have its original sound, as in *voyez-le, donnez-le,* 3rd sound, p. 2.

CASES WHEN *oi* IS PRONOUNCED AS A DIPHTHONG, viz. *oé*.

1. With verbs in the present of the indicative and subjunctive moods, as *Je reçois, que je reçoive.*—I receive, &c.

2. With substantives, adjectives, pronouns, &c. as *loi, droit, moi.*

3. With some names of nations, as Danois, *Dane;* Suédois, *Swede;* Hongrois, *Hungarian;* Chinois, *Chinese,* &c.

EXCEPTIONS:

Cases when *oi* is pronounced *ê*.

1. With verbs, *oi* is sounded *ê* in the imperfect and conditional tenses; also with the verbs *connoître, paroître,* and their derivatives.

2. Foible, *weak;* roide, *stiff,* } are pronounced—
foiblesse, *weakness;* roideur, *stiffness,*
fêble, fèblesse, rède, rèdeur.

3. With the following names of natives and countries.

Anglois,	*English.*	Milanois,	*Milanese.*
François,*	*French.*	Lionnois,	*of Lyons.*
Ecossois,	*Scotch.*	Bearnois,	*of Bearn.*
Irlandois,	*Irish.*	Nantois,	*of Nantes.*
Hollandois,	*Dutch.*	Rouennois,	*of Rouen.*
Polonois,	*Pole.*		

Bourbonnois, Orléannois, Nivernois, Soissonnois, Férarois, Piémontois } inhabitants of provinces.

Harnois, harness, is generally pronounced, *harnê,* but sometimes, in poetry or florid style, *harnois.*

OF DIVIDING WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

A single consonant, *x* excepted, in the beginning or middle syllable, commonly belongs to the following vowel.

a-mi, *friend.*
ai-mer, *to love.*
j'ai-me, *I love.*
nous ai-mons, *we love,*
ai-ma-ble, *amiable.*
au mô-ne, *alms.*
dé-ga-ger, *to disengage.*
ex-é-cu-ter, *to execute.*
dé-ro-ber, *to steal, to rob.*
ru-bo-teux, *rough.*
au-to-ri-té, *authority.*
dé-li-bé-rer, *to deliberate.*
gé-né-reu-se-ment, *generously.*
na-tu-ra-li-sé, *naturalised.*
sin-gu-la-ri-té, *singularity.*
ex-a-mi-na-teur, *examiner.*

* *François,* Francis, is pronounced *Fransoá.*

A double consonant must be divided.

es-sai, *essay*.
ces-ser, *to cease*.
bas-sin, *bason*.
at-ta-que, *attack*.
as-su-rer, *to assure*.
as-sas-sin, *assassin*.
som-mai-re-ment, *summarily*.
rac-com-mo-der, *to mend*.
suf-fi-sam-ment, *sufficiently*.
ir-ré-pa-ra-ble, *irreparable*.
ir-ré-gu-la-ri-té, *irregularity*.
ir-ré-li-gi-eu-se-ment, *irreligiously*.

Two or more consonants are for the most part to be separated.

ad-jec-tif, *adjective*.
as-con-dant, *ascendant*.
as-sis-tan-ce, *assistance*.
ac-ti-vi-té, *activity*.
soup-çon-neux, *suspicious*.
em-bar-ras-sé, *embarrassed*.
sa-tis-fac-ti-on, *satisfaction*.
cor-res-pon-dan-ce, *correspondence*.
dis-cré-te-ment, *discreetly*.
per-son-nel-le-ment, *personally*.
vic-to-ri-eu-se-ment, *victoriously*.
ir-ré-con-ci-li-a-ble-ment, *irreconcilably*.

l or *r*, preceded by *b*, *p*, *v*, *f*, *d*, *t*, *g*, or *c*, are not separated; but those coupled consonants belong to the following vowel.

vrai-sem-bla-ble-ment, *very likely*.
em-bra-se-ment, *conflagration*.
dé-plo-ra-ble, *deplorable*.
pro-pri-é-té, *property*.
in-frac-ti-on, *infraction*.
ré-tro-gra-der, *to retrograde*.
ad-mi-nis-tra-teur, *administrator*.
ex-tra-va-gan-ce, *extravagance*.
en-glou-tir, *to swallow up*.
in-gra-ti-tu-de, *ingratitude*.
es-cla-va-ge, *slavery*.
é-cri-tu-re, *writing*.
re-dres-ser, *to redress*.

When two vowels come together, and both fully and distinctly sounded, they must be separated.

co-o-pé-ra-teur, *co-operator*.
cré-a-teur, *creator*.
o-bé-is-sant, *obedient*.
la po-é-sie, *poetry*.
dic-ti-on-nai-re, *dictionary*.
pro-non-ci-a-ti-on, *pronunciation*.
ré-ac-ti-on, *re-action*.
ru-i-ner, *to ruin*.
ré-a-li-té, *reality*.
mu-tu-el-le-ment, *mutually*.
an-nu-el-le-ment, *yearly*.
cu-ri-eu-se-ment, *curiously*.

Particles in composition, though followed by a vowel, generally remain undivided.

per-emp-toi-re, *peremptory*.
dés-o-bli-ger, *to disoblige*.
trans-ac-ti-on, *transaction*.
trans-gres-ser, *to transgress*.
dis-pro-por-ti-on-né, *disproportionate*.
dés-a-gré-a-ble, *disagreeable*.
trans-por-ter, *to transport*.

GENERAL RULES FOR JOINING THE FINAL CONSONANT OF A WORD WITH THE VOWEL OF THE NEXT.

That *junction* takes place when the two words must necessarily follow each other, which happens :—

With articles and the following Substantive or Adjective—
Les ⌣ oiseaux, des ⌣ hommes, un ⌣ ami.

With Adjectives preceding their Substantives—
Un bon ⌣ historien, pron. *bonnistorien. Un petit ⌣ homme de faux ⌣ amis,* see p. 14, letter *x*.

With Nouns of Number—
Six ⌣ heures, dix ⌣ ans, vingt ⌣ hommes, vide Numerals.

With Pronouns placed before their Substantives or Verbs—
Mon ⌣ ami, nous ⌣ étions, Ils ⌣ ont, Cet ⌣ homme.

With Adverbs coming before Adjectives or Participles—
Fort ⌣ aimable, extrêmement ⌣ aimé, beaucoup ⌣ enflé, trop ⌣ aimé. un ⌣ ami, en ⌣ amusant, on ⌣ agit, bien ⌣ agréable, rien ⌣ appris.

With Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Monosyllables—
Sans ⌣ argent, chez ⌣ eux, mais ⌣ aussi.

This junction seldom takes place,

With Substantives placed before the Adjective—
Une saison agréable.

With Adjectives joined by *et* (which monosyllable is never joined with the following vowel.)
Cet homme est grand et aimable.

With *es* as plural to nouns, and *ent* plural to verbs—
Mes frères et mes sœurs allerent à la comédie.

With two nasal sounds (monosyllables excepted)—
Un voisin incommode, un Tyran ambitieux.

Observe 1st.—That rules, alone, are not sufficient guides to a foreigner, or even to a native, with respect to the junction, in all the different styles; he should hear the best readers and speakers. When it is made to take place without due discrimination, it produces a harsh and heavy effect, and, when entirely omitted, it makes the phrases unconnected, and the language altogether unintelligible.

2nd.—That, when the junction is made to take place, it should be done very slightly, for fear it might savour of affectation and pedantism, or degenerate into harshness, a fault that it is intended to avoid.

3d.—That in conversation the above rules will generally be sufficient for the junction, which in the *florid* style or *set speeches* is more frequent, and in a great measure depends on the ear of the reader or speaker. In poetry, it is almost always observed.

OF THE ACCENT, OR STRESS, &c.

"In the English language, every word, not a monosyllable, has one of its syllables distinguished by being pronounced with a superior degree of energy and force, and this is said to be accented." The accent is generally placed on or near the first syllable of nouns or adjectives; of verbs, nearer the end; but in French, it is always placed on the last syllable. In deliberate discourse it is scarcely felt, but when an *e* follows, or before a pause; so that the very same word, which, when finishing a phrase, is accented on the last syllable, has its syllables accented equally when in the middle. The learner should also remember that the accent, in French, is in all cases much less strongly marked than in English; it does not, as in English, assume a superiority at the expense of the other syllables, nor, in order to give it such superiority, are the other syllables precipitated, or made less distinct.

As the intention of this short treatise is merely to point out what may be useful to an English learner, the writer forbears to follow *l'Abbé d'Olivet* and others, who have treated on French Prosody.

With regard to the long and short vowels, they may generally be distinguished by the different accents, p. 22, without the assistance of written rules; and of French Pronunciation, it may be said, that the characteristic chiefly to be aimed at, is an easy, flowing, continuity of utterance.

Here follows a Praxis on some French words, most of which are spelt nearly alike in both languages, but all accented on the last syllable.

Constitution.	Entendement.	Vraisemblablement.	Charité.
Administration.	Etonnement.	Adversité.	Civilité.
Révolution.	Evénement.	Agilité.	Cordialité.
Composition.	Habilement.	Animosité.	Crédulité.
Opposition.	Mouvement.	Antiquité.	Curiosité.
Démonstration.	Immédiatement.	Aridité.	Dextérité.
Emigration.	Directement.	Avidité.	Dignité.
Nation.	Passablement.	Austérité.	Diversité.
Distinction.	Troisièmement.	Autorité.	Divinité.
Rémunération.	Divisibilité.	Calamité.	Electricité.
Ostentation.	Efficacité.	Capacité.	Incomprehensibilité.
Application.	Egalité.	Captivité.	Incorrigibilité.
Attention.	Elasticité.	Célérité.	Infaillibilité.

The EMPHASIS, which is a stronger stress of the voice than that merely accentual, is placed on the most important word of the sentence. The sense, however, is not in French, as in English, always the only guide, in this particular, but the situation of the word must concur with its importance, in order to render it emphatic; as,

Voilà un excellent *ouvrāge—Here is an excellent work.*

Here, the English lay the accent on *excellent*, and the French on *ouvrage*. Again, if the adjective were placed last in French, the accent would be placed on *excellent*. As:

Voilà un ouvrage *excellēnt.*

Generally speaking, in French, a sentence is so constructed as not to need the assistance of a strong emphasis. By means of *c'est* in the

affirmative, and *est-ce* or *est-ce que* in the interrogative, the emphatical word or words are sufficiently marked. See Appendix to the Grammar, Art. *c'est.*

Instead of using the pronouns, *je, tu, il, nous, vous, ils,* by themselves, we add *moi, toi,* &c. either before or after the verb.

To *me, te, le,* being in the accusative case, we add *moi, toi, lui, &c.* after the verb, or, make use of *c'est;* as,

Vous me voyez moi, or, *c'est moi que vous voyez*—You see me.

To *me, te, lui,* &c. being in the dative case, we add *à moi,* &c. or begin the sentence with *c'est à moi,* &c. as,

You speak *to me.* Vous me parlez *à moi,* or *c'est à moi* que vous parlez.

The demonstrative pronouns *ce, cet, cette, ces*—this, that, &c. being emphatic, take *ci* and *là*—as,

Not *this* man, but *that* man. *Non pas cet homme-ci, mais cet homme-là.*

Instead of *y, en,* we use *là* and *de là,* or *dans,* or *de cet endroit.*

Instead of *mon, ma, mes,* we use *à moi, à toi,* &c.

GENERAL RULES FOR READING FRENCH CORRECTLY.

1st.—Give each vowel its proper sound, according to the directions given, p. 2. and 3.

2nd.—Articulate the consonants clearly, (particularly the *r* and *s*) and observe the rules laid down, p. 13 and 14.

3rd.—The accent should be nearly equal upon every syllable, excepting such as are composed of the *e* mute, or that precede the *e* mute, or that are immediately before a pause. See p. 28.

4th.—Glide over the *e* mute, when in the middle of a word, or before a consonant. See p. 22.

5th.—Observe the rules on the junction of words. See p. 27.

6th.—In reading, if a word should occur, the pronunciation of which is difficult, each syllable should be supposed to be divided, see p. 25; and the sound of each vowel to be given as in p. 2 and 3.

7th.—Avoid dropping the voice at a comma.

Note.—The pupil, when attending closely to the pronunciation, is not always able to understand what he reads, and cannot, therefore, be expected to give the right tone and pauses; but he will be perfectly intelligible, provided he mechanically keeps up his voice at each comma, suspending it still less at a semicolon, and so forth, till he comes to a full stop, at which mark the voice ought to have the falling inflection.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE MANNER OF PRONOUNCING FRENCH VERBS.

In *es*, termination of the 2nd pers. sing. the *s* is not sounded ; nor in *ons*, 1st pers. pl. ; nor the *z* in the 2nd pers. pl.; nor *ent* in the 3rd pers. pl. Therefore, *ons* sound like *on*, and *ez* like *é*.

Ois, ois, oit, oient, are sounded *oé* in the Present of the Indicative, and Subjunctive, as *je reçois, que je reçoive*—Except in *connoître*, and all those conjugated like it. See p. 25.

Ois
Ois
Oit
Oient
} in the Imperfect are sounded *é*, p. 1, 10th sound.

Rai, in the future, are sounded *ré*, 8th sound

Rois, in the conditional, are sounded *ré*, 10th sound.

How to pronounce the auxiliary verbs avoir *and* être.

	avoir	pron.	av‿wāhr.
	ayant		é‿jan.
	eu		u
Indic.	*j'ai*		jé.
	nous avons		noo-zavon.
	vous avez		voo zavé.
	ils ont		il zon
Imperf.	*j'avois*		ja-vê.
Pret.	*j'eus*		ju
Pret. subj.	*que j'eusse*		ke juce.
		Etre.	
Pres.	*je suis*		sŭ‿ī.
	tu es		tu è.
	il est		il è.
Fut.	*je serai*		je s‿rai.
Subj.	*que je sois*		ke je swah.

The Terminations of the Infinitives in French Verbs are pronounced as follows.

Parler, *er like* Par-re-lé.
Agir, *i-re*, Ah-gi-re.

Recevoir, *wah-re*	Ress-vwar.
Faire, *è-re*	Fè-re.
Craindre, *in* } *dre*	Crin‿dre.
Peindre, *in* } *dre*	Pin *nasal* dre.
Joindre, *win* }	Jwin *nasal* dre.
Connoître, *être*, p. 5, Diphthongs.	Con-nè-tre.
Instruire, *ui re*	Ins-trŭī-re.
Vendre, } *an-dre* } p. 3, 16th sound.	Vandre.
Repandre, }	Ré-pan-dre
Repondre, *on-dre* } p. 3, 15th sound.	Ré-pon-dre.

Be careful to pronounce the middle and final *r* in the Infinitive of Verbs, p. 13, except in *Parler*.

The Present Tense of some Verbs.

Tenir—	*Je tiens, &c.* like	tï-ẽns (nasal) p. 5. Diphthongs.
	tenons	tnon.
	tenez	tné.
	tiennent	tienne.
Recevoir—	*Je reçois, &c.*	re-swah, &c. (*the accent on swah.*)
	recevons	res-svõn.
	recevez	res-své.
	reçoivent	re-swah-ve.
Craindre—	*Je crains, &c.*	crin.
	nous craignons	cré-gnons, letter *g*.
	vous craignez	cré-gné
	ils craignent	cré-gne.
S'asseoir—	*Je m'assieds, &c.*	assïé.
S'assoar	*asseyons*	as sé.jõn.
	asseyez	as sé ïé.
	asseyent	as sé ïe.

Cueillir — *Je cueille, &c.* ke-ille . . . . . 3rd sound of *e*.

The Present of the Indicative.

Mettre	*je mets*	mè.
Moudre	*je mouds*	meû.
Mouvoir	*je meus*	meû.
Rompre	*je romps*	ron (nasal.)
Etre & Suivre	*je suis*	sŭ-i.
Vaincre	*je vaincs, &c.*	vin (nasal.)

The Preterite.

Tenir—	*Je tins*	tin *nasal.*
	nous tinmes	tin ,, mes.
	vous tintes	tin ,, tes.
	ils tinrent	tin ,, re.

Craindre—*Craignis, &c.* Cré-gni, &c.

The Future.

Tenir—*Je tiendrai* ti en (nasal) dré.
Craindre—*Je craindrai* crin (do.) dré.

The *rr's*, in the future and conditional tenses of *voir* and *envoyer*, are pronounced as one—as,

Je verrai, vè ré.	*Je verrois*, vè rê.
J'enverrai, envè ré	*J'enverrois*, vè rê.

Present of the Subjunctive.

Tenir—	*Que je tienne, &c.*	tï-enne (not nasal.)
	tenions	tnion.
	teniez	tnié.
	tiennent	tienne (not nasal.)
Craindre—	*Que je craigne,*	cré-gne.

Preterite of the Subjunctive.

Tenir.—*Que je tinsse, &c.* tin (nasal) ce.
Craindre.—*Qe je craignisse, &c.* cré-gni-ce.

jeter	pron	jĕ té	as well as all the tenses, having one *t*.
jetant		jĕ t n	
j‿té		jĕ té	
je jette		je jett.	
appeler		ap-lé.	
j'apelle		j'a‿péle.	

Of the pronunciation of Personal Pronouns when accompanying the Verb.

Je, before a vowel, makes part of the Verb, and both are then sounded like one word, as in *j'agis* pron *jagis*.

.. before a consonant, the *e* mute is glided over, and there is nothing but the *j* heard.

Je, me, &c. *E* mute, p. 24, general rule.

Il and *ils*. In these two words the *l* is sounded, but the *s* in *ils* before a consonant is not sounded, and before a vowel it is articulated like *z*.

Que je	is sounded	*ke-je.*	*Que nous*	is sounded	*knou.*
Que tu		*ktu.*	*Que vous*		*kvou.*
Qu'il		*kil.*			

PRONUNCIATION OF THE NUMERALS.

1st Rule.—All the nouns of number have their last consonant sounded before a vowel by themselves, and when ending a phrase.

Cinq‿amis, j'en ai cinq, pron. *cinque‿amis, cinque.*

2nd.—The last consonant does not sound when followed by a word beginning with another consonant.

Cinq plumes, pron. *Cin plumes.*
Six livres, *Si livres.*

Here follow some of the numbers marked as they should be pronounced when not followed by another word.

Deux	*pron.*	Deú,	Dix-sept	*pron.*	Diss-sett.
Trois		Trŏ‿ăh.	Dix-huit		Dizuitte.
Quatre		Katre.	Dix-neuf		Dizneuffe.
Cinq		Cinke.	Vingt		Vin (nasal)
Six		Siss,	Trente		Trante.
Sept		Sette.	Trent et un		Trantéun.
Huit		Huitte.	Trente deux		Trante deux.
Neuf, 3rd sound		Neuffe.	&c.		

Dix	*pron.*	Disse.	Quarante. *pron.*	Karante.
Onze		On-ze.	Quarante et un	Karanteun.
Douze		Doo-ze.	Cinquante	Cinkante.
Treize		Trè-ze.	Soixante.	Soissante.
Quatorze		Katorze.	Quatre-vingt	Katrevin.
Quinze		Kinze.	Cent	San.
Seize		Sè-ze.		

When before a Vowel.

Un‿enfant, (pron.)	Un-nenfant.
Deux‿amis	Deuz‿amis.
Trois‿hommes	Troizommes.
Six‿hommes	Sizommes.
Sept‿oiseaux	Settoiseau.
Neuf‿oranges	Neuvoranges.
Dix‿œufs	Diz-eû.

Irregularities.

When *vingt* is by itself, pron *vin.*

Vingt et un, vingt deux, vingt trois, &c. are articulated *Vinté‿un, vinte‿deux, vinte‿trois.*

Cent un, like *san un*—the *h* not joined to *un.*

Mille, like *mil (the ll's* are not liquid.)

Premier••prĕmié (with the stress on *é*) *fem.* premi-è-re.

Second, segond••troisième, troizi-ai-me, &c. adding *ième.*

ON THE RIGHT PRONUNCIATION OF SOME PROPER NAMES.

1—Names of nations and persons ending *in ois*—as, François, *French*—Suédois, *Swede*—François, *Francis.* See p. 25.

2—Names of countries, &c. ending in *agne, ogne,* &c. See p. 10.

3—Names ending in *aille.* See letter *l.* p. 10.

4—The *s* is pronounced in proper names which have their last syllable ending in *as, ès, is, os, us,* as in *Gil Blas, Verrès, Tunis, Senlis, Calvados, Fréjus.* See p. 14.

Christian names excepted.

List of proper Names, the pronunciation of which being marked, may, better than rules, serve as a guide in instances of the same nature.

Aaron, *Aaron,* pron.	A-a-ron.
Abraham	A-bra-ham, (the *m* sounded.)
Bourdeaux *or*	Bourdô.
Bordeaux	Bordô.
Beauharnois	Beauharnais.
Bruxelles	Bru-celle.

Des-barreaux	Dè-barró.
Desbouillères	Dê-zouïères.
Hénault	Hénô.
Lainez	Lainé.
Luxembourg	Luk-san-bour.
Maynard	Mé-nar (the *d.* always silent.)
Malherbe	Malairbe.
Malleville	Malvile.
Maillard	Mâ‿iar.
Millot	Milô.
Moïse, *Moses*	Mo-ïze.
Rheims	Rince. (nasal.)
Mayence. p. 15.	
Psyché *pron. the* P	P‿ci‿shé.
Ptolémée *do.*	P‿to-lémé.

Likewise, as to names completely foreign, no rules can be given; for, in proportion as natives are acquainted with foreign languages, so they will more or less be enabled to pronounce them correctly. The following may give the pupil some idea of the transformation which proper names undergo.

Newton	are generally pronounced as if spelt	Neûton.
Windsor		Vinsor
Washington		Vasington.
Wist		Ouiste.
Wiski		Ouiski.

FRENCH WORDS WHICH ARE THE SAME IN SOUND, BUT DIFFERENT IN THEIR ORTHOGRAPHY AND SIGNIFICATION.*

A, *v.*	*has*	arts, *s. m.*	*arts*
à, p.	*at* or *to*	autel, *s. m.*	*altar*
abbaisse, *c.*	*let down*	hôtel, *s. m.*	*large house*
abbesse, *s. f.*	*abbess*	avant, *p.*	*before*
aie (*je*)	*have* (*I may*)	avent, *s. m.*	*advent*
ais, *s. m.*	*board, shelf*	Bal, *s. m.*	*ball*
aîle, *s. f.*	*wing*	balle, *s. f.*	*bullet*
elle, *pr.*	*she*	bas, *s. m.*	*stocking*
après, *p.*	*after*	bât, *s. m.*	*pack-saddle*
aprêt, *s. m.*	*preparation*	baux, *s. m.*	*leases*
ancre, *s. f.*	*anchor*	beaux, *a. pl.*	*fine*
encre, *s. f.*	*ink*	bouillie, *s. f.*	*pap*
arrhes, *s. f.*	*pledge*	bouillis, *a. pl.*	*boiled*

* The grammatical distinction of each word is denoted, in this list by the italic letter which is annexed to it; viz. *ar.* stands for article *s.* for substantive; *a.* for adjective; *m.* for masculine; *f.* for feminine *c.* for common to both genders; *pl.* for plural; *pro.* for pronoun; *v.* for verb; and *p.* for particle.

m.	*cape*	ho ! *p.*	*oh !*
f.	*a riding-hood*	Joue, *s. f.*	*cheek*
	for	joug, *s. m.*	*yoke*
s. m.	*quarter*	Laid, *a.*	*ugl*
f.	*a card*	lait, *s. m.*	*m*
s. f.	*a quart*	les, *ar.*	
a.	*accounted*	legs, *s. m.*	*l*
a.	*sensible*	Mais, *p.*	
o. dem.	*these* or *those*	mes, *pr.*	
o. pos.	*his* or *her*	maux, *s. m.*	
s. f.	*a chain*	mots, *s. m.*	
s. m.	*an oak*	mie, *s. f.*	*bre*
f.	*flesh*	mis (*je*)	*put (I*
	dear	Nez, *s. m.*	*nos*
m.	*shock*	nés, *a. pl.*	*bor*
(*il*)	*offends* (*he*)	nom, *s. m.*	*na*
s. m.	*swan*	non, *p.*	
s. m.	*sign*	On, *pr.*	*t*
s. m.	*heart*	ont (*ils*)	*they h*
s. m.	*choir*	Pain, *s. m.*	*b*
m.	*hunter's horn*	pin, *s. m.*	*a pine-tre*
s. m.	*body*	pan, *s. m.*	*skirt (of a coat)*
p.	*in* or *into*	paon, *s. m.*	*peacock*
s. f.	*teeth*	Raie, *s. f.*	*line*
r.	*of the* or *from the*	rets, *s. m.*	*a net*
m.	*canopy*	rang, *s. m.*	*rank*
e)	*owe* (*I*)	rends (*tu*)	*renderest (thou)*
m.	*finger*	Seau, *s. m.*	*pai*
m.	*echo*	saut, *s. m.*	*a jum*
	share	suie, *s. f.*	*so*
	the face	suis, (*je*)	*am (I*
il)	*let him do*	Tant, *p.*	*so much*
	hunger	tems, *s. m.*	*time*
	he feigns	toue, *s. f.*	*towage*
	liver	toux, *s. f.*	*a cough*
	time	Vain, *a. m.*	*vain*
f.	*grace*	vin, *s. m.*	*wine*
	fat	vice, *s. m.*	*vice*
	high	vis, *s. f.*	*screw*

NCH WORDS, WHICH ARE THE SAME IN UND AND ORTHOGRAPHY; BUT DIFFERENT THEIR SIGNIFICATION.

nest (*of hawks*)	Capre, *m.*	*a privateer*
floor (*of a barn*)	capre, *f.*	*a caper*
elder, a tree	*coche, m.*	*a caravan*
ell, a measure	*coche, f.*	*a sow*
a beard	cornette, *m.*	*an officer of horse*
a Barbary horse	cornette, *f.*	*a head-dre*

avate, *m.*	*a soldier*
avate, *f.*	*a neck-cloth*
ragon, *m.*	*dragoon, a soldier*
agon, *m.*	*a dragon, a serpent*
igne, *m.*	*an officer*
gne, *f.*	*sign of a house*
.	*summer, a season*
	been (auxil. v.)
. *m.*	*an example*
f.	*a copy*
m.	*free from*
apt, *s. m.*	*an officer*
u, *m.*	*fire*
u, *m.*	*deceased, late*
, *m.*	*chief point*
f.	*end of things*
dre, *m.*	*sort of a vessel*
dre, *f.*	*thunder bolt*
gon, *m.*	*a poker*
gon, *m.*	*a waggon*
arde, *m.*	*guard, a soldier*
garde, *f.*	*nurse to a sick person*
greffe, *m.*	*registry*
greffe, *f.*	*a draft*
Livre, *m.*	*a book*
livre, *f.*	*a pound*
Manche, *m.*	*handle*
manche, *f.*	*sleeve*
mémoire, *m.*	*a bill*
mémoire, *f.*	*the memory*
mode, *m.*	*a mood of a verb*
mode, *f.*	*way or fashion*
moule, *m.*	*a mould*
moule, *f.*	*a shell-fish*
mousse, *m.*	*a swabber*
mousse, *f.*	*moss*
Neuf, *a. c.*	*nine*
neuf, *a. m.*	*new*
Office, *m.*	*duty, business*
office, *m.*	*an office*
ombre, *m.*	*ombre, a game*
ombre, *f.*	*shade*
où, *p.*	*where*
ou, *p.*	*or*
Page, *m.*	*a page (at court)*
page, *f.*	*a page (of a*
pair, *m.*	
pair, *m.*	
palme, *m.*	*a hand's*
palme, *f.*	*a branch of*
parallèle, *m.*	*com*
parallèle, *f.*	*a paral*
pendule, *m.*	*a pen*
pendule, *f.*	*a*
période, *m.*	*a space o*
période, *f.*	*period of a dis*
pique, *m.*	*spade a*
pique, *f.*	*pike (a*
pivoine, *m.*	*gnat-*
pivoine, *f.*	*peony*
plane, *m.*	*plane*
plane, *f.*	*plane (*
poêle, *m.*	
poêle, *f.*	*frying*
poste, *m.*	*place, e*
poste, *f.*	*post*
pourpre, *m.*	*spotted*
pourpre, *f.*	*royal d*
Quartier, *m.*	*part of*
quartier, *m.*	*quarters (a*
Réclame, *m.*	*sound t*
réclame, *f.*	*catch-word of*
régale, *m.*	*repast*
régale, *f.*	*a king's*
Satire, *m.*	*a he*
satire, *f.*	*satire o*
somme, *m.*	
somme, *f.*	*a sum*
souris, *m.*	
souris, *f.*	
Temple, *m.*	*place of*
temple, *f.*	*temple of*
tour, *m.*	*turn*
tour, *f.*	*tower*
Vase, *m.*	*vessel*
vase, *f.*	*slime*
voile, *m.*	*veil*
voile, *f.*	*sail*

THE END.

LONDON:
Printed by D. S. Maurice, Fenchurch Street.

Of Numbers ..... pa
Cardinal Numbers .....
Ordinal Numbers .....
Collective Numbers.....
Fractional Numbers.....
Multiplicative Numbers.....
Examples upon the Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers.....
Of Verbs .....
The Moods and Tenses enumerated .....
General Rules for forming the different Tenses.....
Terminations of Tenses .....
A few hints previous to translating the Exercises on the Verbs...
A Table of Regular and Irregular Verbs.....
Auxiliary Verbs .....
Avoir .....
Etre.....
Regular Verbs .....
Parler, (First Conjugation) .....
Observations on verbs of the First Conjugation .....
A list of Verbs of the First Conjugation.....
Tables of *avoir*, *être* and *parler*, conjugated negatively, interroga
tively, &c. .....
Order of words when a *noun* is the Nominative to the Interroga
tion .....
Agir; Second Conjugation .....
A list of Verbs of the Second Conjugation .....
*Sentir, Tenir, Recevoir, Faire, Craindre, Connoître, Instruir
Vendre* .....

CONTENTS.

ARTICLES ..... page 1
Definite Article 1
Indefinite Article 2
Partitive Article ..... ib.
NOUNS 4
Masculine and Feminine Terminations ..... ib.
ADJECTIVES 5
Rules for forming the Feminine of Adjectives ..... ib.
[illegible] for forming the plural of Nouns 7
[illegible]cing of Adjectives ..... ib.
[illegible] Comparison 8
[illegible]ives and their Correlatives 9
PRONOUNS ..... ib.
[illegible]nal Pronouns—*Conjunctive* 10
[illegible]nal Pronouns—*Disjunctive* 11
[illegible]ssive Pronouns—*Conjunctive* ..... ib.
[illegible]ssive Pronouns—*Disjunctive* 12
[illegible]ive Pronouns 13
[illegible]nstrative Pronouns 15
[illegible]erminate Pronouns 16

Reflective Verbs 63
Reflective Verbs Interrogatively and Negatively 64
A list of Reflective Verbs 66
Observations respecting the Auxiliaries and Participles 67
Irregular Verbs ..... 68—94
Defective Verbs 95
Impersonal Verbs 97
Il faut 97
Il y a 98
Il est and *C'est* 100
Of Negations 100
Of Adverbs 101
Formation of Adverbs 101
Placing of Adverbs 102
A list of Adverbs 103
Of Prepositions 104
Of Conjunctions 196
Of Interjections 106
Definition of Cases 108
Definition of the different sorts of Verbs ..... ib.
Definition of the Moods 109
A Vocabulary 110

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

ACCIDENCE.

OF ARTICLES.

In French there are only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

There are three different articles, viz. the *definite*, the *indefinite*, and the *partitive*.

The Definite Article.

Singular.			Plural.	
m.	*f.*		*m.* or *f.*	
le,	la,	l',	les,	*the.*
du,	de la,	de l',	des,	*of the.*
au,	à la,	à l',	aux,	*to the.*

Explanations.

The French for *of* is *de*; therefore, *of the* is *de le* for the singular, and *de les* for the plural. Each being contracted, *de le* become *du*, and *de les* become *des*. The French for *to* is *à*; therefore, *to the* will be *à le* for the singular, and *à les* for the plural. Each being contracted, *à le* become *au*, and *à les* aux.—The *l'* is placed before a word beginning with a *vowel*.

Therefore,	du	*is used instead of*	*de le.*
	des		*de les.*
	au		*à le.*
	aux		*à les.*

EXAMPLES.

1st. A noun *masculine*.

Singular.	
le livre,	*the book.*
du livre,	*of the book.*
au livre,	*to the book.*

2nd. A noun *feminine*.

Singular.	
la table,	*the table.*
de la table,	*of the table.*
à la table,	*to the table.*

Plural.		Plural.	
les livres,	*the books.*	les tables,	*the tables.*
des livres,	*of the books.*	des tables,	*of the tables.*
aux livres,	*to the books.*	aux tables,	*to the tables.*

3rd. A noun beginning with a *vowel.*

Singular.		Singular.	
l' ami,	*the friend.*	l' homme,	*the man.*
de l' ami,	*of the friend.*	de l' homme,	*of the man.*
à l' ami,	*to the friend.*	à l' homme,	*to the man.*
Plural.		Plural.	
les amis,	*the friends.*	les hommes,	*the men.*
des amis,	*of the friends.*	des hommes,	*of the men.*
aux amis,	*to the friends.*	aux hommes,	*to the men.*

4th. A noun beginning with an *h* mute.

A noun preceded by an *h* aspirate is declined like one beginning with a consonant; as, *le hameau,* the hamlet, like *le livre; la hauteur,* the height, like *la table.*

Indefinite Article.

m.	*f.*		
un,	une, *a* or *an*	Un chapeau, *a hat.*	une maison, *a house.*
d'un, d'une,	*of a*	d'un chapeau, *of a hat.*	d'une maison, *of a house.*
à un, à une,	*to a*	à un chapeau, *to a hat.*	à une maison, *to a house.*

Partitive Article.

m.	*f.*	*vowel or* h. *mute.*	*pl.*
du,	de la,	de l',	des, ... *some.*

EXAMPLES.

du pain,	de la viande,	de l' argent,	des moutons,
some bread,	*some meat,*	*some money,*	*some sheep.*

The father, the mother, the brothers, the sisters, the man,
père m. mère f. frères, sœurs, homme,

the friend, the men, the friends, the chair, the sun, the moon,
ami, hommes, amis, chaise, f. soleil, m, lune, f.

of the mind, of the pen, of the desk, of the house, of the table,
esprit, m. plume, f. pupitre, m. maison, f. —— f.

of the desks, of the houses, of the man, of the mind.
pupitres, maisons.

To the lady, to the gentleman, to the ladies, to the gentlemen,
dame, monsieur, dames, messieurs,

to the inkstand, *encrier, m.* to the knife, *couteau, m.* to the scissors, *ciseaux,* to the friends, *amis,* to the forks, *fourchettes, f.*

A man, a woman, a book, a desk, a hat, of a mind, to a bird, *oiseau,* of a man, to a man, of a woman, to a woman.

Some bread, some meat, *viande,* some books, some money, some birds, some oranges.

*Rules for using the Articles.**

The article *le, la, les,* is used before every substantive taken in a *general* or *limited* sense.† Ex.

L'or est précieux,	L'or du Pérou,
Gold is precious.	*The gold of Peru.*

Du, or *de la,* or *des,* is the genitive, and implies *belonging to.*

L' appartement du maître,
The master's apartment.‡

The preposition *de* only is used between two nouns, and then implies *made of, the nature of.* Ex.

Une montre d'or,	Un homme de courage,
A gold watch.	*A courageous man.*

De, or *d'* only, is used instead of *du, de la, des,* before a noun taken in a partitive sense, and preceded by an adjective, whether singular or plural.

De bon pain,	De bonne viande,	De gros moutons.
Some good bread,	*Some good meat,*	*Some large sheep.*

---

* The above four rules have been laid down here merely as hints; exercises upon each of them will be given in the Syntax.

† The article definite (*le, la, les,*) is used before names of *countries,* but not before names of *persons, towns,* or *villages.*

‡ There never is an *s'* as a mark of the possessive case, in French; *du,* &c. is used instead, and the nouns are transposed: as if it were *the apartment of the master.*

OF NOUNS.

Substantive Nouns, in French, must either be of the *masculine* or of the *feminine* gender.

The gender of a substantive is generally known by its *termination* or *ending*.

GENERAL RULE.—Nouns denoting *males* are, of course, *masculine*, and those denoting *females* are *feminine*.

The following terminations indicate the gender.

*Masculine Terminations.**

a Vowel †	*a*, un opéra,	*an opera.*
	é, un pré,	*a meadow.*
	i, un pli,	*a fold.*
	o, un écho,	*an echo.*
	u, un chapeau,	*a hat.*
a Consonant, un habit,		*a coat.*

Feminine Terminations.

ée,	une armée,	*an army.*
x,	la voix,	*the voice.*
eur,	la peur,	*the fear.*
ion,	la nation,	*the nation.*
son, (after a vowel,)	la maison,	*the house.*
té,	la bonté,	*the goodness.*
ance,	une abondance,	*plenty.*
ence,	la prudence,	*prudence.*
double consonant, and *e* mute,	la chandelle,	*the candle.*
a *vowel* followed by an *e* mute,	la vie,	*the life.*

A meadow,	a support,	a counting house,	an office,		of a
pré	*appui*	*comptoir*	*bureau*		
voice,	some soap,	the liberty,	the power,	to the colour,	of a
voix	*savon*	——*té*	*puissance*	*couleur*	
dancer,	to the reason,	the enjoyment,	to the presence,		an
—— *seur*	*raison*	*jouissance*	*présence*		

---

* The above *terminations* or rules are here given as being the most general; further rules, with all their exceptions, will be seen in the Syntax.

† Among the vowels, we have, for the sake of brevity, put the *é*, (accented,) not the *e*, (mute;) for this last letter, on the contrary, generally indicates a *feminine* termination.

army, ——*ée* of the calamity, ——*té* an inkstand, *encrier* to a knife, *couteau* of the wisdom, *sagesse*

the candle, *chandelle* a chimney, *cheminée* a necklace, *collier* to the clemency, *clémence* of a picture, *tableau* some paper, *papier* of the felicity, *félicité* a penknife, *canif* the nation, *nation*

of the constitution, an oration, *oraison* of the digestion, to the crumb. *mie*

OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives, in French, must agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they refer. Ex.

Un grand homme, *a great man.*	de grands hommes, *great men.*
une grande femme, *a great woman.*	de grandes femmes, *great women.*

Rules for forming the Feminine of Adjectives.

GENERAL RULE.—Add an *e* mute to the masculine, to form the feminine. Ex.

m.	*f.*	*m.*	*f.*
grand,	grande,	aimé,	aimée.
great,	*great,*	*loved,*	*loved.*

EXCEPTIONS. *

		m.	*f.*	
e mute—alike		sage,	sage,	*wise.*
eur, }	euse,	chanteur,	chanteuse,	*singer.*
eux, }		heureux,	heureuse,	*happy.*
eau,	elle,	beau,	belle,	*handsome.*
c,	che,	blanc,	blanche,	*white.*
f,	ve,	vif,	vive,	*lively.*

---

* Some change in the Masculine.

Masculine. *before a cons.*	*before a vow.*	*Feminine.*	
beau,	bel,	belle,	*fine,*
nouveau,	nouvel,	nouvelle,	*new.*
fou,	fol,	folle,	*foolish.*
mou,	mol,	molle,	*soft.*
vieux,	vieil,	vieille,	*old.*

In most others the last consonant is doubled.* Ex.

cruel, cruelle; bon, bonne.

N.B. Those Adjectives which are, in French, to be placed *after* the substantive, have the last letter in italic.

The learner is expected to apply the preceding rules, on the *article* and the *gender of substantives*.

A great man, a great woman, a man esteemed, a woman esteemed,
grand *estimé*

a prudent boy, a prudent girl, a deceitful man, a deceitful woman,
sage garçon *sage fille* *trompeur*

a happy country, a happy land, a fine castle, of a fine house,
heureux pays *contrée* *chateau*

to a white wall, of a white colour, a frank man, a frank woman,
blanc mur *couleur* *franc*

of a new gown, of a new coat, a dry *fruit*, some dry powder,
neuf robe, f. *habit* *sec* *poudre*

an attentive (male) scholar, an attentive (female) scholar, a fine coat,
écolier *écolière*

a new friend, a soft pear.
mou poire

---

* The following Adjectives form their feminine irregularly.

Doux,	douce,	*sweet.*	Long,	longue,	*long.*
Faux,	fausse,	*false.*	Mou,	molle,	*soft.*
Fou,	folle,	*mad.*	Malin,	maligne,	*mischievous.*
Frais,	fraiche,	*fresh.*	Roux,	rousse,	*reddish.*
Jumeau,	jumelle,	*twin.*	Traître,	traîtresse,	*traitor.*
Jaloux,	jalouse,	*jealous.*	Vieux,	vieille,	*old.*

The following Nouns, instead of *euse*, take *esse* in the feminine.

enchanteur,	enchanteresse,	*enchanter.*
pécheur,	pécheresse,	*sinner.*
vengeur,	vengeresse,	*avenger.*
&c.	&c.	

The following, instead of *euse*, take *ice* in the feminine.

inspecteur,	inspectrice,	*inspector.*
ambassadeur,	ambassadrice,	*ambassador.*
conducteur,	conductrice,	*conductor.*
&c.	&c.	

Method for forming the Plural of Nouns.

GENERAL RULE.—Form the plural of Nouns by adding an *s* to their singular. Ex.

Un *grand* homme,	de *grands* hommes.
a great man,	*some great men.*

EXCEPTIONS.*

al, ail, au,	aux	cheval,	chevaux,	*horse.*
		travail,	travaux,	*work.*
		chapeau,	chapeaux,	*hat.*
eu,	eux,	cheveu,	cheveux,	*hair.*
s, x, z,	alike,	fils,	fils,	*son.*
		voix,	voix,	*voice.*
		nez,	nez,	*nose.*

I have a small picture, you have some large pictures, a happy man,
j'ai petit tableau, vous avez de grands

a happy woman, two happy men, two happy women, behold a
voilà,

fine *quimal,* three fine animals, that beast is cruel, those beasts
trois cette bête est

are cruel, many hats. one hat, my labour, fatiguing labours,
sont plusieurs chapeau, un mon travail, des fatigans

your son, my sons.
votre fils, mes.

Of the placing of Adjectives.

GENERAL RULE.—Most adjectives are placed *after* the substantive. Ex.

Un écolier *attentif, an attentive scholar.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Bon, *good;* beau, *fine;* brave, *brave;* mauvais, *bad;* grand, *great;* gros, *big;* jeune, *young;* méchant, *wicked;* meilleur, *better;* petit, *little;* vieux, *old;* joli, *pretty.*

A rich man, a useful book, a black colour, a yellow gown,
riche utile noir couleur jaune robe, f.

a blue bonnet, (some) white marble, red cloth, a round table,
bleu chapeau marble rouge drap rond

---

* Attirails, *trains;* détails, *details;* gouvernails, *rudder;* sérails, *seraglio* Words in *ent, ant,* of one syllable, take an *s.* In those of more than one syllable, the *t* is cut off, and an *s* is put instead.

Aïeul, *ancestor;* aïeux, *ancestors;* ciel, *heaven;* cieux, *heavens;* œil, *eye,* yeux, *eyes;* tout, *all;* tous, *all.*

a square garden, *quarré jardin,* a thick book, *épais,* a thin board, *mince planche,* a fine thought, *pensée,*

some good bread, some bad people, *gens, f.* a young man, a pretty bird, *oiseau.*

a depraved *nation.* *dépravée*

Degrees of Comparison.

Positive.	*Comparative.*		*Superlative.*	
The adjective itself,	plus,	*more,*	le* plus,	*the most,*
	moins,	*less,*	le* moins,	*the least.*

The above words, *plus, moins, le plus, le moins,* are affixed to *adjectives, participles,* and *adverbs.*

The English terminations *er* and *est,* equivalent to *more* and *most,* are expressed in the same manner.

Convenient, *commode* more convenient, amiable, *aimable* more amiable, the most amiable, rich, *riche* richer, the richest, *fort* strong, less strong, the least strong, a pretty town, *joli ville, f.* a prettier town, the prettiest town.

EXCEPTIONS.

Adjectives.

bon, *good,*	meilleur,†	*better,*†	le meilleur,	*the best,*	
mauvais, *bad,*	pire, (*or*)‡ / plus mauvais,	*worse.*	le pire, ‡ *or* / le plus mauvais,	*the worst.*	
petit, *little,*	moindre, ‡ / plus petit, ‡	*less,*	le moindre, ‡ (*or*) / le plus petit.	*the least.*	

Adverbs.

bien, *well,*	mieux, *better,*	le mieux,	*the best,*	
mal, *badly,*	pis, (*or*) ‡ / plus mal,	*worse,*	le pis, ‡ / le plus mal,	*the worst.*

---

* *Le* is declinable, and becomes *la* or *les,* according to the gender and number of the noun to which the adjective refers.

† When *better* is used with a substantive, it is to be expressed by *meilleur,* and when with a verb, by *mieux;* the same with the superlative.

‡ *Plus mauvais,* is more in use than *pire.*

le plus mauvais, ... *le pire.*
plus petit, ... *moindre.*
le plus petit, ... *le moindre.*
plus mal, ... *pis.*
le plus mal, ... *le pis.*

A good book, a better book, the best books. some bad pens,
some worse pens, the worst pens, a little horse, a horse less
plus mauvais, *cheval,* *plus,*
in size, the least fault, you sing well, he sings better,
petit, *chantez* *chante*
they sing the best, you speak badly, he speaks worse, they
chantent *parlez* *parle*
speak the worst.
parlent.

Comparatives and their Correlatives.

Plus .... que.	Il est *plus* savant *que* moi.
More .... than.	*He is more learned than I.*
Moins .. que.	Il est *moins* riche *que* vous.
Less .... than.	*He is less rich than you.*
Aussi.... que.	Nous sommes *aussi* braves *que* vous.
As ..... as.	*We are as brave as you.*
Si ..... que.	Il n'est pas *si* adroit *que* vous.
So ..... as.	*He is not so clever as you.*
Autant .. que.	Nous avons *autant* d'argent *que* vous.
As much.. as.	*We have as much money as you.*
Autant .. que.	Ils ont *autant* d'amis *que* vous.
As many . as.	*They have as many friends as you.*
Tant .... que.	Il n' a pas *tant* d'argent *que* vous.
So much ..as.	*He has not so much money as you.*
Tant .... que.	Ils n' ont pas *tant* d'amis que vous.
So many . as.	*They have not so many friends as you.*

He is *more* learned *than* I. She is *less* rich *than* you. He is *as*
Il est *savant* *moi.* *Elle est* *riche* *vous.*
brave as you. She is not *so* clever *as* you. They have *as* much money
Elle n'est pas habile. *Ils* *ont* *autant d'*
as you. They have *as many* friends *as* you. He has not *so much*
amis *n'a pas* *tant d'*
money *as* you. He has not *so many* friends *as* you.

OF PRONOUNS.

There are five sorts of Pronouns, called *personal, possessive, relative, demonstrative,* and *indeterminate.*

Personal Pronouns.

These Pronouns are of two kinds, the *conjunctive* and *disjunctive.*

Personal Pronouns—*Conjunctive.*

They always go *before* the verb.

NOMINATIVE.	DATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.
Je, *I*,	me, *to me*,	me, *me*.
tu, *thou*,	te, *to thee*,	te, *thee*,
il, (*m.*) *he* (or) *it*,	lui, *to him, to it*,	le, *him, it*.
elle, (*f.*) *she* (or) it,	lui, *to her*,	la, *her, it*.
nous, *we*,	nous, *to us*,	nous, *us*.
vous, *you*,	vous, *to you*,	vous, *you*.
ils, (*m.*) *they*,	leur, *to them*,	les, *them*.
elles, (*f.*) *they*,	leur, *to them*,	les, *them*.

se. { dat. & acc. sing. & pl. mas. & f. } *himself, herself, itself, themselves. to himself, to herself, to themselves.* } is used with reflective verbs.

y, (dat.) *to it, to them, there, &c.* when *à* is implied.
en, (gen.) *of it, of them, some of it, &c.* when *de* is implied.

Examples.

Nom. *Je* parle, *tu* écris, *il* étudie, *nous* sommes,
I speak, thou writest, he studies, we are,

vous agissez, *ils* sentent, *elles* cousent,
you act, they feel, they sew.

Dat. Je *lui* parle, je *lui* parle, il *me* donne,
I speak to him, I speak to her, he gives to me

ils *nous* prêtent de l'argent, je *leur* montre le chemin,
they lend us some money, I shew (to) them the way.

as if it were—*I to him speak, I to her speak, &c.*

Acc. Je *le* vois, nous *la* voyons, vous *les* respectez,
I see him, we see her, you respect them.

as if it were—*I him see, we her see, &c.*

vous *y* êtes sujet, nous *en* parlons.
you are subject to it, we speak of it.

Nominative.

I speak, *thou* eatest, *he* drinks, *she* studies, *we* write
parle manges boit étudie écrivons

you see, *they* sleep, *they* sleep.
voyez m. dorment f. dorment

Dative.

You speak *to me*, he gives to thee, thou writest *to him*
parlez donne écris

thou writest *to her*, he lends *to us*, we pay *to you*, she yields *to them*
prête payons cède

ACCUSATIVE.

He sees *me*, *voit*,	I beat *thee*, *bats*,	she strikes *him*, *frappe*,	he strikes *her*,
we eat *it*, *mangeons, m.*	you eat *it*, *mangez, f.*	he pities *us*, *plaint*,	he pinches *you*, *pince*,
you carry *them*, *portez, m.*	you carry *them*. *f.*		
You are inclined to it, *êtes enclin y*	we speak of it, *parlons en*	you will have some of it, *aurez*	
they will contribute to it. *contribueront*			

PERSONAL PRONOUNS—*Disjunctive.*

They are placed *after* the verb.

NOM. and	Moi, *I*,	toi, *thou*,	lui, *he*,	elle, *she*,	soi, *oneself*,	nous, *we*,	vous, *you*,	eux, *they*,	elles, *they*,	soi, *oneself.*
ACC.	*me*,	*thee*,	*him*,	*her*,		*us*,	*you*,	*them*,	*them.*	

These pronouns are used after a preposition; such as *de, à, pour*, &c. as—*de moi*, of me; *à toi*, to thee; *pour lui*, for him.

Méme is added to the above pronouns.

Sing.	moi-même,* *myself*,	toi-même, *thyself*,	lui-même, *himself*,	elle-même, *herself*,	soi-même, *oneself.*
Plu.	nous-mêmes, *ourselves*,	vous-mêmes, *yourselves*,	eux-mêmes, *themselves*,	elles-mêmes, *themselves*,	soi-même, *oneself.*

He speaks *of me*, *parle*	far from *thee*, *loin de*	I aim *at him*, *vise*	directed *to her*, *adressé*
come with *us*, *venez avec*	he goes with *you*, *va*	he is without *them*, *est sans*	without *them*, *m.*
I have done it myself, *je l'ai fait.*	go there yourself. *allez-y.*		

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS—*Conjunctive.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.* and *fem.*	
mon,	ma,	mes,	*my.*
ton,	ta,	tes,	*thy.*
son,	sa,	ses,	*his, her, its.*
notre,	notre,	nos,	*our.*
votre,	votre,	vos,	*your.*
leur,	leur,	leurs,	*their.*

* With reflective verbs we only use *me, te, se, nous, vous, se.*

Mon, ton, son, are used before a *vowel* or an *h* mute, instead of *ma, ta, sa,* for the sake of sound; therefore say—*mon âme,* my soul; *ton épouse,* thy wife; *son honnêteté,* his honesty; and not *sa âme, ta épouse,* &c.

Mon, ton, son, must agree, in gender and number, with the noun to which they refer. Ex. *son mari,* her husband; *sa femme,* his wife.

One's is expressed by *son, sa, ses.*

My husband, *mari,* my wife, *femme,* my relations, *parens,* thy husband, thy wife, thy friends. *amis.*

His wife, her husband, his (or) her relations; our book, *livre.* our books; your desk, *pupitre,* your desks; their house, their houses, his house, his family, *famille,* her father, her brother, his soul, *âme,* his friendship for me, *amitié pour moi,* her authority. *autorité.*

Possessive Pronouns—*Disjunctive.*

Singular.		Plural.		
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*	
le mien,	la mienne.	les miens,	les miennes,	*mine.*
le tien,	la tienne.	les tiens,	les tiennes,	*thine.*
le sien,	la sienne.	les siens,	les siennes,	*his, hers, its.*
le nôtre,	la nôtre.	les nôtres,	les nôtres,	*ours.*
le vôtre,	la vôtre.	les vôtres,	les vôtres,	*yours.*
le leur,	la leur.	les leurs,	les leurs,	*theirs.*

These pronouns must also agree with the noun to which they refer.

The article *le, la, les,* which precedes these pronouns, when accompanied with *à* and *de,* becomes *au, à la, aux,* and *du, de la, des.*

Therefore we say: *du mien, de la mienne, des miens, des miennes, au mien, à la mienne, aux miens, aux miennes,* &c.

Your hat and *mine,* *chapeau* his house and mine, your hats and mine, his houses and mine, my horse and thine, *cheval* my carriage and thine, *voiture* my horses and his, my carriages and his, your clothes and ours, *habits*

our stockings and yours, my shoes and theirs, your country and theirs
bas *souliers* *patrie*

of your country and of theirs, to my table and to his, of our

property and of theirs, I speak of their garden and yours, I speak
bien *Je parle* *jardin* *du* *je parle*

both to your children and to ours.
* *enfans* *et*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

QUI? *who?*

When affirmatively.		*When interrogatively.*	
qui, (*nom.*)	*who, which,*	qui? (*nom.*)	*who?*
que, (*acc.*)	*whom, which,*	qui? (*acc.*)	*whom?*
dont,	*of whom, of which, who,*	à qui?	*to whom?*
à qui,	*to whom,*	de qui?	*of, or from whom*

QUEL? *what?* is always used interrogatively.

m. s.	*f. s.*	*m. pl.*	*f. pl.*
quel?	quelle?	quels?	quelles?....*what?*
de quel?	de quelle?	de quels?	de quelles?..*of what?*
à quel?	à quelle?	à quels?	à quelles?..*to what?*

LEQUEL? *which?* is used both affirmatively and interrogatively.

lequel,	laquelle,	lesquels,	lesquelles, *which.*
duquel,	de laquelle,	desquels,	desquelles, *of which.*
auquel,	à laquelle,	auxquels,	auxquelles, *to which.*

QUOI, *what*—is used both affirmatively and interrogatively.

quoi,	*what.*
de quoi,	*of what.*
à quoi,	*to what.*

QUE? *what?* is always used interrogatively.

Où,	*in which, where,*
d'où,	*whence,*

is used both affirmatively and interrogatively.

QUI, &c.

The man *who* walks, the woman *who* reads, the gentlemen *who*
marche. *lit.*
are good, the ladies *who* are good. the boy *of whom* I speak,
sont *dame* *garçon* *je parle*
the girl *of whom* I speak, the house *of which* I speak, the child *to*
enfant
whom I have given a plaything, the man *whom* I see, the horse
j'ai donné *jouet* *vois* *cheval*
which I have bought.
acheté.

QUI ?—interrogatively.

Who is there? *Of whom* do you[2] speak?[1] *to whom* do you[2] write?[1]
est là? * *parlez?* * *ecrivez.*
whom do you[2] see?[1]
* *vous voyez.*

QUEL.

What man? *what* lady? *what* profession? *what* books?
livres.
what knives, *of what* chairs, *to what* ideas, *in what* houses do
couteaux. *chaises,* *idées,* *maisons*, * *f.*
you[2] live?[1] upon which subject?
demeurez. *sur* *sujet?*

QUOI.

Of *what* do you[2] speak?[1] with what do you[2] cut[1] your bread?
* *parlez* * *coupez*
in what have you put my book?
dans *avez-vous mis* *livre*

QUE.

What do you[2] say?[1] *what* are you doing?
* *dites* *faites-vous*

OÙ.

you know where I go, you know where I come from.
savez *vais.* *d'où* *viens*

LEQUEL—affirmatively.

The knife *with which* I cut my meat, the table *upon which* you
coupe *viande, f.*
have laid your apple, the kite *to which* you fasten a string.
avez mis *pomme* *cerf-volant* *attachez ficelle*

LEQUEL, interrogatively.

Which of the two? *to which* do you[2] give[1] the preference? of all
deux * *donnez* *préférence* *à toutes*

these houses, *in which* shall you live?
ces *dans* *demeurerez-vous*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

CE, this, that.

(from which are formed the following:)

*m s.** *m. vow.** *f. s.*

ce, cet, cette,.....*this, that,* } always come before
ces, *m. & f. pl.*.....*these, those,* } a NOUN.

m. s. *f. s.*
celui, celle, *this, that,* } are always used with either of the following words—*ci*, *là*,† *de*,† *qui*,† *que*, &c. and
ceux, celles, *these, those,* } stand for a person or an object NAMED before.

ceci, *this,* }
cela, *that,* } relating to a *thing* NOT NAMED.

This man, that woman, this bird, that table, not this
pas

man, but that, not this pen, but that.
homme-ci, mais celui-là *plume-ci* *mais celle-là*

MR.[2] B.'s[3] house[1] and *that of* MR. C. these pencils and those, *he*
crayons-ci *celui*

who speaks, *he whom* I see, give me *this*, pick up *that*, I
qui parle *celui que je vois* *donnez-moi* *ramassez*

shall have this, I shall have that.
j'aurai

* *Ce* is placed before a noun, in the singular, beginning with a *consonant*, or an *h* aspirate.

Cet is placed before a noun, in the singular, beginning with a *vowel* or an *h* mute.

Cette is placed for a noun, fem. singular.

† *Ci* and *là* are used with demonstrative pronouns, to point out more particularly the distance of the objects They are also joined to substantives, for the same purpose; as—*cet homme-ci*, this man; *cet homme-là*, that man. *De*, *qui*, *que*, are also added to *celui*, &c. as *celui de*, this, or that of; *celui qui*, he who; *celui que*, he whom, &c. See Syntax of Pronouns.

OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

On,	*one, some one, people, they.*
le / la / les } même,	*the same.*
plusieurs,	*several.*
autres,	*others.*
chacun,	*each one, every one.*
quelqu'un,	*somebody.*
tout,	*every thing.*
tout cequi, / tout ceque,	*whatever.*
quiconque,	*whoever.*
quelconque.	*whatever.*
l'un l'autre,	*one another.*
l'un et l'autre,	*both.*
l'un ou l'autre,	*either.*
ni l'un ni l'autre,	*neither.*
aucun,	*none, not any.*
personne,	*nobody.*
rien,	*nothing.*

One likes to be well treated. *somebody* (or) *some one* knocks at the door; people say[2] so,[1] but they do not think of what they say.
aime à être bien traité, *on* *frappe à porte, f.* *on dit le, mais on ne pense pas à ce qu' on dit.*

The same person, several men, the other houses, each one
—— *ne, f.*

thinks for himself, somebody is asking for you, whatever is good,
pense à soi *vous demande* *qui est,*

whatever you say, whoever does that, they love one another,
que dites *fait cela* *ils s'aiment*

both are bad, take *either*, take *neither*, he has *not any* relation, there is *nobody* in the house, he gives *nothing*.
sont mauvais prenez *ne prenez* *Il n'a parent.* *il n'y a* *dans maison* *il ne donne*

OF NUMBERS.

Of Cardinal Numbers.

Un (*femin.* une),	1.	Cinq (q is *sounded*),	5.
Deux (x *dropped*),	2.	Six (*pron.* siss),	6.
Trois (s *dropped*),	3.	Sept (*pron.* sett),	7.
Quatre (*katre*),	4.	Huit (t *is sounded*),	8.

Neuf (*f is sounded*),	9.
Dix (*pron.* diss),	10.
Onze,	11.
Douze (*dooze*),	12.
Treize, (*traise*),	13.
Quatorze, (*katorze*),	14.
Quinze (*kinze*),	15.
Seize (*sei* is broad),	16.
Dix-sept (*pron.* diss-sett),	17.
Dix-huit (*pron.* diz-uitt),	18.
Dix-neuf (*pron.* diz-neuff),	19.
Vingt (*gt* are dropped),	20.
Vingt & un,	21.
Vingt-deux,	22.
Vingt-trois,	23.
Vingt-quatre,	24.
Vingt-cinq,	25.
Vingt-six,	26.
Vingt-sept,	27.
Vingt-huit,	28.
Vingt-neuf,	29.
Trente,	30.
Trente & un,	31.
Trente-deux, &c.	32, &c.
Quarante, (*pron.* Karante),	40.
Cinquante (*pron.* Cinkante),	50.
Soixante (*pron.* soissante),	60.
Soixante & un,	61.
Soixante & deux, &c.	62, &c.
Soixante & dix,	70.
Soixante & onze,	71.
Soixante & douze, &c.	72, &c.
Quatre-vingts, (*gts* are dropped, and *gt* in the following also),	80.
Quatre-vingt-un,	81.
Quatre-vingt-deux, &c.	82, &c.
Quatre-vingt-dix,	90.
Quatre-vingt-onze, &c.	91, &c.

x dropped, but *t* is sounded.

Cent, (t *in* cent *is dropt, and in the following also*),	100
Cent-un, &c.	101.
Cent-vingt,	120.
Cent-vingt & un, &c.	121, &c.
Cent-trente, &c.	130, &c.
Deux cents, (*x* is dropped, and the final consonants in the following also, as well as before any other word beginning with a consonant),	200.
Trois cents,	300.
Quatre cents,	400.
Cinq cents,	500.
Six cents,	600.
Sept cents,	700.
Huit cents,	800.
Neuf cents,	900.
Mille,	1000.
Deux Mille,	2000.
Trois Mille,	3000.
Quatre Mille,	4000.
Cinq Mille,	5000.
Six Mille,	6000.
Sept Mille,	7000.
Huit Mille,	8000.
Neuf Mille,	9000.
Dix Mille,	10,000.
Vingt Mille,	20,000.
Trente Mille,	30,000.
Quarante Mille,	40,000.
Cinquante Mille,	50,000.
Cent Mille,	100,000.
Deux Cent Mille,	200,000.
Cinq Cent Mille,	500,000.
un Million,	1,000,000.

Ordinal numbers denote the order and rank of things: such are,

le Premier,	1r.	1*st*.
le Second, (*gond*, le Deuxième, *zième*),	2e.	2*d*.
le Troisième,	3e.	3*d*.
le Quatrième,	4e.	4*th*.
le Cinquième,	5e.	5*th*.
le Sixième,	6e.	6*th*.
le Septième,	7e.	7*th*.
le Huitième,	8e.	8*th*.
le Neuvième,	9e.	9*th*.
le Dixième,	10e.	10*th*.
le Onzième,	11e.	11*th*.
le Douzième,	12e.	12*th*.
le Treizième,	13e.	13*th*.
le Quatorzième,	14e.	14*th*.
le Quinzième,	15e.	15*th*.

le Seizième,	16e.	16*th.*
le Dix-septième,	17e.	17*th.*
le Dix-huitième,	18e.	18*th.*
le Dix-neuvième,	19e.	19*th.*
le Vingtième,	20e.	20*th.*
le Vingt & unième,	21e.	21*st.*
le Vingt-deuxième,	22e.	22*d.*
le Trentième,	30e.	30*th.*
le Quarantième,	40e.	40*th.*
le Cinquantième,	50e.	50*th.*
le Soixantième,	60e.	60*th.*
le Soixanté & dix-ième,	70e.	70*th.*
le Quatre-vingtième,	80e.	80*th.*
le Quatre-vingt-dixième,	90e.	90*th.*
le Centième,	100e.	100*th.*
le Cent-cinquantième,	150e.	150*th.*
le Deux-centième,	200e.	200*th.*
le Millième,	1000e.	1000*th.*

Collective Numbers.

Un quatrain—*a stanza of 4 verses.*		Une quarantaine,	40.
Un sixain—*(sizin) ditto of 6 verses.*		Une cinquantaine,	50.
Une douzaine—(de) *a dozen.*		Une soixtaine,	60.
Une quinzaine (de)	15.	Une centaine,	100.
Une vingtaine (de)	20.	Un millier,	1000.
Une trentaine,	30	des milliers—*thousands.*	

Fractional Numbers.

La moitié—*the half.*	les deux tiers—*two thirds.*
le tiers—*the third part.*	les trois quarts—*three-fourths.*
le quart—*the fourth.*	le cinquième, &c.—*one-fifth, &c.*

Multiplicative Numbers.

Le double, *the double;*—le triple, *the treble;* le quadruple, le quintuple, le centuple, &c.

Examples upon the Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers.

The following Numbers to be read out loud to the Master.

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10,—&c., 15, 18, 11, 13, 14, 19, 17, 20, 25, 35, 37, 28, 40, 47, 48, 49, 50, 60, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 200, 356, 496, 501, 777, 1001, 2095, 3999, 1823, 60,955, 169,795, 1,909,767.

1,er 2,d 3,ième 4,ième 5,ième 6,ième 7,ième 8,ième 9,ième 10,ième 11,ième &c.

OF VERBS.

A verb denotes the act of *being*, or an action *done* or *received*.

Hence three distinct sorts of verbs, namely:

1. *Active*, 2. *Passive*, 3. *Neuter*.*

The above are again subdivided into six classes, which are

1. *Auxiliary*, 2. *Regular*, 3. *Reflective*, 4. *Irregular*, 5. *Impersonal*, 6. *Defective*.

The time in which an action is done may be divided into three principal periods, viz.

The Past.		The Present.		The Future.	
was did has done	yesterday	is does doing	to-day	will be or will do shall be or shall do	to-morrow

A verb is divided into four moods: the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*. Each mood contains one or more tenses.

Moods.	Tenses.†
The INFINITIVE contains three tenses,	the *present*. the *gerund*. the *participle past*.
The INDICATIVE contains five tenses,	the *present*. the *imperfect*. the *preterite*. the *future*. the *conditional*.
The SUBJUNCTIVE contains two tenses,	the *present*. the *preterite*.
The IMPERATIVE contains one tense,	the *present*.

Each of the above tenses (the *imperative* excepted) is compounded with *avoir* or *être*.

Each tense is, as in English, divided into three persons, the first, the second, and the third; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The first person is the one that speaks; as *I speak*, je parle; *we speak*, nous parlons.

---

* Each of the above will be defined farther on.

† As some tenses, in French, differ in their uses from their corresponding ones, in English, we shall endeavour, in the *Syntax*, to point out the difference.

The second person is the one spoken *to ;* as *thou speakest,* tu parles ; *you speak,* vous parlez.

The third person is the one spoken *of ;* as *he, she,* or *it acts,* il or elle agit.

We reckon ten* conjugations of REGULAR VERBS (See table-page, annexed.)

General Rules for forming the different Tenses.

Present of the Indicative—The three persons plural are formed on the gerund, by changing the *ant* to *ons, ez, ent.*

Imperfect—is also formed upon the gerund, by changing the *ant* to *ois, ois, oit ; ions, iez, oient.*†

Present of the Subjunctive is likewise formed upon the gerund, by changing the last syllable *ant* to *e, es, e ; ions, iez, ent.*

The fourth and fifth conjugations are made from the Infinitive, the fourth changing *enir,* to *ienne, iennes, ienne ; enions, eniez, iennent.* Fifth, *evoir* to *oive, oives, oive ; evions, eviez, oivent.*

Future of the Indicative is formed from the Infinitive, by adding *ai, as, a ; ons, ez, ont :* but if the infinitive end with an *e* mute, the *e* is left out, as *craindre,* which makes *craindrai.*

The verbs of the fourth conjugation change *enir* to *iendrai, iendras,* &c. those of the fifth changing *oir* to *rai, ras,* &c.

Conditional is formed upon the same principle as the future, by putting, as a final, instead of *ai, as, a,* &c. *ois, ois, oit ; ions, iez, oient.*†

Preterite of the Subjunctive is formed upon the preterite of the Indicative, by changing the *ai,* (of the first person) of the first conjugation, to *asse,* and by adding *se* to all the others, for the first person, and following the rules laid down in the table page, 21.

---

* Most grammarians reckon *four* regular conjugations only ; ending, the first in *er,* the second in *ir,* the third in *oir,* and the fourth in *re.* But, for the sake of classification, and, therefore, facilitating the fixing them in the memory, we have reckoned *ten* conjugations.

† According to Voltaire's spelling, (which, though not followed by the academy, is very much in use,) the *Imperfect* ends in *ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient;* and the *Conditional* in *rais, rais, rait, rions, riez, raient.*

Imperative.—The first and second persons, singular and plural, like the Present of the Indicative; and the third person, singular and plural, like the Subjunctive.

Terminations of Tenses.

Indicative Present *	e	s	e	ons	ez	ent
	s	s	t			
	x	x	t			
	cs	cs	c			
	ds	ds	d			
	ts	ts	t			
Imperfect	ois	ois	oit	ions	iez	oient
Preterite	ai	as	a	âmes	âtes	èrent
	is	is	it	îmes	îtes	irent
	ins	ins	int	înmes	întes	inrent
	us	us	ut	ûmes	ûtes	urent
Future	rai	ras	ra	rons	rez	ront
Conditional	rois	rois	roit	rions	riez	roient
Subjunctive Present †	e	es	e	ions	iez	ent
Preterite	asse	asses	ât	assions	assiez	assent
	isse	isse	ît	issions	issiez	issent
	insse	insses	înt	inssions	inssiez	inssent
	usse	usse	ût	ussions	ussiez	ussent

Imperative is formed ‡ from the present of the *indicative* and *subjunctive.*

2nd person sing. same as 1st. person sing. present indic.
1st and 2nd plu. 1st. 2nd. plu. ditto.
3rd sing. and pl. as 3rd. person sing. and pl. sub.

EXCEPTIONS.

* 1. Aller *which makes ind. present,* vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont.
2. Avoir .. .. .. ai, as a, avons, avez, ont.
3. Etre .. .. .. suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont.
4. Dire .. .. dites.
5. Redire .. .. redites.
6. Faire .. .. faites, font.

† 1. Avoir .. .. *subj. pres.* aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient.
2. Etre .. .. .. sois, sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient.

‡ 1. Avoir .. .. *imperative* aie, ait, ayons, ayez, aient.
2. Etre .. .. sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient.
3. Savoir .. .. .. sache, sache, sachons, &c.

A few Hints previous to translating the Exercises on the Verbs.

When the learner arrives at the exercises on the verbs, he must expect rather less assistance. We, therefore, think it useful again to place before his eyes the following indispensable rules, which any one, writing French, should always bear in mind.

I. Previous to writing down a sentence, from English into French, let him examine the former attentively, particularly noticing those parts of speech which, in the latter, are *declinable*, (such as *articles, adjectives*, and *pronouns*;) he is then to make them agree, in *gender* and *number*, with the substantive to which they may refer.

II. Let *adjectives*, (except those mentioned p. 7,) be placed *after* the substantive.

III. Let the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en*, be placed *before* the verb, and even before the auxiliary, if the tense be compound.

IV. Let the *verb*, in French, exactly correspond with the English one, the line above, with respect to *tense, person*, and *number*.

V. Let *adverbs*, in French, always go *after* the verb.

Here follows a list of *letters* or *marks*, which are, all through this work, to represent the different tenses of the French verbs, the names of which are here placed opposite to each, and to which the learner may, hereafter, have to refer.

A means the Infinitive Present.	c D ..... Compound of Indic.
B ..... Gerund.	c E ..... Imp.
C ..... Participle past.	c F ..... Pret.
c A ..... Compound of the Inf.	c G ..... Fut.
c B ..... do. Gerund.	c H ..... Cond.
D ..... Indicative Pres.	I ..... Subjunctive Pres.
E ..... Imperfect.	K ..... Pret. of Subj.
F ..... Preterite.	c I ..... Compound of Subj.
G ..... Future.	c K ..... Pret.
H ..... Conditional.	L ..... Imperative.

he Simple Tenses of the French Regular Verbs.

Future.			Conditional.			Subjunctive Present.			Preterite Tens
-e-rai,	ras,	ra.	-e-rois,	rois,	roit.	-e,	es,	e.	-i-sse,	-sses,	-t
-e-rons,	rez,	ront.	-rions,	riez,	roient.	ions,	iez,	ent.	i-ssions,	-ssiez,	-sse
-i-rai,	ras,	ra.	-i-rois,	rois,	roit.	-isse,	es,	e.	-i-sse,	-sses,	-it.
-i-rons,	rez,	ront.	-i-rions,	riez,	roient.	iss-ions,	iez,	ent.	i-ssions,	-ssiez,	-sse
-i-rai,	ras,	ra.	-i-rois,	rois,	roit.	-e,	es,	e.	-i-sse,	-sses,	it.
-i-rons,	rez,	ront.	-i-rions,	riez,	roient.	ions,	iez,	ent.	i-ssions,	-ssiez,	-sse
-iend-rai,	ras,	ra.	-iend-rois,	rois,	roit.	-ienne,	es,	e.	-in-sse,	-sses,	-nt.
-iend-rons,	rez,	ront.	-ind-rions,	riez,	roient.	en-ions,	iez,	ienment.	in-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssen
-ev-rai,	ras,	ra.	-ev-rois,	rois,	roit.	-oive,	es,	e.	-u-sse,	-sses,	ût.
-ev-rons,	rez,	ront.	-ev-rions,	riez,	roient.	-ev-ions,	iez,	oivent.	u-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent
-fe-rai,	ras,	ra.	-fe-rois,	rois,	roit.	-fasse,	es,	e.	-i-sse,	-sses,	it.
-feron-,	rez,	ront.	-e-rions,	riez,	roient.	-as-ions,	iez,	ent.	-i-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent
-ind-rai,	ras,	ra.	-ind-rois,	rois,	roit.	-ign-e,	es,	e.	-ign-i-sse,	-sses,	it.
-ind-rons,	rez,	ront.	-ind-rions,	riez,	roient.	-ign-ions,	iez,	ent.	-ign-i-ssions,	-ssiez,	-sse
-olt-rai,	ras,	ra.	-olt-rois,	rois,	roit.	-olas-e,	es,	e.	-u-sse,	-sses,	ût.
-olt-rons,	rez,	ront.	-olt-rions,	riez,	roient.	-olas-ions,	iez,	ent.	u-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent
-ui-rai,	ras,	ra.	-ui-rois,	rois,	roit.	-uit-e,	es,	e.	-uisi-sse,	-sses,	it.
-ui-rons,	rez,	ront.	-ui-rions,	riez,	roient.	uis-ions,	iez,	ent.	uisi-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent
-d-rai,	ras,	ra.	-d-rois,	rois,	roit.	-d-e,	es,	e.	-i-sse,	-sses,	it.
-d-rons,	rez,	ront.	-d-rions,	riez,	roient.	d-ions,	iez,	ent.	i-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent

bs.

, *to be*, étant—été | suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont—étois—fus—serai—*reg.* | sois—*reg.* | sois.

bs.

:-re, *to put*, ant—mis | mets, s, t, mettons, ez, ent—*reg.*—mis—rai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | mets, &c.

-dre, *to grind*, lant—lu | ds, ds, d, lons, ez, ent—lois—lus—drai—*reg.* | le—*reg.* | mouds, qu'il moule, &c.

r-ir, *to die*, rant—mort | meurs, s, t, mourons, ez, meurent—*reg.*—us,—rai—*reg.* | meure, es, e, mourions, iez, meurent—*reg.* | meurs, qu'il meure, &c.

tre, *to be born*, naissant—né | nais—issois—naquis—naîtrai—*reg.* | naisse—*reg.* | nais, &c.

re, *to graze*, paissant | s—ssois—trai—*reg.* | sse | pais, &c.

-oir, *to be able*, ant—pu | puis, peux, peut, pouvons, ez, peuvent—*reg.*—pus—pourrai—*reg.* | puisse—*reg.*

ndre, *to take*, enant,—pris | prends, ds, d, prenons, ez, prennent | enois—is—endrai—*reg.* | prenne—*reg.* | prends, &c.

r, *to laugh*, ant—ri | s, s, t, ons, ez, ent—*reg.*—ris—rai—*reg.* | e, es, e, ions, ez, ent—*reg.* | ris, &c.

mpre, *to break*, ant—u | s—*reg.*—is—rai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | romps, &c.

oir, *to know*, sachant—su | sais, s, t, savons, ez, ent—*reg.*—sus—saurai—saurois | sache—*reg.* | sache, &c.

-ire, *to suffice*, isant—i | is—isois—is—irai—*reg.* | ise—*reg.*

-re, *to follow*, ant—i | suis, suis, suit, suivons, ez, ent—*reg.*—is—rai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | suis, &c.

ic-re, *to conquer*, vainquant—cu | vaincs, cs, e, vainquons, ez, ent—*reg.*—vainquis—rai—*reg.* | vainque—*reg.* | vaincs.

oir, *to be worth*, ant—u | vaux, x, t, valons, ez, ent—*reg.*—us—vaudrai—*reg.* | vaille.

ir, *to cloth-*, ant—u | vets—*reg.*—is—irai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | vet , &c.

re, *to live*, ant—vécu | vis, is, it, vivons, ez, ent | *reg.*—vécus—rai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | vis, &c.

r, *to see*, oyant—u | ois—oyois—is—erai—*reg.* | oie, e, e, oyions, ez, ent—*reg.* | vois, &c.

l-oir, *to be willing*, ant—u | veux, x, t, voulons, ez, veulent—ois—us—voudrai—*reg.* | veuille, veuille, veuille, voullons, iez, veuillent.—*reg.*

---

irregular are laid down at full length, or merely have the first persons, singular and plural, with the table above. This mark (|) separates the moods. This mark (—) separates the tenses. The

[*To be inserted between pp. 22 and 23.*]

A Table of the Ten Conjugations, and Termination

Conjugation.	Infinitive Mood.	Gerund.	Participle.	Present Tense.			Imperfect.			Preter
To speak,	PARL—er.	-ant.	-é	-e,	-es,	-e.	-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-ai,
				-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-âmes,
To act,	AG—ir.	-issant.	-i	-is,	-is,	-it.	-iss-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-is,
				-iss-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-iss-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-îmes,
To smell,	SENT—ir.	-ant.	-i	-s,	-s,	-t.	-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-is,
				-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-îmes,
To hold,	T—enir.	-enant.	-enu	-iens,	-iens,	-ient.	-en-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-ins,
				-en-ons,	-ez,	-tiennent.	-en-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-înmes,
To receive,	REC—evoir.	-evant.	-ç-u	-ç-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-ev-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-ç-us,
				-ev-ons,	-ez,	-reçoivent.	-ev-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-ûmes,
To do,	FAI—re.	-sant.	-t	-s,	-s,	-t.	-s-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-fis,
				-s-ons,	-ez,	faites, font.	-s-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-fîmes,
To fear,	CRA—indre.	-ignant.	-int	-ins,	-ins,	-int.	-ign-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-ignis,
To join,	JO—.			-ign-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-ign-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-ignîmes,
To know,	CON—oître.	-oissant.	-u	-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-oiss-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-us,
				-oiss-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-oiss-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-ûmes,
To instruct,	INSTR—uire.	-uisant.	-uit	-uis,	-uis,	-uit,	-uis-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-uisis,
				-uis-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-uis-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-uisîmes,
To sell,	VEN—	-dant.	-du	-ds,	-ds,	-d.	-d-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	-dis,
To answer,	REPON—dre.			-d-ons,	-ez,	-ent.	-d-ions,	-iez,	-oient.	-dîmes,

Auxilia

Avoir, *to have*, ayant—eu | ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont—avois—eus—aurai—*reg.* | aie—*reg.* | aie.

Irregula

qu-érir, *to acquire*, érant—is | ers—ois—is—errai—*reg.* | ière—*reg.* | acquiers, qu'il acquière, &c.

J'a ll-er, *to go*, ant—é | vais, vas, va, allons, ez, vont—*reg.*—irai—*reg.* | aille—*reg.* | vas, qu'il aille, allons, &c.

P. N *had* ss-eoir, (s') *to sit down*, eyant,—is | eds, eds, ied, eyons, eyez, eyent—eyois—is—iérai—*reg.* | eye—*reg.* | assieds—toi, qu'il s'asseye, &c.

saill-ir, *to assault*, ant—i | e—*reg.*—it—irai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | assaille, qu'il assaille, &c.

att-re, *to beat*,—ant—u | bats, s, t, battons, ez, ent—*reg.* | is—rai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | bats, qu'il batte, &c.

J' -oire, *to drink*, buvant—bu | bois, s, t, buvons, ez, boivent—*reg.*—bus—boirai—*reg.* | boive—*reg.* | bois, qu'il boive, buvons, ez, boivent.

a n (bouill-ir, *to boil*, ant—i | bous, s, t, bouillons, ez, ent—*reg.*—is—irai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | bous, qu'il bouille, &c.

conclu-re, *to conclude*, ant—u | s, s, t, ons, ez, ent—*reg.*—s—rai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | conclus, qu'il conclue, &c.

a m (oud-re, *to sew*, cousant—cousu | s, s, t, sons, ez, ent—*reg.*—is—rai—*reg.* | couse—*reg.* | couds, qu'il couse, &c.

our-ir, *to run*, ant—u | cours—*reg.*—us—courrai—*reg.*—e—*reg.* | cours, qu'il coure, &c.

she ouv-rir, *to cover*, rant—ert | re—*reg.*—is—irai—*reg.* | e—*reg.* | couvre, qu'il couvre, &c.

r-oire, *to believe*, oyant—u | ois—*reg.*—us—oirai—*reg.* | croie—*reg.* | crois, qu'ils croie, &c.

re, *to say*, sant—t | s, s, t, disons, dites, disent—*reg.*—is—rai—*reg.* | se—*reg.* | dis, qu'il dise, disons, dites, qu'ils disent.

cri-re, *to write*, vant, t | s, s, t, vons, ez, ent—*reg.*—vis—rai—*reg.* | ve—*reg.* | écris, qu'il écrive, &c.

nv-oyer, *to send*, oyant—oyé | oie—*reg.*—oyai—errai—*reg.* | oie—*reg.* | envoie, qu'il envoye, &c.

-ire, *to shun*, fuyant—i | fuis, s, t, fuyons, ez, ent—yois—fuis—irai—*reg.* | fuie—*reg.* | fuis, qu'il fuie,

ïr, *to hate*, haïssant—haï | hais, s, t, haïssons, ez, ent—*the rest reg.* | hais, qu'il haïsse, &c.

ire, *to read*, isant—u | is—isois—us—irai—*reg.* | ise—*reg.* | lis, qu'il lise, &c.

N.B. For the sake of abbreviation in the tables of the Auxiliary and Irregular Verbs, those tens e final letters of the other two. *Reg.* means *regular*, and refers to those tenses which are formed regul commas separate the persons.

AUXILIARY, OR HELPING VERBS;

so called, because they are used in conjugating the others.

AVOIR.

Infinitive.

Present Tense	avoir,	*to have.*
Gerund	ayant,	*having.*
Participle	eu,	*had.*
Compound of the Present	avoir eu,	*to have had.*
Compound of the Gerund	ayant eu,	*having had.*

Indicative.

Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	J'ai, *I have.*	Tu as, *thou hast.*	Il a, *he has.*
P.	Nous avons, *we have.*	Vous avez, *ye* or *you have.*	Ils ont, *they have.*

Imperfect Tense.

S.	J'avois, *I had.*	Tu avois, *thou had'st.*	Il avoit, *he had.*
P.	Nous avions, *we had.*	Vous aviez, *ye* or *you had.*	Ils avoient, *they had.*

Preterite Tense.

S.	J'eus, *I had.*	Tu eus, *thou hadst.*	Il eut, *he had.*
P.	Nous eumes, *we*	Vous eutes, *ye or you had.*	Ils eurent, *they had.*

a mort
mo
she

Future Tense.

	shall or	Tu auras, *thou shalt or wilt have.*	Il aura, *he shall or will have.*
	Nous aurons, *we*	Vous aurez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will have.*	Ils auront, *they shall or will have.*

Conditional Tense.

	I should	Tu aurois, *thou woulds't have.*	Il auroit, *he would have*

P.	Nous aurions, *we should have.*	Vous auriez, *you would have.*	Ils auroient, *they would have.*

Compound of the Present Tense.

S.	J'ai eu, *I have had.*	Tu as eu, *thou hast had.*	Il a eu, *he has had.*
P.	Nous avons eu, *we have had.*	Vous avez eu, *ye or you have had.*	Ils ont eu, *they have had.*

Compound of the Imperfect Tense.

S.	J'avois eu, *I had had.*	Tu avois eu, *thou had'st had.*	Il avoit eu, *he had had.*
P.	Nous avions eu, *we had had.*	Vous aviez eu, *you had had.*	Ils avoient eu, *they had had.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S.	J'eus eu, *I had had.*	Tu eus eu, *thou had'st had.*	Il eut eu, *he had had.*
P.	Nous eumes eu, *we had had.*	Vous eutes eu, *you had had.*	Ils eurent eu, *they had had.*

Compound of the Future Tense.

S.	J'aurai eu, *I shall have had.*	Tu auras eu, *thou shalt have had.*	Il aura eu, *he shall have had.*
P.	Nous aurons eu, *we shall have had.*	Vous aurez eu, *you shall have had.*	Ils auront eu, *they shall have had.*

Compound of the Conditional Tense.

S.	J'aurois eu, *I should have had.*	Tu aurois eu, *thou would'st have had.*	Il auroit eu, *he have had.*
P.	Nous aurions eu, *we should have had.*	Vous auriez eu, *you would have had.*	Ils auroient *would have*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

S. que *that* *P.*	J'aie, *I may have.*	Tu aies, *thou may'st have.*	Il ait, *he*
	Nous ayons, *we may have.*	Vous ayez, *you may have.*	Ils aient, *they*

Preterite Tense.

S.	J'eusse, *I might have.*	Tu eusses, *thou might'st have.*	Il eût, *he might have.*
que	Nous eussions, *we might have.*	Vous eussiez, *ye or you might have.*	Ils eussent, *they might have.*
that P.			

Compound of the Present.

S.	J'aie eu, *I may or can have had.*	Tu aies eu, *thou may'st have had.*	Il ait eu, *he may have had.*
que	Nous ayons eu, *we may, &c.*	Vous ayez eu, *ye or you may have had.*	Ils aient eu, *they may have had.*
that P.			

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S.	J'eusse eu, *I might have had.*	Tu eusses eu, *thou might'st have had.*	Il eût eu, *he might have had.*
que	Nous eussions eu, *we might have had.*	Vous eussiez eu, *ye might have had.*	Ils eussent eu, *they might have had.*
that P.			

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Aie, *have, or have thou.*	qu' il ait, *let him have.*
P. Ayons, *let us have.*	Ayez, *have, or have ye.*	qu' ils aient, *let them have.*

D.* I have a good father, thou hast a good mother, he has good friends, *de*

she has great riches, *de richesses* we have better horses, *de* you have a clean knife, *propre couteau*

they have white handkerchiefs, *des blancs mouchoirs* E.* I had a white gown, *blanche robe* thou had'st

a horse, he had a lively boy, *vif* we had lively daughters, *filles,* you had

a mortal enemy, *mortel ennemi* they had mortal fears, *craintes, f.* *F. I had a bitter fruit, *amer*

she had a bitter apple, *pomme, f.* you had a fat goose, *gras oie, f.* G. I shall have two *deux*

alike, *pareils* we shall have some thick paper, *épais papier* they will have a thick *épais*

H. I should have a very active, *actif* male servant, *serviteur*[1] you would

* See page 22.

have a very active female servant, *servante,*

he would have an old friend, *vieil ami, m.*

we should have old houses. *de*

c D I have had a pretty letter. *joli lettre, f.*

c E We had had presents. *des*

c F you had had fine weather. *un tems.*

c G She will have had her dinner. *diner.*

c H They would have had | a great deal | of money. *beaucoup argent.*

I. That I may have a large fortune, *grand, f*

that you may have a new[2] suit of clothes,[1] *tout neuf habit complèt*

that he may have a severe illness, *serieux maladie*

that you might have a jealous wife, *jaloux femme*

that they might have a false pretence. *faux prétexte, m.*

C. P. That I may have had good advice, *un avis,*

that she might have had a jealous husband, *mari,*

have the goodness to do that, *bonté de faire*

let him have what he wants, *ce dont il a besoin,*

let us have what is best, *ce qu'il y a de meilleur,*

have what is worst, *ce qu'il y a de plus mauvais.*

let them have what belongs to them. *ce qui appartient leur.*

ETRE.

Infinitive Mood.

Present Tense	être,	*to be.*
Gerund	étant,	*being.*
Participle	été,	*been.*
Compound of the Present	avoir été,	*to have been.*
Compound of the Gerund	ayant été,	*having been.*

Indicative.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je suis, *I am.*	Tu es, *thou art.*	Il est, *he is.*
P. Nous sommes, *we are.*	Vous êtes, *ye* or *you are.*	Ils sont, *they a*

Imperfect Tense.

S. J'étois, *I was.*	Tu étois, *thou wast.*	Il étoit, *he wa*
P. Nous étions, *we were.*	Vous étiez, *ye* or *you were.*	Ils étoient, *the*

Preterite Tense.

S. Je fus, *I was.*	Tu fus, *thou wast.*	Il fut, *he was.*
P. Nous fumes, *we were.*	Vous futes, *ye* or *you were.*	Ils furent, *they were.*

Future Tense.

S. Je serai, *I shall* or *will be.*	Tu seras, *thou shalt* or *wilt be.*	Il sera, *he shall* or *will be.*
P. Nous serons, *we shall* or *will be.*	Vous serez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will be.*	Ils seront, *they shall* or *will be.*

Conditional Tense.

S. Je serois, *I should, would, could,* or *might be.*	Tu serois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st, be.*	Il seroit, *he should, would, could,* or *might be.*
P. Nous serions, *we should, would, &c.*	Vous seriez, *ye* or *you should, would,* &c.	Ils seroient, *they should, would, &c.*

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. J'ai été, *I have been.*	Tu as été, *thou hast been.*	Il a été, *he has been.*
P. Nous avons été, *we have been.*	Vous avez été, *ye* or *you have been.*	Ils ont été, *they have been.*

Compound of the Imperfect Tense.

S. J'avois été, *I had been.*	Tu avois été, *thou had'st been.*	Il avoit été, *he had been.*
P. Nous avions été, *we had been.*	Vous aviez été, *ye* or *you had been.*	Ils avoient été, *they had been.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. J'eus été, *I had been.*	Tu eus été, *thou had'st been.*	Il eut été, *he had been.*
P. Nous eumes été, *we had been.*	Vous eutes été, *ye* or *you had been.*	Ils eurent été, *they had been.*

Compound of the Future Tense.

S. J'aurai été, *I shall have been.*	Tu auras été, *thou shalt have been.*	Il aura été, *he shall have been.*
P. Nous aurons été, *we shall have been.*	Vous aurez été, *ye* or *you shall have been.*	Ils auront été, *they shall have been.*

Compound of the Conditional Tense.

S.	J'aurois été, *I should have been.*	Tu aurois été, *thou would'st have been.*	Il auroit été, *he would have been.*
P.	Nous aurions été, *we should, &c.*	Vous auriez été, *ye would, &c.*	Ils auroient été, *they would, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. que *that*	Je sois, *I may be.*	Tu sois, *thou may'st be.*	Il soit, *he may be.*
P.	Nous soyons, *we may be.*	Vous soyez, *ye* or *you may be.*	Ils soient, *they may be.*

Preterite Tense.

S. que *that*	Je fusse, *I might be.*	Tu fusses, *thou might-est be.*	Il fût, *he might be.*
P.	Nous fussions, *we might be.*	Vous fussiez, *you might be.*	Ils fussent, *they might be.*

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. que *that*	J'aie été, *I may have been.*	Tu aies été, *thou may-est have been.*	Il ait été, *he may have been.*
P.	Nous ayons été, *we may have been.*	Vous ayez été, *ye* or *you may have been.*	Ils aient été, *they may have been.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. que *that*	J'eusse été, *I might have been.*	Tu eusses été, *thou might'st have been.*	Il eût été, *he might have been.*
P.	Nous eussions été, *we had been,* or, &c.	Vous eussiez été, *ye* or *you had,* &c.	Ils eussent été, *they had been, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

S.		Sois, *be,* or *be thou.*	Qu'il soit, *let him be.*
P.	Soyons, *let us be.*	Soyez, *be,* or *be ye.*	Qu'ils soient, *let them be.*

I am satisfied, *content* you are very attentive, *attentif* she is pretty, *jolie* that table is long, *f.*

we are happy, *heureux* those ladies are happy, this flower was *fleur f.*

beautiful, those gardens were fine, I shall be taller than you,
beau *jardins* *grand* *que*

you were tall, we should be as rich as you, let us be
grand *aussi riche que*

good towards them, these little girls were quick, these pictures will
envers eux *vif* *tableau*

be beautiful, we shall be in good health, I should be strong if I
beau *en* *santé* *fort si*

took exercise, come, ladies, be attentive; let them be tractable,
prenois de l'exercice *allons mesdames* *docile.*

let these women be kind.
que *complaisant*

REGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in ER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	Parler,	*to speak.*
Gerund	Parlant,	*speaking.*
Participle	Parlé,	*spoken.*
Compound of the Present	Avoir parlé,	*to have spoken.*
Compound of the Gerund	Ayant parlé,	*having spoken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je parle, *I speak,**	Tu parles, *thou speak'st.*	Il parle, *he speaks.*
P. Nous parlons, *we speak.*	Vous parlez, *ye* or *you speak.*	Ils parlent, *they speak.*

Imperfect.

S. Je parlois, *I did speak.*†	Tu parlois, *thou did'st speak.*	Il parloit, *he did speak.*

* Or *I do speak*, or *I am speaking; thou dost speak*, or *thou art speaking*, &c.

† Or *I spoke*, or *I was speaking; thou wast speaking*, &c. It may not be amiss to observe, that the French imperfect answers better to this English locution *I was* speaking, than to the two others.

P. Nous parlions, *we did speak.*	Vous parliez, *ye* or *you did speak.*	Ils parloient, *they did speak.*

Preterite.

S. Je parlai, *I spoke.*	Tu parlas, *thou spokest,*	Il parla, *he spoke.*
P. Nous parlâmes, *we spoke.*	Vous parlâtes, *ye* or *you spoke.*	Ils parlèrent, *they spoke.*

Future.

S. Je parlerai, *I shall* or *will speak.*	Tu parleras, *thou shalt* or *wilt speak.*	Il parlera, *he shall* or *will speak.*
P. Nous parlerons, *we shall* or *will, &c.*	Vous parlerez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will, &c.*	Ils parleront, *they shall* or *will speak.*

Conditional.

S. Je parlerois, *I should, would, could,* or *might speak.*	Tu parlerois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st,* or *&c.*	Il parleroit, *he should, would, could,* or *&c.*
P. Nous parlerions, *we should, would, &c.*	Vous parleriez, *ye* or *you should, &c.*	Ils parleroient, *they should, would, &c.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai *Comp. of Imp.* J'avois *Comp. of Pret.* J'eus *Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai *Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois	parlé, *&c.*	*I have** *I had* *I had* *I shall have* *I should, &c. have*	*spoken, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. que Je parle, *I may speak*	Tu parles, *thou may'st speak.*	Il parle, *he may speak.*
P. Nous parlions, *we may, &c.*	Vous parliez, *ye* or *you may speak.*	Ils parlent, *they may speak.*

PRETERITE.

Je parlasse, *I might speak.*	Nous parlassions, *we might speak.*
Tu parlasses, *thou mightest speak.*	Vous parlassiez, *you might speak.*
Il parlât, *he might speak.*	Ils parlassent, *they might speak.*
Compound of the present,	J'aie parlé, *I may have spoken.*
Compound of the preterite,	J'eusse parlé, *I might have spoken*

* *Or* I spoke, *or* I did speak, *or* I have been speaking.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Parlons,	*let us speak.*
2. Parle,	*speak thou.*	Parlez,	*speak ye.*
3. Qu'il parle,	*let him speak.*	Qu'ils parlent,	*let them speak.*

OBSERVATIONS.

All verbs ending in *er* are conjugated like *parler.*

Irregularities of some Verbs ending in* ayer, oyer, uyer, ier.

In the first three persons singular, and in the third plural of the indicative, the *i* takes the place of the *y :* in the *imperfect,* and in the *subjunctive* present, *ions, iez,* come after *y.*

EXAMPLE.

Inf.	*Indic.*	*Imperf.*	*Future.*	*Subj. Pres.*
Payer,	Je pai*e*,	Je pay*o*is,	Je paierai, †	Que je pai*e*.
	,,	,,		,,
to pay,	,,	,,		,,
	nous payons,	nous pay*ion*s,		pay*ion*s
	vous payez	vous pay*iez*		pay*iez*
	ils pai*ent*,	ils pai*oient*,		pai*ent*

The same observation may be applied to the following verbs, *bégayer,* to stammer ; *effrayer,* to frighten ; *grasseyer,* to lisp, &c.

Also, to *nettoyer,* to clean ; *aboyer,* to bark ; *employer,* to employ ; *envoyer,* to send.

Also, to *essuyer,* to wipe ; *appuyer,* to prop ; *ennuyer,* to weary.

Also, to *prier,* to pray.

je prie,	je pri*oi*s,	que je prie
	pri*ion*s,	pri*ion*s.

In verbs ending in *cer,* the ç takes the cedilla (ç) when coming before *a* or *o,* to keep the soft sound of *c.*

commen*cer*, to begin — nous commen*çons*, — je commen*çois*, — commen*çai*, — commen*çasse*, &c.

* The learner need not take notice of the above irregularities until he has been once over the regular verbs.

† The future is usually pronounced *pé-rai.*

Conjugate, after the same manner, all verbs in *cer*, such as *annoncer*, to announce ; *avancer*, to advance ; *enoncer*, to utter ; *pincer*, to pinch ; *percer*, to pierce, &c.

With verbs in *éer*, one *e* is cancelled before *o* or *a*.

agréer, j'agrée, j'agréois, j'agréai, j'agréerai, que j'agrée, *to accept*,
agréons, agréions, agréions.

Participle. agréé, m. agréée, f.

After the same manner are conjugated the following verbs : *créer*, to create, *récréer*, to recreate, *suppléer*, to supply.

In verbs ending in *ger*, the *e* is kept when an *o* or an *a* follows : as,

juger, je juge, je *jugeois*, *jugeai*, que je *jugeasse*, *to judge*
jugeons, jugions.

After the same manner the following verbs ; *abréger*, to abridge ; *bouger*, to stir ; *arranger*, to arrange ; *diriger*, to direct ; *encourager*, to encourage ; *manger*, to eat, &c.

In verbs ending in *eler* and *eter*, the *l* and *t* are doubled before *e*.

appeler,* j'appelle,* j'appelois, j'appellerai, que j'appelle, *to call*,
apelons, appelions, &c.

After the same manner, conjugate the following : *atteler*, to put horses to ; *amoncéler*, to heap up ; *étinceler*, to sparkle, &c.

Except the following, which, instead of doubling the *l*, take a grave accent over the *e* : *bourreler*, to rack ; *geler*, to freeze ; *harceler*, to teaze ; *peler*, to peal ; *receler*, to secrete. Ex : *il gèle*, it freezes ; je *pèle*, I peal.

jeter, je jette, jetois, jetai, jetterai, que je jette, *to throw*,
jetons, jetions.

After the same manner, *projeter*, to project ; *cacheter*, to seal ; except *acheter*, to buy ; *colleter*, to collar, &c. which make *j'achète*, *achetons*, *ils achètent*, and not *ils achettent*.

---

* Therefore we pronounce *app-ler*, and ă-pĕll ; also j-tĕr and *je jett*.

In verbs ending in *uer*, a dicœresis, or trema, (¨) is placed over the *i*, in the *imperfect* and *subjunctive*.

EXAMPLE.

jouer, *to play*,	je joue,	je jouois,	je jouerai,	que je joue,
	jouons,	jouions,		jouions, &c.

After the same manner, *contribuer*, to contribute ; *distribuer*, to distribute ; *nouer*, to tie ; *dénouer*, to untie ;

We write *j'argue, j'arguerai*, and we may write, *je jouerai* or *jouërai*.

A list of Verbs of the first conjugation, which are in general use.

S'abonner,	*to subscribe.*
Aboyer,	*to bark.*
Abréger,	*to abridge.*
Abreuver,	*to water.*
Accabler,	*to overwhelm.*
Accentuer,	*to accentuate.*
Accepter,	*to accept.*
Accompagner,	*to accompany.*
Accorder,	*to grant.*
Accoutumer,	*to accustom.*
Acheter,	*to buy.*
Achever,	*to finish.*
S'acquitter,	*to perform, discharge.*
Additionner,	*to cast up.*
S'adonner,	*to addict one's self.*
Adresser,	*to address.*
S'adresser,	*to apply.*
Afficher,	*to post up.*
Affliger,	*to afflict.*
Affubler,	*to muffle up.*
Agacer,	*to provoke, set on edge.*
S'agenouiller,	*to kneel down.*
Agréer,	*to accept.*
Aiguiser,	*to sharpen, whet.*
Aimer,	*to love, like, be fond of.*
Ajouter,	*to add.*
Alimenter,	*to maintain.*
S'allier,	*to match.*
Allumer,	*to light.*
Allonger,	*to lengthen, to stretch.*
Altérer,	*to cause thirst, to alter.*
Améliorer,	*to improve.*
Amener,	*to bring, to lead.*
Amoncelcr,	*to heap up.*
Amuser,	*to amuse.*
Apaiser,	*to appease.*
Appareiller,	*to match.*
Apporter,	*to bring.*
Apprêter,	*to prepare.*
Apprivoiser,	*to tame.*
Approcher,	*to approach, draw near.*
Appuyer,	*to support, to prop.*
Arracher,	*to pull, draw, snatch.*
Arranger,	*to set in order.*
Arrêter,	*to arrest, stop.*
Arroser,	*to water, to baste.*
Assaisonner,	*to season.*
Assiéger,	*to besiege.*
Assommer,	*to knock down.*
Attaquer;	*to attack.*
Atteler,	*to put to.*
Atterrer,	*to throw down.*
Attirer,	*to attract, to draw.*
Attiser (le feu,)	*to stir the fire.*
Attraper,	*to catch.*
Attribuer,	*to attribute.*
Attrister,	*to afflict.*
S'attrouper,	*to flock in crowds.*

Autoriser,	*to authorise.*
Avaler,	*to swallow.*
Avancer,	*to advance.*
Aveugler,	*to blind, to dazzle.*
S'aviser,	*to bethink one self.*
Avouer,	*to own, to avow.*
Babiller,	*to chat, to prattle.*
Badiner,	*to jest.*
Bafouer,	*to ridicule, to baf-*
Baigner,	*to bathe.* [*fle.*
Bâiller,	*to gape, yawn.*
Baisser,	*to lower, to de-*
	crease.
Se balancer,	*to swing.*
Balayer,	*to sweep.*
Balbutier,	*to stammer.*
Bannir,	*to banish.*
Baragouiner,	*to speak gibberish.*
Barbouiller,	*to daub, scribble.*
Bavarder,	*to gossip.*
Briser,	*to break, to dash.*
Céder,	*to yield.*
Cesser,	*to cease.*
Chagriner,	*to vex.*
Chanceler,	*to totter.*
Chasser,	*to hunt, chase.*
Châtier,	*to chastise.*
Chatouiller,	*to tickle.*
Chauffer,	*to warm, to heat.*
Cheminer,	*to walk* or *go.*
Chercher,	*to seek, to look for.*
Chiffonner,	*to rumple, tumble.*
Chiffrer,	*to cypher.*
Choquer,	*to shock, to offend.*
Chuchoter,	*to whisper.*
Ciseler,	*to chase, to carve.*
Se coaliser,	*to coalesce.*
Se coiffer,	*to dress one's head.*
Colorer,	*to colour.*
Colporter,	*to hawk about.*
Combler,	*to heap up.*
Comploter,	*to plot, conspire.*
Compter,	*to count, depend on.*
Condamner,	*to condemn.*
Confier,	*to intrust.*
Confisquer,	*to confiscate.*
Coucher,	*to put to bed.*
Se coucher,	*to go to bed.*
Courber,	*to bend, to bow.*
Couronner,	*to crown.*
Se courroucer,	*to rage.*
Couter,	*to cost.*
Cracher,	*to spit.*
Se cramponner,	*to cling.*
Craquer,	*to crack.*
Creuser,	*to dig.*
Crever,	*to burst.*
Crier,	*to cry out.*
Critiquer,	*to criticise.*
Culbuter,	*to overthrow.*
Dédaigner,	*to disdain.*
Défier,	*to defy, challenge*
Dégoûter,	*to disgust.*
Dégoutter,	*to drop*
Déjeûner,	*to breakfast.*
Délaisser,	*to forsake.*
Délasser,	*to refresh, recre-*
	ate, relax.
Démêler,	*to unravel.*
Déménager,	*to remove, (from*
	a house.)
Dépécer,	*to cut up, carve.*
Dépouiller,	*to strip.*
Déraciner,	*to root out.*
Détourner,	*to deter, turn aside.*
Dompter, *ou* dom-	*to subdue.*
ter,	
Dorer,	*to gild.*
Ebranler,	*to shake.*
Ecarter,	*to mislead, discard.*
S'écarter,	*to swerve from.*
Echapper,	*to escape.*
Echouer,	*to wreck, fail.*
Eclabousser,	*to splash.*
Ecorcher,	*to skin, to flay.*
Egarer,	*to mislead.*
Egorger,	*to cut the throat.*
Egratigner,	*to scratch.*
Elaguer,	*to lop, to prune.*
Eloigner,	*to remove.*
Emousser,	*to blunt.*
Ennuyer,	*to tire, to weary.*
Enoncer,	*to utter, to expres*
Enrhumer,	*to give cold.*
S'enrouer,	*to grow hoarse.*
Entamer,	*to make the fi*
	cut, to begin.
Entasser,	*to heap up.*
Enterrer,	*to bury.*
Entourer,	*to surround.*
Envisager,	*to eye, to view,*
	consider.

Épancher,	*to open one's heart, to disclose.*
Epargner,	*to spare, to save.*
Epeler,	*to spell.*
Epuiser,	*to drain, exhaust.*
Escamoter,	*to pilfer.*
Escompter,	*to discount.*
Espérer,	*to hope, expect.*
Etaler,	*to spread forth.*
Etayer,	*to support, stay.*
Exhausser,	*to raise.*
Exiger,	*to exact.*
Flairer,	*to smell anything.*
Flamber,	*to singe, blaze.*
Fonder,	*to ground.*
Se formaliser,	*to take offence.*
Fouiller,	*to search.*
Fouler,	*to trample on.*
Fracasser,	*to break in pieces.*
Frissonner,	*to shiver, shudder.*
Gâter,	*to spoil.*
Gonfler,	*to swell.*
Grelotter,	*to shiver.*
Grimper,	*to climb.*
Habiller,	*to clothe.*
Joncher,	*to strew.*
Jouer,	*to play.*
Jurer,	*to swear.*
Labourer,	*to plough.*
Lier,	*to tie, bind.*
Maîtriser,	*to domineer, to master.*
Nager,	*to swim.*
Nouer,	*to tie.*
Noyer,	*to drown.*
Ombrager,	*to shade.*
S'orienter,	*to consider whereabouts one is.*
Ourler,	*to hem.*
Prôner,	*to cry up, extol.*
Ramer,	*to row.*
Rassasier,	*to fill, satiate.*
Rédiger,	*to commit to writing, to digest.*
Ronger,	*to gnaw.*
Tracasser,	*to plague.*
Tramer,	*to weave, plot.*
Trancher,	*to cut off, decide.*
Tremper,	*to dip, soak, steep.*
Tutoyer,	*to thou and thee.*
User,	*to wear out.*
Vanter,	*to extol.*
Se vanter,	*to boast.*
Vaquer,	*to be vacant.*
Vider,	*to empty.*
Voler,	*to fly; steal, rob.*

Exercise on the first Conjugation.

D. I speak French and English, she sweeps the room, you attack
balayer *chambre f.* *attaquer*

me, we add all these numbers together, they get the dinner ready,
ajouter *nombres* *ensemble* *apprêter*

E. she was taming her bird, we were watering the garden, they were
apprivoiser *arroser* *jardin*

putting the horses to, F. yesterday I paid the workmen, she chattered
atteler *payer* *ouvriers* *babiller*

instead of cleaning the house, they yawned all the day long, I
au lieu de *nettoyer* *bailler* *journée*

shall eat presently, we shall strip them of their honors, you
manger tout-à-l'heure *dépouiller* *honneurs*

will neither contract debts nor bad habits, I should warm
ne contracter ni des dettes ni de habitudes *me chauffer*

my feet, we should rumple our gowns if we | were to | tie
les piés *chiffonner* *robes* * *attacher*

them with pins, c D. I have dressed my little child's head ; c E. we
avec des épingles *coiffé* *

had overwhelmed them with kindness.
combler *de* *bienfaits.*

I shall have finished my lesson | by the time | you return from your
achever *quand* *reviendrez*

walk ; if I had not been here, they would have dashed the glasses, the
promenade *ici* *briser* *verres*

plates and dishes | to pieces. | we should often[2] break[1] such
assiettes *plats* * *souvent casser* *de telles*

ware if we not very careful, I. although I rely upon your
marchandise si nous n'étions pas très soigneux quoique compte sur

care yet I am obliged to watch you until you teach I.
soins (pl.) *cependant* ——*é de* *veiller* *jusqu'à ceque enseigner*

your brothers and sisters, (subj.) provided you send me a letter;
vos *pourvu que* *envoyer*

before I entered the room, that they may bury their riches
avant que entrer (subj.) *dans* *chambre* *enterrer* *richesses*

in order that | you might begin your story. | begin to cut | the
pour que *commencer* *entamer*

loaf ; let him spell every word ; let the servant brush my coat
pain *épeler tous* *les mots* *domestique brosser* *habi*

let us pick the herbs, dust the furniture, let them save their money
éplucher —— *es* *épousseter* *meuble,* (pl.) *épargner*

1st Table. The French Verbs used negatively.

Tenses.	1st *Auxiliary.*		2d *Auxiliary.*		*A verb active or neut*
		INFINITIVE MOOD.			
Pres. Tense.	N'avoir pas *or* ne pas avoir, *not to have.*		N'être pas *or* ne pas être, *not to be.*		Ne pas parler, *speak.*
Gerund.	N'ayant pas, *having.*	*not*	N'étant pas, *being.*	*not*	Ne parlant pas, *speaking.*
C. Inf.	N'avoir pas eu, *to have had.*	*not*	N'avoir pas été, *to have been.*	*not*	N'avoir pas parlé, *to have spoken.*
C. Gerund.	N'ayant pas eu, *having had.*	*not*	N'ayant pas été, *having been.*	*not*	N'ayant pas parlé, *having spoken.*

INDICATIVE.

Je n'ai pas, *I have not*	Je ne suis pas, *I am not*	Je ne parle pas, *I do not*	
Tu n'as pas, *thou hast not*	Tu n'es pas, *thou art not*	Tu ne parles pas, *thou dost not*	
Il n'a pas, *he has not*	Il n'est pas, *he is not*	Il ne parle pas, *he does not*	
Elle n'a pas, *she has not*	Elle n'est pas, *she is not*	Elle ne parle pas, *she does not*	Sing.
Nous n'avons pas, *we have not*	Nous ne sommes pas, *we are not*	Nous ne parlons pas, *we do not*	
Vous n'avez pas, *you have not*	Vous n'êtes pas, *you are not*	Vous ne parlez pas, *you do not*	
Ils n'ont pas, *they have not*	Ils ne sont pas, *they are not*	Ils ne parlent pas, *they do not*	
Elles n'ont pas, *they are not*	Elles ne sont pas, *they are not*	Elles ne parlent pas, *they do not*	Plur.

C. Pres.	Je n'ai pas eu, *I have not had.*	Je n'ai pas été, *I have not been.*	Je n'ai pas parlé, *I have not spoken.*
Imperfect.	Je n'avois pas, *I had not.*	Je n'étois pas, *I was not.*	Je ne parlois pas, *I did not speak.*
C. Imperf.	Je n'avois pas eu, *I had not had.*	Je n'avois pas été, *I had not been.*	Je n'avois pas parlé, *I had not spoken.*
Preterite.	Je n'eus pas, *I had not.*	Je ne fus pas, *I was not.*	Je ne parlai pas, *I did not speak.*
C. Pret.	Je n'eus pas eu, *I had not had.*	Je n'eus pas été, *I had not been.*	Je n'eus pas parlé, *I had not spoken.*
Future.	Je n'aurai pas, *I shall not have.*	Je ne serai pas, *I shall not be.*	Je ne parlerai pas, *I shall not speak.*
F.	Je n'aurai pas eu, *I shall not have had.*	Je n'aurai pas été, *I shall not have been.*	Je n'aurai pas parlé, *I shall not have spoken.*
Conditional.	Je n'aurois pas, *I should not have.*	Je ne serois pas, *I should not be.*	Je ne parlerois pas, *I should not speak.*
C. Pret.	Je n'aurois pas eu, *I should not have had.*	Je n'aurois pas été, *I should not have been.*	Je n'aurois pas parlé, *I should not have spoken.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tense.	Que je n'aie pas, *that I may not have.*	Que je ne sois pas, *that I may not be.*	Que je ne parle pas, *that I may not speak.*
C. Pret.	— je n'aie pas eu, — *I may not have had.*	— je n'aie pas été, — *I may not have been.*	— je n'aie pas parlé, — *I may not have spoken.*
Pret.	— je n'eusse pas, — *I might not have.*	— je ne fusse pas, — *I might not be.*	— je ne parlasse pas, — *I might not speak.*
C. Preterite.	— je n'eusse pas eu, — *I might have had.*	— je n'eusse pas été, — *I might not have been.*	— je n'eusse pas parlé, — *I might not have spoken.*

IMPERATIVE.

N'aie pas, *do thou not have.*	Ne sois pas, *be thou not.*	Ne parle pas, *speak thou not.*

2nd Table. The French Verbs conjugated *interrogatively.*

Tenses.	1st Auxiliary.	2nd Auxiliary.	A Verb active or neuter.
Pres. Tense.	Ai-je, *have I?*	Suis-je, *am I?*	Parlé-je, *do I speak?*
	As-tu, *hast thou?*	Es-tu, *art thou?*	Parles-tu, *dost thou speak*
	A-*t*-il, *has he?*	Est-il, *is he?*	Parle-*t*-il, *does he speak?*

* The *t* is here introduced for the purpose of avoiding the meeting of two vowels.

	Avons-nous? *have we?*	Sommes-nous? *are we?*	Parlons-nous? *do we speak?*
	Avez-vous? *have you?*	Etes-vous? *are you?*	Parlez-vous? *do you speak?*
	Ont-ils? *have they?*	Sont-ils? *are they?*	Parlent-ils? *do they speak?*
Comp. Pret.	Ai-je eu, *have I had?*	Ai-je été, *have I been?*	Ai-je parlé, *have I spoken?*
Imperfect.	Avois-je, *had I?*	Etois-je, *was I?*	Parlois-je, *did I speak?*
C. Imp.	Avois-je eu, *had I had?*	Avois-je été, *had I been?*	Avois-je parlé, *had I spoken?*
			Parlai-je, *did I speak?*
Preterite.	Eus-je, *had I?*	Fus-je, *was I?*	Parla-t-il, *did he speak?*
C. Pret.	Eus-je eu, *had I had?*	Eus-je été, *had I been?*	Eus-je parlé, *had I spoken?*
Future.	Aurai-je eu, *shall I have had?*	Aurai-je été, *shall I have been?*	Aurai-je parlé, *shall I have spoken?*
	Aura-t-il, *shall he have?*	Sera-t-il, *will he be?*	Parlera-t-il, *will he speak?*
Conditional.	Aurois-je, *should I have?*	Serois je, *should I be?*	Parlerois-je, *should I speak?*
C. of Condit.	Aurois-je eu, *should I have had?*	Aurois-je été, *should I have been?*	Aurois-je parlé, *should I have spoken?*

3rd Table. The French Verbs used *interrogatively* and *negatively.*

N'ai-je pas, *have I not?*	Ne suis-je pas, *am I not?*	Ne parlé-je pas, *do I not speak?*
N'ai-je pas eu, *have I not had?*	N'ai-je pas été, *have I not been?*	N'ai-je pas parlé, *have I not spoken?*
N'avois-je pas, *had I not?*	N'étois-je pas, *was I not?*	Ne parlois-je pas, *did I not speak?*
N'avois-je pas eu, *had I not had?*	N'avois-je pas été, *had I not been?*	N'avois-je pas parlé, *had I not spoken?*
N'eus-je pas, *have I not?*	Ne fus-je pas, *was I not?*	Ne parlai-je pas, *did I not speak?*
N'eus-je pas eu, *had I not had?*	N'eus-je pas été, *had I not been?*	N'eus-je pas parlé, *had I not spoken?*
N'aurai-je pas, *shall I not have?*	Ne serai-je pas, *shall I not be?*	Ne parlerai-je pas, *shall I not speak?*
N'aurai-je pas eu, *shall I not have had?*	N'aurai-je pas été, *shall I not have been?*	N'aurai-je pas parlé, *shall I not have spoken?*
N'aurois-je pas, *should I not have?*	Ne serois-je pas, *should I not be?*	Ne parlerois-je pas, *should I not speak?*
N'aurois-je pas eu, *should I not have had?*	N'aurois-je pas été, *should I not have been?*	N'aurois-je pas parlé, *should I not have spoken?*

☞ Order of words when a *noun* is the nominative to the interrogation.

1. The noun. 2. the verb. 3. *il* (or) *elle,* &c.

Are we? are we not? you are, you are not, are you? are you not? (imperf.) I was good, he was indolent, were you lazy? was she not | of a chattering disposition? were they industrious? we
babillarde

were not economical[2] enough,[1] were we strong enough? I was tired, I was not rich, were we not teachable? I shall be exact, we
économes *assez* *forts* *las* *dociles*

shall not be giddy, shall we be nimble enough? shall you be? shall you not be? they will not be, will they be? have I been? have I not been? had they been, had they not been, I should be, should I be? should you be? should you not be? we
étourdi *leste*

should not be serious | until | you are quiet, | in order that | you may be in good health, that I might not be fat, for fear I might be thin, that they might be tall, that they might not be short, I shall have been, he will have been, should you have been sick? would they have been satisfied, let us be clean, let us not be dirty
serieux jusqu' à ce que (subj.) *tranquille afin que* *en* *gras, de peur que* *maigre* *grand* *petits* *malade* *satisfait* *propre* *malpropre*

be quick, be not slow, let them be, let them not be, let my coat be blue, let not my linen be spoilt, let him be wise, let her not be foolish, be contented and you will be happy.
prompt *lent* *bleu* *gâté* *sage* *fou* *content* *heureux.*

I have, have I? I have not, have I not? thou hast, hast thou? thou hast not, hast thou not? he has, he has not, has he? has he not? she has, has she? she has not, has she not? we have, have we? we have not, have we not? you have, have you? you have not, have you not? they have,

have they? they have not, have they not? I had, I had not, had I? had I not? PRET. he had, had he? he had not, had he not?—we shall have, shall we have? we shall not have, shall we not have? they would have, they would not have, would they have? would they not have? I must have, she must *il faut que j'* (subj.) *il ne*

not have, you must have, you must not have, although I had, *faut pas qu'elle* (subj.) *il faut que vous quoi que* (pr. subj.)

although I had not, that she might have, that she might not have,

have the goodness to do that, let him have patience, let him not *bonté de faire qu'il*

have the impertinence to do that, let your sister have what she *de que ce que*

deserves, let her have some bread, let us have what is necessary, *meriter*

let us not have this, let them have money, let them not have

any trouble.
de peine

I speak, I do not speak, do I speak? do I not speak! *parlé-je*

do we speak? do we not speak? are they not speaking? are they speaking? I shall be speaking, shall you speak or be speaking (*Imp.*) were you speaking? were you not speaking? (*Pret.*) I spoke you spoke, did I speak?—shall we speak? shall we not speak why do you not speak? why should I speak? come, speak, do *allons*

not speak, I have spoken, I have not spoken, have I spoken have I not spoken? she had spoken, had she not spoken? yo will have spoken, you will not have spoken, will they have spoken will they not have spoken? should I have spoken? would they no have spoken? although they may speak, that they may not speak

we must not speak, unless they spoke, suppose
il ne faut pas que à moins que supposons qu

you spoke, suppose you did not speak | in order that | we might
parlassiez *pour que*

speak, | in order that | they might not speak, speak with a low voice,
à voix basse,

do not speak loud, let us speak out, let her not speak | too
fort *à haute voix* *trop*

much | let those ladies speak a little more, but let them not speak
que *mais*

so much as you, that I may have spoken, that you may not have
tant *que*

spoken, I should have spoken.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in ir, *Gerund in* issant.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Agir, *to act.* *Ger.* Agissant, *acting,* *Part.* Agi, *acted.*
C. Pres. Avoir agi, *to have acted.* *C. Ger.* Ayant agi, *having acted.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. J'agis, *I act.*	tu agis, *thou actest.*	il agit, *he acts.*
P. Nous agissons, *we,* &c.	vous agissez, *ye act.*	ils agissent, *they act.*

Imperfect.

S. J'agissois, *I did act.*	tu agissois, *thou,* &c.	il agissoit, *he did act.*
P. Nous agissions, *we did act.*	vous agissiez, *ye* or *you did act.*	ils agissoient, *they did act.*

Preterite.

S. J'agis, *I acted.*	tu agis, *thou acted'st.*	il agit, *he acted.*
P. Nous agîmes, *we* &c.	vous agîtes, *ye acted.*	ils agirent, *they acted.*

Future.

S. J'agirai, *I shall* or *will act.*	tu agiras, *thou shalt* or *wilt act.*	il agira, *he shall* or *will act.*
P. Nous agirons, *we shall* or *will act.*	vous agirez, *ye* or *you shall,* or, &c.	ils agiront, *they shall* or *will act.*

Conditional.

S.	J'agirois, *I should act*, &c.	tu agirois, *thou should'st act.*	il agiroit, *he should act.*
P.	Nous agirions, *we should act.*	vous agiriez, *ye* or *you should act.*	ils agiroient, *they should act.*

Comp. of Pres.	J'ai	agi, &c.	*I have*
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		*I had*
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		*I had*
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		*I shall have*
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		*I should*, &c. *have*

acted.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. que	J'agisse, *I may act.*	tu agisses, *thou may'st act.*	il agisse, *he may act.*
P. that	nous agissions, *we may act.*	vous agissiez, *ye* or *you may act.*	ils agissent, *they may act.*

Preterite.

S. que	J'agisse, *I acted* or *might act.*	tu agisses, *thou acted'st.*	il agit, *he acted.*
P. that	nous agissions, *we acted.*	vous agissiez, *ye* or *you acted.*	ils agissent, *they acted.*

Comp. of Pres. que J'aie agi, *I have* or *may have acted,*
Comp. of Pret. that J'eusse &c. *I had* or *might have* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S.		Agis, *act thou.*	qu'il agisse, *let him act.*
P.	Agissons, *let us act.*	agissez, *act* or *act ye.*	qu'ils agissent, *let them act.*

List of some Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Applaudir, *to applaud.*
Avertir, *to warn.*
Abolir, *to abolish.*
Aboutir, *to tend.*
Adoucir, *to soften.*
Affermir, *to strengthen.*
Affaiblir, *to weaken.*
Assortir, *to match.*
Assoupir, *to make drowsy.*
Assourdir, *to deafen.*
Assouvir, *to satiate.*
Attendrir, *to make tender, to soften.*
Bannir, *to banish.*
Bâtir, *to build.*
Bénir, *to bless.*
Blanchir, *to wash.*
Brunir, *to make brown.*
Bouffir, *to swell, to puff up.*
Chérir, *to love dearly.*
Choisir, *to choose.*
Compâtir, *to commiserate.*
Convertir, *to convert.*
Définir, *to define.*
Défleurir, *to take off the blossom, to let fall its blossom.*
Dégarnir, *to unfurnish*
Démolir, *to demolish.*
Dépérir, *to decay.*
Désobéir, *to disobey.*
Divertir, *to divert.*
Durcir, *to harden.*
Eblouir, *to dazzle.*
Eclaircir, *to clear up.*
Elargir, *to widen.*
Embellir, *to embellish.*
Emplir, *to fill.*

Enchérir, *to outbid.*
Endurcir, *to harden.*
Engloutir, *to swallow up.*
Engourdir, *to benumb.*
Enhardir, *to embolden.*
Enlaidir, *to grow ugly.*
Ennoblir, *to ennoble.*
Enorgueillir, *to make proud.*
Ensevelir, *to shroud.*
Envahir, *to invade.*
Etablir, *to establish.*
Etourdir, *to stun.*
Etrécir, *to straiten.*
Finir, *to finish.*
Fléchir, *to soften.*
Flétrir, *to fade.*
Fleurir, *to blossom, to flourish.*
Fournir, *to furnish.*
Franchir, *to leap over.*
Frémir, *to shudder.*
Garantir, *to warrant.*
Garnir, *to furnish.*
Gémir, *to groan.*
Grandir, *to grow tall.*
Gravir, *to climb up.*
Grossir, *to make or grow bigger.*
Guérir, *to cure, to heal.*
Hennir, *to neigh.*
Jaillir, *to spout out.*
Jaunir, *to grow yellow.*
Jouir, *to enjoy.*
Languir, *to languish.*
Maigrir, *to become thin.*
Meurtrir, *to bruise.*
Moisir, *to mould.*
Mugir, *to low.*
Munir, *to store, or provide with.*
Mûrir, *to ripen.*
Nantir, *to ensure, to secure.*
Noircir, *to blacken.*
Nourrir, *to nourish.*
Obéir, *to obey.*
Obscurcir, *to darken.*
Ourdir, *to warp, to plot.*
Pâlir, *to turn pale.*
Pâtir, *to suffer.*
Périr, *to perish.*
Pervertir, *to pervert.*
Pétrir, *to knead.*
Polir, *to polish.*
Pourrir, *to rot.*
Punir, *to punish.*
Rafraîchir, *to cool.*
Ralentir, *to slacken.*
Ravir, *to ravish.*
Réfléchir, *to reflect.*
Rejaillir, *to spurt up.*
Réjouir, *to rejoice.*
Remplir, *to fill again.*
Renchérir, *to raise the price of.*
Retentir, *to resound.*
Rétrécir, *to straiten.*
Réussir, *to succeed.*
Roidir, *to stiffen.*
Rôtir, *to roast.*
Rougir, *to redden.*
Rembrunir, *to make darker.*
Rugir, *to roar.*
Salir, *to soil, to dirt.*
Subir, *to undergo.*
Subvertir, *to subvert.*
Se tapir, *to squat.*
Se blottir, *to squat.*
S'épanouir, *to blow.*
S'évanouir, *to faint.*
Tarir, *to drain, to dry up.*
Ternir, *to tarnish.*
Tiédir, *to cool.*
Trahir, *to betray.*
Transir, *to chill.*
Travestir, *to disguise.*
Unir, *to unite.*
Verdir, *to paint green, to grow green.*
Vernir, *to varnish.*
Vieillir, *to grow old.*
Vomir, *to vomit.*

I finish my work first, then I go and play, we obey
*finir ouvrage premièrement puis vais * jouer obéir*

our parents and you disobey yours, these flowers are fading.
*à désobéir à * se flétrir.*

(*Imperf.*) Her beauty dazzled every body, they turned pale
beauté éblouir tout le monde pâlir

whenever they heard those accounts, that blow will bruise
toutes les fois que entendoient détails coup meurtrir

him, we enjoy good health, they will roast the meat, I should
*le * jouir d'une rotir*

undergo very great sufferings, I have furnished my house, we have
subir de souffrances garnir

groaned with grief, we had | climbed | up the hill, my doctor would
gémir de chagrin gravir montagne médecin

have cured you, although you grow very much now, yet you will
guérir quoique grandir beaucoup maintenant cependant

not be so tall as I, without your reflecting, we eat the currant jelly
si grand que moi sans que vous réfléchir (subj.) confiture, pl.

now for fear it should grow mouldy, I wish the fruit to ripen
de peur que elles ne moisir veux que, murir, (subj.)

before I gather it, varnish this wood, let her embellish this
*avant de * cueillir le vernir bois embellir*

embroidery, let us build a pretty house.
broderie bâtir

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in *tir, uir, mir.*

Infinitive Mood.

Present tense,	sentir,	*to smell.*
Gerund,	sentant,	*smelling.*
Participle,	senti,	*smelt.*

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je sens,	*I smell.*	Nous sentons,	*we smell.*
tu sens,	*thou smellest.*	vous sentez,	*you smell.*
il sent,	*he smells.*	ils sentent,	*they smell.*

Imperfect.

Je sentois,	*I was* } *smelling.*	Nous sentions,	*we were* } *smelling.*
tu sentois,	*thou wast* }	vous sentiez,	*you were* }
il sentoit,	*he was* }	ils sentoient,	*they were* }

Preterite.

Je sentis,	*I smelt,*	Nous sentîmes,	*we smelt.*
tu sentis,	*thou smeltest.*	vous sentîtes,	*you smelt.*
il sentit,	*he smelt.*	ils sentirent,	*they smelt.*

Future.

Je sentirai,	*I shall smell,*	Nous sentirons,	*we shall smell.*
tu sentiras,	*thou shalt smell.*	vous sentirez,	*you shall smell.*
il sentira,	*he shall smell.*	ils sentiront,	*they shall smell.*

Conditional.

Je sentirois,	*I could smell.*	Nous sentirions,	*we could smell.*
tu sentirois,	*thou couldest smell.*	vous sentiriez,	*you could smell.*
il sentiroit,	*he could smell.*	ils sentiroient,	*they could smell.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Que	*That*		
Je sente,	*I may smell,*	Nous sentions,	*we may smell.*
tu sentes,	*thou mayest smell.*	vous sentiez,	*you may smell.*
il sente,	*he may smell.*	ils sentent,	*they may smell.*

Preterite.

Je sentisse,	*I might smell.*	Nous sentissions,	*we might smell.*
tu sentisses.	*thou mightest smell.*	vous sentissiez,	*you might smell.*
il sentît,	*he might smell.*	ils sentissent,	*they might smell.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Sentons,	*let us smell.*
2. sens,	*smell thou.*	sentez,	*smell ye.*
3. qu'il sente,	*let him smell.*	qu'ils sentent,	*let them smell.*

19. ending in *ir* in Infinitive, and *ant* in Gerund—7 primitive, 12 derivative.

mentir, *to lie.*
démentir, *to belie.*
partir, *to set out.*
repartir, *to set out again.*
départir, *to distribute.*
sortir, *to go out.*
ressortir, *to go out again.*
se repentir, *to repent.*
servir, *to serve.*
se servir de, *to make use of.*
desservir, *to clear the table.*
sentir, *to smell,* or *to feel.*
consentir, *to consent.*
pressentir, *to have a foresight of.*
ressentir, *to feel, to experience.*
dormir, *to sleep.*
redormir, *to sleep again.*
endormir, *to lull asleep.*
s'endormir, *to fall asleep.*
se rendormir, *to fall asleep again.*

Partir and *repartir, sortir* and *ressortir,* are conjugated with *être.*

Dormir and *servir* make *je dors, dors, dort, dormons, &c. je sers, sers, sert, servons, &c.* making *oir* and *mir* undergo the same changes as *tir.*

I *feel* a very sharp pain, do you { go out } this evening? he
très[2] *aigue*[3] *douleur*[1] *soir*

{ is asleep, } I sleep six hours every day, they repent their sins.
dormir *heures par jour* *de péchés*

do not belie your appearance, she | tells a falsehood, | whenever she
apparence *toutes les fois qu*

opens her mouth, that nosegay will smell very nice, I have | been
la bouche *bouquet* *bon* *suis* *sortir*

out | and shall go out again, | we shall serve our friends, my servant
domestique

would wait table if I asked her, what time shall you set off?
à *je le lui demandois* *à quelle heure*

I shall not set off before eight o'clock, let us serve our friends, they
avant *heures*

have not slept enough, let them sleep again, I fell asleep while
assez (imp.) *pendant que*

I was reading, he was setting off when I came, this flower smells
lisois *vins* *fleur, f*

very bad, you will lull asleep the child, this work always[2] sends[1]
mauvais *endormir*

me to sleep, waiter, clear the table, I must wait upon my master,
garçon *il faut que je*

you must set out again, smell this scent, do not smell it.
il faut que vous (subj.) *odeur* *la.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in enir.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Tenir, *to hold.* *Ger.* Tenant, *holding.* *Part.* Tenu, *held.*
C. Pres. Avoir tenu, *to have held.* *C. Ger.* Ayant tenu, *having held.*

Indicative.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je tiens, *I hold.*	tu tiens, *thou holdest.*	il tient, *he holds.*
P. Nous tenons, &c.	vous tenez, *ye* or, &c.	ils tiennent, *they ho*

Imperfect.

S. Je tenois, *I did hold.*	tu tenois, *thou did'st hold.*	il tenoit, *he did hold*

P. Nous tenions, *we did hold.*	vous teniez, *ye* or *you did hold.*	ils tenoient, *they did hold.*

Preterite.

S. Je tins, *I held.*	tu tins, *thou held'st.*	il tint, *he held.*
P. Nous tînmes, *we held.*	vous tîntes, *ye* or *you held.*	ils tinrent, *they held.*

Future.

S. Je tiendrai, *I shall* or *will hold.*	tu tiendras, *thou shalt* or *wilt hold.*	il tiendra, *he shall* or *will hold.*
P. Nous tiendrons, *we shall* or *will hold.*	vous tiendrez, *ye* or *you shall* or, *&c.*	ils tiendront, *they shall* or *will hold.*

Conditional.

S. Je tiendrois, *I should, would, could,* or *might hold.*	tu tiendrois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st, &c.*	il tiendroit, *he should, would, could,* or *might hold.*
P. Nous tiendrions, *we should, &c.*	vous tiendriez, *ye* or *you should, &c.*	ils tiendroient, *they should, would, &c.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois
} tenu. {
I have
I had
I had
I shall have
I should, &c. have
} *held.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. que *that* P.	Je tienne, *I may hold.* / Nous tenions, *we may hold.*	tu tiennes, *thou may'st hold.* / vous teniez, *ye* or *you may hold.*	il tienne, *he may hold.* / ils tiennent, *they may hold.*

Preterite.

S. que *that* P.	Je tinsse. *I held* or *might hold.* / Nous tinssions, *we held.*	tu tinsses, *thou heldest.* / vous tinssiez, *ye* or *you held.*	il tînt, *he held.* / ils tinssent, *they held.*

Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie } tenu, { *I have* or *may have* } *held.*
Comp. of Pret. that { J'eusse } tenu, { *I had* or *might have* } *held.*

IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Tiens, *hold thou.*	il tienne, *let him, &c.*
P. Tenons, *let us hold.*	tenez, *hold,* or *hold ye.*	ils tiennent, *let them hold.*

s'abstenir, *to abstain.*
appartenir, *to belong.*
contenir, *to contain.*
detenir, *to detain* (*in prison.*)
obtenir, *to obtain.*
retenir, *to keep back, detain.*
soutenir, *to maintain, to hold, to uphold.*
entretenir, *to keep up.*
maintenir, *to maintain.*
venir, *to come.*
intervenir, *to intervene.*
devenir, *to become.*
convenir, *to agree,* or *to suit.*
disconvenir, *to deny.*
provenir, *to proceed, to come from.*
*contrevenir, *to countervene, to infringe.*
se souvenir de, *to remember.*
se ressouvenir de, *to recollect, to call to mind.*
avenir, *to happen.*
parvenir, *to attain to, to succeed.*
prévenir, *to anticipate.*
revenir, *to come again.*
subvenir à, *to relieve.*
survenir, *to befal, to happen unexpectedly.*

Venir, revenir, devenir, convenir, disconvenir, provenir, parvenir, and *survenir,* are conjugated with *être.*

By means of the verb *venir,* and the Infinitive of another verb, we form an additional past tense, expressing an action done but a very short time past, and answering to the English expression, *to have just*; therefore, we say :

Je viens	de parler,	*I have just spoken.*
Tu viens	,,	*Thou hast* ,,
Il vient	,,	*He has* ,,
Nous venons	,,	*We have* ,,
Vous venez	,,	*You have* ,,
Ils viennent	,,	*They have* ,,
Je venois	,,	*I had* ,,
&c.	&c.	

It will, therefore, be advisable, on the part of the master, to require the learner to say this additional tense, when he is repeating every other verb.

I hold | my pen[2] | badly,[1] why do you not abstain from
mal *vous abstenez vous d*

---

* *Contrevenir* is a law-term.

† *Avenir* is an obsolete verb impersonal. We now say *il arrive,* it happens, &c.

drinking wine, will your brother recollect to call here this evening?
boire (inf.) p. 38, *de passer iei ce soir*

I remember your daughter when she was very young, must I abstain
je me *demoiselle* *jeune* *dois-je m'abstenir*

from eating fruit, I desire that you come and see me to-morrow,
manger (inf.) *veux* (subj.) * *demain*

I am sorry that you will be detained so long in the country, what
faché (subj.) *si longtems* *d'où*

does that proceed from? they have become very miserable, she
cela venir *

would have come back (or) returned if you had not been | at home, |
chez vous

what would have become | of them, | maintain your rights, do not
seroient-ils * *droits,* *ne vous*

converse with him, this does not belong to you, how many |
ent retenor pas *combien de*

persons will this room hold? this bottle does not hold a pint, what
—nes p. 38; *contenir* (ps. ind.) *bouteille* *pinte,* *que*

will become | of me? | if he wish to go, do not detain him, we
je *désire partir*

shall succeed in persuading them.
parvenir à persuader

FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in evoir.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Recevoir, *to receive.* *Ger.* Recevant, *receiving.* *Part.* Reçu, *received.* *C. Pres.* Avoir reçu, *to have received.* *C. Ger.* Ayant reçu, *having received.*

Indicative.

Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je reçois, *I receive.*	tu reçois, *thou receivest.*	il reçoit, *he receives.*
P.	Nous recevons, *we receive.*	vous recevez, *ye* or *you receive.*	ils reçoivent, *they receive.*

Imperfect.

S. Je recevois, *I did receive.*	tu recevois, *thou did'st receive.*	il recevoit, *he did receive.*
P. Nous recevions, *we did receive.*	vous receviez, *ye or you did, &c.*	ils recevoient, *they did receive.*

Preterite.

S. Je reçus, *I received.*	tu reçus, *thou received'st.*	il reçut, *he received.*
P. Nous reçumes, *we received.*	vous reçutes, *ye or you received.*	ils reçurent, *they received.*

Future.

S. Je recevrai, *I shall or will receive.*	tu recevras, *thou shalt receive.*	il recevra, *he shall receive.*
P. Nous recevrons, *we shall receive.*	vous recevrez, *ye or you shall receive.*	ils recevront, *they shall receive.*

Conditional.

S. Je recevrois, *I should receive.*	tu recevrois, *thou should'st, &c.*	il recevroit, *he should would, &c.*
P. Nous recevrions, *we would, &c.*	vous receviez, *ye or you should, &c.*	ils recevroient, *they should, &c.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois

} reçu, &c. {

I have
I had
I had
I shall have
I should, &c. have

} *received.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. que *that*	Je reçoive, *I may receive.*	tu reçoives, *thou mayest receive.*	il reçoive, *he may receive.*
P.	Nous recevions, *we may receive.*	vous receviez, *ye or you, &c.*	ils reçoivent, *they may receive.*

Preterite.

S. que *that*	Je reçusse, *I received, or might have received.*	tu reçusses, *thou received'st.*	il reçût, *he received.*
P.	Nous reçussions, *we received.*	vous reçussiez, *ye received.*	ils reçussent, *they received.*

Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie } reçu, { *I have*, or *may have*, } *received.*
Comp. of Pret. that { J'eusse } &c { *I had*, or *might have*, }

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Reçois, *receive, &c.*	il reçoive, *let him, &c.*
P. Recevons, *let us receive.*	recevez, *receive*, or *receive ye.*	ils reçoivent, *let them receive.*

appercevoir, *to perceive.*
s'appercevoir, (de) *to perceive.*
concevoir, *to conceive.*
devoir, *to owe.*
redevoir, *to owe again.*
décevoir, *to deceive.*
recevoir, *to receive.*
percevoir, (*a law term for* recevoir.)

Décevoir is quite out of use; we now make use of *tromper*.

I shall not receive their excuses, do you perceive | that I | go lame?
* *vous appercevez-vous* *boiter*

I hope (that) you do not owe | your tailor[1] | a long bill,[2] | could
présume que *à* *tailleur* *mémoire* *pourroit-il*

he perceive me at so | great a distance? | she will soon[2] perceive[1] her
de si *loin* *s'appercevoir de*

error, you will not receive those pretty presents from my cousin,
—eur *jolis* *—*

give me what I gave you yesterday, I shall then[2] owe[1] you a hundred
le que *alors* *

pounds, I am not to laugh in school-hours.
livres *devoir* * *rire en classe*

SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in aire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Faire, *to do.* *Ger.* Faisant, *doing.* *Part.* Fait, *done.*
C. Pres. Avoir fait, *to have done.* *C. Ger.* Ayant fait, *having done.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je fais, *I do.*	tu fais, *thou doest* or *do'st.*	il fait, *he does.*
P. Nous faisons, *we do.*	vous faites, *ye* or *you do.*	ils font, *they do.*

Imperfect.

S. Je faisois, *I did.*	tu faisois, *thou did'st.*	il faisoit, *he did.*
P. Nous faisions, *we did.*	vous faisiez, *ye* or *you did.*	ils faisoient, *they did.*

Preterite.

S. Je fis, *I did.*	tu fis, *thou did'st.*	il fit, *he did.*
P. Nous fimes, *we did.*	vous fites, *ye* or, *&c.*	ils firent, *they did.*

Future.

S. Je ferai, *I shall* or *will do.*	tu feras, *thou shalt* or *wilt do.*	il fera, *he shall* or *will do.*
P. Nous ferons, *we shall* or *will do.*	vous ferez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will do.*	ils feront, *they shall* or *will do.*

Conditional.

S. Je ferois, *I should, would, could, &c.*	tu ferois, *thou should'st do.*	il feroit, *he should, would, could do.*
P. Nous ferions, *we should, &c.*	vous feriez, *ye* or *you should, would, do.*	ils feroient, *they should, would do.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois
} fait, { *I have*, *I had*, *I had*, *I shall have*, *I should have* } *done.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. que Je fasse, *I may do.*	tu fasses, *thou mayest do.*	il fasse, *he may do.*
P. that Nous fassions, *we may do.*	vous fassiez, *ye* or *you may do.*	ils fassent, *they may do.*

Preterite.

S. que Je fisse, *I did* or *might do.*	tu fisses, *thou didst.*	il fît, *he did.*
P. Nous fissions, *we did.*	vous fissiez, *ye did.*	ils fissent, *they did.*

Comp. of Pres. que j'aie
Comp. of Pret. that j'eusse
} fait. { *I have* or *may have*, *I had* or *might have* } *done.*

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Fais, *do* or *do thou.*	qu'il fasse, *let him do.*	
P. Faisons, *let us do.*	faites, *do* or *do ye.*	qu'ils fassent, *let them do.*	

Faire, to do or *to make,* is perhaps of more extensive use than any other verb in the language. See Idioms. Its derivatives are:

contrefaire, *to counterfeit.*	refaire, *to do again, to make up again.*
défaire, *to undo.*	satisfaire, *to satisfy.*
redéfaire, *to undo again.*	surfaire, *to exact* or *to ask too much.*

I do what I am bid, what are you doing? I am making a
ce qu' on m'ordonne *que*

copy-book, whatever you do, do it with care, what can she do?
cahier *tout ce que* *peut*

we should not do | any thing | wrong, what am I (or must I) do,
ne *rien de* *mal* *que dois-je* *

what was he to do, undo this, and do it again better, he | gives
devoit * *satisfaire*

satisfaction to | all his customers, that is not well done, I am not
pratique, f.

satisfied, do you not | ask more than you will take? | he would
surfaire

counterfeit your writing, your signature, and even your voice, when
écriture *même* *voix*

she was young, she mimicked every body.
(imp.) *contrefaire* (imp.) *tout le monde.*

SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in aindre, eindre, *and* oindre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Craindre, *to fear.* *Ger.* Craignant, *fearing.* *Part.* Craint, *feared.*
C. Pres. Avoir craint, *to have feared.* *C. Ger.* Ayant craint, *having feared.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je crains, *I fear.*	tu crains, *thou,* &c.	il craint, *he fears.*
P. Nous craignons, &c.	vous craignez, &c.	ils craignent, &c.

Imperfect.

S. Je craignois, *I feared.*	tu craignois, &c.	il craignoit, *he*, &c.
P. Nous craignions, &c.	vous craigniez, &c.	ils craignoient, &c.

Preterite.

S. Je craignis, *I feared.*	tu craignis, *thou*, &c.	il craignit, *he feared.*
P. Nous craignîmes, &c.	vous craignîtes, &c.	ils craignirent, &c.

Future.

S. Je craindrai, *I shall* or *will fear.*	tu craindras, *thou shalt* or *wilt fear.*	il craindra, *he shall* or *will fear.*
P. Nous craindrons, &c.	vous craindrez, &c.	ils craindront, &c.

Conditional.

S. Je craindrois, *I should fear.*	tu craindrois, *thou should'st*, or, &c.	il craindroit, *he should fear.*
Nous craindrions, &c.	vous craindriez, &c.	ils craindroient, &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'ai, *Comp. of Imp.* J'avois, *Comp. of Pret.* J'eus, *Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai *Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois } craint. { *I have* / *I had* / *I had* / *I shall have* / *I should*, &c. *have* } *feared.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. Je craigne, *I may fear.* que	tu craignes, *thou may'st fear.*	il craigne, *he may fear.*
P. Nous craignions, *we may fear.*	vous craigniez, *ye may fear.*	ils craignent, *they may fear.*

Preterite.

S. Je craignisse, *I might fear.* que	tu craignisses, *thou feared'st.*	il craignît, *he feared.*
P. Nous craignissions, *we feared.*	vous craignissiez, *ye feared.*	ils craignissent, *they feared.*

Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie, *Comp. of Pret. that* { J'eusse, } craint, &c. { *I have* or *may have* / *I had* or *might have* } *feared*, &c.

Imperative.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Crains, *fear thou.*	il craigne, *let him fear* qu'
P. Craignons, *let us fear.*	craignez, *fear ye.*	ils craignent, *let*, &c.

Astreindre, *to tie down, to confine to.*
Atteindre, *to reach, to hit.*
Aveindre, *to take, to reach.*
Ceindre, *to gird.*
Contraindre, *to constrain, to compel.*
Enceindre, *to enclose.*
Enfreindre, *to infringe.*
Enjoindre, *to enjoin.*
Eteindre, *to extinguish, to put out.*
Feindre, *to feign, to dissemble.*
Joindre, *to join.*
Oindre, *to anoint.*
Peindre, *to paint, to draw.*
Plaindre, *to pity.*
Se plaindre, *to complain.*
Poindre, *to peep, to dawn.*
Restreindre, *to limit.*
Teindre, *to dye.*

I fear God, and have no other fear, he | is afraid of | displeasing
Dieu n'ai point d'autre crainte craindre de déplaire (inf.)

you, | is he afraid of | you? do not | be afraid of | speaking,
* *de* (inf.)

why did you | tie them down | to such terms? reach me that hat,
* (imp.) *à de tel conditions aveindre moi*

you would not, I hope,[2] | (infringe) break[1] through | the laws of the
* *lois*

establishment, you will paint the house, their way of painting
établissement manière (inf.)

does not please, paint from a drawing or from a painting, no, I
* *ne plait pas d'après dessin peinture non*

had rather paint from nature, do not[3-5] | put out | the candle,
aimerois mieux (inf.) —— (*no artic.*) * *ne-pas*

let us pity the poor, she was always[2] complaining,[1] the sun begins
pauvre, (pl.) *toujours commence*

to peep, we shall die this silk in black, let him limit their demands,
soie en noir —— *es*

has he not (pretended) feigned sickness, you have compelled me to
d'être malade

do it.
faire le.

EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in oître.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

P. Connoître, *to know.* *Ger.* Connoissant, *knowing.* *Part.* Connu, &c.
C. *Pres.* Avoir connu, *to have known.* C. *Ger.* Ayant connu, *having.* &c.

Indicative.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je connois, *I know.*	tu connois, *thou*, &c.	il connoît, *he knows.*
P. Nous connoissons, *we know.*	vous connoissez, *ye know.*	ils connoissent, *they know.*

Imperfect.

S. Je connoissois, *I did know.*	tu connoissois, *thou did'st know.*	il connoissoit, *he did know.*
P. Nous connoissions, *we did know.*	vous connoissiez, *ye* or *you did know.*	ils connoissoient, *they did know.*

Preterite.

S. Je connus, *I knew.*	tu connus, *thou*, &c.	il connut, *he knew.*
P. Nous connumes, *we knew.*	vous connutes, *ye* or *you knew.*	ils connurent, *they knew.*

Future.

S. Je connoîtrai, *I shall* or *will know.*	tu connoîtras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c.	il connoîtra, *he shall* or *will know.*
P. Nous connoîtrons, *we shall know.*	vous connoîtrez, *ye shall* or *will know.*	ils connoîtront, *they shall* or *will know.*

Conditional.

S. Je connoîtrois, *I should know.*	tu connoîtrois, *thou should'st*, &c.	il connoîtroit, *he should*, &c.
P. Nous connoîtrions, *we should*, &c.	vous connoîtriez, *ye should*, &c.	ils connoîtroient, *they should*, &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois

} connu, {

I have
I had
I had
I shall have
I should, &c. have

} *known.*

Subjunctive.

Present.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je connoisse, *I may know.*	tu connoisses, *thou may'st*, &c.	il connoisse, *he may know.*
P. Nous connoissions, *we*, &c.	vous connoissiez, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils connoissent, *they may know.*

Preterite.

S. Je connusse, *I knew*, que or *might know.* tu connusses, *thou knewest.* il connût, *he knew.*

P. Nous connussions, *we knew.* vous connussiez, *ye knew.* ils connussent, *they knew.*

Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie / J'eusse } connu, { *I have* or *may have* / *I had* or *might have* } *known.*
Comp. of Pret. that

IMPERATIVE.

S. Connois, *know thou.* qu' il connoisse, *let him know.*

P. Connoissons, *let us know.* connoissez, *know ye.* or ils connoissent, *let them know.*

The eleven verbs of the eighth conjugation are,

connoître, *to know.*
méconnoître, *not to recollect (a person.)*
reconnoître, *to know again, to acknowledge, to reconnoitre.*
paroître, *to appear.*
disparoître, *to disappear.*
apparoître, *to appear.*
* comparoître, *to appear, to make one's appearance.*
croître, *to grow.*
accroître, *to increase.*
décroître, *to decrease.*
recroître, *to grow again.*

I know him, he knows me, we shall know you, he would have known us, he pretended { not to recollect / feignit de } me, acknowledge your errors, — eurs he will not appear more learned than he really is, savant ne l'est réellement all these stains would disappear, taches, f. would that fault disappear? p. 38, must I appear before the tribunal? faut-il que je (subj.) devant——— these trees do not grow, though arbres he increased his authority, autorité after midsummer the days begin to decrease, la St. Jean commencer the learner must pay great attention to the difference that il faut que l'écolier fasse beaucoup, d'——— ——— qu' there is between the use made of *connoître* and *savoir*, il y a entre usage qu'on fait de de I { should say / dirois

* *Comparoître* is used in law.

for instance, I know a person, a thing by sight, and I know a thing by
par exemple, connoitre personne de vue sais pa

heart.
cœur.

NINTH CONJUGATION. Instruire.

Of Verbs in uire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	instruire,	*to instruct.*
Gerund,	instruisant,	*instructing.*
Participle,	instruit,	*instructed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
J'instruis, *I instruct.*	Nous instruisons, *we instruct.*
tu instruis, *thou instructest.*	vous instruisez, *you instruct.*
il instruit, *he instructs.*	ils instruisent, *they instruct.*

Imperfect.

J'instruisois, *I was*	} *instructing.*	Nous instruisions, *we were*	} *instructing.*
tu instruisois, *thou wast*		vous instruisiez, *you were*	
il instruisoit, *he was*		ils instruisoient, *they were*	

Preterite.

J'instruisis, *I instructed.*	Nous instruisîmes, *we instructed.*
tu instruisis, *thou instructed'st.*	vous instruisîtes, *you instructed.*
il instruisit, *he instructed.*	ils instruisirent, *they instructed.*

Future.

J'instruirai, *I will instruct.*	Nous instruirons, *we will*	} *instruct.*
tu instruiras, *thou wilt instruct.*	vous instruirez, *you will*	
il instruira, *he will instruct.*	ils instruiront, *they will*	

Conditional.

J'instruirois, *I would instruct.*	Nous instruirions, *we would*	} *instruct.*
tu instruirois, *thou wouldest, &c.*	vous instruiriez, *you would*	
il instruiroit, *he would instruct.*	ils instruiroient, *they would*	

J'ai
J'avois
J'ëus } instruit.
J'aurai
J'aurois

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Que *That*

J'instruise, *I may instruct.* — Nous instruisions, *we may, &c.*
tu instruises, *thou mayest, &c.* — vous instruisiez, *you may, &c.*
il instruise, *he may instruct.* — ils instruisent, *they may instruct.*

Preterite.

J'instruisisse, *I might instruct.* — Nous instruisissions, *we might, &c.*
tu instruisisses, *thou mightest, &c.* — vous instruisissiez, *you might, &c.*
il instruisît, *he might instruct.* — ils instruisissent, *they might, &c.*

Que j'aie
" j'eusse } instruit.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Instruisons, *let us instruct.*
2. instruis, *instruct thou.* — instruisez, *instruct you.*
3. qu'il instruise, *let him instruct.* — qu'ils instruisent, *let them, &c.*

Conduire, *to conduct.* — Traduire, *to translate.*
Reconduire, *to reconduct.* — Construire, *to construct*, or *to build.*
Cuire, *to boil, to bake.* — Détruire, *to destroy.*
Recuire, *to boil again.* — Luire, *to shine.*
Enduire, *to plaster*, or *to do over.* — Reluire, *to shine again.*
Induire, *to lead into.* — Nuire, (à) *to hurt.*
Produire, *to produce.* — Déduire, *to deduct.*
Réduire, *to reduce, to bring to.* — Introduire, *to introduce.*
Séduire, *to seduce.*

Do you instruct him? I do not instruct them, let us instruct the ignorant, have you conducted your affairs successfully? we shall
avec succès

see the ladies home ourselves, Mary was cooking the dinner,
*reconduire dames * nous mêmes Marie faisoit cuire diner*

was[2] the meat[1] well cooked? these vegetables are not well done,
étoit-elle f. légumes cuire

the ships were done over with tar, she will lead him into an error,
vaisseaux de goudron induire en —eur

have these trees produced fine fruit? His eloquence will | win over |
p. 38, *de* *séduire*

his enemies, the sun shines, a ray of hope | was shining upon us
——*is* *soleil* *rayon* *espérance* *à*

deduct this sum from the total, shall we introduce these strangers

you must not hurt your fellow-creatures in any way whatever
il ne faut pas *semblables* *de quelque manière que ce soit*

have they hurt her reputation? before he instructed those children
avant qu'

they were very ignorant.

TENTH CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in endre, *and* ondre.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Vendre, *to sell.* *Ger.* Vendant, *selling.* *Part.* Vendu, *sold.*
C. Pres. Avoir vendu, *to have sold.* *C. Ger.* Ayant vendu, *having sold.*

Indicative.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons,*
S. Je vends, *I sell.*	tu vends, *thou sellest.*	il vend, *he sells.*
P. Nous vendons, *we sell.*	vous vendez, *ye* or *you sell.*	ils vendent, *they sell.*

Imperfect.

S. Je vendois, *I did sell.*	tu vendois, *thou did'st sell.*	il vendoit, *he did sell.*
P. Nous vendions, *we did sell.*	vous vendiez, *ye* or *you did sell.*	ils vendoient, *they did sell.*

Preterite.

S. Je vendis, *I sold.*	tu vendis, *thou, &c.*	il vendit, *he sold.*
P. Nous vendîmes, *we sold.*	vous vendites, *ye* or *you sold.*	ils vendirent, *they sold.*

Future.

S. Je vendrai, *I shall* or *will sell.*	tu vendras, *thou shalt* or *wilt sell.*	il vendra, *he shall* or *will sell.*
P. Nous vendrons, *we shall* or *will sell.*	vous vendrez, *ye shall* or *will sell.*	ils vendront, *they shall* or *will sell.*

Conditional.

S. Je vendrois, *I would, could,* &c.	tu vendrois, *thou would'st,* &c.	il vendroit, *he would, could,* &c.
P. Nous vendrions, *we would,* &c.	vous vendriez, *ye would,* &c.	ils vendroient, *they would,* &c. *sell.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois
} vendu. {
I have
I had
I had
I shall have
I should, &c. *have*
} *sold.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. Que Je vende, *I may sell.*	tu vendes, *thou may'st sell.*	il vende, *he may sell.*
P. Que Nous vendions, *that we may sell.*	vous vendiez, *ye may sell.*	ils vendent, *they may sell.*

Preterite.

S. Que Je vendisse, *I sold or might sell.*	tu vendisses, *thou,* &c.	il vendît, *he sold.*
P. Nous vendissions, *we,* &c.	vous vendissiez, *ye sold.*	ils vendissent, *they sold.*

Comp. of Pres. que J'aie
Comp. of Pret. that J'eusse
vendu.
I may have
I might have
sold.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Vends, *sell thou.*	qu'il vende, *let him sell.*
P. Vendons, *let us sell.*	vendez, *sell* or *sell ye.*	qu'ils vendent, *let them sell.*

Attendre, *to expect, to wait for.*
Condescendre, *to condescend, to comply.*
Descendre, *to go down.*
Confondre, *to confound.*
Correspondre, *to correspond.*
Fondre, *to melt.*
Entendre, *to hear, to understand.*
Etendre, *to stretch out.*
Fendre, *to cleave, to split.*
Pendre, *to hang.*
Suspendre, *to sell.*
Refondre, *to cast, new mould.*
Morfondre, *to cause to catch cold.*
Prétendre, *to pretend, to claim.*
Rendre, *to return, to render.*
Répandre, *to spill, to pour down.*
Pondre, *to lay eggs.*
Répondre, *to answer.*
Tondre, *to shear.*

Perdre, *to lose.* *Ger.* perdant, *losing.* *Part.* perdu, *lost.*
Mordre, *to bite.* *Ger.* mordant, *biting.* *Part.* mordu, *bit.*

He sells | any thing | which will bring him money, do you sell
de tout *ce qui peut lui rapporter de l'*

cloth? does he not sell books of every description? has he sold it?
drap *des toute espèce*

has she not sold them? had they not sold their goods? let us not

| wait for | him, formerly he did not condescend to speak to us,
autrefois (imperf.)

come down, sir, somebody wants you, do not come down, he
quelqu'un demande

will confound one thing with another, they would melt all the gold
or

and silver, would she lose[2] | by it,[1] | I have lost my property, take
argent *y* *bien* *prenez*

care the dog does not bite you, she would understand many
garde que * *ne* *plusieurs*

languages, would they extend their kindness so far? there was a
langues *bonté jusque là*

fine lustre suspended by a thick rope, split the wood, will not the
par gros corde f. *bois* * *ne-pas*

guilty[1] be[2] hanged? to what can[2] that[1] tend? he must not re-
seront-ils *à quoi peut-il* *il ne faut pas qu'*

turn that jewel, do not spill the milk, answer me, do not shear
(subj.) *bijou* *lait* *moi*

the sheep.
moutons (pl.)

OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

Reflective Verbs are conjugated with *je me,* tu te, il* or *elle se, nous nous, vous vous, ils* or *elles se.*†

They take *être* in their compound tenses, instead of *avoir.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Se lever, *to rise.*	*Ger.* Se levant, *rising.*	*Part.* Levé, *risen.*
C. Pres. S'être levé, *to have risen.*	*C. Ger.* S'étant levé, *having risen.*	

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je me lève, *I rise.*	Tu te lèves, *thou risest.*	Il se lève, *he rises.*
P. Nous nous levons, *we rise.*	Vous vous levez, *ye* or *you rise.*	Ils se lèvent, *they rise.*

Imperfect.

S. Je me levois, *I did rise,* or rather *I was rising.*	Tu te levois, *thou didst rise.*	Il se levoit, *he did rise.*
P. Nous nous levions, *we did rise.*	Vous vous leviez, *ye did rise.*	Ils se levoient, *they did rise.*

Preterite.

S. Je me levai, *I rose.*	Tu te levas, *thou,* &c.	Il se leva, *he rose.*
P. Nous nous levâmes, *we rose.*	Vous vous levâtes, *ye rose.*	Ils se levèrent, *they rose.*

Future.

S. Je me leverai, *I shall* or *will rise.*	Tu te leveras, *thou shalt* or *wilt rise.*	Il se lovera, *he shall* or *will rise.*
P. Nous nous leverons, *we shall,* &c.	Vous vous leverez, *ye shall* or *will,* &c.	Ils se leveront, *they shall* or *will rise.*

Conditional.

S. Je me leverois, *I should* or *would rise.*	Tu te leverois, *thou would'st* or, &c.	Il se leveroit, *he would* or *should,* &c.
P. Nous nous leverions, *we should* or, &c.	Vous vous leveriez, *ye would,* or, &c.	Ils se leveroient, *they would* or *should,* &c.

Compound of Present.

S. Je me suis levé,‡ *I have risen.*	Tu t'es levé, *thou hast risen.*	Il s'est levé, *he has risen.*
P. Nous nous sommes levés, *we have risen.*	Vous vous êtes levés, *ye have risen.*	Ils se sont levés, *they have risen.*

Compound of Imperfect.

S. Je m'étois levé, *I had risen.*	Tu t'étois levé, *thou hadst risen.*	Il s'étoit levé, *he had risen.*
P. Nous nous étions levés, *we had risen.*	Vous vous étiez levés, *ye had risen.*	Ils s'étoient levés, *they had risen.*

---

* *Me,* &c. myself, &c. instead of *moi-même.* &c. (See Disjunctive Pronouns.)

† Whenever, therefore, a verb is accompanied by *se* or *s'*, it may be considered as a reflective verb.

‡ Feminine: *je me suis levée, elle s'est levée.*

Compound of Preterite.

S. Je me fus levé, *I had risen.*	Tu te fus levé, *thou hadst risen.*	Il se fut levé, *he had risen.*
P. Nous nous fumes levés, *we had, &c.*	Vous vous futes levés, *ye, &c.*	Ils se furent levés, *they had risen.*

Compound of Future.

S. Je me serai levé, *I shall have risen.*	Tu te seras levé, *thou shalt have risen.*	Il se sera levé, *he shall have risen.*
P. Nous nous serons levés, *we shall, &c.*	Vous vous serez levés, *ye, &c.*	Ils se seront levés, *they shall, &c.*

Compound of Conditional.

S. Je me serois levé, *I should have risen.*	Tu te serois levé, *thou would'st have risen.*	Il se seroit levé, *he would have risen.*
P. Nous nous serions levé, *we, &c.*	Vous vous seriez levés, *ye, &c.*	Ils se seroient levés, *they would, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

S. que *that*	Je me lève, *I may rise.*	Tu te lève, *thou may'st rise.*	Il se lève, *he may rise.*
P.	Nous nous levions, *we, &c.*	Vous vous leviez, *ye or you, &c.*	Ils se lèvent, *they may rise.*

Preterite.

S. que *that*	Je me levasse, *I might rise.*	Tu te levasses, *thou, &c.*	Il se levât, *he, &c.*
P.	Nous nous levassions, *we, &c.*	Vous vous levassiez, *ye, &c.*	Ils se levassent, *they, &c.*

Compound of the Present.

S. que *that*	Je me sois levé, *I may have risen.*	Tu te sois levé, *thou mayest have risen.*	Il se soit levé, *he may have risen.*
P.	Nous nous soyons levés, *we may, &c.*	Vous vous soyez levés, *ye may, &c.*	Ils se soient levés, *they may have risen.*

Compound of the Preterite.

S. que *that*	Je me fusse levé, *I might have risen.*	Tu te fusses levé, *thou mightest have risen.*	Il se fût levé, *he might have risen.*
P.	Nous nous fussions levés, *we might, &c.*	Vous vous fussiez levés, *ye might, &c.*	Ils se fussent levés, *they might have, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

	Lève-toi, *rise, or rise thou.*	qu' { Il se lève, *let him rise.*
P. Levons nous, *let us rise.*	Levez-vous, *rise, or rise ye, or you.*	qu' { Ils se lèvent, *let them rise.*

The same IMPERATIVE *negatively.*

	Ne te lève pas, *rise thou not.*	qu' { Il ne se lève pas, *let him not rise.*
P. Ne nous levons pas, *let us not rise.*	Ne vous levez pas, *do not rise.*	qu' { Ils ne se lèvent pas, *let them not rise.*

Reflective Verbs conjugated *interrogatively* and *negatively.*

Inf. Pres. Ne pas se frapper, *not to strike oneself.*—*Gerund.* Ne se frappant pas, *not striking oneself.*—*Participle.* Frappé, *struck.*—*Compounds.* Ne s'être pas frappé, *not to have struck oneself.* Ne s'étant pas frappé, *not having struck oneself.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je ne me frappe pas,	Me frappé-je,	Ne me frappé-je pas,
Tu ne te frappes pas,	Te frappes-tu,	Ne te frappes-tu pas,
Il *or* elle ne se frappe pas,	Se frappe-t-il *or* elle,	Ne se frappe-t-il pas,
Nous ne nous frappons pas,	Nous frappons nous,	Ne nous frappons-nous pas,
Vous ne vous frappez pas,	Vous frappez-vous,	Ne vous frappez-vous pas,
Ils *or* elles ne se frappent pas,	Se frappent-ils *or* elles.	Ne se frappent-ils pas,
I do not strike myself, &c.	*Do I strike myself, &c.*	*Do I not strike myself, &c.*

Imperfect.

Je ne me frappois pas, &c.	Me frappois-je, &c.	Ne me frappois-je pas, &c.
I was not striking myself, &c.	*Was I striking myself, &c.*	*Was I not striking myself, &c.*

Preterite.

Je ne me frappai pas, &c.	Me frappai-je, &c.	Ne me frappai-je pas, &c.
I did not strike myself, &c.	*Did I strike myself, &c.*	*Did I not strike myself, &c.*

Future.

Je ne me frapperai pas, &c.	Me frapperai-je, &c.	Ne me frapperai-je pas, &c.
I shall not strike myself, &c.	*Shall I strike myself, &c.*	*Shall I not strike myself, &c.*

Conditional.

Je ne me frapperois pas, &c.	Me frapperois-je, &c.	Ne me frapperois-je pas, &c.
I should not strike myself, &c.	*Should I strike myself, &c.*	*Should I not strike myself, &c.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

Je ne me suis pas frappé,	Me suis-je frappé,	Ne me suis-je pas frappé,
Tu ne t'es pas frappé,	T'es-tu frappé,	Ne t'es-tu pas frappé,
Il ne s'est pas frappé,	S'est il frappé,	Ne s'est-il pas frappé,
Nous ne nous sommes pas frappés,	Nous sommes nous frappés,	Ne nous sommes nous pas frappés,
Vous ne vous êtes pas frappés,	Vous êtes vous frappés,	Ne vous êtes nous pas frappés,
Ils ne se sont pas frappés,	Se sont-ils frappés,	Ne se sont ils pas frappés,
I have not struck myself, &c.	*Have I struck myself, &c.*	*Have I not struck myself, &c.*

Imperfect.

Je ne m'étois pas frappé, &c.	M'étois-je frappé,	Ne m'étois-je pas frappé, &c.
I had not struck myself, &c.	*Had I struck myself, &c.*	*Had I not struck myself, &c.*

Preterite.

Je ne me fus pas frappé, &c.	Me fus-je frappé, &c.	Ne me fus-je pas frappé, &c.
I had not struck myself, &c.	*Had I struck myself, &c.*	*I had not struck myself, &c.*

Future.

Je ne me serai pas frappé, &c.	Me serai-je frappé, &c,	Ne me serai-je pas frappé, &c.
I shall not have struck myself, &c.	*Shall I have struck myself, &c.*	*Shall I not have struck myself.*

Conditional.

Je ne me serois pas frappé, &c.	Me serois-je frappé, &c.	Ne me serois-je pas frappé, &c.
I should not have struck myself.	*Should I have struck myself;*	*Should I not have struck myself.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Que		Que	
Je ne me frappe pas,	That I may not strike myself, &c.	Je ne me frappasse pas,	That I might not strike myself, &c.
Tu ne te frappes pas,		Tu ne te frappasses pas,	
Il ne te frappe pas,		Il ne se frappât pas,	
Nous ne nous frappions pas.		Nous ne nous frappassions pas,	
Vous ne vous frappiez pas,		Vous ne vous frappassiez pas,	
Ils ne se frappent pas,		Ils ne se frappassent pas,	
Que		Que	
Je ne me sois pas frappé,	That I may not have struck myself, &c.	Je ne me fusse pas frappé	That I might not have struck myself, &c.
Tu ne te sois pas "		Tu ne te fusse pas "	
Il ne se soit pas "		Il ne se fût pas "	
Nous ne nous soyons pas frappés,		Nous ne nous fussions pas frappés,	
Vous ne vous soyez pas, "		Vous ne vous fussiez pas "	
Ils ne se soient pas, "		Ils ne se fussent pas "	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ne te frappe pas,	Do not strike thyself, &c.
Qu'il ne se frappe pas,	
Ne nous frappons pas,	
Ne vous frappez pas,	
Qu'ils ne se frappent pas;	

The following verbs are always conjugated reflectively. See p. 63.

s'abonner,	*to subscribe.*	s'esquiver,	*to steal away.*
s'abstenir de	*to abstain.*	s'évanouir,	*to faint away.*
s'asseoir,	*to sit down.*	s'évaporer,	*to evaporate.*
se coucher,	*to go to bed.*	s'évertuer,	*to strive.*
se débattre,	*to struggle.*	se fier,	*to trust.*
se dédire de,	*to retract.*	se figurer,	*to fancy.*
se défier de,	*to distrust.*	se formaliser,	*to take amiss.*
se dépêcher,	*to make haste.*	s'ingérer,	*to intermeddle.*
se démettre,	*to resign.*	se méfier de,	*to mistrust.*
se désister de,	*to desist*	se méprendre,	*to mistake.*
s'élancer,	*to spring forward*	se moquer de,	*to laugh at.*
s'en aller,	*to go away.*	se mutiner,	*to mutiny.*
s'empresser,	*to be eager* or *anxious.*	se repentir,	*to repent.*
		se reposer,	*to rest.*
s'enfuir,	*to run away.*	se ressouvenir,	*to call to one's recollection.*
s'enraciner,	*to take root.*		
s'envoler,	*to fly away.*	se souvenir,	*to remember.*
s'épanouir,	*to become full blown.*		

I *subscribe* to the library, we *subscribe* for the newspapers, they
cabinet de lecture *pour* *journaux*

subscribe, (imperf.) I | used to *abstain* | from spirits, whenever
liqueurs toutes lesfois

we were fatigued we *sat down*, (pret.) last night I *went to bed* at
que *asseyions* *hier au soir* *à*

eleven o'clock, we *struggled* as much as we could, he *distrusts*
heures *autant* *que* *pumes*

every body, *make haste*, if you please, she *will be anxious* to serve[2]
s'il *plait*

you,[1] if you come they *will run away*, take care that the birds
prenez garde *oiseaux*

do not *fly away*, all these roses remain on the stem till they *are*
ne *restent* *sur tige f. jusqu'à ce qu' elles*

full blown, I should have *run off* if I had known what was | to take place,
su *ce qui devoit arriver*

open the windows | in order that | the smoke *may evaporate*, trust to
afin *que* *fumée* (subj.) *à*

me and I | will use[2] | you[1] well, do not *fancy* that, we hope she
moi *traiterai*

will not *take amiss* what we have done for her, I have *made a mistake*
de *fait*

and am ready to confess it, he *laughed at* her, all the army and
je prêt *avouer le*

fleet have *mutinied*, they would have *repented* their crimes, *let* us
de

rest here, *call to your recollection* all you have heard said, you
tout ce que *entendre dire*

would not have *remembered* what I told you.
vous ai dit.

Observations respecting the Auxiliaries and Participles.

With *avoir* or *être*, expressed or understood, the *past participle* of the next verb should be used.

With *avoir*, it is usually indeclinable.

With *être*, it is made to agree with the nominative, that is, it takes an additional *e*, if the latter be in the feminine, and an *s* if in the plural.

1. Parl-*er-é*.
2. Ag-*ir-i*.
3. Sent-*ir-i*.
4. T-enir-enu.
5. Rec-evoir-u.
6. Cra-indre-int.
7. F-aire-ait.
8. Conn-oitre-u.
9. Instr-uire-uit.
10. Vend-re-u.

He has spoken to your friend, that discourse was well spoken, and
prononcer

well composed, have we not known those men? those men are not
composer

known, arrived at Paris, we went to see our friends, you have
(pl.)

received my letter, my letter is received, he had put out the candle,
f.

the candle was put out, they have made their gowns, their gowns
f.

have been made by them.
par

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Acquerir, *to acquire, to get, to purchase.*

Inf. acquérir, *to acquire.* *Ger.* acquérant, *acquiring.* *Part.* acquis, *acquired.* *C. Pres.* avoir acquis, *to have acquired.* *C. Ger.* ayant acquis, *having acquired.*

Pres.	J'acqui-ers, iers, iert;	Nous acqué-rons, rez, acquièrent.
Imp.	J'acquér-ois, ois, oit;	Nous acquér-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	J'acqu-is, is, it;	Nous acquî-mes, tes, rent.
Fut.	J'acquer-rai, ras, ra;	Nous acquer-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	J'acquer-rois, rois, roit;	Nous acquer-rions, riez, roient.
S.P.	que J'acquièr-e, es, e;	Nous acquér-ions, iez, acquièrent.
Pr.	que J'acqu-isse, isses, ît;	Nous acqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper.	Acquiers, qu'il acquière;	Acqué-rons, rez, qu'ils acquièrent.

Conquérir, to conquer, *requérir*, to require, the last is only used in law: *conquérir* is used only in the infinitive, both preterite and compound tenses. As for *quérir*, to fetch, it has but the infinitive in use, and that immediately after the verbs *aller*, to go, *venir*, to come, and *envoyer*, to send. With these verbs, *chercher* is more commonly used. *S'enquérir de*, to inquire after, is become obsolete; instead of it, we now say *s'informer*.

I acquire strength, we acquire good health, they have conquered
des forces *santé*

countries, (*imperf.*) he was acquiring riches, has he acquired a
des pays *des richesses*

large fortune? let us go and fetch provisions, had[2] Cæsar[1] conquered
grande *des vivres* *avoit-il*

as many nations as Alexander at the same age, will they acquire the
autant de *qu'* *au même âge* *les*

knowledge which is necessary | for them, | I do not think he acquires
connoissances *sont nécessaires* *leur* *croire que* (subj.)

friends, do you think (that) he would have acquired such a
des *croyez-vous* *une telle* *

reputation? send for my hat.

ALLER, *to go.*

Inf. Aller, *to go.* *Ger.* allant, *going.* *Part.* allé, *gone.*
être allé, *to have gone*; étant allé, *having gone.*

Pres.	Je vais,	vas,	va;	allons,	allez,	vont.
Imp.	J'all -ois,	ois,	oit;	all-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	J'all -ai,	as,	a;	all-âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
Fut.	J'i -rai,	ras,	ra;	i -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	J'i -rois,	rois,	roit;	i -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	J'aill-e,	es,	e;	all-ions,	iez,	aillent.
Pret.	J'all -asse,	asses,	ât;	all-assions,	assiez,	assent.
Imper.		va,	aille;	allons,	allez,	aillent.

I am going to London, are you going to France? were they
en

going into the country? I was not going to the fair when you met me.
à *campagne* *foire, f.* *renc. ntrer*

(*Pret.*) We went to Mr. B.'s, did you go there, or did you not?
chez * *y* *y aller*

shall we go? shall you not go? let us all go, let none of us go,
aucun *n'y aille*

why should you go? why should she go? I wish he may go,
désire qu' (subj.)

I should like to go there, I should not like to go there, do you not
aimer *y* *y*

wish you might go? I must go home, do not go home yet,
desirer pouvoir y aller | *il faut que je chez moi* | *ne vous en allez pas encore*

to-day I have gone to several places, did they go | to the | post-office,
en plusieurs endroits | *être elle* *poste, f.*

he would have gone | to your house | if he had known that you were
chez vous *su*

there, we shall have gone abroad, would they have gone to
y *sur le continent* *en*

Italy?
Italie?

S'ASSEOIR, *to sit down.*

Inf. S'asseoir, *to sit down.* *Ger.* s'asséyant, *sitting.* *Part.* assis, *sat.*

Pres.	Je m'ass -ieds,	ieds,	ied;	asse -yons,	yez,	yent.
Imp.	Je m'assey-ois,	ois,	oit;	assey-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je m'ass -is,	is,	it;	ass -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je m'assié -rai,	ras,	ra;	assié -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je m'assié -rois,	rois,	roit;	assié -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je m'assey-e,	es,	e;	asse -yions,	yiez,	yent.
Pret.	Je m'ass -isse,	isses,	ît;	ass -issions,	issiez,	issent.

Imper. Assied-toi, qu'il s'asseye; asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseyent.

se rasseoir, ... *to sit down again.*
seoir, ... *to become, to fit.*

I sit down again because I am tired, will you sit down?
parceque *las* *voulez-vous vous* (*inf.*)

let us sit down on this form, she will not sit down, he would have
sur *banc*

sat down, I have sat down in this | elbow-chair, | sit down on this
dans *fauteuil*

stool, do not sit down, let your brothers take each a seat
tabouret *que* *prennent chacun siège*

and sit down, sit down again, I will not sit down again.
qu'ils *je ne veux pas me*

This bonnet becomes you | wonderfully well, | does this colour
chapeau *supérieurement*

become me? her gown does not fit her well, does that fit them well?
me sied-elle *robe, f* *lui* p. 38 *leur*

green does not suit the complexion.
vert *au teint*

BATTRE, *to beat.*

Inf. battre, *to beat.* *Ger.* battant, *beating.* *Part.* battu, *beaten.* *C. Pres.* avoir battu, *to have beaten.* *C. Ger.* ayant battu, *having beaten.*

Pres.	Je bats,	bats,	bat ;	nous batt-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je bat tois,	ois,	oit ;	nous batt-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je bat-tis,	tis,	tit ;	nour battî-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je batt-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous batt-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je batt-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous batt-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. ♀	Je batt-e,	es,	e ;	nous batt-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr. ♂	Je bat-tisse,	tisses,	tît ;	nous batti-ssions,	ssiez.	ssent.

Imper. Bats, qu'il batte ; batt-ons, ez, qu'ils battent.

Abattre, to pull down ; *combattre*, to fight : *se débattre*, to struggle ; *s'ébattre*, to sport ; *rabattre*, to bate, abate ; and *rebâtre*, to beat again, are conjugated like *battre*.

Do you beat him ? we were beating them unmercifully, do not
sans miséricorde

beat her, beat me | as long as | you like, pray do not beat me,
tant que *voudrez* | *je vous prie*

have you beaten them ? I shall not beat you,. let the architect pull
——*e*

down that house, see how they struggle ! struggle | as long as |
voyez comme *tant que*

you can, they will try to struggle.
pourrez *tâcheront*

BOIRE, *to drink.*

Inf. boire, *to drink.* *Ger.* buvant, *drinking.* *Part.* bu, *drank.* *C. Pres.* avoir bu, *to have drunk.* *C. Ger.* ayant bu, *having drunk.*

Pres.	Je bois,	bois,	boit ;	nous buv-ons,	ez,	boivent.
Imp.	Je buv-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous buv-ions.	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je bus,	bus,	but ;	nous bû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je boi-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous boi-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je boi-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous boi-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. ♀	Je boiv-e,	es,	e ;	nous buv-ions,	iez,	boivent.
Pr. ♂	Je busse,	busses,	bût ;	nous bu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Bois, qu'il boive ; buv-ons, ez, qu'ils boivent.

I am drinking (to) your health, do you drink wine or beer? I
à *santé* *bière*

shall drink neither beer nor spirits, let us drink (some) water, has
ni de la ni des liqueurs

he drank what I | (have) poured out | for him? would he have drank!
ce que *verser* *lui*

she would have drank, we have not drank, may I drink?
voulez-vous que je (subj.)

may we drink? would you have us drink? have you drank[2] enough?[1]
pouvons *(inf.) voudriez vous que nous*

will he have drank? come, gentlemen, drink, you do not drink,
allons, messieurs

ladies.
mesdames.

Bouillir, *to boil.*

Inf. bouillir, *to boil.* *Ger.* bouillant, *boiling.* *Part.* bouilli, *boiled.* *C. Pres.* avoir bouilli, *to have boiled.* *C. Ger.* ayant bouilli, *having boiled.*

Pres.	Je bous,	bous,	bout;	nous bouill-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je bouill-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous bouill-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je bouill-is,	is,	it;	nous bouilli-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je bouilli-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous bouilli-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je bouilli-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous bouilli-rions,	riez,	roient,
S. P.	Je bouill-e,	es,	e;	nous bouill-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je bouill-isse,	isses,	ît;	nous bouilli-ssions,	siez,	ssent.

Imper. Bous, qu'il bouille; bouill-ons, ez, qu'ils bouillent.

Its derivative is *rebouillir*, to boil again. *Faire bouillir*, to boil (any thing.)

The water boils, does the milk boil? this water has not boiled,
p. 38. *lait*

Mary, boil the meat. I have boiled a | leg of mutton, | what shall
—*rie, faites bouillir* *gigot*

you boil? we shall boil some vegetables, he is fuming with rage
légumes *de colère*

that youth | is spurred on | by his | courage, this has no
jeune homme *bouillir* *de*

boiled enough, let it boil again.

CONFIRE, *to pickle, to preserve.*

Inf. Confire, *to pickle.* *Ger.* confisant, *pickling.*
Part. confit, *pickled.*

Pres.	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	confis-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je confis-ois,	ois,	oit;	confis-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	conf -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je confi -rai,	ras,	ra;	confi -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je confi -rois,	rois,	roit;	confi -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je confis-e,	es,	e;	confis-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je conf -isse,	isses,	ît;	conf -issions,	issiez,	issent.

Imper. Confis, qu'il confise; confis-ons, ez, ent.

Suffire, *to suffice, to be sufficient;* suffi, in the participle, which has no feminine; circoncire, *to circumcise,* participle, circoncis.

Have you pickled any girkins this year? no, but I have pickled
des cornichons cette année-ci

some walnuts and cabbage, we shall preserve (some
noix *choux*

apricots and (some) quinces, why do you not preserve some cherries
abricots *coins* *pourquoi* *cerises*

in brandy? are those peaches well preserved?
dans de l'eau de vie

Will this do? no, it will not do, I have not enough, It | is
suffire *en*

sufficient | for me to tell him to | hold his tongue, a guinea a day |
suffire *que je* * *dise lui de* *se taire* *guinée par jour*

is sufficient | for me to live comfortably, let that be sufficient, his
suffire * *pour* *dans l'aisance*

reasons have | been sufficient.
raisons

CONCLURE, *to conclude.*

Inf. Conclure, *to conclude.* *Ger.* concluant, *concluding.* *Part.* conclu, *concluded.* *C. Pres.* Avoir conclu, *to have concluded.* *C. Per.* ayant conclu, *having concluded.*

Pres.	Je conclus,	clus,	clut;	nous conclu-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je conclu-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous conclu-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je conclus,	clus,	clut;	nous conclû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je conclu-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous conclu-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je conclu-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous conclu-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je conclu-e,	es,	e;	nous conclu-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je conclu-sse,	sses,	conclût;	nous conclu-ssions,	iez,	ssent.

Imper. Conclus, qu'il conclue; conclu-ons, ez, qu'ils concluent.

Let us conclude the bargain, have you concluded your story?
marché *histoire*

will they conclude their work this year, do not conclude it, let
année-ci *le* *que*

your friend conclude it, will you have me conclude so soon?
voulez-vous que je *si tôt*

would you have him conclude so late? although I have concluded,
voudriez-vous qu'il *quoique* (subj.)

for fear he should not conclude them in time.
de peur que *à tems*

COUDRE, *to sew.*

Inf. coudre, *to sew.* *Ger.* cousant, *sewing.* *Part.* cousu, *sewed.*
C. Pres. avoir cousu, *to have sewed.* *C. Ger.* ayant cousu, *having sewed.*

Pres.	Je couds,	couds,	oud;	nous cous-ons,	ez,	ent
Imp.	Je cous-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous cous-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je cou-sis,	sis,	sit;	nous cousi-mes,	tes,	sent.
Fut.	Je coud-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous coud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je coud-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous coud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je cou-se,	ses,	se;	nous cous-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je cou-sisse,	sisses,	sît;	nous cousi-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Couds, qu'il couse; cou-sons, sez, qu'ils cousent.

Découdre, *to unsew;* and recoudre, *to sew again.*

I am sewing my gown, we sew this cloth with (some) silk, and
robe, f. *drap* *soie*

not with (some) cotton, sew my gloves, is[2] this[4] well sewed?
gant *—il*

(*Pret.*) I sewed these[2] shirts[3] [very badly, | well, unsew them,
chemises

my coat is not torn, it is only [come unsewn, | we will
déchiré *est*[2] *ne*[1] *que*[5] *découdre*

sew it again, if you will take it off, they have sewed this dress,
voulez *ôter* *habit*

they have unsewed it, and sewed it again, must I sew this? did
faut-il que (subj.) *voulier*

you wish me | to unsew these frills?
(pr. subj.) *collerettes*

CROIRE, *to believe.*

Inf. Croire, *to believe.* *Ger.* croyant, *believing.* *Part.* cru, *believed.*
C. Pres. avoir cru, *to have believed.* *C. Ger.* ayant cru, *having believed.*

Pres.	Je crois,	crois,	croit;	Nous croy-ons,	ez,	croient.
Imp.	Je croy-ois,	oit,	oit;	Nous croy-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je crus,	us,	ut;	Nous crû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je croi-rai,	ras,	ras;	Nous croi-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je croi-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous croi-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je croie,	croies,	croie;	Nous croy-ions,	iez,	croient.
Pr.	Je crusse,	crusses,	crût;	Nous cru-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Crois, qu'il croie; croy-ons, ez, ent.

Its derivative, *accroire*, is used in the infinitive only, and that too with the verb *faire* before it; as, *faire accroire*, or, *en faire accroire*, to impose upon one; and, *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

I believe (that) he is guilty, do you believe it? we do not believe
qu' *coupable* *le*

it, she has always believed it, and will always believe it, I (have)
toujours

thought (that) that would please him, will you make me believe that
que *cela* *plairoit lui* *faire* *accroire*

she is right? you would not believe it, would you believe it?
a raison

I do not believe what they say, we shall believe you when you tell
ce qu' *disent* *quand* *direz*

the truth, believe me, do not believe me, believe her, do
vérité *moi*

not believe him, let us believe them.

COURIR, *to run.*

Inf. Courir, *to run.* *Ger.* courant, *running.* *Part.* couru, *run.*
C. Pres. avoir couru, *to have run.* *C. Ger.* ayant couru, *having run.*

Pres.	Je cours,	cours,	court;	nous cour-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je cour-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous cour-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je cour-us,	us,	ut;	nous courû-mes,	tes,	rent.

Fut.	Je cour-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous cour-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je cour-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous cour-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. ♀	Je cour-e,	es,	e ;	nous cour-ions,	iez,	ient
Pr. ♂	Je cour-usse,	usses,	ût ;	nous couru-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Cours, qu'il cours ; cour-ons, ez, qu'ils courent.

Accourir, *to run to.*
Concourir, *to concur, to conspire.*
Encourir, *to incur, to fall under.*
Discourir, *to discourse.*
Parcourir, *to run over, to survey.*
Recourir, *to have recourse to.*
Secourir, *to succour, to relieve.*

But the compound tenses of *accourir* are conjugated with *ét-e.*

Do you run as fast as I ? I am not running, | come, run to us, |
aussi vite que moi *accourir* *

make haste, they have incurred my anger, we shall incur blame,
dépêchez-vous *colère f.* *blame, m.*

they will discourse upon such a subject, let us | travel about | the
un tel * *sujet*

country, have you run fast ? we shall succour the unfortunate,
pays *vite* *malheureux*

would they have succoured you ? let us not succour indiscriminately
sans descrimination

both the good and the bad.
* *bon, (pl.)* *méchant, (pl.)*

CUEILLIR, *to gather, to pick.*

Inf. Cueillir, *to gather.* *Ger.* cueillant, *gathering.* *Part.* cueilli *gathered.* *C. Pres.* avoir cueilli, *to have gathered.* *C. Ger.* ayant cueilli *having gathered,*

Pres.	Je cueill-e,	es,	e ;	nous cueill-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je cueill-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous cueill-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je cueill-is,	is,	it ;	nous cueilli-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je cueille-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous cueille-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je cueille-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous cueille-rions,	riez,	roient
S. P. ♀	Je cueill-e,	es,	e ;	nous cueill-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr. ♂	Je cueilli-sse,	isses,	ît ;	nous cueilli-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Cueille, qu'il cueille ; cueillons, ez, qu'ils cueillent.

Accuellir, to make welcome ; we say also, *faire accueil* and *faire bon accueil.* *Recueillir,* to collect; to gather together.

I am gathering some fruit, what flowers | are you picking ? |
quelles fleurs

he was gathering some roses, pick me | a 'few | violets, pinks, and
quelques violettes, œillets, du

lilac, we shall pick some peas and beans, have you welcomed your
lilas *pois* *fèves*

friends? he welcomes me whenever he sees me, may I pick
toutes les fois que *puis*

flowers to make a nosegay? I shall collect all the debts due
pour *bouquet* *qui être dues*

| to me, | we have gathered a great deal of fruit from his ob-
beaucoup de

servations, receive them with kindness.
bonté

DIRE, *to say.*

Inf. Dire, *to say, to tell.* *Ger.* disant, *saying.* *Part.* dit, *said.* *C.* *Pres.* Avoir dit. *C. Ger.* Ayant dit.

Pres.	Je dis,	dis,	dit;	nous disons,	dites,	disent.
Imp.	Je dis-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous dis-ions,	iez,	oient.
Part. Past.	Je dis,	dis,	dit;	nous dî-mes,	tes,	rent.
Past. 4.	Je di-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous di-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je dirois,	rois,	roit;	nous di-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je dis-e,	es,	e;	nous dis-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je disse,	disses,	dît;	nous dissions,	dissiez,	dissent.

Imper. Dis, qu'il dise; disons, dites, qu'ils disent.

Contredire, *to contradict.*
Se dédire, *to unsay, to retract.*
Médire de, *to slander, to speak ill.*
Maudire, *to curse.*
Interdire, *to interdict, to forbid.*
Prédire, *to foretell.*
Redire, *to tell again.*

All, except *redire*, make *disez*; *maudire* makes *maudissez.*

What do you say? I say (that) what I | am reading | is very
que *que ce que*

deep, he was saying some very fine things, say what you think,
de *penser*

you will always tell the truth, we shall not contradict him, he

often unsays | what he has said, | she would not slander her | fellow
se dédire * * * *

creatures, | do not slander your acquaintances, he has interdicted
semblables *connoissances*

me from coming into the house, did (has) he predict what would

happen? tell me your tale over again, do not go and tell that
redire

again, you tell and tell again the same thing, you
même chose

contradict—you unsay—you slander—you curse—you interdict—you
contredire

predict—you tell that story | over and over again.

ENVOYER, *to send.*

Inf. Envoyer, *to send.* *Ger.* envoyant, *sending.* *Part.* envoy-é.

Pres.	J'envoi-e,	es,	e;	envoi-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	J'envoy-ois,	ois,	oit;	envoi-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	J'envoy-ai,	as,	a;	envoy-âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
Fut.	J'enver-rai,	ras,	ra;	enver-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	J'enver-rois,	rois,	roit;	enver-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	J'envoi-e,	es,	e;	envoy-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	J envoy-asse,	asses,	ât;	envoy-assions,	assiez,	assent.
Imper.	envoie,		e;	envoy-ons,	ez,	ent.

The two *rr's* in the *future* and *conditional* are pronounced like one, *j'envèrai, j'envèrois. To send for,* is, in French, *envoyer chercher;* the derivative is *renvoyer,* to send back, and also to send away.

I send (to) him (some) money every month, have you sent (to)
tous les mois

them a letter, I shall send (to) her all the necessary provisions,
lettre *nécessaires*

we should send them (some) clothes, if we | could afford it, | send for
en avions le moyen

your brother, do not | send for | me, will they | send

for | you, if he come, send him back again, he has sent away his

servant, will they send away their clerks?
domestique, f. *commis*

FUIR *and* S'ENFUIR, *to shun.*

Fuir is both active and neuter; when neuter, it signifies *to run away;* and *to shun, to avoid,* when active.

Inf. fuir, *to shun.* *Ger.* fuyant, *shunning.* *Part.* fui, *shunned.*
C. Pres. avoir fui, *to have shunned.* *C. Ger.* ayant fui, *having shunned.*

Pres.	Je fuis,	fuis,	fuit;	nous fuy-ons,	ez,	fuient.
Imp.	Je fuy-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous fuy-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je fuis,*	fuis,	fuit;	nous fui-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je fui-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous fui-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je fui-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous fui-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. que	Je fui-e,	es,	e;	nous fuy-ions,	iez,	fuient.
Pr.	Je fui-sse,	sses,	sît;	nous fui-ssions,	ssiez,	ssient.

Imper. Fuie, qu'il fuie; fuy-ons, ez, qu'ils fuient.

I fly from you, you fly from them, does he not fly from us?
* * *

shun vice and love virtue, when they come we | shall run away, |
——*tu* (fut.) *nous enfuirons* †

should you run away if the enemy were to come? he ran away in the
——*mi* * *arrivoit* *au*

moment of danger.

HAÏR, *to hate.*

Inf. haïr, *to hate.* *Ger.* haïssant, *hating.* *Part.* haï, *hated.*
C. Pres. avoir haï, *to have hated.* *C. Ger.* ayant haï, *having hated.*

Pres.† Je hais, ais, it; nous haïss-ons, ez, ent.
Imper. Hai, qu'il haïsse; haïssons, ez, qu'ils haïssent.

---

* This preterite is seldom used; instead of *je fuis,* and *je m'enfuis,* we say (when the verb is neuter,) *je pris la fuite,* from *prendre la fuite,* to run away; and *j'évitai,* from *éviter,* to avoid, to shun, (when it is active.)

† The other tenses are like *agir.*

I hate affectation, we do not hate him, he hates whatever is
tout ce qui

quackery, formerly I | used to hate | that language, he hated
charlatanisme, autrefois (imp.) *langue*

mathematics, but now he | is fond of | them, I do not hate her,
à present *aimer*

although I hated them, hate vicious pleasures, let us hate no
——*eux* *plaisirs* *ne*

body.
personne

LIRE, *to read.*

Inf. lire, *to read.* *Ger.* lisant, *reading.* *Part.* lu, *read.* C. *Pres.* avoir lu, *to have read.* C. *Ger.* ayant lu, *having read.*

Pres.	Je lis,	lis,	lit;	nous lis-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je lis-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous lis-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je lus,	lus,	lut;	nous lû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je li-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous li-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je li-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous li-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je lis-e,	es,	e;	nous lis-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je lusse,	lusse,	lût;	nous lu-ssions,	ssez,	ssent.

Imper. Lis, qu'il lise; li-sons, sez, qu'ils lisent.

Elire, *to elect,* and relire, *to read again.*

I am reading a very interesting book, he does not read out
intéressant *ouvrage* *à haute*

loud, do they read every new publication? we were reading
voix *toutes les nouveau* ——

the newspapers when you | came in, | last year I read almost all
journal *entrer* (imp.) *presque*

the new publications, read | over and over | that excellent
nouvelles productions *lire* *relire*

work, | will you have me | read all | day long? | we shall elect
ouvrage *voulez-vous que je* (subj.) *journée*

another member, have they elected a new governor, what have
——*eur*

you read ? will that do ?* let us read our lesson.
suffice *leçon*

METTRE, *to put.*

Inf. Mettre, *to put.* *Ger.* mettant, *putting.* *Part.* mis, *put.* *C. Pres.* avoir mis, *to have put.* *C. Ger.* ayant mis, *having put.*

Pres.	Je mets,	mets,	met;	nous mett-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je mett ois,	ois,	oit;	nous mett-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je mis,	mis,	mit;	nous mî-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je mett-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous mett-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je mett-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous mett-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je mett-e,	es,	e;	nous mett-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je miss-e,	misses,	mît;	nous missions,	missiez,	missent.

Imper. Mets, qu'il mette; Mett-ons, ez, qu'ils mettent.

admettre, *to admit.*
commettre, *to commit.*
démettre, *to remove.*
se démettre, *to put out.*
émettre, *to deliver, to utter*
omettre, *to omit.*
s'entremettre, *to intermeddle.*
permettre, *to permit.*
promettre, *to promise.*
remettre, *to deliver, to put back, to put off.*
compromettre, *to compromise.*
soumettre, *to submit.*
transmettre, *to transmit, to convey, to make over.*

I am putting | every thing | in order, he | puts on | a pair of
tout *en ordre* *mettre*

clean[2] stockings[1] every day, lay your book on the table, she
blancs *bas* *tous les jours* *mettre* *sur*

never[2] will commit[1] | such[2] an[1] action, we were | sitting down |
telle *un* *se mettre*

to table when you came in, we shall not permit him to interrupt
entrates * *de interrompre*

her, do you promise me to do that? he has resigned his
de *se démettre de*

commission, they had omitted a figure, shall I permit him to read ?
charge, f. *chiffre, m.* *de*

these books? we are not permitted to sing, will you have
il ne nous est pas permis de chanter *voulez-vous que je* *

* Turn—that will it do.

me put this letter in the post? would you have him put off
* (subj.) *à* *poste, f.* *voudriez-vous qu'ils* * (pr. subj.)

this affair till to-morrow, to whom shall I deliver this parcel? to
à *demain* *remettre* *paquet*

which person would you make over this property? we shall never[1]
quelle ——*té*

submit[1] to his power, should you have submitted, let us not com-
se

promise their reputation, be careful you do not commit
prenez garde de *se compromettr*

yourself.

MOUDRE, *to grind.*

Inf. moudre, *to grind.* *Ger.* moulant, *grinding.* *Part.* moulu, *ground.* *C. Pres.* avoir moulu, *to have ground.* *C. Ger.* ayant moulu, *having ground.*

Pres.	Je mouds,	mouds,	moud ;	nous moul-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je moul-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous moul-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je mou-lus,	lus,	lut ;	nous moulû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je moud-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous moud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je moud-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous moud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je moule,	es,	e ;	nous moul-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je mou-lusse,	lusses,	lût ;	nous moulu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Mouds, qu'il moule ; moul-ons, ez, qu'ils moulent.

Its derivatives are, *émoudre* or *rémoudre,* to whet, to set an edge ; and *remoudre,* to grind again.

I am grinding coffee, do you grind your corn? he has ground
du café *blé*

pepper[2] enough,[1] you will not grind these seeds, shall you no
poivre *assez de* *graines*

grind this wheat? grind it, do not grind it, have you ground it
froment

must I grind them? would you have him grind that rye?
faut-il que *voudriez-vous qu'il* (pr. subj.) *seigle*

have you ground the knives? let them grind my scissors.
couteaux *ciseaux*

MOURIR *and* SE MOURIR, *to die.*

Inf. Mourir, *to die.* *Ger.* mourant, *dying.* *Part.* mort, *dead.* *C. Pres.* être mort, *to have died.* *C. Ger.* étant mort, *having died.*

Pres.	Je meurs,	meurs,	meurt;	nous mour-ons,	ez,	meurent.
Imp.	Je mour-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous mour-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je mour-us,	us,	ut;	nous mourû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je mour-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous mour-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je mour-rois,	roit,	roit;	nous mour-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je meur-e,	es,	e;	nous mour-ions,	iez,	meurent.
Pr.	Je mou-russe,	russes,	rût;	nous mouru-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Meurs, qu'il meure; mour-ons, ez, qu'ils meurent.

He will soon[2] die,[1] we are all to die, these flowers will soon[2]
bientôt *devoir tous* * *fleurs*

die[1] if you do not water them, I am starving, he is longing to
arroser *mourir de faim.* *il meurt d'envie de*

see her, let us die rather than abandon our posts, is he dead?
plutôt que d'——ner *poste (sing.)*

is he not dead? they would die if we did not take so much care
si *prenions tant de* *soin*

of them, she would have died with fright, must I die? would
de eux *de frayeur* *faut-il que je* *voudriez*

you have me die? let him die, let the criminals die, let us
que * *(pr. subj.)*

not die like cowards, I saw him before he died, he (has) died like
en lâches *vis* *avant qu'* *(subj.)* *en*

[1] a hero.
* *héros*

MOUVOIR, *to move.*

Inf. Mouvoir, *to move.* *Ger.* mouvant, *moving.* *Part.* mu, *moved.* *C. Pres.* avoir mu, *to have moved.* *C. Ger.* ayant mu, *having moved.*

Pres. Je meus, meus, meut; nous mouv-ons, ez, meuvent.
Imp. Je mou-vois, vois, voit, *&c.* *Fut. and Cond (if used)* mouvrai *and* mouvrois, *&c.*
Sub. Je meuv-e, es, e; nous mouv-ions, iez, meuvent.
The preterite tenses, Je mus, Je musse, *are very seldom used.*
Imper. Meus, qu'il meuve; Mouv-ons, ez, qu'ils meuvent.

Mouvoir is a technical term. In common conversation we use *remuer*. Its derivatives are, *émouvoir*, to move, and *promouvoir*, to promote.

This spring causes the machine[2] to move,[1] do not move, she was
ressort faire *remuer*

very much moved at the recital of my misfortunes, the officers have
récit

been promoted.

NAITRE, *to be born.*

Inf. Naître, *to be born.* *Ger.* naissant, *being born.* *Part.* né, *born.*
C. Pres. être né, *to have been born.* *C. Ger.* étant né, *having been born.*

Pres.	Je nais,	nais,	nait;	nous naiss-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je naiss-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous naiss-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je na-quis,	quis,	quit;	nous naqui-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je naît-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous naît-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je naît-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous naît-rions,	riez,	roient.
S P.	Je naiss-e,	es,	e;	nous naiss-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je naqu-isse,	isse,	ît;	nous naqui-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imp. Nais, qu'il naisse; naiss-ons, ez, qu'ils naissent.

The derivative of *naître* is *renaître*, to be born again.—*Paître*, to graze, follows the same conjugation, but has no participle nor preterite tenses in use; though *se repaître*, to feed upon, has *repu* for its participle, and *repus, repusse*, for its preterite.

This child was born in the year 1827, when were you born?
est *en*

are we not all born liable to many infirmities? Milton was born in
sujet à beaucoup de *pr.* à

London, arts and sciences will revive under the reign of so liberal[5]
renaître sous *règne* *libéral*

a[1] king,[2] my cows, my sheep, and (my) horses graze in the fields
vaches *moutons* *cheval* *dans* *champ*

around.
d'alentour.

OUVRIR, *to open.*

Inf. Ouvrir, *to open.* *Ger.* ouvrant, *opening.* *P. rt.* ouvert, *open.* *C. Pres.* avoir ouvert, *to have opened.* *C. Ger.* ayant ouvert, *having opened.*

Pres.	J'ouvr-e,	es,	e;	nous ouvr-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	J'ouvr-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous ouvr-ions,	iez,	oient.
Prt.	J'ouvr-is,	is,	it;	nous ouvr-îmes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	J'ouvri-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous ouvri-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	J'ouvri-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous ouvri-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	que J'ouvr-e,	es,	e;	nous ouvr-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pt.	si J'ouvr-isse,	isses,	ît;	nous ouvri-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Ouvre, qu'il ouvre; ouv-rons, ez, qu'ils ouvrent.

Souffrir, to suffer, *or* to bear, and *offrir*, to offer, with its derivative *mésoffrir*, to underbid (very little used), *couvrir*, to cover, *découvrir*, to discover, and *recouvrir*, to cover again, are conjugated after *ouvrir*.

Open the door, and shut the windows. I was opening a letter, did
porte, f. *fermer* *fenêtre*

he not open his eyes? shall I suffer great pain? you will not
(pret.) *les yeux* *une grande douleur*

suffer her, I hope, to speak with impertinence, offer her a
* *espérer, qu'elle* *lui*

nosegay, do not offer them any money, have you discovered the
bouquet *leur d' argent*

truth of what he says? have you opened the box? had he not
vérité *ce que dit* *boîte, f.*

covered the table? uncover all the furniture, and cover it again,
table *meuble* (pl.) (pl.)

we should not discover our way of thinking, open your mouth,
manière *penser* *la bouche*

POUVOIR, *to be able.*

Inf. Pouvoir, *to be able.* *Ger.* pouvant, *being able.* *Part.* pu, *been able.* *C. Pres.* avoir pu, *to have been able.* *C. Ger.* Ayant pu, *having been able.*

Pres.	Je puis,*	peux,	peut;	nous pouv-ons,	ez,	peuvent.
Imp.	Je pouv-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous pouv-ions,	iez,	oient.

* *Conversation and poetry allow* Je peux.

Pret.	Je pus,	pus,	put;	nous pû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je pour-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous pour-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je pour-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous pour-rions,	riez,	roient.

One r *only is sounded in those two tenses.*

S. P.	Je pui-sse,	sses,	sse;	nous puiss-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je pusse,	pusses,	pût;	nous puss-ions,	ssiez,	ssent.

No *Imperative.*

I can do that, can you bear that burden? I do not think (that)
faire *supporter fardeau* *croire que*

you can, formerly you | were able to | stand such losses,
le (*subj.*) *supporter de tel perte, f.*

but now you cannot, I shall be able to make all I want myself,
mais à present le *faire tout ce dont j'aurai besoin*

could you give him that? I cannot sing, because I have
chanter par ce que

a cold, could she not learn? we did not think (that) you could
rhume *apprendre* *pensions que pussiez*

speak so loud.
fort.

PRENDRE, *to take.*

Inf. Prendre, *to take.* *Ger.* prenant, *taking.* *Part.* pris, *taken.* *C. Pres.* avoir pris, *to have taken.* *C. Ger.* ayant pris, *having taken.*

Pres.	Je prends,	prends,	prend;	nous pren-ons,	ez,	nent.
Imp.	Je pren-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous pren-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je pris,	pris,	prit;	nous pri-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je prend-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous prend-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je prend-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous prend-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je prenn-e,	es,	e;	nous pren-ions,	iez,	nent.
Pr.	Je prisse,	prisses,	prît;	nous pri-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Prends, qu'il prenne; Pren-ons, ez, qu'ils prennent.

Its derivatives are, *apprendre,* to learn; *désapprendre,* to unlearn; *comprendre,* to understand; *entreprendre,* to undertake; *se méprendre,* to be mistaken; *reprendre,* to

correct, to chide, also to take again ; and *surprendre,* to surprise: all which are conjugated like their primitive.

I take | what is given to me | do not take what does not
ceque on me donne * * *ce qui*

belong to you, he will learn French, if you do not learn
appartenir * *le François*

properly, you | will have | to unlearn, they would comprehend
comme il faut *serez obligé de*

better if you would explain only a little | at a time, although he
expliquer ne que *à la fois* *quoi qu'*

learns with facility, yet I think he has undertaken[2] | too much[1] |
——*té* *crois qu'* *trop*

she had surprised every body, correct me whenever I speak
tout le monde *toutes les fois que*

wrong, he has spoken warmly, but we took him up sharply,
mal *avec chaleur* *reprendre le* *vivement*

they would have undertaken it, you surprise her.

REVETIR, *to invest with, to bestow ;* or *to confer a dignity upon any one.*

Inf. Revêtir, *to invest.* *Ger.* revêtant, *investing.* *Part.* revêtu, *invested.* *C. Pres.* avoir revêtu, *to have invested.* *C. Ger.* ayant revêtu, *having invested.*

Pres.	Je rev-êts,	êts,	êt ;	nous revêt-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je revêt-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous revêt-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je revêt-is,	is,	it ;	nous revêtî-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je revêti-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous revêti-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je revêti-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous revêti-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je revêt-e,	es,	e ;	nous revêt-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je revêt-isse,	isses,	ît ;	nous revêti-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Revêts, qu'il revête ; revêt-ons, ez, qu'ils revêtent.

Vêtir, to clothe, is used only in the infinitive, and part. *vêtu,* clothed: instead of the other tenses, we make use of *habiller. Se revêtir,* to put on one's clothes, is sometimes used, though not throughout: but *travestir,* to disguise, and *investir,* to invest, are regular verbs of the se-

cond conjugation, although they are seldom used but in the infinitive, the participle, future, conditional, and preterites.

He was dressed like a beggar, they had a dignity
en mendiant *furent revêtus de cette*

conferred on them, have they not clothed and fed the poor
dignité *revêtir* *nourrir* *pauvres*

of their parish?
paroisse

RESOUDRE, *to resolve.*

Inf. Résoudre, *to resolve.* *Ger.* résolvant, *resolving.* *Part.* résolu, *resolved.* *C. Pres.* avoir résolu, *to have resolved.* *C. Ger.* ayant résolu, *having resolved.*

Pres.	Je résouds,	souds,	soud ;	nous résolv-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je résolv-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous résolv-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je réso-lus,	lus,	lut ;	nous résolû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je résoud-rai,	-ras,	ra ;	nous résoud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je résoud-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous résoud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je résolv-e,	es,	e ;	nous résolû-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je reso-lusse,	lusses,	lût ;	nous résolu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Résous, qu'il résolve ; résolv-ons, ez, qu'ils résolvent.

Absoudre, to absolve, which makes *absous* in the participle. It has no preterite.

I am solving a problem, we resolve every question put to us,
——*ême* *toutes les* *qu'on nous fait*

he resolved to set off, we were resolved to defend ourselves,
de partir *de* ——*dre nous*

we think you could not solve these problems
pourriez

RIRE, *to laugh.*

Inf. Rire, *to laugh.* *Ger.* riant, *laughing.* *Part.* ri, *laughed.* *C. Pres.* avoir ri, *to have laughed.* *C. Ger.* ayant ri, *having laughed.*

Pres.	Je ris,	ris,	rit ;	nous ri-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je ri-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous ri-ions,	iez,	oient.

Pret.	Je ris,	ris,	rit ;	nous ri-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je ri-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous ri-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je ri-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous ri-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je ri-e,	es,	e ;	nous ri-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je risse,	risses,	rît ;	nous ri-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Ris, qu'il rie ; rions, ez, qu'ils rient.

Sourire, to smile, is conjugated like *rire.*

Is he laughing ? we are not laughing, he was laughing just
tout-

now, it is better to laugh than cry, we cannot
à-l'heure *vaut mieux* *que de pleurer* *ne pouvons nous*

help laughing, laugh | as long as | you like, will you not
empêcher de (inf.) *tant que* *voudrez* *ne voulez-vous*

have me laugh ? she smiles when you speak to her, your impatience
que je

makes him laugh.

ROMPRE, *to break.*

Inf. Rompre, *to break.* *Ger.* rompant, *breaking.* *Part.* rompu, *broken.* *C. Pres.* avoir rompu, *to have broken.* *C. Ger.* ayant rompu, *having broken.*

Pres.	Je romps,	romps,	rompt ;	nous rom-pons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je romp-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous rom-pions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je rom-pis,	pis,	pit ;	nous rompi-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je romp-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous romp-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je romp-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous romp-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je romp-e,	es,	e ;	nous romp-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je romp-isse,	isses,	ît ;	nous romp-issions,	issiez,	issent.

Imper. Romps, qu'il rompe ; romp-ons, ez, qu'ils rompent.

Its derivatives are, *corrompre,* to corrupt ; and *interrompre,* to interrupt.

I have broken my arm, you will break this stick in two,
me suis rompre le bras

| are you afraid | I should break his leg? break your chains
craignez-vous *que je ne* * *lui* (subj.) *la* ——*e,*

do not corrupt this youth, he has corrupted our morals, let us
jeune homme *mœurs*

not interrupt him, did (has) he interrupt you? we corrupted the

soldiers, they have been corrupted.
soldats

SAVOIR, *formerly* SÇAVOIR, *to know.*

Inf. Savoir, *to know.* *Ger.* sachant, *knowing.* *Part.* su, *known.* C. *Pres.* avoir su, *to have known.* C. *Ger.* ayant su, *having known.*

Pres.	Je sai, *or* Je sais,	sais,	sait ;	nous sav -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je sav -ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous sav -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je sus,	sus,	sut ;	nous sû -mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je sau -rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous sau -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je sau -rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous sau -rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je sach-e,	es,	e ;	nous sach-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je susse,	susses,	sût ;	nous su -ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imp. Sache, quil sache ; sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.

I know my lesson, he did not know what you said, she will
leçon *ce que* *disiez*

know (French)[2] (very well),[1] do they know mathematics, you
le François *les* ——*ques*

know that gentleman, do you think we do not know what they
connoître *croire que*

say? you would have known how to draw, what do they know?
dire *dessiner*

must those young gentlemen know Latin and Greek? do you know
faut-il que jeunes gens (subj.)

who I am? know that I will not be insulted.
qui *ne veux* *insulté.*

SUIVRE, *to follow.*

Inf. Suivre, *to follow.* *Ger.* suivant, *following.* *Part.* suivi, *followed.* C. *Pres.* avoir suivi, *to have followed.* C. *Ger.* ayant suivi, *having followed.*

Pres.	Je suis,	suis,	suit ;	nous suiv-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je suiv-ois,	ois,	oit ;	nous suiv-ions,	iez,	oient.

Pret.	Je suiv-is,	vis,	vit ;	nous suiv-îmes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je suiv-rai,	ras,	ra ;	nous suiv-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je suiv-rois,	rois,	roit ;	nous suiv-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je suiv-e,	es,	e ;	nous suiv-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je sui-visse,	visses,	vît ;	nous suivi-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Suis, qu'il suive ; suivons, ez, qu'ils suivent.

Its derivatives are, poursuivre, *to pursue ;* and s'ensuivre, (which is used only in the third persons of both numbers,) *to follow.*

I follow them, do you follow the road (which) I (have) told you ?
que *indiquée*

follow us, do not follow her, I shall not follow this plan, would

he follow the advice which we should give him ? will you (have me)
avis *que* *que je*

follow this path ? follow me, do not follow me, let the soldiers
(subj.) *sentier*

follow their officers, let us pursue the enemy, it follows from what
il s cusuit

you say that we are wrong.
que *avons tort.*

VAINCRE, *to vanquish.*

Inf. Vaincre, *to vanquish.* *Ger.* vainquant, *vanquishing.* *Part.* vaincu, *vanquished.*

Pres.	Je vain -cs,	cs,	c ;	vainqu-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je vainqu-ois,	ois,	oit ;	vainqu-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je vainqu-is,	is,	it ;	vainqu-îmes,	ites,	irent.
Fut.	Je vainc -rai,	ras,	ra ;	vainc -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je vainc -rois,	rois,	roit ;	vainc -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je vainqu-e,	es,	e ;	vainqu-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je vainqu-isse,	isses,	ît ;	vainqu-issions,	issiez,	ent.

Imper. Vaincs, qu'il vainque ; vainquons, ez, ent.

Convaincre, *to convince, to convict.*

He has conquered the enemy, Cæsar said, I came, I saw, I
vins (pret.) *vis*

conquered, he will conquer his passions, have they conquered their antagonists?
rivaux

VALOIR, *to be worth.*

Inf. Valoir, *to be worth.* *Ger.* valant, *being worth.* *Part.* valu, *been worth.* *C. Pres.* avoir valu, *to have been worth.* *C. Ger.* ayant valu, *having been worth.*

Pres.	Je vaux,	vaux,	vaut;	nous val-ons,	ez,	ent,
Imp.	Je val-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous val-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je val-us,	us,	ut;	nous valû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je vaud-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous vaud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je vaud-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous vaud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je vaill-e,	es,	e;	nous val-ions,	iez,	vaillent.
Pr.	Je val-usse,	usses,	ût;	nous valu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Vaux, qu'il vaille; val-ons, ez, qu'ils vaillent.

Revaloir, *to be ĕven with one,* and prévaloir, *to prevail;* but *prévaloir* makes ĭn the present subj. *prévale,* and not *prévaille.*

That | is not worth | the trouble, this book | is worth | a guinea,
en valoir ne-pas peine, f.

| how much | is[2] this[1] worth? what are these knives[2] and forks[3]
combien vaut

worth?[1] this house | will be worth | a great deal, what do you
beaucoup combien

think this is worth? this estate would be worth | a great deal | more,
que (subj.) *terre beaucoup*

if it were well taken care of, | his house is worth more than mine,
si elle soignée

| it is not worth while | to remove, his opinion prevailed.
il ne vaut pas la peine de déménager

VIVRE, *to live.*

Inf. Vivre, *to live.* *Ger.* vivant, *living.* *Part.* vécu, *lived.* *C. Pres.* avoir vécu, *to have lived.* *C. Ger.* ayant vécu, *having lived.*

Pres.	Je vis,	vis,	vit;	nous viv-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je viv-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous viv-ions,	iez,	oient.

Pret.	Je vécus,	cus,	cut;	nous vécû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je viv-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous viv-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je viv-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous viv-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je vive,	es,	e;	nous viv-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je vé-cusse,	cusses,	cût;	nous vécu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Vis, qu'il vive; vi-vons, vez, qu'ils vivent.

Its derivatives are, revivre, *to revive*; and survivre, *to outlive*.

I live happy with my family, we live in misery, you used
famille *dans la misère* *

to live in abundance, if I must live, let me
* (imperf.) *dans l' abondance* *s'il faut* (subj.) *permettez-moi*

live in my native country, surrounded with my friends, I have
de *patrie* *entouré de*

lived ten years in the country, have they lived only a short time?
aus *n'* *que peu de*

would they have lived long? they could not survive their parents,
longtems *survivre à*

we seem to live again in our children.
sembler * *revivre* *en*

Voir, *to see*.

Inf. Voir, *to see*. *Ger.* voyant, *seeing*. *Part.* vu, *seen*. *C. Pres.* ayoit vu, *to have seen*. *C. Ger.* ayant vu, *having seen*.

Pres.	Je vois,	vois,	voit;	nous voy-ons,	ez,	voient.
Imp.	Je voy-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous voy-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je vis,	vis,	vit;	nous vî-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je ver-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous ver-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je ver-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous ver-rions,	riez,	roient.

In those two tenses, pronounce double r *like a single one.*

S. P.	Je voi-e,	es,	e;	nous voy-ions,	iez,	voient.
Pr.	Je visse,	visses,	vît;	nous vissions,	vissiez,	vissent.

Imp. Vois, qu'il voie; voy-ons, ez, qu'ils voient.

Entrevoir, *to have a glimpse of*; pourvoir, *to provide*; prévoir, *to foresee*; and revoir, *to see again*; but *pourvoir* and *prévoir* make their future and conditional in *oirai* and *oirois* (*je pourvoirai, tu prévoiras, il pourvoiroit, nous pré-*

voirions, &c.) ; *pourvoir* has its preterite tenses in *us* and *usse (je pourvus, je pourvusse.)*

Let us see, I do not see the object of which you speak, do you
objet

see it now? | just now | I saw the stars, I saw you the
à présent *tout-à-l'heure* (imp.) *étoiles, f.*

other day? we saw them, I did not see her, did he see you?

did he not see you? we shall see what we are to do, I should
ce que *devoir* *

see better if I had a candle, we | have a foresight of | what
si *chandelle* *prévoir*

will happen, although I foresee what may happen, for fear
arriver *quoique* *peut* *de peur que*

you should not provide for the wants of your family, let us foresee
à *besoins*

the accidents.

VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

Inf. Vouloir, *to be willing.* *Ger.* voulant, *being willing.* *Part.* voulu, *been willing.* *C. Pres.* avoir voulu, *to have been willing.* *C. Ger.* ayant voulu, *having been willing.*

Pres.	Je veux,	veux,	veut;	nous voulons,	ez,	veulent.
Imp.	Je voul-ois,	ois,	oit;	nous voulions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je voulus,	us,	ut;	nous voulû-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je voud-rai,	ras,	ra;	nous voud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je voud-rois,	rois,	roit;	nous voud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je veuill-e,	es,	e;	nous voul-ions,	iez,	veuillent.
Pr. C.	Je voul-usse,	usses,	ût;	nous voul-ussions,	ssiez,	ssent.

No *Imperative.*

Will you go with me? no, I will not, what will you have, (some)
aller *le* *

beef or (some) mutton? I should like | to have | some beef, we
vouloir *

did not agree, he wished to spend money, and I *wished*
s'accorder (imp.) * *dépenser* *moi je*

to save, if he see you do that, he | will wish | to do | the same, |
épargner *voit* *vouloir* *en* *autant*

do you think I would attempt to exculpate him? I | will have |
croyez *tenter* *de disculper* *le* *vouloir que*

you do that, you | will not have me | do this, will
(subj.) *cela* *vouloir que* *je* (subj.) *vouloir*

you have them do that?
que *ils* (subj.)

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Some of the following verbs are of common use in the tenses and persons hereafter mentioned.

Inf. bruire, *to rustle.* *Ger.* bruyant. *Imp.* il bruyoit, ils bruyoient.

Inf. braire, *to bray like an ass.* *Pres.* il brait, ils braient. *Fut.* il braira, ils brairont. *Cond.* il brairoit, ils brairoient.

Inf. Choir, *to fall.* *Part.* chu. Se laisser choir, *to fall (accidentally.)*

Inf. échoir, *to expire, to fall by lot, to happen.* *Ger.* échéant. *Part.* échu. *Pres.* il échoit. *Pret.* j'échus, &c. *Fut.* j'écherrai, &c. *Cond.* j'écherrois, &c.

Inf. déchoir, *to decay*; like échoir, except, *Ind. pres.* je déchois, &c. *Imper.* déchois, &c. *Sub. pres.* je déchoie, &c.

Inf. clore, *to close* *Part.* clos. *Pres. ind.* je clos, tu clos, il clot. *Fut.* je clorrai, tu clorras, il clorra. *Cond.* je clorrois, tu clorrois, il clorroit.

Inf. enclore, *to inclose*, is conjugated like *clorre.*

Inf. éclore, *to be hatched.* *Part.* éclos. *Pres. ind.* il éclot, ils éclosent. *Fut.* il éclora, ils écloront. *Cond.* il écloroit, ils écloroient. *Pres. subj.* qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent.

Inf. faillir, *to fail.* *Part.* failli. *Preter. ind.* je faillis, &c. Défaillir, *to faint*, is conjugated in the same manner, and makes besides *Ind. pres.* nous défaillons. *Imp.* je défaillois, &c.

Inf. frire, *to fry.* *Part.* frit. *Pres. ind.* je fris, tu fris, il frit. *Fut.* je frirai, tu friras, il frira, nous frirons, vous frirez, ils friront. *Cond.* je fri-rois, rois, roit, fri-rions, riez, roient.

In other tenses we make use of the verb *faire,* and of the infinitive *frire,* as *je faisois frire, tu faisois frire,* &c.

Inf. giser, *to lie.* *Ger.* gisant. *Pres. ind.* il gît, nous gisons, ils gisent. *Imp.* il gisoit.

Inf. ouïr, *to hear.* *Part.* ouï, heard. The participle is often followed by *dire*, as *j'ai ouï dire.*

Inf. quérir, *to fetch*, is used, in the infinitive, only after the verbs *aller*, *envoyer*, and *venir.*

Inf. seoir, *to become.* *Pres. ind.* il siéd, ils siéent. *Imp.* il seyoit, ils seyoient. *Fut.* il siéra, ils siéront. *Cond.* il siéroit, ils siéroient.

Inf. saillir, *to project.* *Ger.* saillant. *Part.* sailli. *Pres. ind.* il saillo. *Imp.* il sailloit. *Fut.* il saillera. *Cond.* il sailloroit. *Pres. subj.* qu'il saille. *Pret.* qu'il saillît.

Inf. vêtir, *to clothe.* *Part.* vêtu, *clothed.*

You might hear the hoarse noise of the waves, the wind, and
on entendoit bruire (inf.) vagues vent

thunder, the billows were roaring, I hear an ass bray, the
tonnerre flots bruire (imp.) entendre âne

ass brays, asses bray, that ass will bray, take care you do not fall,
prenez garde de vous laisser

he is very much fallen off from his former splendor, both my
bien déchoir première ——eur

door and (my) window were well closed and fastened, no wind
porte, f. fenêtre, f. clore il ne pouvoit

could come in, I have not closed my eye once all night,
y entrer le moindre vent l' œil un moment de toute la nuit

all the fields have been enclosed, you must enclose this garden,
champs enclore il faut (inf.) jardin

that author has erred in many points, his heart has failed him,
failli en bien des le lui

tell the cook to fry the fish, these soles are well fried,
dites à cuisinière, f. de poisson soles

here lies the body of General B. I have heard say that there would
ci— giser corps du général ouïr dire que il y auroit

be a change in the ministry, send for some water; the
——ment ——tère envoyer quérir

pump is nigh, this bonnet does not become you at all. that
pompe, f. tout près chapeau du tout

balcony projects too far out, all the poor were well clad.
*balcon saillir * * pauvre vêtir*

IMPERSONAL VERBS,

Used only in the third Person.

Infinitive Pres.	*Ger.*	*Part.*	*Indicative, &c.*	
PLEUVOIR,	*to rain,*	pleuvant,	plu, il pleut, il pleuvoit, il plut, il pleuvra, il pleuvroit, qu'il pleuve, qu'il plût.	
BRUINER,	*to drizzle,*	bruinant,	bruiné, il bruine, il bruinoit, &c.	(like *Parler.*)
GELER,	*to freeze,*	gelant,	gelé, il gêle, il geloit, &c.	do.
GRELER,	*to hail,*	grêlant,	grêlé, il grêle, il grêloit, &c.	do.
NEIGER,	*to snow,*	neigeant,	neigé, il neige, il neigeoit, &c.	do.
TONNER,	*to thunder,*	tonnant,	tonné, il tonne, il tonnoit, &c.	do.
ECLAIRER,	*to lighten,*	éclairant,	éclairé, il éclaire, il éclairoit, &c.	do.
FAIRE,	(see Idioms)			

Compound Tenses.

Il a plu, il avoit plu, &c.
Il a bruiné, &c.
Il a gelé, &c.
Il a grêlé, &c.
Il a neigé, &c.
Il a tonné, &c.
Il a éclairé, &c.

It freezes, does it freeze? will it hail? it will not snow, it has not snowed, did it rain yesterday? *a-t-il plu* it had rained, it thunders, it has not thundered, did it lighten? *a-t-il*

IL FAUT, (from *Falloir,*) *one must, it is necessary, it is requisite.* It requires the *subjunctive.*

Il faut { *que je* parle,—*que tu* parles,—*qu'il* parle,
que nous parlions,—*que vous* parliez,—*qu'ils* parlent.

Il falloit, } *que je* parlasses—*que tu* parlasses,—*qu'il* parlât,—
Il fallut, } *que nous* parlassions,—*que vous*, &c.

Il faudra ....*que je* parle,—*que tu* parles, &c.

Il faudroit ..*que je* parlasse,—*que tu* parlasses, &c.

Qu'il faille ..*que je* parle,—*que tu* parles, &c.

Qu'il fallût ..*que je* parlasse,—*que tu* parlasses, &c.

Il a
Il avoit
Il eut
Il aura } fallu.
Il auroit
Qu'il ait
Qu'il eût

I must be, you must have, it | was necessary for me to | pay
je *payer*

so much, | it | will be necessary for | them to take precautions,
tant *qu'ils* *des*

will it be necessary for him to do that? it has often | been requisite |
qu'il

for us to complain, must you be responsible? I do not think that
que nous se plaindre *croire qu'il*

it is necessary for him to write, though it was requisite for him to hold
(subj.) *qu'il* *qu'il*

the table.

Il y a.

Il y a,	*there is*, or *there are*.	Il n'y a pas.
Il y avoit, }	*there was*, or *there were*.	Il n'y avoit pas.
Il y eut, }		
Il y aura,	*there will be*.	
Il y auroit,	*there would be*.	Il n'y eut pas.
Qu'il y ait,	*there may be*.	
Qu'il y eût,	*there might be*.	Il n'y aura pas.
Y avoir,	*to be*.	
Y ayant,	*there being*.	Il n'y auroit pas.

Compound Tenses.

Il y a	eu	*there has, or have been.*
Il y avoit	,,	*there had been.*
Il y eut	,,	
Il y aura	,,	*there will have been.*
Il y auroit	,,	*there would have been.*
Qu'il y ait	,,	*there may have been.*
Qu'il y eût	,,	*there might have been.*

Interrogatively and Negatively.

Y a-t-il ?	N'y a-t-il pas ?
Is or are there.	*Is or are there not.*
Y avoit-il ?	N'y avoit-il-pas ?
Was or were there.	*Was or were there not.*
Y eut-il ?	N'y eut-il pas ?
Was or were there.	*Was or were there not ?*
Y aura-t-il ?	N'y aura-t-il pas ?
Will there be.	*Will there not ?*
Y auroit-il ?	N'y auroit-il pas ?
Would there be.	*Would there not ?*

Compound Tenses.

Il n'y a pas eu.
Y a-t-il eu ?
N'y a-t-il pas eu ?
&c.

There is a fine house in our village, there are fine houses, there
dans *de*

was a picture, there were pictures, there will be a great dinner,
tableau *des* *dîner*

will there be many persons? will there not be a great number of
bien *des*

officers? there has been a { great deal } of rain, has there been
—ciers *beaucoup* *pluie*

any snow? there would have been disputes, would there not have
de la neige *des*

been many more ladies? although there is, although there was.
beaucoup de (subj.) (pret. of subj.)

Il est, or C'est.

Il est, *it is.*	c'est, *it is.*
il étoit, *it was.*	c'étoit, } *it was.*
il fut, *it was.*	ce fut, }
il sera, *it will be.*	ce sera, *it will be.*
il seroit, *it would be.*	ce seroit, *it would be.*
qu'il soit, *it may be.*	que ce soit, *it may be.*
qu'il fût, *it might be.*	que ce fût, *it might be.*

C'est admits of the verb being in the plural :—we say,

ce sont, c'étoient, ce furent.
ce seront, ce seroient.

The whole may be turned interrogatively and negatively. Ex. :

Est-ce, sont-ce, &c. ce n'est pas, n'est-ce pas ?

It is pleasant to chat, *Il est agréable* it would be impossible to do that, *de* it is that *c'est*

man? it is those men ? it was my friend who spoke, (pret.) it was my

friends, it will be my friends, it would not be right, *juste* I do not

think it is he, (subj.) we did not think it was they. (subj.)

OF NEGATIONS.

Ne before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after, mean *not.*

ne .....*plus*	after.....*no more.*
ne .....*pas plus*	after.....*not more.*
ne .....*nullement*	after.....*by no means.*
ne .....*que*	after.....*only, nothing but.*
ne .....*guères*	after.....*but little.*

Pas un before or after the verb takes *ne....no one.*

Aucun	*ne....not any one.*
Nul	*ne....none, no.*
Personne	*ne....nobody.*
Jamais	*ne....never.*
Rien	*ne....nothing.*
Ni	*ne....neither.*

I do *not* speak, he exists *no longer*, there is *no more* hope,
exister *d' espoir*

he has *no more* money, he has *not more* money than you, I will *by*
d' *que*

no means obey your orders, we have *only* five shillings between us
obéir à *vos* *cinq chelins entre*

all, are there *only* a hundred men in the garrison, there is *but little*
tous *il y a* *cent* *garnison*

water, | *not one* | person spoke, | *no one* | has an idea of your
pas une *aucun* *idée*

misery, *no one* has a right to find fault with | his destiny, he
mère *nul* *le droit de trouver à redire à*

never[2] works,[1] we *never*[2] write,[1] I have *never* seen the man of
vu

whom you speak, I have *nothing*, have you *nothing*? we have[2]
dont

said[4] *nothing*? you have not eaten any thing, | he has neither
ne[1] *-rien*[3] *rien* *ne-ni*

food nor money.
nourriture ni argent.

OF ADVERBS.

Formation of Adverbs.

Ment, added to the final of an adjective ending with a vowel, forms the adverb.

joli, pretty; *joliment*, prettily.
honnête, honest; *honnêtement*, honestly.

Ment, added to the feminine of some adjectives ending in a consonant, forms the adverb.

grand, great,—grand; *grandement*, greatly.

48027

Mment, put instead of the finals *nt* of some adjectives, forms the adverb.

patient, *patient ;* patiemment, *patiently.*
prudent, *prudent ;* prudemment, *prudently.*

She plays prettily, I will have it absolutely, they answer
jouer joli absolu répondre

wisely, let us speak seriously, he bore pain patiently, apply
sage sérieux supporter patient s'appliquer

constantly, have you eaten and drank sufficiently ? she has placed
constant manger boire suffisant placer

them separately.
séparé

Placing of Adverbs.

Adverbs, in French, are placed *immediately after* the verb. Ex.

Il parle *toujours* François, *he always speaks French.*
Il ne parle *jamais* Anglois, *he never speaks English.*
[never say : il toujours parle, il ne jamais parle.]

and between the *auxiliary* and the *participle,* when the tense is compound. Ex.

Il a *toujours* parlé François, *he has always spoken French.*
Il n'a *jamais* parlé Anglois, *he has never spoken English.*

They *always* say the same thing, you *never* will succeed if you do
réussir

not do your utmost, we *formerly* were of that opinion,
faire de votre mieux autrefois

I, *at first,* thought that you | were in the wrong, | but I *soon* discovered
crus aviez tort découvrir

that you | were in the right. | we have bread enough.*
aviez raison

---

* *Assez de* comes *after* the verb : we say, *we have enough of bread.*

We have *always* spoken in his favor, you have *never* spoken against
en *——eur* *contre*
him, had you *often* been to the opera? they perhaps have given
lui
you a greater proof of talent.
de *preuves* ———

A list of some Adverbs most in use.

d'Abord, *first, at first.*
ailleurs, *somewhere else.*
d'ailleurs, *besides.*
ainsi, *so, thus.*
auparavant, *before.*
assez, *enough.*
autrefois, *formerly.*
autour, *round.*
autant, *as much.*
au moins, *at least.*
beaucoup, *much, many.*
bien, *well.*
bien des, *much, many.*
combien, *how much, how many.*
comment, *how.*
continuellement, *continually.*
d'avantage, *more.*
dedans, *within.*
depuis, *since.*
dessus, *upon it.*
dessous, *under it.*
du moins, *at least, at any rate.*
encore, *again, yet.*
enfin, à la fin, *at last.*
ensuite, *afterwards.*
ensemble, *together.*
environ, *about.*
fois (une, deux, &c.) *once, twice, &c.*
fort, *very.*
ici, *here.*
jusque, *till.*
jusqu'à, *as far as.*
jusqu'à ceque, *till, until.*
là, *there.*
loin de, *far from.*
mal, *badly, wrong.*
moins, *less.*
nonobstant, *notwithstanding.*
où, *where.*
oui, *yes.*
peu, *little.*
peut-être, *perhaps.*
plus, *more.*
pourquoi, *why.*
presque, *almost.*
proche, *near.*
puis, *then.*
quand, *when.*
quant à, *as for.*
rarement, *seldom.*
sans doute, *without doubt.*
soit, *whether.*
souvent, *often.*
sur le camp, *immediately.*
surtout, *especially.*
tant, *so much, so many.*
toujours, *always.*
trop, *too much, too many.*
vérité (en,) *indeed.*
vérité (à la,) *it is true.*
volontiers, *willingly.*

OF PREPOSITIONS.

à* { *to* ..... Je vais à Paris—*I am going to Paris.*
{ *at* / *in* } ..... Je suis à Paris—*I am at* or *in Paris.*

de* { *of* ..... Une table de bois—*A wooden table.*
{ *from* ..... Il vient de Londres—*He comes from London.*

par* { *by* ..... Il a été battu par nous—*He has been beaten by us.*
{ *through* } Jetez cela par la fenêtre—*Throw that through* (or) *out of the window.*

pour* { *for* ..... C'est pour vous—*It is for you.*
{ *to* ..... / *in order to* } Il fait cela pour vous plaire—*He does that to please you.*

sans*..*without*.. { Sans moi, lui, &c.—*Without me, him, &c.*
{ Sans parler—*Without speaking.*

après*..*after* .. { Après moi—*After me.*
{ Après avoir parlé—*After having spoken.*

avant..*before*..... (for time) .... { Je suis venu avant vous.
{ *I came before you.*

devant..*before*.... (for place) .... { Vous êtes devant moi.
{ *You stand before me.*

dans..*in* or *into*. { Dans Londres.
In London.
Vous avez mis mon livre dans ma boîte.
You have put my book into my box.
Dans la maison.
In the house.

en.....*in* .... { Etre en colère.
To be in a passion.
En France.
In France.
En parlant.
In speaking.

vers..*towards* .. { shews direction / towards a place. } Vers Londres.
{ *Towards London.*

envers { *towards* .. / *to* ..... } denotes behaviour to. { Soyez poli envers les dames.
{ *Be polite to the ladies.*

chez.....*at, to the house of* ..... { Chez Mr. B., chez moi, toi, lui, &c.
At or *to Mr. B.'s—at, to my, thy, his, &c. house.*

---

* Those prep. marked * require the Infinitive pres. See *en.*

chez.....*among* ..... { Chez les Romains. / *Among the Romans.*

attendu,	*considering.*	nonobstant,	*notwithstanding.*
avec,	*with.*	outre,	*besides.*
concernant,	*concerning.*	parmi,	*among.*
contre,	*against.*	pendant,	*during.*
depuis, { *for time* / *and place.* }	*from, since.*	près, / proche, }	*near.*
derrière,	*behind.*	d'après,	*from, conformably.*
dès,	*from, from the moment.*	sauf,	*save.*
durant,	*during.*	sous,	*under.*
entre,	*between, among.*	sur,	*upon.*
environ,	*about.*	selon,	*according to.*
excepté,	*except.*	suivant,	*conformably.*
hors, / hormis, }	*except, but.*	touchant,	*concerning.*
malgré,	*in spite of.*	vis-à-vis,	*opposite.*
moyennant,	*by means of.*	vu,	*considering.*

He is going *to* London, is he at Versailles? we live *in* London. *demeurer*

he speaks *of* us, he comes *from* England, this has been done (or made) *by* my brother, is it for her or for them, I come (on purpose) *to* see you, he is *without* money, *after* and *before* * *voir*

the creation of the world, do not stand *before* me, my hat is *in* *se tenir*

a box, I am in furnished lodgings, go towards that house, he *en* *chambre garnie* *cette*

behaves well *to or towards* his relations, *at* Mr. B's, *at* | my *se conduire* *parens*

house, at | his house, | &c. go *to* | my house, | he speaks *against* *moi* *lui*

you, *between* two places, *among* them, *in spite of* you, *upon* *endroits* *eux* *malgré*

the table, *under* the chair, near me, *opposite to* your house. *chaise* *de*

CONJUNCTIONS.

et, (*pron.* é)	*and.*	que,	*that.*
ou,	*or.*	quand, }	*though.*
soit,	*whether.*	quand même, }	
ni,	*neither, nor.*	pourtant, }	
mais,	*but.*	cependant, }	*yet, however.*
quoique,	*though, although.*	toutefois, }	
car,	*for.*	néanmoins,	*nevertheless.*
puisque,	*since.*	si,	*if.*
or,	*now.*	sinon,	*or else.*
pourquoi,	*why.*	savoir,	*viz.*
comment,	*how.*	comme,	*as.*

You *or* I, you say so, *but* you do not think it, we have written
moi *dire le* *penser le*

our exercise, *for* the master ordered it, *since* you behave well, I will
theme *maître nous l'a ordonné* *se conduire*

help you, *why* do you act | in such a manner? *how* are you
agir *d'une telle* * *manière*

to-day? I say *that* you are a rogue, *although* you were clever
coquin (subj. pr.) *habile*

you should not laugh at those who are slow, we have
devriez *vous moquer de ceux* *ont peu de capacité*

shewn you the method, and *yet* you do not succeed, he speaks
montrer —— *de* * *réussir*

French *like* a native.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

They are used to express

1. Joy, *as* bon! *well!* vive, (la joie, &c.) *joy for ever.*
2. Grief, *as* hélas! *alas!* ah! *oh!* &c.
3. Fear, *as* ah! *ah!* eh! *eh!*
4. Aversion, *as* fi! *fye!* fi donc, *fye upon it.*
5. Derision, *as* oh! *oh!*
6. Surprise, *as* quoi! *what!* vraiment! *sure!*
7. Encouraging, *as* allons! *come!*
8. Silence, *as* chut! *hush!*
9. Stopping, *as* holà! *hold!*
10. Attention, *as* tenez! *here!* voila! *look here!*
11. Contradicting, *as* pardonnez-moi, *I beg your pardon,* si *or* si fait, *yes*

DEFINITION OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. The *Article* specifies the extent of the sense in which the noun is taken; that is, whether in a *general* or in a *particular* sense.

Ex. *Un* homme, *l'*homme.

2. A *Noun* is the name of any being or object palpable, or existing in the mind. Ex.

Un *homme*, un *arbre*, une *maison*, la *bonté*.

3. An *Adjective* expresses the quality of the noun. Ex.

Un homme *charitable*.

4. A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun. Ex.

Je parle.

Without *je*, the speaker would be obliged to mention his own name every time he spoke of himself.

5. A *Verb* denotes *being*, *action*, or *passion*.

Je *suis*, tu *danses*, il *aime*.

6. An *Adverb* shews the *manner*, *place*, or *time*, in which an action has been done. Ex.

Il parle *bien* ou *mal*.
Je vais *dehors*.
Il sortira *tard*.

An adverb is to a verb what an adjective is to a noun; it describes it.

7. A *Preposition* indicates the connexion between a verb and a noun. Ex.

Je marche *dans* la rue.

8. A *Conjunction* connects words or phrases. Ex.

Vous *et* moi.
Vous parlez, *mais* moi je pense.

9. An *Interjection* is a mere exclamation, expressing a feeling either of *pleasure* or of *pain*. Ex.

Ah! hélas!

DEFINITION OF CASES.

There are, in French, three* cases; the *nominative*, the *dative*, and the *accusative*.

1. The *nominative* is the doer of the action denoted by the verb. Ex.

Jean bat Pierre. Le *livre* amuse.

2. The *accusative* is the object upon which the action of the verb falls. Ex.

Jean bat *Pierre*. Le livre *m'*amuse.

Pierre and *me* are accusatives.

The verb *to be* admits of no *accusative*.

The preposition *à*, in English *to*, is the sign of the *dative*; therefore, a noun or pronoun preceded by *à* is considered as being in the *dative*.

Jean parle *à Pierre*.

DEFINITION OF THE DIFFERENT SORTS OF VERBS.

An *active* or *transitive* verb is that the action of which, being done by the nominative, falls upon an object, called the *accusative*. Ex.

Jean *bat* Pierre.

A *passive* verb expresses an action which falls upon the *nominative*. This verb is conjugated by means of *être*, to be. Ex.

Jean *est battu* par Pierre.
John is beaten by Peter.

---

* In Latin, and in many other languages, there are six, which are—the *nominative*, the *genitive*, the *dative*, the *accusative*, the *vocative*, and the *ablative*.

A *neuter* verb expresses an action done by the nominative, without its falling upon another object. Ex.

Je tombe.	Il court.
I fall.	*He runs.*

A *reflective* verb expresses an action done by the nominative, and falling back upon the nominative again.

Jean *se bat.* *John beats himself.*

Impersonal verbs are those which have only the third person singular.

Il pleut, *it rains.* Il faut, *it must.*

A *defective* verb is that which has some of its tenses wanting.

Choir, *to fall.* Chu, *fallen.*

DEFINITION OF THE MOODS.

The *infinitive* merely mentions an action done, without having regard to either *time, person,* or *motive;* as,

Parler, *to speak.*

The *indicative* states or affirms, with regard to *person* and *time;* as,

Je parle, *I speak.*

The *subjunctive* mentions an action done through *wish* or *command;* as,

Je veux* que vous *fassiez** *cela, I will have you do that.*

The *imperative* implies command or request. Ex.

Faites cela, *do that.*

* *Fassiez* is in the subjunctive on account of *je veux,* which implies a *wish* or *command.*

A VOCABULARY.

1. *Days.*	
Dimanche,	*Sunday.*
Lundi,	*Monday,*
Mardi,	*Tuesday.*
Mercredi,	*Wednesday.*
Jeudi,	*Thursday,*
Vendredi,	*Friday,*
Samedi,	*Saturday.*
2. *Months.*	
Janvier,	*January.*
Février,	*February.*
Mars,	*March.*
Avril,	*April.*
Mai,	*May.*
Juin,	*June.*
Juillet,	*July.*
Août,	*August.*
Septembre,	*September.*
Octobre,	*October.*
Novembre,	*November.*
Décembre,	*December.*
3. *Seasons.*	
le printemps,	*spring,*
l'été,	*summer.*
l'automne,	*autumn.*
l'hiver,	*winter.*
4. *Elements.*	
le feu,	*fire.*
l'eau,	*water.*
la terre,	*earth.*
l'air,	*air.*
5. *Eating.*	
le déjeûner,	*breakfast.*
le dîner,	*dinner.*
le souper,	*supper.*
du pain,	*bread.*
de la croûte,	*crust.*
de la mie,	*crumb.*
du beurre,	*butter.*
de la viande.	*meat.*
du rôti,	*roast meat.*
du bouilli,	*boiled meat.*
du bœuf,	*beef.*
du veau,	*veal.*
du mouton	*mutton.*
du porc,	*pork.*
du lard,	*bacon.*
du gras,	*fat.*
du maigre,	*lean.*
une volaille,	*a fowl.*
du gibier,	*game.*
un lièvre,	*a hare.*
des perdrix,	*partridges.*
un faisan,	*a pheasant.*
une bécasse,	*a woodcock.*
une bécassine,	*a snipe.*
des pigeons,	*pigeons.*
un chapon,	*a capon,*
un dindon,	*a turkey.*
une oie,	*a goose.*
un canard,	*a duck.*
du poisson,	*some fish.*
une morue,	*a cod.*
du saumon,	*salmon.*
un turbot,	*a turbot.*
un merlan,	*a whiting.*
une sole,	*a sole.*
un maquereau,	*a mackerel.*
un hareng,	*a herring.*
une anguille,	*an eel.*
un brochet,	*a pike.*
une plie,	*a plaice.*
une truite,	*a trout.*
une tortue,	*a turtle.*
un chou,	*a cabbage.*
des navets,	*turnips.*
des carottes,	*carrots.*
des pommes de terre,	*potatoes.*
des artichauts,	*artichokes.*
des asperges,	*asparagus.*
des pois,	*pease.*
de la chicorée,	*succory.*
des laitues,	*lettuce.*
du céleri,	*celery.*
une pomme,	*an apple.*
une poire,	*a pear.*
une orange,	*an orange.*
un citron,	*a lemon.*
un abricot,	*an apricot.*
une pêche,	*a peach.*
une olive,	*an olive.*
une cerise,	*a cherry.*
des groseilles,	*gooseberries.*

des fraises,	*strawberries.*
des framboises,	*raspberries.*
des noix,	*walnuts.*
du raisin,	*grapes.*
des châtaignes,	*chesnuts, &c.*

6. *Drinking.*

du vin,	*wine.*
de la bière,	*beer.*
du cidre,	*cyder.*
de l'eau,	*water.*
du thé,	*tea.*
du café,	*coffee.*
du chocolat,	*chocolate.*
du cacao,	*cocoa, &c.*

7. *Things used at Table.*

la nappe,	*the table cloth.*
un plat,	*a dish.*
une assiette,	*a plate.*
un couteau,	*a knife.*
une cuillère,	*a spoon.*
une fourchette,	*a fork.*
du sel,	*salt.*
une salière,	*a salt-cellar.*
de la moutarde,	*mustard.*
du poivre,	*pepper.*
du vinaigre,	*vinegar.*
un verre,	*a glass, &c.*

8. *Furniture of a Room.*

un lit,	*a bed.*
un matelas,	*a mattress.*
des draps,	*sheets.*
une couverture,	*a blanket.*
des rideaux,	*curtains.*
une chaise,	*a chair.*
un tapis,	*a carpet.*
un miroir,	*a looking-glass.*
une caisse,	*a chest.*
une armoire,	*chest of drawers.*
un tableau,	*a picture.*
une chandelle,	*a candle.*
un chandelier,	*a candlestick.*
des mouchettes,	*snuffers.*
un livre,	*a book.*
du papier,	*paper.*
de l'encre,	*ink.*
des plumes,	*pens, &c.*

9. *Of the Body.*

le corps,	*the body.*
le sang,	*the blood.*
la peau,	*the skin.*
les os,	*the bones.*
la moelle,	*the marrow.*
les veines,	*the veins.*
le pouls,	*the pulse.*
les nerfs,	*the nerves.*
la tête,	*the head.*
le front,	*the forehead.*
le visage,	*the face.*
les yeux,	*the eyes.*
les paupières,	*the eye-lids.*
les sourcils,	*the eye-brows.*
le nez,	*the nose.*
les oreilles,	*the ears.*
la bouche,	*the mouth.*
les lèvres,	*the lips.*
la langue,	*the tongue.*
les dents,	*the teeth.*
les joues,	*the cheeks.*
le menton,	*the chin.*
la gorge,	*the throat.*
le cou,	*the neck.*
l'épaule,	*the shoulder.*
le bras,	*the arm.*
la main,	*the hand.*
le pouce,	*the thumb.*
les doigts,	*the fingers.*
le cœur,	*the heart.*
le dos,	*the back.*
la ceinture,	*the waist.*
le côté,	*the side.*
la hanche,	*the hip.*
la cuisse,	*the thigh.*
le genou,	*the knee.*
la jambe,	*the leg.*
le pied,	*the foot.*
le talon,	*the heel, &c.*

10. *Dress.*

un chapeau,	*a hat.*
un habit,	*a coat.*
une veste,	*a waistcoat.*
une culotte,	*breeches.*
des bas,	*stockings.*
des souliers,	*shoes.*
des boucles,	*buckles.*
des bottes,	*boots.*
un ruban,	*a riband.*
un collier,	*a necklace.*
des pendans d'oreille,	*ear-rings.*

une robe,	*a gown.*
une jupe,	*a petticoat.*
un tablier,	*an apron.*
une montre,	*a watch.*
des gants,	*gloves.*
un manchon,	*a muff.*
un parapluie,	*an umbrella,*
un mouchoir,	*a handkerchief, &c.*

11. *Relations.*

père,	*father.*
mère,	*mother.*
grand-père,	*grand-father.*
grand-mère,	*grand-mother.*
beau-père,	*father-in-law.*
belle-mère,	*mother-in-law.*
frère,	*brother.*
sœur,	*sister.*
beau-frère,	*brother-in-law.*
belle-sœur,	*sister-in-law.*
fils,	*son.*
fille,	*daughter.*
petit-fils,	*grand-son.*
petite-fille,	*grand-daughter.*
parrain,	*god-father.*
marraine,	*god-mother.*
filleul,	*god-son.*
filleule,	*god-daughter.*
époux,	*husband.*
épouse,	*wife.*
oncle,	*uncle.*
tante,	*aunt.*
neveu,	*nephew.*
nièce,	*niece.*
cousin,	*cousin, (male.)*
cousine,	*cousin, (female.)*

12. *Professions.*

barbier,	*barber.*
bijoutier,	*toyman.*
boucher,	*butcher.*
boulanger,	*baker.*
brasseur,	*brewer.*
carossier,	*coach-maker.*
chapelier,	*hatter.*
charpentier,	*carpenter.*
cocher,	*coachman.*
cordier,	*rope-maker.*
cordonnier,	*shoe-maker.*
coutelier,	*cutler.*
cuisinier	*cook.*
doreur,	*gilder.*
drapier,	*draper.*
épicier,	*grocer.*
faïencier,	*chinaman.*
fondeur,	*founder.*
forgeron,	*blacksmith.*
horloger,	*clock-maker.*
jardinier,	*gardener.*
imprimeur,	*printer.*
jouailler,	*jeweller.*
laboureur,	*ploughman.*
libraire,	*bookseller.*
maçon,	*bricklayer.*
meunier,	*miller.*
orfèvre,	*goldsmith.*
pâtissier,	*pastry-cook.*
peintre,	*painter.*
coiffeur,	*hair-dresser.*
relieur,	*book-binder.*
savetier,	*cobler.*
sellier,	*saddler.*
serrurier,	*lock-smith.*
tailleur,	*taylor.*
tanneur,	*tanner.*
tapissier,	*upholsterer.*
teinturier,	*dyer.*
tisserand,	*weaver.*
tonnelier,	*cooper.*
tourneur,	*turner.*
vitrier,	*glazier, &c.*

13. *A Series of Substantives.*

Amertume, *f.*	*bitterness.*
ardoise, *f.*	*slate.*
astre, *m.*	*star.*
attrait,	*charm.*
avarice, *f.*	*covetousness.*
Bagatelle,	*trifle.*
bataille,	*battle.*
bateau,	*boat.*
bâton,	*stick.*
bonté,	*goodness.*
bordure,	*frame.*
boue, *f.*	*mud.*
brouillard,	*fog.*
bruit,	*noise.*
butin,	*booty.*
Cabinet,	*closet.*
cachet,	*seal.*
campagne, *f.*	*country.*
caractère, *m.*	*temper.*

carrosse,	*coach.*
chair,	*flesh.*
chaleur,	*heat.*
chambre, *f.*	*room.*
champ,	*field.*
chanson,	*song.*
charbon,	*coal.*
charrue, *f.*	*plough.*
chasse,	*hunting.*
chaux,	*lime.*
chemin,	*road.*
chute, *f.*	*fall.*
ciel,	*heaven.*
cire, *f.*	*wax.*
ciseaux.	*scissars.*
cloche, *f.*	*bell.*
clou,	*nail.*
colère, *f.*	*anger.*
conduite, *f.*	*conduct.*
confiance,	*confidence.*
corps,	*body.*
cuir,	*leather.*
cuivre, *m.*	*copper.*
Danse,	*dance.*
débat,	*debate.*
débauche, *f.*	*debauchery.*
défiance,	*distrust.*
délicatesse,	*delicacy.*
déluge, *m.*	*flood.*
dépense,	*expense.*
désir,	*desire.*
deuil,	*mourning.*
devoir,	*duty.*
disette,	*scarcity.*
domaine, *m.*	*dominion.*
douceur,	*sweetness.*
durée,	*duration.*
Eau,	*water.*
école, *f.*	*school.*
écriture,	*writing.*
église, *f.*	*church.*
énigme, *f.*	*riddle.*
éperon,	*spur.*
épine, *f.*	*thorn.*
épingle, *f.*	*pin.*
épreuve, *f.*	*trial.*
espérance,	*hope.*
espion,	*spy.*
esquisse,	*sketch.*
état,	*state.*
étoile, *f.*	*star.*
étude, *f.*	*study.*
éventail,	*fan.*
Famille,	*family.*
faute, *f.*	*fault.*
femme,	*woman.*
fenêtre, *f.*	*window.*
fer,	*iron.*
fermeté,	*firmness.*
feu,	*fire.*
feuille,	*leaf.*
fidélité,	*faithfulness.*
fièvre, *f.*	*fever.*
flèche, *f.*	*arrow.*
fleur,	*flower.*
fleuve, *m.*	*river.*
foi, *f.*	*faith.*
foiblesse,	*weakness.*
foin,	*hay.*
force, *f.*	*strength.*
foule, *f.*	*crowd.*
fromage,	*cheese.*
fumée,	*smoke.*
fureur,	*fury.*
Gâteau,	*cake.*
gazon,	*turf.*
gelée,	*frost.*
glace,	*ice.*
gloire,	*glory.*
goût,	*taste.*
graine, *f.*	*seed.*
grandeur,	*greatness.*
guerre,	*war.*
Haine, *f.*	*hatred.*
haleine, *f.*	*breath.*
hardiesse,	*boldness.*
herbe, *f.*	*grass.*
homme,	*man.*
honneur,	*honour.*
honte,	*shame.*
horloge, *f.*	*clock.*
huître, *f.*	*oyster.*
Idée,	*idea.*
impôt,	*tax.*
injure,	*abuse.*
jour,	*day.*
juge, *m.*	*judge.*
justesse,	*exactness.*
Lait,	*milk.*
langue, *f.*	*language.*
lecture,	*reading.*
lettre, *f.*	*letter.*

lien,	*tie.*
lieu,	*place.*
lune, *f.*	*moon.*
lunettes,	*spectacles.*
luxe, *m.*	*luxury.*
Maître,	*master.*
maladie,	*illness.*
malheur,	*misfortune.*
matin,	*morning.*
mer,	*sea.*
mois,	*month.*
moisson,	*harvest.*
moulin,	*mill.*
mouvement,	*motion.*
mur,	*wall.*
Naissance,	*birth.*
neige, *f.*	*snow.*
nid,	*nest.*
nuit,	*night.*
Oiseau,	*bird.*
ombre, *f.*	*shadow.*
ongle, *m.*	*nail.*
ordre, *m.*	*order.*
orge, *m.*	*barley.*
orgueil,	*pride.*
orient,	*east.*
occident,	*west.*
Paille,	*straw.*
paix,	*peace.*
palais,	*palace.*
panier,	*basket.*
paysage,	*landscape.*
peigne, *m.*	*comb.*
perfidie,	*treachery.*
perte, *f.*	*loss.*
peste, *f.*	*plague.*
peuple, *m.*	*people.*
pierre,	*stone.*
pillage,	*plunder.*
pitié, *f.*	*pity.*
plomb,	*lead.*
pluie,	*rain.*
plume, *f.*	*pen.*
poche, *f.*	*pocket.*
poids,	*weight.*
pont,	*bridge.*
porte,	*door.*
poudre, *f.*	*powder.*
pré,	*meadow.*
présage,	*omen.*
présent,	*gift.*
prix,	*price.*
progrès,	*progress.*
pudeur,	*modesty.*
Raison,	*reason.*
rasoir,	*razor.*
ravage,	*havock.*
rayon,	*ray.*
règle, *f.*	*rule.*
repas,	*meal.*
réponse, *f.*	*answer.*
reproche, *m.*	*reproach.*
rêve, *m.*	*dream.*
ronce, *f.*	*bramble.*
roue, *f.*	*wheel.*
Sac,	*bag.*
savon,	*soap.*
serment,	*oath.*
serrure,	*lock.*
soir,	*evening.*
sort,	*fate.*
soumission,	*submission.*
souris, *f.*	*mouse.*
suffrage,	*vote.*
Tableau,	*picture.*
tache, *f.*	*blot.*
tapis,	*carpet.*
témérité,	*rashness.*
titre, *m.*	*title.*
travail,	*work.*
tristesse,	*sadness.*
trou,	*hole.*
troupe, *f.*	*troop.*
troupeau,	*flock.*
Vaisseau,	*ship.*
vent,	*wind.*
ver,	*worm.*
verge, *f.*	*yard.*
vérité,	*truth.*
vertu, *f.*	*virtue.*
vie,	*life.*
univers,	*universe.*
voisin,	*neighbour.*
voix,	*voice.*
voyage,	*travel.*
usage.	*custom.*

14. *A series of Adjectives.*

adroit,	*dexterous.*
affreux,	*frightful.*
aimable,	*amiable.*
aise,	*glad.*

aisé,	*easy.*
amer,	*bitter.*
ancien,	*old.*
assidu,	*assiduous.*
aveugle,	*blind.*
avide,	*greedy.*
Barbare,	*barbarous.*
bas,	*low.*
blanc,	*white.*
bleu,	*blue.*
bossu,	*hump-backed.*
Capricieux,	*whimsical.*
chaud,	*hot.*
chauve,	*bald.*
cher,	*dear.*
clair,	*clear.*
conforme,	*conformable.*
content,	*satisfied.*
convenable,	*fit.*
coupable,	*guilty.*
cru,	*raw.*
curieux,	*curious.*
Dédaigneux,	*disdainful.*
dégoûtant,	*loathsome.*
dernier,	*last.*
désagréable,	*unpleasant.*
difficile,	*difficult.*
digne,	*worthy.*
douloureux,	*painful.*
douteux,	*doubtful.*
doux,	*sweet.*
droit,	*straight.*
Eclatant,	*bright.*
effroyable,	*frightful.*
ennuyeux,	*tedious.*
enroué,	*hoarse.*
entêté,	*stubborn.*
envieux,	*envious.*
épais,	*thick.*
étonnant,	*wonderful.*
étrange,	*strange.*
étranger,	*foreign.*
étroit,	*narrow.*
exquis,	*exquisite.*
Fâcheux,	*sad.*
facile,	*easy.*
fameux,	*famous.*
faux,	*false.*
féroce,	*fierce.*
fertile,	*fruitful.*
flattour,	*flattering.*
foible,	*weak.*
fort,	*strong.*
frais,	*fresh.*
Généreux,	*generous.*
glorieux,	*glorious.*
gracieux,	*graceful.*
grand,	*great.*
gras,	*fat.*
gros,	*big.*
Habile,	*clever.*
hardi,	*bold.*
haut,	*high.*
heureux,	*happy.*
honnête,	*honest.*
honteux,	*shameful.*
humain,	*humane.*
humide,	*damp.*
Illustré,	*illustrious.*
imparfait,	*imperfect.*
impie,	*impious.*
importun,	*troublesome.*
incommode,	*inconvenient.*
indigne,	*unworthy.*
infâme,	*infamous.*
infidèle,	*unfaithful.*
ingrat,	*ungrateful.*
injurieux,	*injurious.*
inquiet,	*restless.*
insensé,	*mad.*
inutile,	*useless.*
ivre,	*drunk.*
Jaloux,	*jealous.*
jaune,	*yellow.*
jeune,	*young.*
joli,	*pretty.*
juste,	*just.*
Lâche,	*coward.*
large,	*broad.*
las,	*tired.*
lent,	*slow.*
libre,	*free.*
Maigre,	*lean.*
malade,	*sick.*
malaisé,	*difficult.*
malheureux,	*unhappy.*
mauvais,	*bad.*
méchant,	*wicked.*
méprisable,	*contemptible*
muet,	*dumb.*
Nécessaire,	*necessary.*
net,	*clean.*

neuf,	*new.*	Réel,	*real.*
noir,	*black.*	régulier,	*regular.*
nombreux,	*numerous.*	respectueux,	*respectful.*
nouveau,	*new.*	rêveur,	*thoughtful*
nuisible,	*hurtful.*	rusé,	*cunning*
Obéissant,	*obedient.*	Sage,	*wise.*
orageux,	*stormy.*	saint,	*holy.*
ordinaire,	*usual.*	sauvage,	*wild.*
Parfait,	*perfect.*	sec,	*dry.*
perfide,	*perfidious.*	superflu,	*superfluous.*
périlleux,	*perilous.*	Tel,	*such.*
pesant,	*heavy.*	téméraire,	*rash.*
petit,	*little.*	timide,	*fearful.*
pieux,	*pious.*	tranquille,	*quiet.*
plaintif,	*mournful.*	triste,	*sad.*
plein,	*full.*	Vert,	*green.*
poli,	*civil.*	véritable,	*true.*
profond,	*deep.*	vieux,	*old.*
prodigue,	*prodigal.*	vrai,	*true.*

SOUNDS OF BIRDS AND BEASTS.

Les oiseaux chantent,	*birds sing.*
le perroquet parle,	*the parrot talks.*
le merle siffle,	*the blackbird whistles.*
la colombe gémit,	*the dove cooes.*
le pigeon roucoule,	*the pigeon coves.*
le coq chante,	*the cock crows.*
la poule glousse,	*the hen clucks.*
le corbeau croasse,	*the raven croaks.*
le cheval hennit,	*the horse neighs.*
l'âne brait,	*the ass brays.*
le bœuf beugle,	*the ox lows.*
le taureau mugit,	*the bull roars.*
le lion rugit,	*the lion roars.*
le serpent siffle,	*the snake hisses.*
la brebis bêle,	*the sheep bleats.*
le chat miaule et file,	*the cat mews and purs.*
le chien aboie,	*the dog barks.*
le lièvre crie,	*the hare squeaks.*
le loup hurle,	*the wolf howls.*
le cerf brame,	*the stag brays.*
la grenouille coasse,	*the frog croaks.*

THE END.

LONDON:
Printed by D. S. Maurice, Fenchurch Street.

A

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

DIVIDED INTO FOUR PARTS:

THE PRONUNCIATION, THE ACCIDENCE, THE SYNTAX, AND THE APPENDIX.

PART III.

THE SYNTAX.

By P. F. MERLET,

TEACHER OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE TO THE LONDON UNIVERSITY.

J. M. RICHARDSON, 23, CORNHILL.

1828.

LONDON:
Printed by Anne Maurice, Fenchurch-street.

ADVERTISEMENT.

This Third Part contains merely the most necessary rules of Syntax; the more clearly and concisely explained, as the abtruse part of the Grammar has been reserved for the Appendix. In order to avoid repetitions, the rules have been numbered, thereby, also, aiding the learner, when writing the Exercises, easily to refer to them. This portion of the work may be considered as complete in itself, and may, therefore, as well as the *Pronunciation*, the *Accidence*, and the *Appendix*, be had separately; or the four works may be had in one volume, forming a complete French Grammar.

CONTENTS.

OF THE ARTICLE.

No.		*Page*
1–13	Cases in which *le, la, les,* are used	1
	Useful hints	3
14–25	Cases in which *le, la, les,* are omitted ..	5
26–30	Cases in which *de* and *le, la, les,* are used ..	7
31–42	Cases in which *de* (without *le, la, les,*) is used ..	8
43–45	Cases in which *un* is used	11
46–51	Cases in which *un* is omitted	11

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

52–53	Rules pointing out the gender of Nouns ..	13
54	Of *Masculine* Terminations	14
55	Of *Feminine* Terminations	16
56–58	How to express the *s'*	17
59–6	*De* and *à* between two Nouns	18

OF ADJECTIVES.

63–65	Of the agreement of Adjectives	20
66–67	Of the placing of Adjectives	21
68–71	Of Adjectives of dimension	23

No.		Page
224	Verbs which require *à*	85
225	The preposition *à* before the noun of *Person* or *Thing*	ib.
226	The preposition *à* before the noun of *Person*, and the *Accusative* before that of the *Thing*	86
227	*à* before the *noun* and *de* before the *verb* ..	87
228	Neuter verbs which require *de* before a noun ..	88
229	Verbs requiring two nouns, namely, the *Accusative* and the *Genitive* (*de*)	89
230	Verbs requiring a noun in the *Accusative* and *de* before the next verb	90
231	Verbs requiring *de* before the next verb ..	ib.
232	*à* and *de* after *Il est*	91
233	Expressions requiring *de*	92
234	Verbs requiring *pour*	ib.
235	Verbs and expressions requiring *en*	93
236	Verbs requiring *sur*	ib.
237	Verbs requiring *no* preposition	94
	GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.	
238	Adjectives requiring *à*	95
239	do. do. *à*	96
240	do. do. *de*	ib.
241	do. do. *envers*	97
	GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.	
242	Adverbs of *quantity* or *scarcity* require *de* ..	98
	The use of the MOODS and TENSES explained ..	9
243 244	Of the Infinitive Mood	il
245 246	Of the Participle Present	il
247–249	Of the Participle Past (when *declinable*) ..	10

		Page
254	Of the Participle Past (when *indeclinable*) ..	102
259	Of the Indicative Mood	103
260 261	Of the Imperfect Tense	105
262	Of the Preterite	106
263–269	Of the Imperfect and Preterite *compared* ..	ib.
270 271	Of the Compound of the Present and the Preterite compared	110
272 273	Of the Future	111
274–276	Of the Conditional	112
277–283	Of the Subjunctive	113
284 285	Of the Preterite of the Subjunctive ..	115
286	Of the Imperative	116
287–289	Of the different ways of marking more precisely the *Present*, *Past*, and *Future* tenses	117
290–303	Of *will*, *shall*, *would*, &c.	ib.
304–320	Of the various ways of asking questions ..	122
321–323	Of Reflective Verbs	128
324	Of Neuter Verbs	129
325–331	Of Impersonals. (Of *Il y a*)	130
332–338	Of *Il est* and *C'est*	133
339–341	Of *Il est* and *C'est* compared	ib.
342–345	Of *Il faut*	136
346 347	Verbs used Impersonally	138

OF NEGATIONS.

348 349	Of expressions which take *ne*	140
350	Of expressions which reject *pas*	ib.
351–361	How to translate some negative expressions	141

No.

OF ADVERBS.

362-364 Of the placing of some Adverbs .. ..

365 Some Adjectives used adverbially .. .. ib.

OF PREPOSITIONS. 144

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

366 Of Conjunctions which govern the *Indicative* 145

367 Of Conjunctions which govern the *Subjunctive* ib.

OF IDIOMS.

368 *Il s'agit de* 147

369 *Avoir chaud*, &c. .. .. .. ib.

370 *Qu'avez-vous?* 148

Devoir 149

371 *Faire chaud*, &c. .. .. .. ib.

372 *Mal (avoir) à la tête*, &c. 150

373 *Mettre (se—à)* .. .. ib.

374 *Porter (se)* .. .. ib.

375 *Venir* with *de*, *à*, *à bout de* 151

376 *Vouloir* 152

377. FARTHER RULES AND OBSERVATIONS. ib.

378-380 Remarks upon the Infinitive 153

381-385 Remarks upon the Gerund 154

386-389 How to express *BY* 155

ORDER OF WORDS.

390 Of Repetition of Words 157

391-395 Of Words to be left out 158

396-405 Of Transposition .. .. ib.

Page

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

ticles 174
On ... tives .. .. ib.
On Adjectives 165
On Pronouns 166
On Verbs 170
On Negations and Adverbs 174
On Conjunctions 175
On Idioms, &c. .. .. ib.

No.		Page.
72–81	Of Comparison of Adjectives	25
	OF PRONOUNS.	
82–84	PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *Conjunctive*	28
85–88	Of the Accusative Case, *le, la, les*	30
89–90	Of the Dative Case, *lui, leur*	31
91–93	Of *y*	32
94	Of *De moi, de toi,* &c.	33
95–97	Of *en*	ib.
98–99	The manner of placing the Conjunctives, *me, te, le, lui, leur, y, en*	34
100–104	DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS	38
105–106	Of *Soi* and *moi-même*	ib.
107	*It* and *them* used with Prepositions	39
	POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.	
108–112	*Mon,* &c. before a Noun expressing a part of the body	41
113–114	*Etre à* signifying *belonging to*	43
115	How to express *one's* in French	45
116–117	How to express *its* and *their*	ib.
118	*Of mine, of thine,* (as *a friend of mine.*)	46
119	*Monsieur, Madame,* (before a noun of relationship)	47
120	When addressing relations, &c.	ib.
	OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.	
121–125	Of *Qui*	
126–129	Of *Que*	50
130–134	Of *Dont*	51
135–137	Of *Lequel*	54

		Page
138–139	Of *Quel*	55
140–141	Of *Quoi*	56
142–145	Of *Où*	57
	OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.	
146	Of *Ce, cet, cette, ces*	59
147	Of *Ceci* and *cela*	ib.
148–152	Of *Celui, celle,* &c.	60
153–157	Of *Ce qui,* &c.	63
	OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.	
158–160	Of *On* and *l'on*	65
161–165	Of *Quelque*	67
166–167	Of *Quelqu'un*	68
168	Of *Quiconque*	69
169–171	Of *Chacun,* &c.	70
172–173	Of *Chaque*	ib.
174–181	Of *L'un, l'autre, l'un à l'autre,* &c.	71
182–183	Of *Nul, nulle,* &c.	74
184–188	Of *Personne*	ib.
189–191	Of *Rien*	75
192–194	Of *Tel, telle,* &c.	76
195	Of *Plusieurs*	77
196–204	Of *Tout*	ib.
205	Of *Qui que ce soit,* &c.	80
	OF VERBS.	
206–212	General Rules	81
213–216	OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS ..	82
217–223	Remarks on some of the principal Prepositions	83

Explanation of the Marks and Abbreviations used in this Work.

---

m.	*stands for* masculine.	s.	*stands for* singular.
f.	,, feminine.	pl. or p.	,, plural.

The figures placed at the top of some English words indicate the order of the French words.

(*).....This star has two significations; when it is placed after an English word, it refers to a note at the bottom of the page; but when it is put under an English word, it denotes that it is not to be expressed in French.

(—).....Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the first or the last syllables.

( ).....When several words are included between two parentheses, they must be translated by the only words placed under.

N. B. In the following exercises the substantives are put in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive mood, to exercise the learner in putting them in their proper gender, number, tenses, and persons, according as the case may require.

Explanation of the Marks and Abbrevations used in this Work.

---

m. *stands for* masculine. s. *stands for* sin
f. ,, feminine. pl. or p. ,, plu

e figures placed at the top of some English words indicate the ord
French words.

.....This star has two significations; when it is placed after an
word, it refers to a note at the bottom of the page; but when it is pu
an English word, it denotes that it is not to be expressed in French.

.....Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at le
first or the last syllables.

.....When several words are included between two parentheses, they
be translated by the only words placed under.

. In the following exercises the substantives are put in the singul
tives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infi
, to exercise the learner in putting them in their proper gender, num
, and persons, according as the case may require.

OF THE
BOMBAY
BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

ADVERTISEMENT.

ving few sheets contain brief and simple ex
ions of the parts of Speech in the French languag
easy Exercises on each; thus exhibiting, what m
lled the *materials* of grammar, without pretendi
ew in what manner they are put together in the
on of continued discourse. This portion of the w
g thus far complete in itself, as far as it is inte
ach, may be had separately, as well as the *Tr*
ronunciation, and *the Syntax*, and *Appendix*: o
works may be had in one volume, forming a co
French Grammar.

lar,
finit

OF THE
ASIATIC SO

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX treats of the parts of speech with regard to *arrangement, agreement,* and *government.*

OF THE ARTICLE.

In order to avoid the intricacies caused by a great number of rules, and an equal number of exceptions, we shall here class together the cases in which the Article, definite and indefinite, is used, and place them separately from those in which it is not.

CASES IN WHICH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE *le, la, les,* IS USED.

1. In a *general* sense—

Le pain est le soutien de *la* vie,—*Bread is the staff of life.*

2. In a *particular* or *individual* sense—

Le pain que vous donnez aux pauvres,
The bread which you give to the poor.

L' homme que je vois,
The man whom I see.

3. With *names* distinguished, by means of an *epithet*

Charles *le* téméraire,—*Charles the bold.*
David *le* peintre,—*David the painter.*

4. With the names of *countries*—

La France et *l' Angleterre* sont deux beaux pays,
France and England are two fine countries.

5. With the names of *rivers* and *mountains*—

Le Rhin,—*The Rhine.*
La Tamise,—*The Thames.*
L'Olympe,—*Olympus.*

6. With *Infinitives, Adjectives,* and *Adverbs,* taken *substantively*—

Le manger et *le boire,*—*Eating and drinking.*
L'utile et *l'agréable,*—*The useful and the agreeable.*
Le pourquoi et *le comment,*—*The why and wherefore.*

7. In some *exclamations*—

Le beau tableau que voilà !—*What a fine picture that is!*
Oh *le* bel enfant !—*What a fine child!*

8. With names of *dignity, profession,* and *trade*—

Le Comte, *or* Monsieur le Comte de B,—*Count B.*
à la Duchesse, *or* à Madame la Duchesse,—*To the Duchess.*
Du Général B. du Capitaine C.—*Of General B. of Captain C.*
Monsieur *le Medecin,* Monsieur *le Tailleur,*—*Doctor, Mr. Tailor.*

9. Before *proper names particularised*—

Le Mahomet de Voltaire,—*Voltaire's Mahomet.*
Le Satan de Milton,—*Milton's Satan.*

10. Before nouns of *measure, weight,* and *number*

Deux sous *la livre,*—*Two pence* a *pound.*
Trois chelins *le cent,*—*Three shillings* a *hundred.*
Une guinée *l'aune,*—*A guinea* an *ell.*
Six francs *la bouteille,*—*Six francs* a *bottle.*

11. After *sans, avec, ni, entre,* when the following noun is used in a *general* or *particular* sense.

Sans l'argent, il n'y auroit pas tant de malheurs.
Without *money, there would not be so many misfortunes.*
Sans l'argent que vous m'avez donné,—*Without the money you gave me.*

12. Before the names of some *Italian poets* and *artists.*

Le Dante, l'Arioste, Le Tasse, Le Dominicain.
Dante, Ariosto, Tasso, Dominichino.

13. *Repeated* before every noun, (with regard to which the above cases are applicable,) when coming in succession.

L'homme, la femme, les animaux, et *les oiseaux* sont sujets aux maladies,—
Man, woman, animals, and birds, are subject to illnesses.

Useful hints to be observed previously to writing the following Exercises.

I. A substantive, in French, is seldom used in the beginning, or in the middle of a sentence, without being preceded by an *article* or a *pronoun.*

II. Be careful, after having ascertained the *gender* of the *substantive,* always to make the *article, adjective,* and *pronoun* agree with it.

III. *Articles* and *pronouns,* of every kind, to be repeated before every noun or verb.

IV. *Adjectives,* in French, are placed *after* the substantive.

V. Let the verb agree with its nominative.

VI. Two verbs coming together, the second (governed by the first) is put in the infinitive.

VII. After any preposition (but *en*) put the next verb in the *infinitive.*

VIII. With an *auxiliary,* put a *participle past.*

IX. Place the personal pronouns (*je, tu, il, &c. le, la, les; me, te, lui, se, nous, vous, leur, y, en,*) *before* the verb.

X. Reflective verbs take *je me, tu te, il se, nous nous, vous vous, ils s.*; and are always conjugated with *être* instead of *avoir.*

XI. *Not* is expressed in French, by *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after. *Only* is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after.

XII. The English words (*do, did, will, shall, should,*) when mere signs or auxiliaries, are not expressed.

XIII. *Let* (when the sign of the imperative) is expressed by *que.*

XIV. There are three different ways of expressing the *present*, the *imperfect*, &c. in English, but only one way in French. Ex.

I speak,
I do speak,
I am speaking, } je parle.

I did speak,
I was speaking } je parlois.

XV. When, in a *question*, a substantive, or a pronoun demonstrative, is the *nominative*, the order is as follows:

1st. the *substantive* or *pronoun*.
2dly. the *verb*.
3dly. the pronoun *il, elle*, &c.
4thly. the *adjective* or *participle*.

That is, the same as in an affirmation, except that *il* or *elle*, &c. (according to the gender and number) is introduced after the verb.

XVI. Adverbs are always placed *after* the verb.

XVII. A *nominative* or *agent* to a verb is the *doer* of an action, (whatever may be its place in the sentence.)

An *accusative* is the *person* or *thing* upon whom or which the action, denoted by the verb, falls, (whatever may be its place in the sentence.)

N. B. With respect to the capital letters placed under the English verbs, see *Abbreviations*, at the commencement of this work.

EXERCISE.

The study of *languages* is useful | in every respect, | *The* days of
à tous égards
the week, *man* is happy when he does his duty, Lewis *the* four-
teenth was surnamed *the great*, *Russia* | by itself | is more extensive
F *seule*
than Germany, Prussia, Italy, and Spain | put together, | *The Rhone*
is | still | more rapid than *the Rhine*, oh! what *a* pretty coach | that
encore *ah* * *que*
is! | what fine lace you have? send this letter to *Count* B.
voilà *
Colonel C. behaved very bravely in the last battle, butter sells for
se conduire *se vendre* *
eighteen pence *a pound*, this superfine blue cloth cost me a guinea
de premiere qualité

a yard, | how much | is wine *a bottle?* *without politeness* men
combien

would soon behave like brutes, *without the* stimulus produced by
des *aiguillon*

the hope of* reward, | there would be | no | exertion either of mind or †
espoir *il y auroit* *ne pas travail soit*

body.

CASES IN WHICH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE *le, la, les,* IS OMITTED.

14. Before the number of a *chapter, page, folio.*

Chapitre cinq,‡ page première,—*Chapter* the fifth, *page* the first.

15. Before any *number* used by way of distinction after the name of a sovereign.

François Premier,§—*Francis* the *First.*
George Second,—*George* the *Second.*
Henri Quatre,—*Henry* the *Fourth.*

16. Before nouns of *relationship,* of *title,* used in *apposition.*‖

Alexandre, *fils* de Philippe,—*Alexander,* the *son of Philip.*
Londres, *capitale* de l'Angleterre,—*London,* the *capital of England.*

17. Before *proper names* of *persons, towns, villages,* and other places.

Milton étoit un grand poëte,—*Milton was a great poet.*
Shakspeare, Voltaire, Londres, Versailles.
Shakspeare, Voltaire, London, Versailles.

18. After *possessive pronouns,* and *nouns of number.*

Mon ami, *trois* personnes,—*My friend, three persons.*

---

* Turn *of a reward.* † *De* is to be repeated.

‡ With the words, *page, chapitre, chant,* &c. you may use the *cardinal* or the *ordinal* number; and say, *chapitre cinq* or *chapitre cinquième,* &c. And also, as in English, we may say *le cinquième* chapitre, &c.

§ *Premier* and *Second* are used as *ordinal* numbers; but beyond *second* we use the *cardinal,* and say *George Trois, George Quatre,* &c.

‖ That is—*added,* in order to describe the noun coming before it.

19. When addressing the object named; that is, speaking in the *vocative.*

Montagnes, vallies, et vous, *lieux* charmans, je vous revois.
Mountains, valleys, and you, charming spots, I see you again.

20. In *pathetic descriptions,* when enumerating several objects.

La ville fut prise d'assaut ; femmes, enfans, vieillards ; tout fut passé au fil de l'épée.

The town was taken by storm ; women, children, old men ; every one was put to the sword.

21. Before some nouns which form but one idea with the verb antecedent.

Parler *Francois,—To speak French.*
Faire fortune,—*To make a fortune.*

22. After *sans, avec, ni, entre,* when *some* or *any* may be understood; or when the preposition and noun are used adverbially.

Etre *sans* argent,—*To be without money.*
Avec raison,—*With reason* or *reasonably.*
Je n'ai *ni* parent, *ni* ami,—*I have neither relations nor friends.*
Entre amis,—*Among friends.*

23. Not repeated before an adjective, which is nearly synonimous with a preceding one.

L'humble et timide innocence,—*The humble and timid innocence.*

24. Before *plus* and *moins* repeated, and meaning *the more, the less.*

Plus je le vois *moins* je l'aime.
The more I see him, the less I like him.

25. After *en.*

En France, en ami,—*In France, in a friendly way.*

EXERCISE.

We begin from *chapter the tenth,* (or at the tenth chapter), *page four,* *depuis*

first paragraph, and we shall read down to the twentieth line, at the | *alinéa* *jusqu'*

full stop, | Lewis *the Eleventh*, King of France, was a profound *point*

politician, but a cruel, sly, and vindictive ruler, Mr. B. the son of *politique* *souverain*

Mr. B. the banker, married Miss C. the second daughter of Lord E., *épouser* cD

the owner of that house was utterly ruined, and his property sold; *entièrement*

carriage, horses, furniture, every thing was exposed to sale, Paris, *mobilier* *mis en*

the capital of France, contains numberless curiosities worthy of ad- *un nombre infini de*

miration, do you speak English or Italian? without money you *il*

must starve.
faut mourir de faim.

Cases in which the Preposition *de* and the Definite Article, *le, la, les,* are used, viz. *du, dela, des.*

26. Between two nouns, to express *possession,* (that is, *belonging to.*)

Les appartemens *du* Roi,—*The King's* apartments.*
La figure de l'homme,—*Man's face.*
Les règles de la grammaire,—*The rules of grammar.*

27. To express a *partitive*† sense.

J'ai *du* pain et *de la* viande,—*I have bread and meat.*
Il a *du* courage et *de la* probité,—*He has courage and probity.*
Vous riez comme *des* fous,—*You laugh like mad people.*

---

* See No. 56.

† That is, when such expressions, as *part of, some, so much of, so many of,* (of the kind mentioned) may be expressed or understood.

28. With a noun *specified* by what follows.

Du poisson *de la* Mer du Nord.—*Fish from the North Sea.*

Je ne veux point de l'amitié des méchans,
I will have no friendship with the wicked.

29. With *bien*, (when meaning *beaucoup*.)

Il a *bien de l'*argent, *de l'*esprit et *des* amis.
He has a great deal of money, wit, and many friends.

30. With the names of some *countries* (out of Europe.)

L'île *du Japon.—The island of Japan.*
Il vient *de la Chine.—He comes from China.*

EXERCISE.

The *master's* house, Mr. B's. counting-house, | Messrs Smith
bureau

and Co's. warehouse, *man's* courage, *woman's* sensibility, I
compagnie

wish for friends, but not such friends as | you have been |
désire avoir * * *tels que venir de*

describing, that man is not in want, he has *money, provisions,* and
A *dans le besoin*

friends; he will not have any of the assistance which you offer him,
vouloir * * *secours offrir lui*

there were | *a great many* | of the people, of whom you are speaking, at
il y eut beaucoup personnes

the assembly, he is | returned | *from* Jamaica, there is | wit!
——ée de retour voilà esprit

CASES IN WHICH *de* (WITHOUT *le, la, les*) IS USED.

31. When placed between two nouns, to imply *made of, the nature of, proceeding from,** Ex.

---

* See case on *du, de la, des,* No. 26. In this case, (31) the first of the two nouns is usually preceded by the indefinite article (*un*); but in case (No. 26), the definite article (*le, la, les,*) is generally in use.

Une montre *d'argent—a silver watch.*
Un appartement de Roi—*a kingly apartment.*
Un poisson de mer,—*salt-water fish.*

32. When shewing the *country* of the first noun.

Le Roi *de France—The King of France.*
Du drap *d'Angleterre—English cloth.*

33. When the noun, in a partitive sense, is *preceded* by an *adjective.*

J'ai *de bon* pain et *de bonne* viande,—*I have good bread and meat.*
Il a *de mauvaises* dents,—*He has bad teeth.*

34. After some nouns of *number, measure,* and *multitude.*

Une *douzaine de* personnes,—*A dozen of people.*
Deux *livres de* pain,—*Two pounds of bread.*
Une *foule de* gens,—*A crowd of people.*

35. After some *adjectives* and *participles.*

Digne *de* louanges,—*Worthy of praise.*
Comblé *de* bienfaits,—*Loaded with favors.*

36. After adverbs of *quantity* and *scarcity.**

Beaucoup de personnes,—*Many people.*
*Peu d'*amitié,—*But little friendship.*
Assez de† livres,—*Books enough.*

37. Before a participle, preceded by an *indeterminate* pronoun.

Il n'y a *personne de* tué—*There is nobody killed.*

---

* The following adverbs require *de* before the next noun :

assez..de..*enough.*	pas *or* point....de....*no.*
autant ,,...*as much.*	peu..... ,, ...*little.*
beaucoup ..*much.*	plus..... ,, ...*more.*
combien ,,..*how much or how many.*	rien..... ,, ...*nothing.*
jamais ,,..*never.*	tant..... ,, ...*so much.*
moins..,,..*less.*	trop..... ,,....*too much.*

† *Assez* is always placed before the substantive, in French, although *enough* is placed after, in English.

38. Before a participle, preceded by a *noun* of *number*.

Cent hommes *de* tués,—*A hundred men killed.*

39. After some adjectives (which may be turned into substantives.)

C'est un *dróle d'*homme,—*He is a droll man.*

40. After verbs denoting *coming* or *returning from*.

Venir de Hollande,—*To come from Holland.*
A son *retour de* France,—*At his return from France.*

41. After the words *sorte, espèce, nature, qualité,* or any other expressing *kind* or *character*, &c.

Une sorte de fruit,—*A sort of fruit.*

42. When giving the *dimension* of any object or place.

Un homme *de* six pieds *de* hauteur,—*A man six feet high.*

EXERCISE.

I have bought *silver candlesticks* and *steel snuffers*, that is a *masterly*
de maitre

action, he is a man of great courage and probity, there were
coup *c' est*

nearly *a hundred* | persons who were looking at | the sight, *many*
une centaine *regarder* E *spectacle beaucoup*

people are of a different opinion on this subject, have you money
personnes

enough? are there *too many* boys in that school? there were *three*
il y a *enfans*

houses *burnt*, but, luckily, nobody killed, what a droll child!
il n'y eut personne *dróle*

I come from Germany, and my father returned yesterday from France;
Allemagne *revenir* F

we had for desert every kind of fruit and wine, is that a *steel* or a
F *toute* *cela est-il*

silver blade? have you called the chamber maid?
———*re femme*

CASES IN WHICH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE *(un)* IS USED.

43. When answering to *a* or *an*.

C'est *un* homme de mérite,—*He is a man of merit.*

44. When answering also to the noun of number, *one*.

Deux contre un—*Two to one.*

45. With some nouns, when accompanied with an adjective.

Il fait *un* tems charmant—*It is charming weather.*
On court *un* grand danger,—*We run great danger.*

EXERCISE.

Let | no one | make a *noise* during my absence, he makes *a great*
personne ne L

noise in the other room, tell him to be quiet, I told her to make *a*
de *du*

fire | by the time I should | return, so that at the time fixed I saw
à mon *retour* *de sorte que* *heure fixée*

a great fire, is there any danger | in | going under London bridge?
y a-t-il du *a* A *pont de Londres*

yes, very great danger, it | was | charming weather.
faire

CASES IN WHICH *un* IS OMITTED.

46. After the verb *être*,* when followed by a noun indicative of *country, profession*, &c.

Je suis *Francois*, | *I am a Frenchman.*
Est-il *philosophe, peintre*, &c.?—*Is he a philosopher, a painter*, &c.?

* Because the noun is then taken *adjectively*.

47. When the verb *être* is *understood*, with *passer pour*, to pass for ; *être regardé comme*, to be looked upon.

Comme medecin, je vous ordonne de prendre cela. Vous medecin! *As bring a physician, I order you to take that. You a physician!*

Il passe pour honnête homme,—*He passes for an honest man.*

48. With nouns placed in *apposition*.

Mons. B.* membre de parlement,—*Mr. B. a member of parliament.*

49. When an inference is drawn from what precedes.

Tous les hommes s'accordent sur certaines idées de justice et de morale ; † preuve évidente qu'il existe au fond de nos âmes un principe de vertu et de justice. } *All men agree upon certain notions of justice and morality ; † striking proof that there exist within us principles of virtue and justice.*

50. In the *title* or *name* of a work or performance.

Histoire d'Angleterre—*A history of England.*
Liste des habitans—*A list of the inhabitants.*

51. In *exclamations*.

Quel homme! *Quelle* belle maison!—*What a man! What a fine house!*

EXERCISE.

Are you *an Englishman*? No, Sir, I am *a Scotchman*, you might
Ecossais pouvoir il

pass for an American, they *think* him a learned man, he,
cain *on croire* *savant* lui

having been *a surgeon* will know how to dress his wounds, he *a*
* * *panser* *lui*

surgeon! he has never been *a surgeon*. wherever he went
partout où E

---

* In this case, also, the verb *être* is understood ; for you may say *Mons. B. (qui est) membre de parlement.*

† Understood *ceci est*, which is.

| he *was taken* | *for a Frenchman ;* so well* does he speak French.
on le prenoit *tant* *

Mr. M. (48) *a banker* in London, | has just | failed. | I dined
de *vient de* *faire banqueroute* cD

yesterday with Mr. C, *a* | first-rate | artist. The general in chief
du premier rang ——*e.*

ordered that all the foreign troops | should be | headed | by command-
cD *que* cK *commander* *officiers*

ers of their own country, (49) *an* arrangement well calculated to conciliate
fait *pour*

all parties. (50) *A description* of the pictures | exhibited at the Shaks-
partis * de

peare[2] gallery.[1] *A* choice of books, from the richest libraries. (51) *What*
——*ie* *tirés d'* *quelle*

a sublime idea! *What a* good little girl! *What a* nice dish!
quelle *bon*

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

General Rules, pointing out the Gender of Nouns.

52. *Are masculine.*

The names of God, of angels, of mankind, and of the *male* creation in general.

Trees and shrubs, as,

Un chêne, *an oak.*

Except—Une ronce, une épine, aubépine.
briar *a thorn* *hawthorn.*

* The adverb after the verb.

The days and seasons.

Le lundi, *monday, &c.*—le printems, *spring.*

Metals, minerals, and colours.

Le fer, *iron ;*—le mercure, *mercury ;*—le noir, *black.*

Except—*la platine*, platina.

Compound words.

Un parapluie, *an umbrella.*

The letters of the alphabet—*a, b, c, d,* &c.

53. *Are Feminine.*

The names of the *female* creation.

Virtues and vices.

La modestie, *modesty ;* la jalousie, *jealousy.*

54. Masculine Terminations.

A Consonant . . Un habit, *a coat.*

	Exceptions.
La boisson, *beverage*	la forêt, *the forest*
la brebis, *the sheep*	la leçon, *the lesson*
la chair, *the flesh*	la main, *the hand*
la chanson, *the song*	la mer, *the sea*
la clef, *the key*	la moisson, *the harvest*
la cour, *the court*	la mort, *death*
la cueiller, *the spoon*	la nef, *the nave*
la cuisson, *baking*	la nuit, *the night*
la dent, *the tooth*	la part, *the share*
la dot, *the portion*	la rançon, *the ransom*
la façon, *the making*	la soif, *the thirst*
la faim, *hunger*	la souris, *the mouse*
la fin, *the end*	la tour, *the tower*
une fois, *a time*	la vis, *the screw*

Terminations.	*Examples.*	EXCEPTIONS.
A	un opéra..*an opera.*	
E { accented and not preceded by *t.*	un dé,....*a thimble.*	
I	un parti..*a party.*	la foi, *faith* la fourmi, *the ant* la loi, *the law* la merci, *mercy.*
O	un écho..*an echo.*	
U	un chapeau, *a hat.*	une eau, *water* la glu, *bird-lime* la peau, *the skin* la tribu, *the tribe* la vertu, *virtue.*
ACLE	un miracle, *a miracle,*	la débâcle, *thaw.*
AGE	village, *village.*	la cage, *the cage* l'image, *the image* la page, *the page* la rage, *the rage.*
EGE	cortège, *procession.*	
IGE	prodige, *prodigy.*	
UGE	déluge, *deluge.*	
AIRE,	dictionnaire, *dictionary;*	grammaire, *grammar* une affaire, *an affair* une paire, *a pair.*
AUME	baume, *balsam.*	
EME	diadème, *diadem*	la crême, *cream.*
ISME	sophisme, *sophism.*	
OME	atôme, *atom.*	
OIRE	un oratoire, *an oratory*	la gloire, *glory* l'histoire, *history* la mémoire, *memory* la nageoire, *the fin* une poire, *a pear* la victoire, *victory* une écritoire, *an inkstand.*
All ADJECTIVES and VERBS taken substantively.	Le bon, *the good;* le mauvais, *the bad;* le manger et le boire, *eating and drinking.*	
X	voix, *voice.*	le choix, *choice* un crucifix, *a crucifix* le flux, *the flux* le prix, *the price.*

55. Feminine Terminations.

Terminations.	*Examples.*	Exceptions.
EUR	chaleur, *heat*	le bonheur, *happiness* le chœur, *the choir* le cœur, *the heart* le déshonneur, *dishonor* l'honneur, *honor* le malheur, *misfortune* les pleurs, *tears.*
ION	nation, *nation*	un million, *a million.*
SON	maison, *house*	le poison, *poison* le tison, *firebrand* le blazon, *heraldry* l'horison, *horison*; le gazon, *turf.*
EE	une armée, *an army.*	un athée, *an atheist* un mausolée, a *mausoleum* un trophée, *a trophy.*
TE, (*accented*)	la bonté, *goodness*	un arrêté, *a resolution* un comté, *a county*; le côté, *the side* un comité, *a committee* un été, *a summer* un pâté, *a pye*; un traité, *a treaty.*
IE	la vie, *life*	le foie, *the liver*; le génie, *genius* un incendie, *a conflagration* un parapluie, *an umbrella.*
ACE	grace, *grace*	un espace, *a space.*
ANCE, ANSE,	dance, *dance*	
ENCE, ENSE,	patience, *patience*	le silence, *silence.*
ADE	la promenade, *walk.*	
UDE	la lassitude, *lassitude;*	le prélude, *prelude.*
IERE	la rivière, *the river*	le cimetière, *burying-ground* le derrière, *the back part.*
URE	la tournure, *the gait*	un augure, *an augury* le mercure, *mercury* le murmure, *murmur* le parjure, *perjury.*
a double consonant and an e mute. LLE	une pelle, *a shovel*	un codicille, *a codicil* un chèvrefeuille, *a honeysuckle* un intervalle, *an interval* un libelle, *a libel.*
MME	une somme, *a sum*	un somme, *a nap.*
NNE	une canne, *a cane.*	
RRE	la terre, *the earth.*	du beurre, *butter.*
SSE	la chasse, *the chace*;	le carosse, *carriage* le colosse, *colossus.*
TTE	la patte, *the paw.*	

EXERCISE.

A coat, the truth, a grammar, a summer, of the forest, an
habit *vérité* *grammaire* *été* *forêt*

armour, the danger, a mouse, a rat, a fork, a spoon,
armure ——— *souris* *rat* *fourchette* *cueiller*

a knife, the pleasure, a churchyard, of a day, with a salary,
couteau *plaisir* *cimetière* *jour* *salaire*

the silence, by a death, in the looking-glass, in the river, with
——— *mort* *miroir* *rivière*

a candle, on the cage, from an age, the side, purity, an
chandelle —— —— *côté* —*eté*

exactness, a prelude, a lock, a murmur, the tooth, the
exactitude ——— *serrure* —— *re* *dent*

time, the price, a voice, of the choice, from the meanness,
fois *prix* *voix* *choix* *bassesse*

the valor, the happiness, a nation, a house, the poison, the
—*eur* *bonheur* ——— *maison* ———

fish, a part, a party, the turf, a song, an education, a
poisson *partie* —— *ti* *gazon* *chanson* ———

nap, an apple, the date, the harvest, the ransom, the faith,
somme *pomme* —— *moisson* *rançon* *foi*

the ant, a reed, a water, a castle, the skin, a despotism,
fourmi *roseau* *eau* *chateau* *peau* ———

a dome, a kingdom.
dôme *royaume*

HOW TO EXPRESS THE *s'*.

56. When two nouns come together, in English, (the first of which has the *s'*, as a mark of the possessive case,) they should be transposed, in French, with *du, de la, des,* between them.

The King's *apartment.*—L'appartement *du Roi.*

57. Sometimes, in English, the second noun, having already been named, is not repeated, but understood, by means of the *s'*. This noun is generally expressed in French, by the pronoun demonstrative.

I like this house better than your father's.
J'aime mieux cette maison-ci que *celle de** votre père.

58. Frequently, in English, also, by means of the *s'*, the words *house, dwelling, &c.* are understood; in such cases, the *s'* is expressed by *chez*.

I am going to your father's.—Je vais *chez* votre père.

EXERCISE.

I have John's book. Have you found my sister's pen? Mr. B.'s house is beautiful. I praise your son's application. Cæsar's valour, Cicero's eloquence, and Cato's virtue, will always be the admiration of posterity. Howard's benevolence and fortitude. Go to your *mother's*. Where were you? I was at Mr. *Wilson's*. At or to *Lloyd's*. *au café de*

De AND *à* BETWEEN TWO NOUNS.

59. When two substantives come together, in English, forming a compound noun, and, as it were, one idea, as *an iron gate, gunpowder*, the first noun, (*iron* or *gun*,) being taken adjectively, indicates either what the object (designated by the second noun) is MADE OF, or what USE it is put to. In both cases, in French, there must be a transposition. When you want to express *made of*, put DE between the nouns; and when, *for the use of*, put *à*.

An iron gate;—une porte *de* fer.
Gunpowder;—Poudre *à* canon.

In the first example, *de* is used, meaning that the gate is *made of* iron. In the second, *à* is used, meaning that the *powder* is for the *use* of a gun.

60. Instead of two substantives, the English often use a verb (in the present participle,) as a *dining-room*; which present participle is expressed, in French, by an infinitive, as *une chambre à manger*.

---

* See Demonstrative Pronouns.

Examples upon à *and* de.*

Une table *d'acajou ;—a mahogany table.*
Une table *à thé ;—a tea table.*
Une cueiller *d'argent ;—a silver spoon.*
Une cueiller *à café ;—a coffee spoon.*
De l'huile *d'olive ;—olive oil.*
De l'huile *à bruler ;—lamp oil.*
Une chambre *à coucher ;—a sleeping room.*

61. If the object mentioned be defined by a noun, denoting some *eatable,* this latter noun is usually preceded by the preposition *à* (making *au, à la, à l', aux.*)

De la sauce *à l' oignon ;*—onion *sauce.*
De la tourte *aux pommes ;*—apple *pye.*
Le marché *au foin ;*—*the* Hay *market.*

62. Upon the same principle, we form the following nouns, in which *au, à la, à l', aux,* signify *ayant,* having.

La déesse *aux yeux bleus ;—the blue-eyed*† *goddess.*
L'homme *aux longues jambes ;—the long-legged*† *man.*

EXERCISE.

A *brick-house,* a *stone building,* a *wooden table,* a china cup, *porcelaine tasse*

a *branched candlestick,* (59) a *tea* caddy, a *tea spoon,* a *coffee cup.* *boite*

Your father has bought a *wind-mill,* and your uncle a *water-mill.*

Are you fond of *rice pudding?* (61) No, Sir, but I like *apple-tart.* *j'aime*

Will you have any *bread sauce?* Whereabouts is the *hay-market?* *où*

Tell the oyster-woman to come.
de

---

* Besides, *made of,* DE, between two nouns, signifies also the *nature of.* See No. 31.

† That is, *having* blue eyes, *having* long legs.

The fair-haired goddess (61) presented herself before him. Behold
blond cheveux *voilà*

the blue-eyed maid. That long-backed man stands before us and pre-
fille *se tient*

vents us from seeing the scenery. The small-footed child. Did you
A *spectacle* *pieds* cD

see that broad-shouldered man?
épaules

OF ADJECTIVES.

The syntax of adjectives is divided into four parts.*

The first treats of the *Agreement* of adjectives with their substantives.

The second treats of the *placing* of adjectives.

The third treats of adjectives of *dimension.*

The fourth treats of *comparison* of adjectives.

Of the Agreement of Adjectives.

63. General Rule. Adjectives, in French, agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they refer.

64. Whenever an adjective or participle refers to two or more substantives of the *same* gender, the adjective or participle should agree with them, in gender and number.

Son père et son oncle sont *morts,—his father and uncle are dead.*
Sa mère et sa sœur sont *mortes,—his mother and sister are dead.*

Il rend sa mère et sa sœur heureuses.
He makes his mother and sister happy.

Elle a la figure et la voix jolies et douces.
Both her face and voice are pretty and pleasingly soft.

* As the *government* of adjectives is founded on the same principle as that of verbs, these two articles have been treated of together.

65. When an adjective refers to two substantives of persons,* and of *different* genders, it should be put in the masculine plural.

Il rend son père et sa mère heureux.
He makes his father and mother happy.

EXERCISE.

She is very *quick* in whatever she undertakes. Are those ladies
prompte *dans tout ce que*
proud? His looks and manners are genteel. Their house and garden
air (sing.) *distingué*
are well situated. Do you think the master and the mistress as much
esteemed as they deserve? You find languages and mathematics easier
que
to learn than music. Those little girls seem clever and | well behaved. |
docile
His presence of mind and promptitude seem astonishing.
sa

OF THE PLACING OF ADJECTIVES.

66. The learner having already seen in the first part of the grammar, (the accidence,) that most adjectives, in French, are placed *after* the substantive, with the exception of a few;† we shall now add that he must not be surprised, if, in the course of his reading, he should meet with many more adjectives besides those mentioned in the note, coming *before*. Some, for instance, for the sake of harmony,‡ others on account of their meanings, varying according as they are placed, either *before* or

---

* See Appendix upon adjectives.

† Beau, bon, gros, gras, grand, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux.

‡ Those few (*beau*, *bon*, &c.) are themselves, sometimes, for the same reason, placed *after*, when coming with others. As—un homme bon et vertueux,—*A good and virtuous man.* See Appendix.

after.* Without entering here into all the niceties of which this subject is susceptible, we shall merely say that, generally speaking, the safest way respecting the placing of adjectives is to put them *after* the substantive, and add the few following cases, in which adjectives *always* come *after* the substantive.

I. Those of COLOR, as *rouge*, red ; *noir*, black, &c. { un habit noir, / *a black coat.*

II. Those of FORM, as *rond*, round ; *quarré*, square, &c. { une table ronde, / *a round table.*

III. Those of PHYSICAL quality, as *chaud*, warm ; *froid*, cold, &c. { un tems chaud, / *warm weather.*

IV. Those formed from VERBS, as *embarrassé*, embarassed, &c. { des manières embarrassées, / *awkward manners.*

V. Those ending in IQUE, ESQUE, ULE, as *public*. { un esprit public, / *a public spirit.*

VI. Those of COUNTRY, as *François, Anglois*, &c. { un thême François, / *a French exercise.*

EXERCISE.

A tall young man, *grand* a worthless | old book, | *méchant* *bouquin* a malicious man, *méchant*

an old hat, an old but strong man. You use *se servir de* a shallow argu- *foible*

ment. This is an *evident* proof of his guilt. He is a good religious man. *voici*

Brave and trusty men are generally humane and merciful. Have *honnête* *miséricordieux*

they received a large sum of money ? We abhor a groveling mind. I *grosse* *rampant*

shall buy a pretty horse, a blue gown, a yellow handkerchief,

an oval face, hot water, cold meat, a picturesque view,

public garden. We have bought English knives and French silk.

---

* *Un honnête homme*, means an honest man ; un *homme honnête*, means *a polite man*, and so forth. See Appendix.

67. Two or more adjectives, in French, referring to the same substantive, are also generally placed *after*, and for the sake of euphony, require a conjunction between them, though there may be none in English.

Un homme grand *et* gros,—*A tall stout man.*

We might, however, say:

Un grand pupitre, commode et élégant,
A large, convenient, and elegant desk.

Adjectives of Dimension.

68. When speaking of the *height, length,* &c. of any object, the French use either an *adjective* or a *substantive* of dimension.

Un homme *haut* de* six pieds,* (with the adjective.)
A man six feet high.

Or,

Un homme *de* † six pieds *de hauteur,* ‡ (with the substantive.)
A man six feet high.

69. Either the verb *avoir* (with a substantive,) or the

---

* Observe that the adjective is placed immediately after the noun, denoting the object, *(homme)* and *de* before the noun of number, (six). As if it were *a man high of six feet.*

† Observe also, in this construction, (which is the best,) that the noun of number *(six)*, and that of measure *(pieds)* are placed before that of dimension *(hauteur)*, and that *de* is prefixed both to the noun of number and to that of dimension.

‡ *Adjectives* of *dimension,* with their corresponding *substantives.*

Adjectives.		*Substantives.*		
haut de	or	de hauteur	or	de haut .. *high* ..... *in height.*
long de	,,	de longueur	,,	de long .. *long* ..... *in length.*
large de	,,	de largeur	,,	de large .. *broad* or *wide, in breadth or width.*
épais de	,,	d' épaisseur	,,	..... *thick* .... *in thickness.*
profond de	,,	de profondeur		..... *deep* ..... *in depth.*
		de circonférence		..... *in circumference.*

Haut, long, and *large,* are used adjectively and substantively.

verb *être* (with an adjective,) may be used to express the verb *to be*, in such sentences as the following.

Cette tour *a* * soixante pieds de hauteur,—*that tower* is 60 *feet high.*

Or,

Cette tour *est* haute de soixante pieds.

70. *By* expressed by *sur.*

Une boite d'un pied de large *sur* deux de long, *or* de longueur.
A box one foot in width by *three in length.*

71. *More* and *less*, or any comparative, are expressed by *de plus* and *de moins*, in sentences like the following:

Qu' importe une livre *de plus* ou *de moins*,
What signifies one pound more *or* less.

Donnez lui cinq chelins de plus,—*Give him five shillings more.*

EXERCISE.

I have a table *four feet broad* and *six feet long*. (68) Is this pond *ten pieds*
feet deep? (69) Is not that desk *two feet three inches long*, and *one foot*, *pouces*
nine inches broad? When that tree is arrived at its { full growth } it G *perfection*
will { at least } *be* seventy feet *in height*, and fifteen *in circumference.* *au moins*
Those boys are five feet three inches high, { are they? They are *vraiment*
very tall for their age. Look at this other boy. He is hardly five *avoir à peine*
feet, and he is two years older. Give ten pounds more. His bro- *avoir* *de plu*
ther is two inches more or less in height.

---

* *De* is, of course, left out, before the noun of number, when the verb *avoir* is expressed.

Of Comparison of Adjectives.

With regard to comparatives of superiority, and their correlatives (*plus que,* more than,) of inferiority, (*moins que,* less than) of equality, (*aussi* and *si que,* as..as ; *autant* and *tant*—*que,* as much, as many—as)* see Accidence, p. 9.

72. *Than,* as a correlative, and coming before an *infinitive,* is expressed by *que de.*

Il aime mieux jouer que d'étudier —*He had rather play than study.*

73. *Than,* after a comparative, and before any tense of the indicative, is expressed by *que ne.*†

Vous êtes plus fort que je ne croyois,
You are stronger than I thought.

74. *Than,* after *plus* or *moins,* and before a noun of number (1, 2, 3, 4, &c.) is expressed by *de* (instead of *que.*)

Il a plus *de dix* schelins,—*He has more than ten shillings.*
Elle n'a pas moins *de vingt* ans,—*She is not less than twenty years old.*

75. *In the,* after a superlative, is expressed by *du, &c.*

Le plus savant homme *du* monde,—*The most learned man in the world.*

76. When the adjective in the superlative comes before the substantive, the article (*le, la, les,*) is used only once, as in English.

Les plus grandes nations,—*The greatest nations.*

---

* Only let it be observed that the personal pronouns, in English, following *than* and *as,* whether in the nominative (*I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*) or accusative, (*me, thee, him, her, us, you, them,*) are expressed by the disjunctive *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles.* Ex.

You draw better than I do,—Vous dessinez mieux que moi.

None of the auxiliaries, such as *do, did, will,* &c. which are often used in English, are expressed in French.

† If the first part of the sentence be *affirmative.*

77. But when the adjective, in the superlative, comes after the substantive, the article (*le, la, les,*) is placed both before the substantive and before *plus* or *moins.*

Les nations *les* plus belliqueuses et les plus commerçantes.
The most warlike and mercantile nations.

78. *The more* and *the less* repeated, before a verb, are expressed by *plus* and *moins,* without article.

**The more I see him, the more I love him,*—Plus je le vois, plus je l'aime.
The less he earns, the less he spends,—Moins il gagne, moins il dépense.

79. *The more* or *the less,* coming before an *adjective,* or a *substantive,*† are also expressed by *plus* and *moins.*

The longer the day is, the shorter the night.
Plus le jour est long plus la nuit est courte,

80. *So much the more, so much the less,* are expressed by *d'autant plus, d'autant moins.*

I feel the insult so much the more as I deserved it the less.
Je ressens *d'autant plus* l'insulte que je la méritois *moins.*

81. *The more* or *the less for it,* is expressed, in French, by *en,* before the verb, and *plus* or *moins* after.

He is only the more estimable for it.
Il n'*en* est que plus estimable.
He is not the less estimable.
Il n'en est pas moins estimable.

EXERCISE.

You are *more* learned *than* I am,‡ are you *stronger than* that man?

He is *less* experienced in the art of war than | most of the old generals.
la plupart des

She is not so peevish as you are. I wish I was as dexterous as you?
hargneux *Je voudrois être habile*

---

* Before a verb, such is the order of words:—1. *plus* or *moins.*—2. the nominative.—3. the verb.—4. the substantive.

† Before adjectives, such is the order:—1. *plus* or *moins.*—2. the nominative.—3. the verb.—4. the adjective, or the substantive.

‡ See Accidence, page 9, and Note (*) Syntax, page 25.

Have they not as much experience as I have? Has she not as many

friends as her sister?

We had rather | study than play. You had better do something
aimer mieux (72.) *il vaudroit mieux*

that may turn to your advantage, than waste your time in trifles. I
pût *perdre* *à* (27.)

prefer to work now, and play afterwards, than play now, and have to
ensuite (72.)

work afterwards.
après.

You have received *more than* you *deserve.* (73) I will not give you *so*

much as you ask. You have | improved more | lately than you
faire plus de progrès *dernièrement*

did | two years ago. |
faire il y a deux ans.

She has *more than a hundred* a year. I have not *more than ten*
(74.) *livres de rente*

shillings in my purse. Is[2] your brother[1] *more than twenty* years of
avoir

age? No, but he is not *less than eighteen.*
il n'en a pas

Mr. B. is the richest man *in the* City. | This is | the best chapter
(75.) *voici*

in the book, and | there is | the finest thought *in the* chapter. He is
voilà

descended from the first family *in* England.

Have you not seen the finest statues and pictures *in the* Louvre? We

do not wish to buy *the most* costly furniture, but the most convenient.
désirer (77.) *dispendieux meuble* (pl.)

The more you study, *the more* you will like science. *The more* chil-
(78.)

dren endeavour to be dutiful to their parents and masters, *the more*
tâcher *de* *obéissant envers* *leurs*

| the latter | will contribute to their happiness.
ceux-ci

The more attentive you are now, *the less* trouble you will have
(79.) G *de peine*

| hereafter | in understanding what your masters endeavour to teach
par la suite *à* A *ce que* G *de*

you, *the richer* they are, *the more* charitable they become ; *the more*

you indulge, the weaker you will get.
s'écouter *devenir*

80. We respect him *so much the more*, as he has *the less* pretensions. That is *so much the less* meritorious. That action is *so much the more* laudable.

I love him *the more for it.* (81.) Do you think us *the less guilty*? We shall not be *the richer for it.*

OF PRONOUNS.

The list of *conjunctive* and *disjunctive* pronouns (Accidence, p. 10,) being supposed to be well known, we shall proceed to explain,

First—The manner of using *je, tu, il, nous, vous, ils.*

Secondly—The full signification of *le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en.*

Thirdly—The way of placing the conjunctives *me, te, le,* with regard to the verb and themselves.

Fourthly—The use of the disjunctives *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles.*

Fifthly—*It* and *them,* when with prepositions.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

CONJUNCTIVE.

82. To express, in French, the full force of the English pronouns, *I, thou, he,* &c. when used emphatically, we make use of the disjunctive *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles.* See Disjunctive Pronouns. Ex.

Moi, seul, *je** l'ai fait,—*I, alone, did it.*
Vous l'entendez, mais *lui*, le voit,—*You hear it, but he sees it.*

83. The personal pronouns, whether in the nominative, as *je, tu, il,* &c. or in the dative or acccusative, as, *me, te, le, lui, nous, vous, les, leur,* should be repeated.†

Nous les aimons et nous les aimerons toujours,
We love them, and shall always love them.

84. When a verb is governed by two or more nominatives of different persons, as, *he and I study,* that verb takes the plural, and is put in the *first* person, in preference to the *second,* and in the *second,* in preference to the *third.*

Lui et *moi* nous‡ étudions,—*He and I study.*
Vous et *eux* vous marchez vite,—*You and they walk fast.*

EXERCISE.

(82.) *You* think so, but *I* do not. *We* were standing, but *they*
croire *je ne le crois pas* *debout*

were sitting. Having heard a noise at the bottom of the staircase, we
assis *du* *bas*

| went down | softly; *I* held a lantern, *he* a sword, and *she* stood at
descendre E *se tenir*

the window to give the alarm. Thou and he. She and they. (83.) I
pour

say so now, and shall always say so. You love him and take care of
le *de*

him. When we see him we shall speak to him. (84.) *You* and *I* shall
lui. G

go to the play, when what | is acted | is worth | seeing.
spectacle, m. *ce qu'on jouera* *en vaudra la peine*

---

* Take notice, that not only the disjunctive *moi, toi,* &c. are used, but also the conjunctive *je, tu, il,* &c. must be expressed.

† When the two verbs are in the same tense and the same person, the nominative needs not be repeated.

*Nous l'*avons vu, et lui avons parlé,
We have seen him, and have spoken to him.

‡ Take notice, also, that we use a resuming pronoun, (*nous, vous*) serving as nominative to the following verbs (*étudions, marchez.*)

You and *he* write very well. *They* and *she* know what they *bien*

| are about. | We and you shall go a hunting.
faire *à la chasse.*

Of the Accusative Case, *le, la, les.*

85. *Le* (before the verb) sometimes means *him* or *it*, sometimes *so*, and frequently is not expressed at all in English.

86. When meaning *him*,* we use *le, la, les.*

Je *le* connois, je *la* connois, je *les* connois.

87. When meaning *so*, it stands for a *substantive*, an *adjective*, or *part of a sentence.*

Etes vous la fille de Mr. B? oui, je lat suis,
Are you Mr. B's. daughter? yes, I am, (so.)

Madame, êtes vous malade? oui, je le suis,
Madam, are you ill? yes, I am, (so.)

Vous n'avez qu' à vous croire heureux, et vous *le* serez,
Only think yourself happy, and you will be so.

Avez-vous fait ce qu'on vous a dit? oui je *l'ai* fait,
Have you done what you were told? yes, I have (done so.)

88. With a comparative, &c.‡ *le* is not expressed in English.

Etes-vous plus savant qu'il *l'étoit*?
Are you more learned than he was?

Peut-on être plus malheureux que nous *le* sommes,
Can any one be more wretched than we are!

---

* Let it be recollected that *le, la, les*, are always governed by an active verb, (that is, a verb not requiring any preposition.) See Government of Verbs, also see *lui*, No. 89.

† When *le, so*, stands for a substantive, it is *declinable*, that is, it agrees with it in gender and number. When it refers to an adjective, it is *indeclinable.*

‡ See Comparison, &c. page 25, No. 73.

You see *him* every day, | do you not? | (85.) Do not listen *to her.*
n'est-ce pas *écouter* *

We value *them.*
estimer

Are you Captain Wilson's son? Yes, I am. (87.) Miss, are you niece
(8.) *la*

to Mrs. C? no, I am not. Are those ladies ill? Yes, they are, but they
de

will not remain *so* long. Because you are pretty now, you must
être *longtems* *il ne*

not imagine that you will always be *so.*
s'——er

Tell him that I am going in the country, and (that I) cannot receive him
dire à (89.) *à*

to-morrow. | Very well, | I will.* I do not think he is very ill, do you
c'est bon N

think | he is? | (87.)

Is he more attentive than he *was?* (88.) No, he *is* not. He is very

ill now. Will he | get better? | Yes, I am sure | he will. |
guérir *en*

Of the Dative Case, *lui, leur,* and *y.*

Lui and *leur.*

89. With a verb (requiring *à,*) we use *lui, leur,* (before the verb,) when speaking of *persons.*

Je *lui* parle, Nous leur parlons,
I speak to him or to her. *We speak to them.*

90. Even when speaking of *animals,* (still with a verb requiring *à.*)

Voilà des animaux, des oiseaux, des poissons ; donnez-*leur* à manger.
Here are animals, birds, fishes, give them something to eat.

---

* In French: *I will tell it to him.*

Of *y*.

91. The pronoun *y* refers either to *inanimate objects* or to *places*.—It is used with a verb or an adjective requiring *à*, and is placed before the verb. See No. 98.

92. When referring to *inanimate objects*, it may be expressed by either *at*, *for*, or *by*, with *it*, or *them*.

Voilà un beau tableau, mettez-y un câdre.
There is a fine picture, put a frame to it.

Je ne veux pas faire ce marché, car j'y perdrois.
I will not make this bargain, for I should lose by it.

93. When referring to *places* or *spots*, it answers to *there, to it, to them, in it, in them*, &c. expressed or understood.

Revenez-vous du Parc? non j'*y* vais,
Are you returning from the Park? no, I am going there.

Voilà un puits, prenez garde d'*y* tomber,
This is a well, take care you do not fall into it.

Exercise.

Love your fellow-creatures, and do* *them* good. (89.) Do not speak
semblables *bien*

to him harshly. Obey* *her*. My horse is hungry, give* *him* some oats,
durement *avoir faim* *avoine*, (sing.)

do not hit *him* with the whip. (90.) I have bought a dog, and have | had | a kennel[2] | made[1] | for him. | Bring* *him* something to eat and
frapper *fait* *faire* *lui*

to drink. Your boots are still good, why do you not put nails to them. There is a very convenient niche, (93.) I will put a statue *in it*. Here is an arm-chair, sit in it. That country is in a state of revolution, do not go there. No, we are not going there.
y

---

* All those verbs marked (*) require the dative, that is, *lui*, *leur*, &c. Generally speaking, whenever, in English, *to* is expressed or understood, *lui*, *leur*, *y*, must be used.

Of *de moi, de toi,* &c. and of *en.*

94. With a verb, requiring *de,* we say *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles,* after the verb, when speaking of persons, as:

Vous parlez *de moi, de lui,* &c. Je m'occupe de toi, *d'eux,* &c.
You speak of me, of him. *I am busy about thee, them.*

Of *en.*

When (still with a verb requiring *de*) we have been speaking of things, with respect to *quantity, number,* or when we imply *separation,* we use *en* before the verb. See No. 98.

95. When referring to *quantity,* it answers to *some of it,* expressed or understood.

Vous avez du pain, donnez-*en* aux pauvres,
You have some bread, give some to the poor.

96. When referring to *number,* it answers to *some of them,* expressed or understood.*

Avez vous des amis? oui, j'*en* ai, (and not oui, j'ai,)†
Have you any friends? Yes, I have.

Vous avez une maison, et moi j'*en* ai trois,
You have one house, and I have three.

97. When referring to *separation,* it answers to *from it, from them, away from it,* &c. expressed or understood.†

Allez-vous au parc? Non j'*en* viens,
Are you going to the Park? No, I am just come from it.

Votre livre est dans mon pupitre, eh bien ôtez-l'*en*,
Your book is in my desk: well, take it out (of it.)

---

* Whenever, therefore, a noun of number is mentioned, without repeating the substantive, put *en* before the verb. If the verb be not repeated, then *en* is of course left out, as—*Combien d'enfans avez-vous?* Trois, *or* j'*en* ai trois. How many children have you? Three. I have three.—But not *j'ai trois* without *enfans;* nor (which would be as ridiculous,) *j'en ai trois enfans,* that is, never use both *en* and the substantive it stands for.

† From the examples given above concerning *le, la, les, y,* and *en,* the learner will perceive that those particles being seldom expressed, in English, he cannot too strongly be reminded of the necessity of using them, in French.

EXERCISE.

You are greatly concerned *about him.* (94.) Speak *of her.* You
bien *inquiet* *de*

are esteemed *by them.* Love her always, for you are tenderly loved
de

by her.* We were chatting about thee. What did you say of me?
de *causer de*

(95.) You have no money, but your father has;† therefore I will lend

you *some,* in hopes (that) you will return one part,† and he the other.
(sing.) *rendre* (82)

Give me some books. I cannot,‡ for I have none. When you have any,

will you | let me have some? Yes, I will.§ (96.) How many apples
* *céder*

have you? I have a *dozen.* Lend me three, I will return them when
rendre

I have *some.* I must buy some pens, for I have none. (97.) The
G *il faut que* I

dog is in the kennel, make him | get out (of it.) The enemy had
sortir (pl.)

taken possessson of a very advantageous post; but we succeeded in |
parvenir *à*

driving them away. | (97.)
chasser de

THE MANNER OF PLACING THE CONJUNCTIVES *me, te, le, lui, leur, y, en.*

98. Here follows a table, shewing the order in which the *conjunctive* pronouns are placed in a sentence, with regard to the verb and themselves, when many of them come together.

---

* When the personal pronoun has been used in the same phrase, *y* or *en* may then be employed for persons, *y* when *à* is implied, and *en* when *de*

† *Some* is here understood in English, and therefore should be expressed in French.

‡ (Do so) being understood, it should be expressed, in French, by *l* before the verb. See No. 87.

§ *Will* may either be left out or expressed by the repetition of the verb *céder*; thus—*je vous en céderai.*

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
*Je,	ne,	me,	le,	lui,	y,	en,	auxiliary,	pas,	participle,	adverb.
Tu,		te,	la,	leur.			*or* verb.			
Il		se,	les.							
Elle		nous,								
Nous,		vous,								
Vous,		se.								
Ils.										
Elles.										

EXAMPLES.

1 4 8
Je le vois,—*I see him.*
Tu la vois,—*thou seest her.*
Il les voit,—*he sees them.*

1 3 8
Nous vous voyons,—*we see you.*

1 3 8
Vous nous voyez,—*you see us.*

1 4 8
Ils le voient,—*they see him.*

1 2 4 8 9
Je ne le vois pas,—*I do not see him.*

1 4 8 10
Je l' ai vu,—*I have seen him.*

1 2 4 8 9 10
Je ne l' ai pas vu,—*I have not seen him.*

1 5 8
Tu lui donnes,—*thou givest to him.*

1 5 8 10
Il lui a donné,—*he has given to him.*

1 2 5 8 9 10
Nous ne lui avons pas donné,—*we have not given to him.*

1 2 4 5 8 9 10
Vous ne le lui avez pas donné,—*you have not given it to him.*

1 5 7 8 10
Ils lui en ont envoyé,—*they have sent him some.*

1 2 6 8 9 10
Je n'y suis pas tombé,—*I have not fallen into it.*

1 2 6 8 9 10
Tu n'y es pas tombé,—*thou hast not fallen into it.*

---

* Observe 1st, from the figured line, that *je* (No. 1) comes first, *ne* (No. 2) comes next, and so forth; and that although all the above figured words never can come together in the same phrase, they still keep their respective order. 2ndly, that all the conjunctives up to No. 7 come, not only before the verb, but also before the auxiliary. 3rdly, that when No. 1 and No. 3 come together, corresponding in person, that *is, je me, tu te, il* or *elle se, nous nous, vous vous, ils* or *elles se,* the verb before which they are placed is a reflective verb. 4thly, that *me* and *te* come before the third person *le,* and *le* come before *lui*; that the adverbs *mieux, bien, plus, jamais, toujours,* come between Nos. 8 and 10.

1 2 [5 7 8 9 10
Ils ne lui en ont pas demandé,—*they have not asked him for any of it.*

1 2 5 7 8 9 10 11
Nous ne leur en avons pas envoyé dernièrement,—*we have not sent them any of it latterly.*

1 2 3 7 8 9 10 11
Nous ne nous en sommes pas informés dernièrement,—*we have not inquired about it latterly.*

1 2 3 6 8 9 10 11
Ils ne s'y sont pas appliqués dernièrement,—*they have not applied to it latterly.*

EXCEPTIONS.

99. First. In *interrogations,* N° 1, only, comes after N° 8, as:

2 5 6 7 8 1 9 10
Ne lui y en ai-je pas envoyé,—*Have I not sent him any of it thither?*

Second. With the *imperative affirmative,* N°s 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, come after N°s 8, except in the third person, in which they follow in the same order as in the numbered line, N° 98.

Parlez-moi,* *speak to me.*	Ne me parlez pas, *do not speak to me.*
Habille-toi,* *dress thyself.*	Ne t'habille pas, *do not dress thyself.*
Donnez-le-moi,* *give it me.*	Ne me le donnez pas, *do not give it me.*
Envoyez m'en,* *send me some.*	Ne m'en envoyez pas, *do not send me any.*

It is for the sake of sound that we say—

Menez-y-moi, *take me there.* Donnez-le-moi, *give it me.*
Instead of *Menez-moi-y*—*Donnez-moi-le.*

EXERCISE.

I see *him,* do you see *her?* does he hear *them?* we do not see *him,*

(98.) you will not know *her,* know *them* better, and you will value
estimer

them. I have known *him.* We had not listened *to them.* You have
davantage *connoître* *

done† *him* good. They have done *her* harm. Have you given *it to him*
(89.) *du bien* *du mal*

Tell *him* that Mr. B.[‡] is arrived. I have already. Tell him

---

* With the imperative, use *moi* and *toi,* instead of *me, te,* except before *en,* as *donnez m'en.*

† See Note, page 32.

‡ Turn—*I have already told it to him.*

| again, | for he did not hear you. Give *it him.* Do not tell *it*
encore une fois

him. Have you written *it to her?* Have you not sent *it to her?* Send

me some. Do not send me any. You have plenty of money; give
beaucoup

him some. I shall not give *him any,* | he is not in want | *of it.*
avoir besoin

Where is the letter I wrote *to them?* Have you forwarded *it to them?*
que *envoyer*

No, but I shall* to-morrow. Do so, for I have *some*
vous m'obligerez *car*

more to send *them.* I am sorry I gave† *it to him.* Had I‡
encore *de*

known that, I should not have given *it to him.* They tell me there are
que il *y a*

no pictures | to be seen | in that house; had‡ I known there were
à voir

none, I should not have gone *there*—there will soon be *some,* then I will
alors

go. Were there *any* when you went? No, there were *none,* but I was
on m'a

told | there would be *some* | in a short time. ‡ Have they applied
dit que *sous peu* *s'appliquer*

to mathematics? No, they have not latterly.§ They are without provi-
dernièrement

sions at home, therefore I will carry *some* | when I go.‖ Do not carry
chez eux

any. Why should I not carry any? Because I will send *some.*

---

* Turn—*but I shall forward it to-morrow.*
† *Gave* is to be turned by an infinitive.
‡ Turn—*if I had known that.*
§ Turn either—*not latterly,* or, they have not applied to them, &c.
‖ The verb after *quand,* when the action is future, is to be in the future.

DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

Nom.	Moi, toi, lui, elle, soi, nous, vous, eux, elles, soi.
and	*I, thou, he, she, we, you, they, they.*
Acc.	*me, thee, him, her, oneself, us, you, them, themselves.*

These pronouns are used in the following cases—

100. When answering to *questions.*

Qui a fait cela?—Moi, *or* toi, lui.
Who did that?—I, thou, he.

Qui a-t-on frappé?—Moi, lui, elle, eux, &c.
Whom have they struck?—Me, him, her, them, &c.

101. With *Prepositions.*

Il parle de moi, avec toi, pour lui, &c.
He speaks of me, with thee, for him, &c.

102. With *Conjunctions.*

Jean, *lui* et *moi*, nous lui avons parlé,—*John, he and I spoke to him.*
A-t-il parlé à nous ou à eux,—*Did he speak to us or to them?*

103. With *Reflective* verbs.

Je m'abandonne à toi et à eux; *and not* je me t'abandonne, &c.
I give myself up to thee and them.

104. With the verbs aller, *to go;* penser, *to think;* courir, *to run;* venir, *to come;* viser, *to aim,* each requiring to be followed by *à.*

Je pense *à lui*,—*I think of him.* } *and not* { Je lui pense.
Venez à elle,—*Come to her.* } { Venez-la.

Of *soi,* and *moi-même.*

105. *Soi* is used in a vague sense, and is the correlative of *on, chacun, personne, tout le monde,* &c.

On n'aime que *soi*,—*People love no one but themselves.*
Chacun pense à *soi*,—*Every one thinks of himself.*

106. *Même,* added to the foregoing pronouns, identifies more strongly the person mentioned, and makes the pronoun more emphatical.

Je l'ai élevé *moi-même*,—*I brought him up myself.*

EXERCISE.

(100.) Who | is knocking | at the door ? *I*, sir, I came to
* D *je suis venu pour*

see you. Who won the game ? *she* or *he* ? *He*. Whom have you
gagner cD *partie* ? *qui*

accused ? *Them*. Come with *me*. Go without *her*. I rely upon
compter

them. Between you and *me*, I do not think (that) he | is in the
avoir I

wrong. | *She* and *I* | are learning | French. He or they | have
tort (84.) D *le*

made a mistake. | He applied *to me* in preference *to them*, because
se tromper *s'adresser* *de*

they entirely trusted *to me*. Do not laugh *at me*. Pray,
se fier *se moquer de* *je vous en prie,*

think *of me*. Do not forget to come *to us* if you | should be in
(101.) *être* D *dans le*

want. | Whom was he aiming at, *at her* or *at him* ? Most
besoin (125.) *viser à* *tout le monde*

people | are fond of | speaking of themselves. We think always of
(sing.) *aimer* A *on*

ourselves first. Every body is right to take care of himself. Have
d'abord *chacun avoir le droit de*

you written this letter yourself ? He has cut his own hand off. You
s'est coupé la * *lui-même*

will not go and ask permission yourself ? I beg your pardon, I
* *je vous demande*

will do it myself.
je le demanderai.

It and *them* used with Prepositions.

107. *It* and *them* accompanied by a preposition, and standing for an object without life, are seldom* expressed

---

* We say *seldom*, because this rule is often violated by the best authors; especially when the object is personified.

in French, by a preposition and a pronoun, but by a corresponding *adverb* only, implying in itself both the preposition and pronoun.

Here follows a list of prepositions with their corresponding adverbs, and of prepositions used adverbially.

PREPOSITIONS which are followed by the subst. or pron.	ADVERBS implying the preposition and pronoun.	PREPOSITIONS used both as prepositions and as adverbs.
autour de, *round.*	à l' entour, *round it.*	contre, *against (it.)*
avant *before.*	auparavant, *before.*	sans, *without (it.)*
dans, *in*	dedans, *in it.*	a travers, *through (it.)*
hors, *out.*	dehors, *out of it.*	proche, *near (it.)*
près, *near.*	auprès, *near it.*	en travers, *across (it.)*
sous, *under.*	dessous, *under it.*	derrière, *behind (it.)*
		devant, *before (it).*
sur, *upon.*	dessus, *upon it.*	aux environs, *round about.*
		vis-à-vis, *opposite to it.*
plus,* *more.*	davantage**more (of it)* y † *to it, to them, in it, &c.*	

EXAMPLES.

Ne mettez pas mon chapeau sous la table ; mettez le dessus.
Do not put my hat under the table, put it upon it.

J'ai mis mon livre dans ma poche.
I have put my book in my pocket.

Vous avez une grande poche; mettez mon livre dedans.
You have a large pocket; put my book in it.

---

* *Plus* and *davantage* have nearly the same signification, only that *plus* is followed by *que* or *de*, before a noun, and *davantage* comes after a verb and finishes the sentence.

Je n'ai plus de thé,—*I have no more tea.*
En voulez-vous davantage?—*Will you have any more?*

† *Y*, as has already been seen, signifies *in it, in them*, and is often used instead of *dedans.*

Voila un puits, prenez garde d'y tomber,
There is a well, take care not to fall into it.

Ne vous appuyez pas *contre* la muraille,
Do not lean against the wall.

Voilà un arbre, appuyez-vous contre.
There's a tree, lean against it.

EXERCISE.

You | might see | trees all *round* the house. The king was on his
on E

throne, and his courtiers were *round it.* I came *before* you. That

event happened *in* such a year; but | the one | you allude* to | hap-
en * *celui*

pened *before.* We threw his hat *in* the river; and he jumped *in* |
sauter

after it. The general | was standing | in the | middle of the field of
pour le rattrapper *étoit* *au*

battle, and his officers were *round him.* Did you sit *near* him?
(94.) *Etiez-vous* *assis* (101.)

There is | his carriage, go *near it.*
voilà

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Mon, &c. *before a noun expressing a part of the body.*

108. When the French express an action over any part of the body,† they use the pronoun, *me, te, lui, nous,*

---

* Turn, *of which you speak.*

† *La vie,* life, *l'âme,* the soul, *le cœur,* the heart, whatever, in a word, forms a part of man's existence, is included in this, and the following rules. Upon the same principle, the sensations of *pain, soreness,* and *aching* of any kind, are expressed by *avoir mal à,* with the article *le,* or *avoir un mal de,* without either article or pronoun.

J'ai mal à la tête,—*I have the head ache.*
Vous avez mal à la gorge,—*You have a sore throat.*
J'ai chaud (ou) froid aux pieds,—*My feet are warm or cold.*

Or, J'ai un mal de tête affreux. Also by *faire mal,* as:

La tête me fait mal,—*My head pains me.* See Idioms.

vous, leur, (before the verb or auxiliary,) as pointing to the person upon whom the action falls; and the article, *le, la, les,* is placed before the noun, denoting the part of the body.

Il *me* coupe *le* bras,—*He cuts my arm.*

109. Should the person (the nominative to the verb,) act upon himself, the verb in this case becomes reflective, and ought to be conjugated accordingly.

Il *se* coupa *le* bras,—*He cut his arm.*
Je me suis cassé la jambe,—*I have broken my leg.*

110. Again, the article is used (before the noun of the part of the body) instead of the possessive pronouns, when the nominative to the verb sufficiently points out the possessor, as,

Je lui dois *la* vie,—*I owe my life to him.*
Elle ferme *les* yeux,—*She closes her eyes.*
Ils eurent *la** tête tranchée,—*They had their heads cut off.*

Nous vinmes tous *les* mains liées derrière *le* dos.*
We all came with our hands tied behind our backs.

Also in such sentences as the following,

She came in with tears in her eyes.
Elle entra les larmes *aux* yeux.

He was standing before me with† his mouth open, looking at the shops.
Il étoit devant moi, *la* bouche béante, regardant les boutiques.

Exceptions.

111. When any part of the body is particularised, whether by habitual pain, or any continued sensation, we use the possessive pronoun, (*mon, ton, son,* &c.) Ex.

---

* In such sentences as the above, though speaking of several persons, we always put in the singular, the noun expressive of those parts of the body of which we can have but one, as *le nez,* the nose, *la bouche,* the mouth, &c.

† *With,* in such sentences, is seldom expressed in French; it is understood.

Sa jambe continue d'enfler,—*His leg continues to swell.*

112. Generally, in French, rather than leave room for ambiguity, with regard to whose part of the body one speaks of, it is better to use the possessive pronoun.

EXERCISE.

You cut *my* finger. He will break *your* arm. They have burnt
(108.) *casser*

his hair. A musket ball | took away | part of *his* face. Do not
(pl.) *fusil* *emporter* *une*

tread on *her* feet. Has the carriage run over *his* body? He has cut
passer (109)

his own hair. Has he | blown *his* brains | out? Whenever | he
bruler (sing.) * se

shaves | he cuts *his* face. Do not do that, you will put *your* eyes
raser *visage* *crever*

out. I have hurt *my* leg against the corner of the table. Does
à *se faire mal à*

your head ache? She | holds out | *her* hand to you. Shut *your*
avoir mal à *tendre* (110.)

eyes. Open *your* mouth when you speak, and do not keep *your*
serrer

teeth close. You would have had *your* head | cut off, | if I had
* *trancher*

not warned you. I confess, I should so, | I, therefore, owe you *my*
avertir du danger. *Oui, je l'avoue,* *aussi* *vous dois-je*

life.

ETRE A, signifying *belonging to.*

113. *Mine, thine, his,* &c. may be expressed by *le mien, le tien, le sien,* &c. (see Accidence, p. 12.) or by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles,* after a tense of *être;* with this difference, that, *à moi, à toi,* &c. particularly express *property,* and are never used but when you might, instead of *être,* put *belong to:* whereas

le mien, le tien, &c. are used more particularly to *distinguish* one person's property from another's.*

Voyez ces maisons ; eh bien, elles sont *à moi.*
Look at those houses ; well, they are mine.

Ce champ étoit à mon voisin ; à présent, il n'est plus à lui, il est à moi.
This field was my neighbour's ; now it is no longer his, it is mine.

Voici bien des chapeaux, lequel est *le vôtre ?*
Here are many hats, which is yours ?

Prenez ce chapeau, c'est le vôtre.
Take this hat, it is yours.

114. Likewise, in such a sentence as the following,

Cette maison *est* à mon père,†—*This house is my father's.*
A qui est cet argent ? à moi,—*Whose money is that ? mine.*

EXERCISE.

These shoes are *mine ;* where are *yours ?* I will not take this
vouloir
money, for it is not *mine ;* whose is it then ? I do not know whose it
à qui *à qui*
is. Give her that knife, for it is *hers.* Mine is better. These watches belong to you and your brother ; [here is | yours, and there is his. Is that your garden or his ? It is mine.
est-ce-là

---

* Generally speaking, *le mien, le tien,* &c. are used substantively, viz. with *c'est,* and *à moi, à toi,* &c. adjectively, viz. with *il est.*

A moi, &c. are used, when a substantive or a pronoun, which is the nominative of *être,* is expressed in the same member of the sentence.

Ce cheval *est à* moi,—*That horse is mine.*
Cela *est à* nous,—*That is ours.*

In which instances *cheval* and *cela* are nominatives to *est.* Whereas we should say : ce cheval est à moi, mais voici *le vôtre. Le vôtre* is here used, because there is no substantive expressed in the last phrase.

† Here follow the three ways in which the *s',* as a mark of the possessive case, may be expressed in French.

Voici la maison de mon père,—*This is my father's house.*
Cette maison *est* à mon père,—*This house is my father's.*

Voici ma maison, et voilà celle de mon père,
This is my house, and that is my father's.

115. *One's* is, in French, *son, sa, ses;* and this latter pronoun is the correlative of the indeterminate pronoun *on,* as well as of the *infinitive* mood.

One seldom knows one's own faults,
On connoit rarement ses propres fautes.

It is galling to see one's property wasted,
Il est douloureux de voir gaspiller sa propriété.

EXERCISE.

One does not like to | be told | of *one's* faults. It is a pleasant
On * *s'entendre dire* * *vérités* *c'est agréable*

thing to see *one's* efforts crowned with success. One seldom[2] likes[1]
* *de* *couronnés* *de*

to speak a foreign language as well as | one's own. | We can see
* *aussi bien que* *la sienne* *On*

other people's faults, but we cannot see | our own. | I touched it
défauts *on* *les siens*

with *my own* hand.
de *propre*

HOW TO EXPRESS *its* AND *their.*

116. In a sentence containing one verb, *its* and *their* are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs.*

J'aime Paris, ses bâtiments, ses promenades, &c.
I like Paris, its buildings, its walks, &c.

117. But in a sentence of two members, containing two verbs, *its* and *their* (when *accusatives** to the second

---

* If *its* and *their* are *nominatives* to the next verb, (*être* excepted) they are to be expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs.*

J'ai vu Paris ; ses bâtimens m'ont frappé.
I saw Paris ; I was struck with its buildings.

Generally speaking, when *its* and *their* may be turned into *of it, of them,* and placed after the verb, the rule No. 117 may be used, in French. You may say, in the example, *I admire the buildings of it.*

verb) are expressed by the article *le, la, les,* before the substantive, and *en* before the second verb.

J'aime Paris, j'*en* admire *les* bâtimens et les promenades,
I like Paris, I admire its buildings, and its walks.

N.B. The first verb is *aime,* and the second *admire.*

EXERCISE.

There is a fine piece of music, I admire its sweetness and boldness.
Voilà *morceau* (117.) *hardiesse*

You have a good coat, the cloth *is* very fine, and the make quite
façon

fashionable. Is[2] this table[1] to be sold? Yes. I should like to buy it,
à la mode *Devoir*

but I do not like its wood. I admire music; its effects are wonderful.

Do not touch my knife, for the handle is broken. Take off that bonnet,
à

I cannot bear the appearance of it. These are | fine trees; their fruit
souffrir *voilà*

is delicious. These are fine trees; we admire their fruit. These are

fine trees; their * fruit attracts the admiration of every body.

118. *Of mine, of thine, of his, of hers, of ours, of yours, of theirs,* in such sentences as the following, are translated into French, by *un* or *une de mes un;* or *une de tes,* &c.

Un de mes amis,—*A friend of mine.*
Un de mes compatriotes,—*A countryman of mine.*

[2] The following construction is peculiar to the English language.

That friend of yours is a very singular man,
Votre ami est un homme bien singulier;

and is, therefore, translated as if it were only *your friend is,* &c.

* See Note to No. 117.

EXERCISE.

I met *a friend of mine* | as I was coming along. | Do you know
en venant

Mr. B.? Yes, he is a countryman of mine. Those pictures of yours are
c'est

seen in a wrong light.
faux jour.

119. When addressing a person to whom we wish to shew respect and deference, we add the expressions *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle,* before the pronoun preceding the noun, which indicates their relative or friend.

Comment se portent, *monsieur* votre père, *madame* votre mère, et *mademoiselle* votre sœur?

How are your father, mother, and sister?

EXERCISE.

Have the kindness to present my respects to your *father* and* *mother.*

How is your sister? Is your cousin well?

120. When addressing *relations, friends,* &c. we use *mon, ma, mes,* &c. and repeat them before each noun.

Veuillez vous approcher *mon* père, *ma* mère, *mes* frères, et vous, *mes* amis,

Have the goodness to come near to me, father, mother, brothers, and you, friends.

EXERCISE.

I wish to speak to you, *brother.* And so do I want to speak to
moi aussi avoir besoin

you, sister. How do you do, father? Good day, mother.
de parler *Adieu*

---

* Turn, in French, *and to madam your mother.*

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Of *qui*.

121. Qui,* *who*,† *which*,† is a *nominative*, and is applied to *persons* or *things*, (when unattended by a preposition :) it is of both genders and numbers.

L'homme *ou* la femme *qui* parle,
The man or the woman who speaks.

Les maisons *qui* me plaisent,
The houses which please me.

122. If attended by a preposition (*de qui*, &c.) it means *whom*, and is applied to *persons* only, *singular* or *plural*, (see *lequel*.)

Les messieurs et les dames *à* (ou) *avec qui* je parle,
The gentlemen and the ladies to or with whom I speak.

Qui is always repeated before every verb governed by it.

Un homme qui boit, qui mange, qui marche, qui court, &c.
A man who drinks, eats, walks, runs, &c.

123. When used *interrogatively*, *qui* always refers to *persons*, as a nominative or accusative *(who ?* or *whom ?)*

Qui fait du bruit ?—*Who makes a noise?*
Qui avez-vous battu ?—*Whom have you beaten?*

124. It also admits of any preposition, (still for *persons* only.)

A qui parlez-vous ?—*Whom do you speak to ?* ‡
Avec qui vous promeniez vous ?—*Whom were you walking with?*‡

---

* *Qui*, in sententious style, may stand for *celui qui*, he who. See Demonst. Pron. Note to No. 151.

† Besides *who* and *which*, the word *that* answers sometimes to the *relative*, (qui, que) to a *demonstrative*, (ce, celui, &c.) or even to a *conjunction* (que). It is, therefore, very necessary that every time the learner meets with *that*, he should attend, and inquire what it stands for, whether a *relative*, a *demonstrative* pronoun, or a *conjunction*, in order that he may be able to express it properly, in French.

‡ The prepositions *to*, *with*, or any other, may, in familiar style, be placed after, in English; but in French, a preposition never can be placed but *before* the pronoun relative, as *à qui*, *avec qui*, &c.

125. Instead of *qui*, (especially in familiar style) we frequently use *qui est-ce* QUI ? for the nominative, and *qui est-ce* QUE ? for the accusative.

Qui est-ce qui fait du bruit ?—*Who makes a noise ?*
Qui est-ce que vous avez* battu ?—*Whom have you beaten ?*
A qui est-ce que vous vous êtes adressé ?—*To whom did you apply ?*

EXERCISE.

The general who commands ; the soldiers *who* are commanded by a good officer ; the cowards *who* beat the defenceless[2] wretches ; the
lâches (122.) *sans défense*
enemies *who* are pursued and slain ; the flocks *which* feed in the
paître (irr.)
meadows ; the sun *that* shines and vivifies every thing. Have
luire *tout*
you seen the girl *who* laughs and chats so much ? Do you not know
causer
the gentleman *to whom* I was talking ? I like to visit those *with*
whom I may be amused, instructed, or *to whom* I can do good. The
pouvoir s'amuser *s'instruire* (123.) *du bien*
man *from whom*‡ I received so many favors. The clerk *upon whom* you
services *commis*
rely. The people *towards whom* you behave with so much kind-
gens (pl.) *envers* *se conduire*
ness, do not seem to be very grateful. *Who* is that ? I. *Whom* have
paroitre *là* (124.)
we met ? Me. *Who* spoke to you ? He. *Whom* did you see ? Him.
Whom did you dance *with* yesterday evening ? With Mr. B. *Upon* (125.)

---

* Take notice, that *qui est-ce que*, being of itself an interrogative expression, does not, of course, admit of the following verb being again in the interrogative form, therefore it should be *vous avez*, not *avez-vous battu ?* It may be preceded by any preposition.

† *S'amuser* and *S'instruire* ought to remain in the *infinitive*, on account of the other verb *pouvoir ;* and the pronoun *se* to be changed into *me*, to agree with *je.*

‡ *Of whom* is *dont*—*from whom* is *de qui.*

whom do you rely? *Who* is that? Whom have you beaten? Who
là

| is that making | a noise in the other room? To whom have you
* *du*

written? Upon whom do you rely? In whom have you
en

confidence?
confiance

Of *que.*

126. Que, *whom, which,* when in the *affirmative,* is the *accusative* of *qui,* referring to *persons* and *things,* of both genders and numbers.

*L'*homme et la femme *que* vous estimez,
The man and woman whom you esteem.

Le palais et la maison *que* vous bâtissez,
The palace and the house which you build.

127. *Que* is never left out in French, although *whom, which,** often are, in English.

The man you esteem (for) the man whom you, &c.
L'homme *que* vous estimez.

128. *Que* must not only be expressed, but *repeated,* before every verb that governs it.

L'homme *que* vous respectez et *que* vous estimez,
The man you respect and esteem.

Interrogatively.

129. When *interrogative, que* means *what,* (referring to things.) It is only used before *verbs* requiring *no* preposition. See *quoi.*

Que faites-vous? *Que* dites-vous?
What are you doing? *What do you say?*

---

* What is said about *qui,* in note † to No. 122, may be applied to *que.*

Also *qu' est-ce qui** and even *qu' est-ce que c'est qui.**

Qu' est-ce qui vous fait mal?—*What hurts you?*
Qu' est-ce que vous dites?—*What are you saying?*
Qu' est-ce que c'est que cela?—*What is that?*

EXERCISE.

The gentleman *whom* you know is arrived. (126.) The lady *whom* you saw the other day. The goods *which* you have bought. The furniture (f. pl.) *meubles* *that* you have sold. The books you read, study, and learn by heart, (127 and 128.) will be of infinite service | to you. | *d'un grand* *vous* *What* have you bought? *What* (129.) has he written? *What* do they want? *vouloir* *What* are men before God? *What* would she like?

N. B. The above examples should be done first with *que* and then with *qu' est ce-que.*

Of *dont.*

DONT, *of whom, of which, whose* (standing for *de qui duquel,* &c.) is applied to persons and things, of both genders and numbers.

Here follow four different cases, in the three first of which, *dont* should be used, and in the fourth *de qui* or *duquel* should be preferred.

1st Case.

130. La personne, | dont† je parle, | m'a écrit.
The person of whom I speak, has written to me.

---

* *Qu'est-ce qui* is nominative, and *qu'est-ce que* accusative.

† *Dont*, in French, as well as *of whom, of which, whose*, in English, always coming, as it does in the above and following examples, between the nominative, (*la personne,*) and the verb, (*je parle,*) together with which verb it forms a complete phrase, being between commas, we will endeavour to point out the different constructions of which such phrases, taken by themselves, are susceptible; they have been put between two bars, (| |).

That is, merely, when the verb requires *de*, as *parler de*. The order is as follows.

1. dont. 2. the nominative, (*je*). The verb, (*je parle*).

2nd Case.

131. La personne, | dont l'enfant est malade, | m'a écrit.
The person, whose child is ill, has written to me.

That is, when there is possession expressed, and the object possessed *(l'enfant)* is *nominative* to the following verb *(est)*, such is the order:

1. dont. 2. the article (*l'.*) 3. the object possessed (*enfant.*) 4. the verb, &c. (*est.*)

3rd Case.

132. La personne, | dont j'élève l'enfant, | m'a écrit.
The person whose child I have brought up, has written to me.

That is, when the object possessed *(l'enfant)* is the *accusative* of the verb *(j'élève)*. The order is as follows:

1. Dont. 2 The nominative (*je.*) 3. the verb (*élève.*) 4. the accusative, (*l'enfant.*)

4th Case.

133. La personne, | à l'enfant de qui je donne des leçons, | m'a écrit,
The person to whose child I gave lessons, has written to me.

That is, when the noun, denoting the object possessed *(l'enfant,)* comes with a verb requiring a preposition, *(donner à)*. The order is as follows:

1. The preposition with the article (à l'.) 2. The object possessed, (*enfant.*) 3. *de qui.* 4. The verb, &c. (*je donne.*)

134. If *things*, instead of *persons*, be mentioned, the same order of words ought to be observed, only that *duquel, de laquelle*, &c. ought to be placed No. 3, in lieu of *de qui.*

La table, | aux pieds de laquelle j'ai mis des roulettes, | m'est utile,
The table, to the legs of which I have put castors, is useful to me.

EXERCISE.

N.B. Pronouns are never left out, and are always repeated.

The ladies and gentlemen *about** *whom* you were speaking to me, (130.) *parler de* * will dine with us to day. Is that the horse you | think so much *faire tant de cas de* * of? | The fortune and good health you enjoy, contribute very *jouir de* much to your happiness. Here is the money you | want. *avoir besoin de*

There is | a young gentleman *whose* appearance prepossesses in his *voilà* *monsieur* (132.) *prévenir* *en* favor; but | by the side | of him is a young lady *whose* manners are re- *à coté* (94.) pulsive. I have bought the tree *whose* fruit is so delicious. I like * *des* curtains, the color *of which* agrees with that of the paper of the (131.) *s'accorder* *celle* room. (132.) The person, *whose* horse I have hired, is arrived from the country. The people, *whose* hospitality you | extolled | so much, | receiv- *vanter* ed me with | a great deal of | coolness. I know a lady, *whose* beauty *beaucoup de* *froideur* I cannot help admiring, but *whose* temper I heartily detest. The *s'empêcher* *sincèrement* children *to whose* whims we submit | only become more tyran- (133.) *se soumettre à* *n'en deviennent que plus* nical, when they have not sense enough to discern our *jugement* (36.) *pour s'appercevoir de* kindness. The Loire, into the bed *of which* many[2] rivers[3] flow,[1] is very (134.) *se jeter*

---

* As *dont* implies, and, in fact, includes, as it were, the preposition *de* and the pronoun, the learner is not, of course, to repeat *de*; and he is to pay no regard to whatever preposition the English verb requires, provided the French verb requires *de*.

beautiful. Is that the carriage, upon the doors of which you
portières

had your arms and crest painted?
avoir fait peindre

Of *lequel.*

135. Lequel, *which,* when used affirmatively, stands for a noun already mentioned, and agrees with it, in gender and number. It refers to *persons** and *things,* and is always preceded by the *preposition* required by the verb.

La plume *avec laquelle* j'écris—(écrire avec,)
The pen with which I write (or) *I write with.*

Le siège *sur lequel* je suis assis—(assis sur,)
The seat on which I am sitting (or) *I sit upon.*

Interrogatively.

136. Lequel? *which?* when used *interrogatively,* serves to distinguish one or more objects among many.

In this case, both *lequel* and *which* may be applied to persons and things.

De tous ces messieurs, *lequel* connoissez vous?
Of all those gentlemen, which do you know?

Voilà trois maisons; dans *laquelle* voulez-vous demeurer?
There are three houses; in which will you live?

137. *Lequel* is also used with verbs requiring a *preposition.*

De toutes ces personnes, à laquelle vous êtes-vous adressé?
Among all those persons, to which did you apply?

Voilà plusieurs pinceaux, duquel voulez-vous vous servir?
Here are several paint brushes, which will you make use of?

---

* Although we may say, "la personne *avec laquelle je me promène,*" it is better to say *la personne avec qui;* that is, *qui,* (with a preposition) when speaking of persons, is to be preferred to *lequel.*

EXERCISE.

The penknife *with which* I make my pen is blunt. The needle you
(135.) *tailler* *ne coupe pas*

sew *with** is too thick. The house *to which* I have added two wings.
gros

The books | *out of* | *which* I make extracts are very entertaining and
dans *amusans*

very useful. Here are many ladies; *with which* will you dance? I
Voilà (137.)

have already engaged one. *Which*? *Which* town in Europe should you
prier (96) *de*

prefer to live *in*? You saw a great number of statues; *to which* do you give the preference?

OF *quel*.

138. QUEL, *what*,† is mostly used in the *interrogative*, and placed before a *substantive*,‡ with which it agrees in gender and number.

Quel livre avez-vous lu?—*What book have you read?*
Quels messieurs?—*What gentlemen?*
Quelles dames?—*What ladies?*

139. It is also used *exclamatively*. (See No. 51.)

Quelle grande femme!—*What a tall woman!*
Quel gros arbre!—*What a large tree!*

---

* The Note ‡ to No. 125 is applicable to all relative pronouns.

† It also, sometimes, means *which*, as in sentences like the following. Which book do you like best? *Quel livre aimez-vous le mieux?*

‡ Exceptions: *être*, *devoir*, and *pouvoir*, sometimes come immediately after *quel*.

Quelle est votre opinion?
What is your opinion?

Quel doit être le sentiment d'un père!
What must be a father's feelings!

Quels peuvent être ses motifs?
What can be his motives?

EXERCISE.

N.B. *Quel,* like all other pronouns, should be repeated.

What goods have you bought? *What* news have you received? f. s.

*Which** picture do you prefer? *Which* lace shall you wear? *Which porter*

boots and shoes shall I give you? *What* a fine diamond! *What* a

large garden! *What* kind people! *What* misfortunes he has *grand bon gens, f.*

experienced! What a man! What is your address? What must *éprouver* pl. (138.)

have been his idea? What could be his motive? What books shall E

we read to-day?

OF *quoi.*

140. QUOI; *what,* is used both *affirmatively* and *interrogatively;* it refers only to objects without life, *not named,* and merely alluded to. When used with verbs, it never comes but with those requiring a *preposition.*

When *affirmative,* it is always preceded either by *ce, c'est,* or *voilà.*

Ce à quoi vous vous amusez est indigne de votre attention—(s'amuser à,)
What you are amused with is not worthy of your attention.

C'est à quoi je m'applique—(s'appliquer à,)
It is what I apply to.

Voilà sur quoi je me repose—(se reposer *sur,*)
See what I rest on.

141. When *quoi* is used *interrogatively,* it begins the sentence, still preceded by the preposition, required by the verb.

A quoi vous amusez-vous?—*What are you amused with?*
A quoi m'appliquè-je.—*What am I applying to?*
Sur quoi vous reposez-vous?—*What do you rest upon?*

EXERCISE.

Give me that, if you please. No, I cannot; it is *what* I get my (87.) *gagner*

* See Note (†) to No. 138.

livelihood by.* Look at that ditch, it is *what* I threw my watch into.
vie *avec*

Do not take that away, *it is what* I write *upon*. *What* did *you* do
ôter

this *with?* *Into what* shall I pour this? What is that good *for?*†
bon à

What is he busy *about?* *What* do you meddle *with?*
occupé à *se mêler de*

Of *où*.

142. Ou, *in which, where,* &c. of both genders and numbers, refers to a noun implying *place, time, condition,* and *end.*

L'endroit *où* je vais, et *où* je demeure,
The place where I go to, and where I live.

Le but *où* il tend,
The end he aims at.

La condition *où* je me vois réduit,
The state to which I see myself reduced.

Vous voyez *où* il est réduit,
*You see what he is reduced to.**

N.B. *Où* may be used for *lequel,* or for *quoi,* with verbs which govern *à, dans,* &c. still preserving the signification given at No. 42.

Le but *auquel* (or) *où* il tend. La condition *à laquelle,* (or) *où* je me vois réduit. Vous voyez *à quoi* (or) où il est réduit.

143. *D'où* (from *where* or *whence.*)

L'endroit *d'où* il sort,
The place whence he comes.

L'état déplorable *d'où* il m'a tiré,
The deplorable state whence he has taken me.

144. *Par où* (through which.)

L'endroit *par où* nous avons passé,
The spot through which we passed.

---

* The Note (‡) to No. 125, is also applicable to *quoi* and *où.*
† Turn—*to what good that?* or, *to what that is it good?*

Interrogatively.

145. *Où, d'où, par où,* are also used *interrogatively,* still preserving the meanings given at Nos. 142, 143, 144.

Où allez-vous?—*Where are you going?*

Où me réduisez-vous?—*What do you reduce me to?*

D'où venez-vous?—*Whence come you?*

D'où tirez-vous cela?—*Where do you take that from?*

Par où passerez-vous?—*Where shall you go through?*

Exercise.

The spot he lives *in,* and *where* he directs his steps. *I* was
endroit (142.)

shocked at seeing the state he was *in.* The situation he was in
navré de douleur de *place, f.*

(or in which he was) formerly, was better than | the one | he is in (or
celui, f.

in which he is) now. The country you come *from* is warmer than

this. The author *from whom* you have taken this piece of poetry is
celui-ci (143.) *morceau*

very eminent. The places *through which* we are to go are very fine.
(144.) *devoir* * *passer*

The towns I shall pass *through.* Notice the countries you will pass
Remarquer

through, or *through which* you will pass.
(142.) N.B.

Interrogatively.

Do you know where I am going *to?* *Where* have you put my umbrella? *Whereabouts* does he live? *Where* do you come *from?*

Where do all these metals come *from?* *Whence* does this originate
provenir

Where will you go through? *Whereabouts* will the troops pass *through*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

146. Pronouns which always require to be placed immediately *before a noun.*

Ce (*m. s. before a consonant*)	*this, that.*	Ce chapeau, *this* or *that hat.*
Cet (*m. s. before a vowel*)	,, ,,	Cet homme, *this* or *that man.*
Cette (*f. s*).....	,, ,,	Cette femme, *this* or *that woman.*
Ces (*m. and f. plural*)	*these, those.*	Ces hommes, *these* or *those men.*
		Ces femmes, *these* or *those women.*

EXAMPLES.

Give me *this* | copy-book. | Will you | pick up | *that* needle ?
cahier *ramasser*

I esteem *that* man. Look yonder at *that* hamlet; it is surrounded
là bas * *il*

with trees. Place that inkstand nearer to me. *These* trees are still
de arbres *de*

in blossom. *Those* hedges will soon[2] put forth[1] leaves.
en fleur *être en feuilles*

147. Pronouns used when the object is *not named.*

(*Applied to things only.*)

Ceci....*this.*	Ex.	Ceci est bon, *This is good.*
Cela....*that.*	,,	Cela est mauvais, *That is bad.*

EXERCISE.

Do you like *this?* Is *that* good ?* When did *this*† happen ? When will *that* happen ? Is *this* right ? Was *that* good ? Would not *that* be contrary to the rule ?

---

* See Accidence, p. 38. at the bottom of the page.

† Unless we speak of two different objects, we generally prefer using *cela.*

Pronouns used to avoid the repetition of a noun *named before.*

(Applied to *Persons* and *Things.*)

Celui, *m. s.* Celle, *f. s.* Ceux, *m. pl.* Celles, *f. pl.*	ci, là, No. 148.	de, No. 149.	qui, que, dont, de qui, à qui, pour qui, &c. auquel, avec lequel, &c. No. 150.

148. *Ci* and *là* added to *celui, &c.* serve to point to one or more objects,* named before, referring to their distance from the person speaking. They stand thus:

Celui-ci, *this.*	Celui-là, *that.*
Celle-ci, *this.*	Celle-là, *that.*
Ceux-ci, *these.*	Ceux-là, *those.*
Celles-ci, *these.*	Celles-là, *those.*

EXAMPLES.

De ces deux livres, j'aime mieux *celui-ci* que *celui-là.*
Of those two books, I like this better than that.

149. *De,* added to *celui, &c.* refers to a person or an object *possessed.* They stand as follow:

Celui de, celle de, *this or that (of).*
Ceux de, celles de, *these or those (of.)*

EXAMPLES.

Laquelle des deux maisons aimez-vous le mieux ; *celle de* votre père, ou *celle de* votre frère ?
Which of the two houses do you like best ; your father's *or your* brother's ?

150. *Qui, lequel,* &c. added to *celui. &c.* refer to a noun which either governs or is governed by a *verb* following. They stand as follow:

---

* *Celui-ci, celle-ci, &c.* signify also *the latter,* and *celui-là, &c. the former.*

Celui qui, *he who* (and speaking of things,) *the one which.**
Celle qui, *she who*.. „ .... „ .... „ „ „
Ceux qui, *they who* „ .... „ .... *those* „
Celles qui, *they who* „ .... „ .... *those* „
Celui que, *he whom* „ .... „ .... *the one which.*
„ &c. adding *que* to *celui. celle, ceux, celles.*
Celui dont, *that of whom*, or *of which.*
Celui dequi, *that from whom.*
Celui auquel, *that to which.*
Celui avec lequel, *that with which*, and so on, with any other preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Celui qui parle,—*He who speaks.*
Celui que je vois,—*He whom I see.*
Celle à qui j'écris,—*She to whom I write.*
Ceux dont je parle,—*They of whom I speak.*

Celui auquel j'ai donné de l'avoine,
The one to which I gave some oats;
Celui pour lequel je donnerai cinquante guinées,
The one for which I shall give fifty guineas;
} *speaking of a horse.*

151. Remark that *celui*, &c. are always used with one of the above words, *ci, là, de qui, que, lequel*, &c. but never with two. Therefore, we do not say :

Celui-ci de *or* qui, celle-là de *or* que, &c.

152. *Celui qui*† and *celui-là* are also used in sentences like the following, in which *celui qui* answers to *he who*, and *celui-là*, to *he* (separated from) *who :*

Celui qui parle mal de son prochain, mérite d'être méprisé.
He who speaks ill of his fellow-creatures, deserves to be despised.

And the other way with *celui-là*, the sentence being reversed :

Celui-là mérite d'être méprisé, qui parle mal de son prochain,
He deserves to be despised, who speaks ill of his fellow-creatures.

---

* Therefore, never say *l'un qui*, &c. but *celui qui*, &c.

† *Qui*, (without *celui*,) in sententious style, may also stand for *celui qui.*

Qui désobéit à son maître, peut aussi désobéir à son père,
He who disobeys his master, will also disobey his father.

(See Appendix).

Exercises.

(148.) Which of those books do you like best, *this* or *that*? *This* is better printed, but *that* is on better paper. There are | two houses, which | *voilà*

would you advise me to buy, *this* (one) or *that* (one)? I would *conseiller de*

advise you to take *this* (*one*) in preference to *that* (*one*); *those* | *de* *ceux* *en voilà*

yonder | are still preferable. I have no scissors, take *these*. Have you any pens? No, Sir. Well, take *those*. French and English are the *Eh bien* (m.)

languages the most generally spoken; the *former* in Europe, and the *en usage*

latter in the other parts of the world.

(149.) Your house is not so large as your father's, nor even | so much so | *grand* *autant*

as your sister's. Give me William's book, and keep John's. The term of life is short, that of beauty is still more so. The art of *davantage*

painting is superior to that of music.

(150.) *He* or *she who* speaks so unfairly, deserves to be blamed. These *injustement* *de*

two horses are good, but *the one which* you bought the other day is far *bien*

superior | to either. | I think Joseph's writing is as good as *à l'un ou à l'autre*

Charles's. I have no needles; lend me *the one which* is on the table. No, Miss, for it is *the one* (*which*) Miss C. | is using; | however I can *se servir de*

give you this (one.) Very well, give me | any one | you | like? | *celle que* *vouloir* G

She whom every body admires, is not always estimable. Those *to whom* you were talking, and *for whom* you | interest yourself | so *s'intéresser à*

strongly, seem | very deserving of it. | *He*, or *that man, on whom*
le bien mériter (152.)

one cannot rely. *She*, or *that lady, with whom* you were walking.

This pen-knife does not cut so well as *the one with which* I made
tailler

your pens; but *the one to which* I ordered a new blade | to be put
faire mettre * * *

in | is still better. This bed is not good; but *that* (or) *the one in which*
* *encore*

I sleep, is worse.
coucher

He who does not listen to the voice of conscience, has no barrier to prevent him from doing wrong. That man, or he, does not know learning, who despises the value of it; (or) he who despises learning, does not know the value of it.

Of *ce qui.*

153. Ce qui*—*what* (or) *that which.*
Ce que—*what* (or) *that which.*
Ce dont—*of what* (or) *that of which.*
Ce à quoi—*to what* (or) *that to which.*

Examples.

Ce qui † vous plait,—*What pleases you.*
Ce que vous apprenez,—*What you learn.*
Ce dont vous parlez,—*What you speak of.*
Ce à quoi je m'applique,—*What* I apply *to.*

154. *Ce qui,* &c. often refers to a *verb* or to *a whole sentence,* meaning in English *which, a thing, a circumstance which,* Ex.

---

* *Ce qui* never is *interrogative.*

† *Qui* which is joined to *ce* follows the same rules and undergoes the same changes as the relative *qui,* No. 121. Therefore:
Ce qui is the *nominative* (to the verb *plait.*)
Ce que is the *accusative* (to the verb *apprenez.*)
Ce dont is used when the verb or adjective requires *de* (as *parler de.*)
Ce à quoi is used when the verb or adjective requires *à* (as *s'appliquer à.*)

Il lit peu à la fois, mais il lit ce peu avec attention ; *ce qui* vaut mieux que de lire beaucoup, mais légèrement.

He only reads a little at a time, but that little he reads with attention ; which is better than reading much, in a careless manner.

155. *It is what, that is what,* may be rendered into French by *c'est ce qui* or *que, voilà ce qui* or *que.* Ex.

Voilà ce qu'il a dit,—That is what he said.
C'est ce qui le rend malade,—That is what makes him ill.

156. In a sentence of two parts, such as *ce que je crains le plus, c'est de le voir.* What I most fear, is to see him ; that is, beginning with *ce que,* the second member ought also to begin with *ce,* before *être,* when the object (*voir*) is a *verb* or a *substantive.*

Ce que je crains, *c'est* de le *voir,*—What I fear, is to see him.
Ce que j'aime, *c'est la vérité,*—What I love, is truth.

157. But if the object be an adjective, *ce* must not be used.

Ce que je dis *est vrai,*—What I say is true.

EXERCISE.

Do you know *what* he says? *What* becomes you does not become (153.) *sied* *me*

me. Guess *what* I should like to have. I can guess *what* you *à moi.* *vouloir* * *

deserve, but not *what* you would like. | Have you been told | *what* *Vous a-t-on dit*

vexes him? *That is what* you | want. *What* you are thinking *avoir besoin de.* *penser à*

of seems | to make you sad. | You | little think of | what you *attrister.* *ne pas* *s'imaginer*

have to answer for. *répondre de.*

He plays well on the violin, and draws beautifully ; advantages *du violon* *supérieurement*

which recommend him every where. *lui sert de recommendation* *partout*

That is what you have thought of before. It is what I was telling
déjà
you some time ago.
il y a quelque tems.

What I should like, would be to see Raphael's pictures.
aimerois *de*

OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

158. On, l'on,* *one, people, men, somebody, we, you, they.*

Although *on* may be expressed in English by *people, men, we,* &c. yet, in French, it never governs but the *third person singular.*

On est heureux,—*People are happy.*

Dans ce pays-ci *on* pense différemment,
We, in this country, think differently.

159. *On* is always *nominative* to a verb, and has a vague and unlimited acceptation; though governing the third person singular, it may refer to the 1st, 2nd, or 3rd person singular or plural.

On se donne de la peine pour apprendre ce qu'on aime,
We take pains to learn what we are fond of.

Hence *on* is used in vague expressions of reports.

On dit, on suppose, on croit que, &c.
It is said, supposed, thought that, &c.

---

* *On* takes an *l'* (*l'on*) for the sake of euphony, after the words *et, si, ou,* and also *que* if the next word begin with *c* or *qu.* Ex.

On vous aime, et l'on vous fait du bien.
People love you and do good to you.

Je crois que l'on commence (*and not*) qu'on commence.
I think they begin.

It would, of course, be needless to add an *l'* at the beginning of a sentence, or before a word already beginning with an *l'.* Ex.

On le lit *not* l'on le lit.
They read it.

160. But the most usual, and generally the most correct, way of expressing *on*, in English, is to turn the *active* voice, in French, into the passive in English.*

On bâtit un grand nombre de vaisseaux,*
A great number of ships are being built.

On répandit l'alarme,*
The alarm was spread.

EXERCISE.

In Italy *people* naturally[2] seem[1] | fond of | the fine arts. *We* are
(159.) *aimer*

happy when we think ourselves so.
* *l'être*

It is said, in the paper, that we shall have war. They suppose that
journal

Turkey will make peace with Russia. Yes, it is generally thought so.

A beautiful play *was* acted last night. Orders *were sent* from the
pièce f. * *hier* (160.)

Admiralty to lay an embargo on every Foreign ship. The French

language *is spoken* in every court in Europe. English is spoken here.

Can mathematics be learnt without a master? When *you* are | on the
(159.) *au haut*

top | of St. Paul's, *you* may see | the whole of | London. On the
* *tout*

top of that hill *you* may discover three or four counties; and at
cime *colline* *pouvoir* *comté*

the bottom, the environs are so rural and so quiet, that *you* would ima-
bas

gine yourself (to be) at a hundred miles from the metropolis.
capitale

---

* This is done by reversing the order of the sentence, and making the *accusative*, in French, (*un grand nombre de vaisseaux*, and *l'alarme*,) the nominative, in English, and beginning the sentence with it.—and *vice versa*.—When translating from English into French, begin first with *on* (as the nominative;) secondly, put the verb (in the active voice;) thirdly, the accusative, as (*vaisseau* or *alarme*) follows of course.

161. QUELQUE* *some, any,* is placed before a substantive.

Quelques personnes pensent ainsi,—*Some persons think so.*

162. *Quelque* followed by *que* signifies, also, *whatever; however,* and requires the next verb to be in the subjunctive. It is sometimes *declinable,* and sometimes *indeclinable,* and admits of the three following constructions.

163. Before an *adjective,* it means *however,* and is *indeclinable.*

QUELQUE *bonnes* QUE soient vos sœurs,
However good your sisters may be.

Order of words.

1. Quelque. 2. The adjective. 3. Que. 4. The verb (in the subjunctive.) 5. The substantive.

164. Before a *substantive,* it means *whatever.* It is *declinable,* and agrees in number with the substantive.

Quelques richesses que vous ayez,
Whatever riches you may have.

Order of words.

1. Quelque. 2. The substantive. 3. Que. 4. The verb (in the subjunctive.)

165. Before *verbs,* it means *whatever.* In this case, *que* is separated from *quel;* and *quel* it is that agrees in gender and number, with the substantive, not *que.*

Quelles que soient vos richesses,
Whatever may be your riches.

---

* It refers to *number* and not to *quantity.* Ex.

Quelques pains means *some loaves;* but to express merely *quantity* of bread, we should say *du pain.*

Quelque is applied to a small number, and means *a few;* whereas *des* may be applied to both.

Order of words.

1. Quel. 2. Que. 3. The verb. 4. The substantive.

EXERCISES.

Some writers are in favour of this way of thinking, and others are (161.) *manière de*

against it. He has *some few* shillings in his purse. I have *a few* friends

that will support me in this undertaking, but not enough to ensure *aider* *pour m'assurer de*

success.

However strong this wine may be, I can drink it. *However* learn- (163.)

ed those ladies may be, they will not be able to understand that work.

However superior we may be in number, the enemy have the advantage (sing.)

over us | in point of | skill and courage.
sur *en fait de* *habileté*

Whatever talents you | may be possessed of, | still you | must | as (164.) *posséder* *cependant* *il faut*

well as | other people, | have time for studying and reflecting. *Whatever* *les autres que* *de*

friends you may have, you will not succeed. *Whatever* education he

may have had.
recevoir

Whatever your intentions *may be*, I shall act | as I think proper. | (165.) *en agir à ma guise*

Whatever may be the influence of your friends, they cannot insure you *assurer*

success without your own exertions. *Whatever* our efforts may be (or *propres* *efforts* (165.)

let our efforts be what they may,) we shall lose the battle.

166. QUELQU'UN, *somebody, some one.* This pronoun answers, with regard to the signification and position to the English given above.

J'ai vu quelqu'un,—*I have seen some one.*
Nous avons parlé à quelqu'un,—*We have spoken to some one.*

167. *Quelques-uns, quelques unes* (*de*) some of, a few, any of. These pronouns also answer to the English.

Quelques uns de vos amis,
Some *of your friends.*

Avez-vous des livres? Oui, j'en ai *quelques uns.*
Have you any books? Yes, I have some, or *a few.*

Of them, in the expression *some of them,* is often left out.

EXERCISE.

I called where you told me. Well, did you see *any body*? Yes, I
passer cD

saw *somebody*, but not the person I wanted.
non pas (127.) *vouloir* E

Have you any pictures? Yes, I have *a few*, but *some of them* have
en

been spoilt by the damp.

(167.) *Some of* your acquaintances will be present. Has he written to

any of his relations? Yes, and *some of them* have sent him an answer.
parens *faire*

168. QUICONQUE, *whoever.* This pronoun is always used as nominative. It is applied to persons, of either gender, in which case the adjective or pronoun, referring to it, must agree with the noun for which *quiconque* stands.

Quiconque aime son mari est attentive à lui plaire,
Any woman that loves her husband, is anxious to please him.

EXERCISE.

Whoever says so is misinformed. Whoever could imagine such a |
mal-informé *a pu* *un tel*

scheme | must have been | mad. Any woman that | is insolent to
projet *a dû être* *quiconque* *envers*

her husband cannot expect that kindness and attention which are
s'attendre à *complaisance* *que l'on*

due to her sex, and especially to a married woman.
doit

169. CHACUN, m. CHACUNE, f. *each, every one.* Is used substantively, that is, not followed by a noun.

170. *Chacun de,* referring to a substantive, and agreeing with it, is translated by *each of.*

Chacun de ces messieurs,—*Each of those gentlemen.*
Chacune de ces dames,—*Each of those ladies.*
Chacun de nous, de vous, d'eux,—*Each of us, of you, of them.*

171. When the words *of them* refer to things, they are not expressed.

Combien avez-vous donné pour ces couteaux ?—J'ai donné cinq chelins pour chacun,
How much did you give for those knives ?—I gave five shillings for each.

Vous voyez ces maisons ; eh bien, chacune m'a couté mille livres.
You see those houses ; well, each of them cost me a thousand pounds.

EXERCISE.

Every one has his own way of thinking. There are several | poor
* *manière*
persons at the door ; give them *each* a loaf. I shall give a shilling
* *à chacun*
to *each of you.* *Each of them* spoke in turn.
à son tour

These fans please me, I will give you half a guinea *for each.* He (has) bought two horses. And what did they cost him ? *Fifty* pounds *each.*

Let every one go to his place. They went every one to their places.

172. CHAQUE, *each,* is always used before a substantive.

173. The same difference that exists between *every* and *each* exists also between *tout le* and *chaque ;* that is, *every* and *tout* are taken collectively, and *each* and *chaque* individually

J'ai donné à *chaque* personne ce qui lui étoit dû,
I have given to each person his due.

Il donne à *tout le monde* sans exception,
He gives to every body without exception.

EXERCISE.

I looked at *each* article one by one. *Every* article in the shop
l'un après l'autre
was bad. *All* these books cost 200 pounds; guess how much I gave for *each* volume.

174. *L'un l'autre* is used with verbs requiring *no preposition*, indicating an action done reciprocally, and therefore conjugated reflectively.*

masc. *sing.*	*masc.* *plu.*	
L'un, l'autre.*	Les uns, les autres.	*one another.*
fem. *sing.*	*fem.* *plu.*	
L'une, l'autre.	Les unes, les autres.	*each other.*

Ils s'aiment *l'un l'autre*,
They love each other.

Ces gens se haïssent *les uns les autres*,
Those people hate one another.

175. *L'un à l'autre*, &c. to one another, has the same signification as the above; only that it is used with whatever preposition that may be governed by the verb, instead of *à*, such as *de, pour, &c.* The preposition should be placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*.

Ils se parlent l'un *à* l'autre,
They speak to each other.

Ils parlent l'un *de* l'autre,
They speak of one another.

Nous comptons l'un *sur* l'autre,
We rely on each other.

---

* *L'un l'autre* imply two persons; *les uns les autres* imply several.

176. *L'un et l'autre,* &c. both.

Je les aime l'un et l'autre,
I love them both.

L'un et l'autre ont raison,
Both are in the right.

177. *L'un et l'autre* cannot always be used to express *both;* as, for instance, when *both* comes before a substantive or a pronoun, as,

L'Histoire et la géographie sont intéressantes,
Both history and geography are interesting.

Vous et moi,
Both you and I.

Par mer et par terre,
Both by sea and by land.

178. *A l'un et à l'autre,* &c. to both; *l'un et l'autre* admits of the preposition governed by a verb, in which case that preposition is repeated before each *l'un* and *l'autre.*

Il a fait du bien à l'un et à l'autre,
He has done good to both.

Vous médisez de l'un et de l'autre,
You slander both.

179. *L'un ou l'autre,* either, *either one or the other* This pronoun governs the singular.

L'un ou l'autre *sera* choisi,—*Either will be chosen.*

The preposition belonging to the verb is placed before *l'un* and before *l'autre.*

Je parlerai à l'un ou à l'autre,—*I shall speak to either.*

180. *Ni l'un ni l'autre,* neither,— (it requires *ne* before the verb.) If *ni l'un ni l'autre* begin the sentence, the following verb must be in the singular; but if *ni l'un ni l'autre* come after the verb, the latter ought to be in the plural.

Ni l'un ni l'autre n' a été condamné.
Il n'ont été condamnés ni l'un ni l'autre.
Neither has been condemned.

181. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* requires the preposition to be repeated both before *l'un* and before *l'autre*.

Il ne parle ni à l'un ni à l'autre.
He speaks to neither.

EXERCISE.

They hate *each other*. They do not help *each other*. We ought in (174.) *on*

this world not only to love, but help *one another*.
s'aimer l'un l'autre *s'entr'aider*.

They | do | good to *each other*, instead of slandering *each other*.
se faire du (175.)

They | are so much alike | that I took *one for the other*.
se ressembler tant

They are *both* arrived, and | both | still[2] suffer[1] from their (176.) *tous deux* *encore*

journey. I saw them *both*. Which of the two will you have? I will take them *both*.

(177.) *Both* your brother and I have been unfortunate. *Both* white and black are suitable colors, | in point of | dress.
qui siéent *en fait de*

To which will you write? to *both*. Which does he depend on? On *both*. *dépendre de*

On which do you rely? *on both*.
compter sur?

Which will you have? I do not care, *either*. Tell me which of those (179.) *Ce m'est égal*

two ladies you prefer to walk with? With *either*, I have no choice. *préférence*.

Which will you sell? *Neither*. *Neither* pleases me. Of these two (180.)

bonnets, does *neither* please you? I give the preference to *neither*. I do not depend on *either*.

182. NUL, NULLE, *no*, (in the sense of *not any*.) It requires *ne* to be placed before the verb.

Nul homme, *nulle* femme, n'a le droit d'en agir ainsi,
No man, no woman, has a right to act thus.

183. It may be used substantively.

Il entre beaucoup de monde ici, mais *nul* n'a le droit de toucher aux meubles.
Many persons come here, but no one has any right to touch any part of the furniture.

EXERCISE.

No one has a right to deprive any creature of life wantonly.
le droit de *inconsidérément*

No well educated[2] person[1] | would think | of doing that.
élevé *personne* f. *s'ingérer*

184. PERSONNE, *nobody, no one*. *Personne* may be placed *before* or *after* the verb, but *ne*, which accompanies it, must go *before* the verb.

185. The adjective or participle referring to it must always be in the masculine singular.

Personne n'est exempt de fautes,—*No one is exempt from faults.*
Il n'a frappé personne,—*He struck no one.*

186. When INTERROGATIVE, *personne* is sometimes used without *ne*, meaning *a person, a being*, in a vague sense.

A-t-on jamais vu personne de si instruit!
Did you ever see any one so learned!

187. *Personne* requires *de* before the next adjective or participle.

Il n'y avoit personne *de malhonnête* dans cette maison,
There was nobody rude in that house.

188. When *personne* is used substantively, it means *a*

person, it then is feminine, and requires the *pronoun* and *adjective,* referring to it, to agree with it.

Voilà une *personne* bien *obligeante; elle* ne refuse jamais de rendre service,
There is a very obliging person, he or she never refuses to do a service.

EXERCISE.

Nobody | has been | here. Has | any body[2] | been[1] | here? I saw
(184.) *est venu* *est-il* *venir*

nobody | out of doors. | You did not speak to any body. Nobody
dehors cD

pleases you.

There was nobody killed. I know no one so agreeable as he.
Il y a cD (187.)

I met yesterday with a person who knows you, he told me (that)
cD * cD

you were not well. Did you see those persons I was mentioning?
se porter E cD *les* *parler de*

Yes, they spoke to me.
(188.) F

He was the only | genteel | person in the company.
c' *seule comme il faut*

189. RIEN, *nothing.* When used with a verb, it requires *ne*; is placed before the verb, or between the auxiliary and the verb, if the tense be compound.

Je *ne* dis *rien,*— *I say nothing.*
Il n'a *rien* vu,— *He has seen nothing.*

190. *Rien* before an adjective, requires *de.*

Je n'ai *rien de* bon, *rien d'*agréable à dire,
I have nothing good, nothing agreeable to say.

N.B. To express *any thing* (after *not* or *never*) do not say, *aucune chose,* but *rien.*

Je n'ai *rien* vu,—*I have not seen any thing.*

191. When used in answer to a question, it does not require *ne.*

Qu'avez-vous vu?—*Rien,*—*What have you seen? Nothing.*

EXERCISE.

I can do[1] *nothing*[2] in your favor. Have you never learnt *any thing*?
en

Do you know *nothing?* No, *nothing*. He has not eaten *any thing*
de toute la journée

all day long. What do you mean to do? Nothing. (191.)
qu'avez-vous intention

192. TEL, TELLE, TELS, TELLES, *such*.

Tel is always declinable. The article *un* is placed before *tel*, although in English the article *a* is placed after *such*.

Je n'ai jamais vu *un tel* homme,—*I never saw such a man.*

193. *Tel que*, such as, or like, (are placed *after* the substantive.)

Une femme telle que votre sœur,—*Such a woman as your sister.*
Un homme *tel que* lui.—*A man like him.* (or,) *Such as he is.*

194. *Tel qui*, such as, is used chiefly in sentences of general import.

Tel pense ainsi aujourd'hui, *qui* pensera différemment demain.
Such as think so to-day will think differently to-morrow.

EXERCISE.

Have you ever seen such a house! Such a person ought to be
(192.) *devroit*

punished. Such is the world. Such is my way of thinking.

Such an artist as he is, need not fear the sneer of the
(193.) *avoir besoin de* *moquerie*

world. I bought goods such as you ordered.

Such as laugh at others, cannot frequently bear the least joke them-
(194.) *se moquer de*

selves. It, but too often,[2] happens,[1] that *such as* | are very anxious to
ne que *désirer ardemment*

know, have neither patience nor perseverance to learn.
savoir *la* *de*

195. PLUSIEURS, *several, many.*

Plusieurs auteurs en parlent,—*Several authors speak of it.*
Plusieurs de nos connoissances,—*Several of our acquaintances.*

EXERCISE.

I have spoken to *several* persons. *Several* authors seem to be of the same opinion. *Several* of our friends { purpose / *avoir intention de* } coming to-morrow.

OF THE DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATIONS OF *Tout.*

196. *Tout, toute, tous, toutes,* taken adjectively, and followed by the article definite* is *declinable,* that is, must agree with the noun before which it is placed, in gender and number.

Tous les hommes sont égaux devant Dieu.
All men are equal before God.

197. *Le tout,* the whole, in opposition to a part, is taken *substantively.*

Voulez-vous *le tout* ou la moitié?
Will you have the whole or the half?

198. *Tout,* placed immediately before a substantive, that is, when speaking individually, but at the same time alluding to the whole species, answers to *any, every.*

Tout homme capable d'en agir ainsi, mérite d'être puni,
Any man capable of acting thus, deserves to be punished.

Toute loi qui met à couvert le coupable, doit être abolie,
Any law which screens the guilty, ought to be abolished.

199. The expression *any,* meaning *whatever,* is often expressed by *tout ce qui,* or *tout ce que;*

Any thing you like,—*Tout ce qu'il vous plaira.*

---

* Unless separated from the noun by a possessive or a demonstrative pronoun. Ex. *Tous mes amis,*—All my friends. *Tous ces hommes,*—All those men.

and also by the following expressions: *quelconque, le premier venu, quelque, que ce soit,* &c.

Quelle partie voulez vous ? Celle que vous voudrez, (*or,*) la premiere venue, (*or,*) une partie quelconque, &c.
What part will you have? Any.

200. *Whatever, every thing which,* are expressed by *tout ce qui, tout ce que.*

Tout ce qui vous plait,
All that, or every thing which pleases you.

Tout ce que vous dites,
Whatever you say.

201. *Tout,* meaning *every thing, all things, any thing.*

Tout est bon dans cet ouvrage,
Every thing is good in that work.

Tout ira bien,
Every thing will go right.

N.B. In this sense, avoid saying *toutes les choses.*

Tout used adverbially.

Tout, quite, wholly, is often taken adverbially, that is, used before an *adjective* or a *participle.*

202. It is *indeclinable* before an adjective *masculine.*

203. It is also *indeclinable* before an adjective *feminine* if that adjective begin with a *vowel,* but *declinable* before an adjective *feminine,* beginning with a *consonant.*

Ex. Indeclinable.

masc......Ils étoient *tout surpris,—They were quite surprised.*
before a vowel ..Elles étoient *tout étonnées,—They were quite astonished.*

Declinable.

Bef. a cons.—Sa sœur étoit *toute malade,—His sister was quite ill.*

204. *Tout..que,* means *however, as;* and follows the same rule as above.

Indecl. { Tout riches qu'ils sont,—*Rich as they are.*
Tout aimables qu'elles sont,—*Aimiable as they are.*

Decl.—Toutes belles que sont ces fleurs,—*Beautiful as these flowers are.*

Order of words.

1. Tout. 2. The adjective. 3. Que. 4. The verb.

EXERCISE.

All the goods are spoilt. I see him *every* day. Have you sold *all* (196.)

your furniture? Are *all* these glasses clean?
meubles

I have bought some articles which seemed cheap, but I have since

sold | *the whole* of them. | I | wrote only for | a part of the fruit
tous *les* *écrire pour qu'on envoyât*

which grows in his orchard; but he sent me *the whole.*

Every thing is for the best. *Every thing* here is | very valuable. |
de très grande valeur.

He does *every thing* himself.

Every honest man ought to act | up to | the dictates of | his con-
(198.) *selon* * * *

science. *Any* child who disobeys his father or his mother, deserves

chastisement. *Any man* or *any woman* who acts *in* such manner, shews
d'être puni *d'une*

that he or she | is ignorant of | the rules of propriety. He would do
ignorer *bienséance*

any thing to oblige me.
(201.) *pour*

My books were *quite* torn to pieces. The meat is *quite* burnt up.
* * *

The ladies are *quite* ready. Her gown was *quite* plain. Have you
(203.) *simple.*

bought ready made shoes?
(202.) *tout* *neuf*

Strong *as* you are, gentlemen, you ought not to expose yourselves (204.)

wantonly to danger. *For all* you are clever, you are not sure of
inconsidérément *habile*

success. *Beautiful as* these laces appear, they are not worth much.

Ladies, *learned as* you are, you | are ignorant of | what is most useful
ignorer

to you.

205. *Present.* QUI QUE CE SOIT } when affirmatively, means *whosoever, any body whatever.*
Passed. QUI QUE CE FÛT } when negatively, *nobody whatever.*

When *nominative* it requires an additional *qui* before the next verb, and *que* if in the objective case. It is joined to the next part of the sentence by *il*. It admits of any preposition, and requires the subjunctive.

Qui que ce soit qui le dise, *il a* tort,
Whoever says so, is in the wrong.

Ne vous moquez de *qui que ce soit*,
Laugh at no one whatever.

Je n'ai parlé de *qui que ce fût*,
I *spoke of nobody whatever.*

A qui que ce soit que vous parliez, on ne vous écoutera pas,
To whomsoever you speak, you will not be listened to.

The same observations will apply with regard to QUOI QUE CE SOIT, whatever.

Quoi que ce soit que vous fassiez,
Whatever you do.

Quoi que ce soit qui vous plaise,
Whatever pleases you.

De quoi que ce soit que vous parliez,
Whatever you speak of.

EXERCISE.

Whoever has done it, punish him. To whomsoever you apply, you will have the same answer. I have told nobody whatever. We have done nothing whatever. We have played with no one whatever.

OF VERBS.

206. First General Rule. When two verbs come together, the second, governed by the first, is put in the infinitive mood.

Je désire *voir* mon père et lui *apprendre* mon malheur,
I wish to see my father and inform him of my misfortune.

207. Second General Rule. The nominative, in French, whether a noun or a pronoun, must always be expressed.

208. Third General Rule. The verb must agree with its *nominative.*

209. Although the *nominative* may be separated by a *relative.*

C'est	*moi* qui *suis*	*It is I*	*who am.*
,,	*toi* ,, es	,, *thou*	,, *art.*
,,	lui ,, est	,, *he*	,, *is.*
,,	nous ,, sommes	,, *we*	,, *are.*
,,	vous ,, êtes	,, *you*	,, *are.*
Ce sont	eux ,, sont	,, *they*	,, *are.*

210. When there are several nominatives of different persons. (See No. 84.)

Lui, vous et moi, nous apprenons à dessiner,
He, you, and I learn drawing.

Vous et lui, vous irez à la campagne,
You and he will go in the country.

211. Several *nouns* coming together as nominatives require the verb to be in the plural.

La bonté et la douceur *gagnent* les cœurs,
Kindness and mildness gain the heart.

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne *suffisent* pour rendre heureux,
Neither gold nor greatness are sufficient to make us happy.

212. Any *collective noun,* such as *parlement,* parliament, *peuple,* people, *famille,* family, &c. governs the verb in the singular.

Le parlement *a* adopté cette mesure,
Parliament have adopted this measure.

Le peuple *s'est* révolté,
The people have revolted.

Of the GOVERNMENT of *Verbs, Adjectives,* and *Adverbs.*

213. By government or regimen of a verb, or an adjective, grammarians understand the way in which a verb is connected with a substantive, with an adjective, or with another verb. When a verb is connected with a substantive, &c. by means of the preposition *à*, it is then said to *govern à*, that is, the *dative case*; when connected by means of *de*, it is then said to govern *de*, that is the *genitive* or *ablative* case. Sometimes there is *no* connecting word; it is then said to govern *no* preposition, that is, the *accusative* case. Therefore the above denominations stand thus:

A ..	represents	the *dative*	(in Eng. *to.*)
DE ..	,,	the *genitive* or *ablative,*	(in Eng. *of* or *from.*)
No Prep.	,,	the *accusative.*	

If, when the English verb requires *to*, the French required *à*; when the English takes *of* or *from*, the French had *de*, there would then be no difficulty: but the learner will often see *to* answer to *de*, *of* to *à*, and so forth. The following rules, therefore, are here given for the purpose of guiding the learner in finding out the appropriate preposition or case, thereby fixing in the memory the list of verbs and adjectives which we have thought proper to introduce, and obtaining, by *reasoning*, that facility and certainty which a native insensibly acquires by constant practice and length of time.

As far as irregularities and caprice (of which most languages are full,) will permit, we may generally trace very great analogy between the import of a verb, and that of the preposition it governs. Therefore, by enquiring into the primitive meanings of *à*, *de*, *en*, &c. and ascertaining their true signification, as regimens or cases, we may succeed in enabling the learner to apply them correctly to any given verb or adjective.

214. The primitive meaning of *à* is to point to a place to which one is going; so that, by applying the same import to the action of the mind, this preposition will then be found to point to an object in view, or in con-

templation; as, *penser à*, to think of; *réfléchir à*, to reflect on. When *à* is before a noun of *person*, it merely then points to the person to whom one is obliged to go, or have recourse, as it were, in order to *give* or *obtain* the object mentioned; as, *donner* or *ôter un livre à quelqu'un*, to give a book to, or take away a book from any one. From these examples, it may be said, as a general rule, that the object *given* or *taken away* is put (without preposition) immediately after the verb, and is followed by the noun of the person (preceded by *à*,) whom the object is given to or taken away from.

215. *De*, originally means *extraction*, hence *proceeding from, originating from, caused by, on account of, concerning*. So that whenever any of the above expressions may be supplied or understood, *de* should be used.

Je vous remercie *d'*avoir fait cela,—*I thank you for having done that.*

That is,

I thank you on account *of your having done that.*

216. It should also be observed that prepositions may not only *be governed by*, but also may *govern* verbs. In the first case they form a part of the verb, and are placed after* it; in the second, they merely connect the verb with what precedes by means of their signification. As in both cases they preserve the same appropriate meaning, we shall here give a view of their general import.

Remarks on some of the principal Prepositions.

217. The preposition *à*, pointing to an object in view, or to an action which is to be done, will, consequently, refer to the FUTURE, (*necessity* implied.)

Un moulin à vendre,—*A house which is to be sold.*

---

* Except with personal and relative pronouns, as

L'homme à qui *je pense*,—*The man I think of.*

218. DE implying a cause, an origin anterior to the action designated by the verb which governs it, will, therefore, refer to an action PASSED.

Je vous remercie d'avoir écrit,—*I thank you for having written.*
[The person must have written before he was thanked for it.]

219. POUR shewing a *purpose*, an *intention*, consequently implies something *about to take place*, that is, the FUTURE, (with intention.)

Je fais cela *pour* vous plaire,—*I do that to please you.*
[That is, with an *intention*, or a *hope* that I *shall* please you.]

220. EN, when pointing to an action going on at the same time with another action, will, of course, imply the PRESENT of that action, with regard to another action.

Il ne faut pas parler *en* mangeant,
You must not speak and eat at the same time.

221. ENVERS signifying *towards* figuratively, is used with verbs and adjectives implying BEHAVIOUR TO.

Il se conduit bien *envers* ses parens,—*He behaves well to his relations.*

222. PAR implies (bodily) *action*,* *coercion.*

Il a été tué *par* ses sujets,
He has been killed by his subjects.

223. AVEC, *in company with*; it points to the *instrument* with which any thing is made or done.

La bouteille a été remplie avec† un entonnoir,
The bottle has been filled with a funnel.

---

* In opposition to *de* respecting verbs; which preposition denotes more the action of the mind. Ex.

Il est aimé de ses sujets,—*He is loved by his subjects.*

† Also in opposition to *de* respecting verbs which imply *filling*, *loading*, &c. and requiring in English the preposition *with*.

La bouteille est remplie de vin,
The bottle is filled with wine.

VERBS WHICH REQUIRE *à* BEFORE THE NEXT VERB.

224. Verbs denoting *inclination, encouragement, effort,* (in the acquirement of any object,) also *instructing, assisting, employing, &c.* require the preposition *à** before the next verb.

Je m'amuse à lire, — *I amuse myself in reading.*

A quoi employez-vous votre tems? — What do you employ your time in?

S'amuser	à	*to amuse oneself.*	parvenir	,,	*to succeed in.*
borner	,,	*to limit.*	persister	,,	*to persist.*
consister	,,	*to consist.*	pousser	,,	*to excite.*
dépenser	,,	*to spend.*	renoncer	,,	*to give up.*
employer	,,	*to employ.*	réussir	,,	*to succeed.*
encourager	,,	*to encourage*	servir	,,	*to serve.*
engager	,,	*to prevail upon.*	songer	,,	*to think.*
enseigner	,,	*to teach.*	tendre	,,	*to tend.*
exciter	,,	*to excite.*	viser	,,	*to aim.*
penser	,,	*to think.*			

EXERCISE.

You should not *persist in* | saying *dire et redire* | the same thing | over and over again. | Speak slow and you will *succeed in* *parvenir* making yourself understood. This will *tend to* *rendre* make him proud. Do you teach him A to read? You should not excite them to do what may *pouvoir* be hurtful to them.

The PREPOSITION *à* before the Noun of *Person* or *Thing*.

225. With the following verbs the preposition *à* points to some object, which is, as it were, the end to

---

* It will be advisable, on the part of the learner, to compare the explanations, given P. 82, No. 214, with the meaning of the verbs given above. He will see that the speaker, in using them, has an action in view to which the person or thing mentioned is supposed to tend or attain. Let him also notice that the English verbs generally require *to, at,* or *in.*

which the action, denoted by the verb, tends. (See No. 214.)

Nous *pensons à* nos amis,
We think of our friends.

Vous avez *nui à* leur réputation,
You have hurt their reputation.

* Compâtir	à	*to sympathize.*	remédier	à	*to remedy.*
† nuire	,,	*to hurt.*	renoncer	,,	*to give up.*
† obéir	,,	*to obey.*	répondre	,,	*to answer.*
obvier	,,	*to obviate.*	résister	,,	*to resist.*
parvenir	,,	*to succeed.*	† ressembler	,,	*to resemble.*
penser	,,	*to think.*	songer	,,	*to think.*
permettre	,,	*to allow.*	subvenir	,,	*to relieve.*
* plaire	,,	*to please.*	succéder	,,	*to succeed.*
pourvoir	,,	*to provide.*	survivre	,,	*to survive.*

EXERCISE.

* I am thinking of her. Are they thinking of what they | are about?
faire

You should not say any thing that can *hurt* his reputation. Take pains
devoir (*subj.*) (*sing.*)
and you will succeed in acquiring this science. Let us *resist* his efforts.
parvenir

Obey him. Do not obey her. Please your master. You have not thought of them. Provide for the wants of your family. Be not rash; think well over it before you act. Has he succeeded his father
songer * *avant de* *
in the business? They have met with a great loss, and it is thought they will not survive it.

A—before the Noun of Person, and the *accusative* before that of the Thing.

226. Any verb that admits of the noun of Person and

---

* The above verbs are the few, the government of which, in English, differs most from the French.

† Those verbs which, in Latin, govern the dative, require the preposition *à*, in French.

that of the Thing, requires *no* preposition (or the accusative) before the noun of the *thing*, and *à* before that of the *person*.

1 2 3
Je donne | un livre | à Jean,*
I give John a book.

J'ôte | un livre | à Jean,
I take away a book from John.

Apprendre	*to learn.*	permettre	*to permit.*
demander	*to ask for.*	promettre	*to promise.*
dire	*to tell.*	refuser	*to refuse.*
enseigner	*to teach.*	rendre	*to return.*
épargner	*to save, to spare.*	reprocher	*to reproach.*
ôter	*to take away.*	révéler	*to reveal.*
pardonner	*to forgive.*	vendre	*to sell.*

EXERCISE.

Take the stick *away from* the child. I have *promised* him a watch. Have you *sold them* the goods they were *asking for*? Let us not *take away from* them what belongs to them. Save her that expense. Are the boys allowed† to play in the garden? Ask them for the money you want. He would have forgiven us our errors if he had believed our repentance sincere.

The DATIVE (à) before the *Noun*, and DE before the *Verb*.

227. Any verb governing a *noun* in the *dative* requires *de* before the next *verb*.

Il a *commandé à* mes soldats *d'attaquer*,
He commanded my soldiers to attack.

---

* 1, *Donner* is the verb; 2, *livre* is the noun of thing; and 3, *Jean* (accompanied with *à*) is the noun of Person in the dative. Take notice, that the noun in the *accusative* (with no prep.) comes before that in the *dative*.

The above rule is also applicable with regard to two nouns of things.

† When *permettre* is taken passively, it should be impersonal; turn, *is it allowed.*

Commander	*to command.*	permettre	*to permit.*
défendre	*to forbid.*	persuader	*to persuade.*
dire	*to tell, bid.*	prescrire	*to prescribe.*
écrire	*to write.*	promettre	*to promise.*
enjoindre	*to enjoin.*	proposer	*to propose*
pardonner	*to forgive.*	refuser	*to refuse.*

EXERCISE.

I *forbid* her to speak in my presence. *Tell* him to do his duty. We
en

wrote to them *to* come. Did you *promise* him *to* behave better | for the
c D *à l'avenir*

future? I do not *refuse* my friends such favors as may be advan-
des qui pouvoir

tageous to them. ‡ Be so kind as | to *permit* these strangers to look
avoir la bonté de *voir*

at your gallery of pictures and | go through your grounds.
* *ie* *se promener dans* *jardins.*

Neuter verbs which require DE *before a Noun.*

228. Verbs indicating an action *caused by,* or *proceeding from,* an object, designated by the following noun, require *de* before that noun.

Il *jouit* | **d'*une bonne santé,
He enjoys good health.

Abuser	de	*to abuse.*	manquer	,,	*to want.*
dépendre	,,	*to depend on.*	médire	,,	*to slander.*
hériter	,,	*to inherit.*	profiter	,,	*to take advantage of.*
jouir	,,	*to enjoy.*	rire	,,	*to laugh at.*
jouer	,,	*to play (upon an instrument.)*	rougir	,,	*to blush for.*
			user	,,	*to use.*

EXERCISE.

You | have taken advantage | of his goodness. You do not
profiter

* Here the *enjoyment* is *caused by,* or *proceeds from, good health.*

seem to *enjoy* good health. Are you in *want* of money? Do you never do any thing for which you should *blush*? We *depend on* each
devriez

other. What instrument does he *play upon*?

Verbs active, requiring the accusative (*or* no preposition,) *of one* noun, *and* de *before the other.*

229. With the following verbs, the noun upon which the action falls is without a preposition, and the other, denoting the *cause* or *nature* of the object by means of which the action is done, is preceded by *de*.*

1 2 3
J'accuse | Jean | *de* vol,
I accuse *John* *with theft.*

1 2 3
Il m' | accabla | *de* reproches,
He loaded me with reproaches.

1 2 3
Elle *remplit* | *la* bouteille | *de* vin,
She filled the bottle with wine.

Absoudre de		*to absolve.*	conjurer	,,	*to conjure.*
accabler	,,	*to overwhelm.*	détourner	,,	*to deter.*
accuser	,,	*to accuse.*	dispenser	,,	*to dispense.*
avertir	,,	*to warn.*	louer	,,	*to praise.*
blâmer	,,	*to blame.*	menacer	,,	*to threaten.*
charger	,,	*to load.*	remplir	,,	*to fill.*
combler	,,	*to load.*	soupçonner	,,	*to suspect.*

Exercise.

He was no sooner arrived, than they overwhelmed him with re-
pas plutôt *on*

proaches. We shall be blamed for our conduct. We should have praised him for his valour, if his behaviour in other respects had not been reprehensible.

---

* No. 1. is the verb. No. 2. the object upon which the action of the verb falls. No. 3. the name of the other object which is the cause, or by means of which the action has been done.

The *accusative* of the noun, and *de* before the next *verb.*

230. Verbs which denote an action, falling upon a Person or Thing, and caused by another action, designated by the following verb, require *de* before that verb.

1 2 3
Je *remercie** | votre père | *d'*avoir sauvé mon fils,
I thank your father for having saved my son.

Accuser	de	*to accuse.*	menacer	,,	*to threaten.*
avertir	,,	*to warn.*	presser	,,	*to press.*
blâmer	,,	*to blame.*	prier	,,	*to pray.*
conjurer	,,	*to conjure.*	remercier	,,	*to thank.*
conseiller	,,	*to advise.*	sommer	,,	*to summons.*
dispenser	,,	*to dispense.*	soupçonner	,,	*to suspect.*
dissuader	,,	*to dissuade.*	supplier	,,	*to supplicate.*

EXERCISE.

He was *charged with* having robbed his neighbour. I *blame* him *for* having attempted more than he could do. We do not *advise* you
entrepris E
to have | any thing | to do with him. I *thank* you *for* having spoken
* * *affaire à*
in my favor. I beg | you will | hold your tongue. You were
se taire
praised for having taken care of the widow's property.

Verbs which require DE *before the following Verb.*

231. Most verbs require DE before the next Verb.†

---

* 1. *Remercie* shews the first action. 2. *Votre père* is the person upon whom the action falls. 3. *Avoir sauvé*, &c. is the other action which caused that of thanking, see p. 83, No. 215.

† The learner will find it at first the easiest plan, considering that most French verbs require *à*, *de*, or *no preposition*, to learn those that require *à* and *no preposition*; the others, which are in much greater number, he will, of course, conclude require *de*. See Nos. 224, &c.

Il *affecte de* ne pas vous comprendre,
He pretends not to understand you.

Affecter	de	*to affect.*	négliger	de	*to neglect.*
cesser	,,	*to cease.*	offrir	,,	*to offer.*
craindre	,,	*to fear.*	omettre	,,	*to omit.*
entreprendre	,,	*to undertake.*	oublier	,,	*to forget.*
essayer	,,	*to try.*	promettre	,,	*to promise.*
feindre	,,	*to pretend.*	refuser	,,	*to refuse.*
finir	,,	*to finish.*	résoudre	,,	*to resolve.*
mériter	,,	*to deserve.*			

EXERCISE.

She did not *cease to* speak. *Try to* write on the subject I have given you. They will *pretend to* | be ignorant of [it. Now we have *finished* *ignorer*
writing, you may come and speak to us. You did not *deserve to* be assisted. Would they have *refused to* pay us? I *forgot to* write to him.

A and *DE* after *il est.*

232. *Il est* (with an *adjective*) requires *à* before the next noun, and *de* before the following verb.

Il est impossible *à* un enfant *de* comprendre cela,
It is impossible for a child to understand that.

Il est juste.	..	..	..		*It is just.*
,, possible	..	..	..	,,	*possible.*
,, impossible	..	..		,,	*impossible.*
,, tems	..	..	..	,,	*time.*
,, agréable	..	..	..	,,	*pleasant.*
,, désagréable	..	..		,,	*unpleasant,*
&c.					&c.

EXERCISE.

It is unpleasant to be among people that are always discontented.

It is impossible *for* * *me to* express the pleasure I felt when I heard
ressentir

the news. *It is time* to work
(sing)

Expressions requiring DE.

233. Substantives joined to *avoir* (with or without *le*) require *de* before the next verb.

Il a l'ambition *de* vaincre toutes les difficultés,
He has the ambition to conquer every difficulty.

Avoir l'ambition	de	*To have the ambition to.*	
,, l'art	,,	,,	*the art.*
,, l'avantage	,,	,,	*the advantage.*
,, l'audace	,,	,,	*the audacity.*
,, le bonheur	,,	,,	*the good luck.*
,, le malheur	,,	,,	*the misfortune.*
Avoir coutume	,,	*To be*	*in the habit.*
,, occasion	,,	*to have*	*an opportunity.*
,, permission	,,	,,	*permission.*
,, raison	,,	*to be*	*in the right.*
,, tort	,,	,,	*in the wrong.*

EXERCISE.

It was the *ambition to* conquer all the world which ruined him. They have the *art of* persuading. Have you the *audacity to* contradict me? He had *the misfortune to* lose his parents.

We *are* all *in the habit of* speaking in public. He would not have had *permission to* do what he did. To-morrow I shall *have an opportunity of* sending your letter frank. You *are right to* speak to him, but he is *wrong to* answer you.

Verbs requiring POUR.

234. The following verbs and expressions require POUR before the next *noun* or *verb*.

---

* Use the dative (à moi, viz. *me,*) before the verb.

Suffire	POUR	*to be sufficient.*
suffisant	,,	*sufficient.*
assez	,,	*enough.*
trop	,,	*too much.*

Cette somme d'argent *suffit* POUR acheter une maison,
This sum of money is sufficient to buy a house.

EXERCISE.

That [is sufficient | *to* put him | into a] passion. Is that enough
suffir *en* *colère* *suffir*

to make me believe you took pains?* He thinks too much of
de la peine

pleasure ever *to* think of study.

235. The following *verbs* and *expressions* require EN before the next noun.

Abonder	en,	*to abound in.*
fertile	,,	*fertile.*
stérile	,,	*sterile.*
riche	,,	*rich.*

EXERCISE.

That country *abounds in* corn, fruit, wood and cattle of all kinds.

His mind is fertile in romantic ideas, but *sterile* in sound reasoning.
romanesque *sain*

236. The following verbs require SUR.

S'appuyer	sur,	*to lean* or *rest upon.*
se reposer	,,	*to leave it all to, to depend on.*
compter	,,	*to rely on.*

EXERCISE.

Do not lean upon me. I leave it all to you. They will rely upon
en

your efforts.

---

* Turn, *You took some pains.*

237. *Verbs which require* NO PREPOSITION *before the next* verb.

Aimer (mieux)	faire une chose,	*To like (better) to do any thing.*
aller	dire, chercher, &c.	*to go*
croire ..	faire une chose,	*to believe*
compter ..	do.	*to reckon*
daigner ..	do.	*to deign*
déclarer ..	avoir fait, &c.	*to declare*
devoir ..	faire une chose,	*ought*
entendre ..	dire, parler, &c.	*to hear*
envoyer ..	chercher, &c.	*to send for, &c.*
espérer	faire une chose,	*to hope*
faire	do.	*to cause*
il faut ..	do.	*must*
laisser ..	do.	*to let or allow.*
nier	avoir fait, &c.	*to deny*
oser	faire une chose.	*to dare*
paroître ..	do.	*to appear*
prétendre ..	do.	*to pretend*
pouvoir ..	do.	*to be able*
savoir	do.	*to know how*
sembler ..	do.	*to seem*
souhaiter ..	do.	*to wish*
venir ..	do.	*to come*
vouloir ..	do.	*to will*

J'*aime* mieux *aller* me promener,—*I prefer to go and take a walk.*
Allez dire à votre ami de venir,—*Go and* tell your friend to come.*

We say *écouter* quelqu'un ou quelque chose, *to listen to any person or any thing*, not écouter à.

EXERCISE.

Please to	go and fetch	what you want yourself.†	Send
S'il vous plait			

for | what you think proper, and you shall have it. | You seem to
juger à propos

be dissatisfied. | You had better, | employ your time about something
mécontent *Il vaut mieux* *à*

that may turn to your advantage. | He had like to have | fallen
pouvoir *pensé à*

K

* *And*, in such cases (after *go* and *come*), is never expressed.
† Turn, *go fetch that of which you have need, if you please.*

into the well. Does he know how to draw? | I wish I could* | speak

French | as well as | you speak English.

Listen to the advice that is given you. I hear him coming.

Listen to that lady singing. What does he *wish* to undertake?
qui chante

Do not *send for* your servant yet. He will *go and* manage my business
arranger

for me. They will not *condescend to* speak to us. Do you *think you*

can persuade him he | is the wrong? | Did you ever hear Keise-
avoir tort

wetter play on the violin? *I hope* I shall be able to take my family
mener

to Paris, next summer. Had we not better set off
ne vaudroit-il *partir*

immediately, before the rain comes on? *Look at* those[2] young ladies
tout de suite

dancing.[1]

Government of Adjectives.

Adjectives requiring the preposition A.

238. General Rule. Adjectives have the same preposition as their corresponding verbs, or verbs of a like import. See No. 224.

Enclin	à	*inclined to.*	sourd	à	*deaf to.*
occupé	,,	*busy about.*	utile	,,	*useful.*
pareil	,,	*like.*	semblable	,,	*like.*
propre	,,	*fit for.*	sensible	,,	*sensible of.*

Exercise.

I wish to speak to Mr. B.; you cannot at present, he is *busy* writing.

---

* Turn, *I should wish to be able.*

This stuff is not *like* / *semblable* | the one } you bought the other day. This language will be *useful to* them. This work is *difficult to* / *finir* accomplish.

239. Those adjectives which, in English, take *in* or *for*, have *à* in French, before the next *verb*, and many *dans* before the *substantive*.

Ardent	à *une chose, à faire,*	*eager*	*in.*
adroit	,,	*skilful*	,,
bon	,,	*fit*	*for.*
exact	,,	*exact*	*in.*
habile	,,	*clever*	,,
ingenieux	,,	*ingenious*	,,
lent	,,	*slow*	,,
nécessaire	,,	*necessary*	*for.*
nuisible	,,	*hurtful*	,,
occupé	,,	*busy*	,,
prompt	,,	*prompt*	,,

EXAMPLES.

Il est lent à penser, mais prompt à s'exprimer,
He is slow in thinking, but quick in expressing himself.

Il est ingenieux à se tourmenter,
He is ingenious in tormenting himself.

We also use *dans* with most of the above adjectives: we say, for instance,

Il est adroit dans tout ce qu'il fait,
He is handy in every thing he does.

EXERCISE.

Although *eager in* study, yet he is *exact in* fulfilling his duties.

He is *slow in* conceiving a plan, but *prompt in* executing it. You are *skilful in* doing mischief.
mal

240. A list of some adjectives requiring the preposition DE before the next *substantive* or *verb*. (See 229.)

Elle est douée de talens,—*She is gifted with talents.*

Aise de, *glad.*
amoureux de, *in love with.*
affamé de, *greedy of.*
altéré de, *thirsting after.*
charmé de, *charmed with.*
complice de, *accomplice.*
content de, *pleased with.*
dénué de, *void of.*
doué de, *gifted.*
ennuyé de, *tired of.*
enivré de, *infatuated.*
exempt de, *exempt. free from.*
fier de, *proud of.*
fort de, *conscious of.*
fou de, *very fond.*
glorieux de, *glorious.*
honteux de, *ashamed of.*
indépendant de, *independent.*
ivre de, *drunk* or *intoxicated.*
insatiable de, *insatiable.*
las de, *tired of* or *with.*
libre de, *free to.*
plein de, *full of.*
rempli de, *filled with.*

EXERCISE.

Ought we to be *vain* or *ashamed* of our birth, since* the choice
Devoir H *glorieux*

was not left to us? But we may be *proud of* our wealth, | if it be the
fruit of our industry, and if | it afford us more opportunities of doing
procurer

good. You are gifted with a good memory. I am tired of telling
doué *redire*

you the same thing | over and over | again.

* * *

241. Those adjectives which denote *behaviour to* any one, require *envers.*

Bon .....envers, *good to.*
complaisant ,, *kind* ,,
poli envers, *polite to.*
honnête ,, *honest* ,,

And any other that may be taken in the above acceptation.

Il est bon *envers* les pauvres,—*He is good to the poor.*
Il est *complaisant aimable* et *doux* ENVERS les dames,
He is kind, agreeable and mild to the ladies.

EXERCISE.

Before you are | generous, or even charitable *to* the poor, be just and
avant de

---

* Turn: *since we have not the choice of them.*

honest *to* all men, without even excepting your enemies. He is very kind and attentive *to* elderly people. Always be *polite to* the ladies.
âgé

Government of Adverbs.

242. Adverbs of *quantity* and *scarcity* require DE without the article, before the next noun.*

Abondance	de, *plenty.*		quoi	,,	*what.*
assez ‡	,, *enough.*		quelque chose	,,	*something.*
beaucoup ‡	,, *much.*		rien	,,	*nothing.*
combien	,, { *how much?* / *how many?*		tant	,,	{ *so much.* / *so many.*
disette	,, *scarcity of.*		autant	,,	{ *as much.* / *as many.*
guère §	,, *but little or few.*				
davantage	,, *more.*		trop	,,	{ *too much.* / *too many.*
jamais	,, *never.*				
que	,, *what (a quantity or number of.)*				

Abondance de livres,—*Plenty of books.*

Il a assez d'argent,—*He has money enough.*

Nous avons beaucoup d'amis,—*We have many friends.*

Que de tableaux!—*What a number of pictures!*

Exercise.

You have *more* books, and *less* learning. That boy has *very great*
beaucoup
capacity; but ‖ on the other hand ‖ he has *but little* application. Have
moyen *aussi*
they money *enough* to go on ‖ with their undertaking? No, ‖ they
continuer
have not. ‖ Do they want more? ‖ ‖ They do. ‖ Many people
* * *vouloir davantage* *oui*

---

* Even before *adjectives*, with such indefinite expressions as *personne, ceque, quelquechose, rien.* Ex.—*Ceque vous trouverez de bon.*

† *Bien* and *beaucoup* have the same meaning, but *bien* requires the article *le*, besides *de*; that is *du, de la, des.* Whereas *beaucoup* requires *de* only before the next noun.

‡ *Assez* is placed before the substantive.

§ *Guères* requires *ne* before the verb.

‖ Understood *of it*; which must be translated by *en.*

have *so much* time | on their hands | that they do not know how to
à eux

employ it.

THE USE OF THE MOODS AND TENSES EXPLAINED.

Of the INFINITIVE *Mood.*

243. When two verbs come together, in French, the second (being governed by the first)* is always in the infinitive mood.

Je voudrois *pouvoir parler* Anglois comme vous parlez François,
I wish I could speak English as well as you speak French.

Il se fait comprendre,—*He makes himself understood.*

244. Any preposition but *en,* in French, requires the infinitive.

Apprenez-vous à *chanter?—Do you learn singing?*
Au lieu de *dire* cela,—*Instead of saying that.*

Avant d'*entrer,* frappez à la porte,—
Before you come in, knock at the door.

EXERCISE.

You wish* you were as learned as he is. He likes reading | out
H * (243.) *à haute*

loud. | Behave | so as | to make yourself† *esteemed.*
voix *se conduire de manière à*

Instead of *laughing,* you | had much better | do your work. He
faire mieux de

immediately began by | insulting us.
se mettre à

Of the PRESENT PARTICIPLE, *or Gerund.*

Besides its usual function, this tense is often taken adjectively.‡

---

* Even when the first is only understood.

† Although *se faire* implies the *passive,* yet it is followed by an infinitive in the active voice.

‡ With this difference, that the *Gerund* partakes of the verb; it

245. When a *gerund*, it is always *indeclinable;* when used *adjectively*, it is always *declinable.*

Des femmes *obligeant* leurs semblables,
Women obliging their fellow-creatures.

Des femmes *obligeantes* et aimables,
Agreeable and obliging women.

246. The preposition *en* governs this tense; in which case, it denotes an action done at the same time as another mentioned.

Il parle en *mangeant*,—*He speaks and eats at the same time.*

EXERCISE.

These are *surprising* news. *voilà* The news *surprising* all the persons that (sing.) were present, produced all the effect that was expected. *on en attendoit*

I am tired *of speaking*. Are you fatigued *with running?* He has been punished for *having* plotted *against* the government. *conspirer*

Can you dance and play *at the same time?* He never laughs *when* he relates an anecdote. You must not talk and eat at the same time.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The Participle Past is DECLINABLE.

247. When used with *être*,* it agrees with the NOMINATIVE.

---

shews the *state of being*, the *manner of acting*, and is generally followed by an object; as, *leurs semblables*, in the above examples. When used adjectively, it qualifies the substantive to which it refers, as *femme*, in the next example.

* Therefore with the *compound tenses* of *reflective* verbs, which do not govern any preposition. As,

Elle s'est tuée,—*She has killed herself.*

Elles se sont trompées,—*They were mistaken.*

Il est perdu ; elle est trouvée,—*He is lost ; she is found.*

Les hommes sont honorés,—*Men are honored.*

Les femmes sont estimées,—*Women are esteemed.*

248. When taken *adjectively*, it agrees with its *substantive.*

Un homme estimé,—*A man esteemed.*

Un femme estimée,—*A woman esteemed.*

Des hommes estimés,—*Men esteemed.*

Des femmes estimées,—*Women esteemed.*

249. When used with AVOIR, it agrees with the OBJECTIVE or ACCUSATIVE case, if that *objective* come BEFORE *avoir.*

Les femmes que j'ai APPELEES,* et que vous avez VUES,* sont arrivées, car je les ai ENTENDUES.*

The ladies whom I have called, and whom you have seen, are arrived, for I have heard them.

EXERCISE.

Those ladies are very much *esteemed*, and deserve to be so. Was your sister ill-used? Will your houses be *cleaned, painted*, and well *maltraiter*

furnished?

She | set | to work as soon as | I came in. | Have you | *se mettre* cD *entrer*

looked at yourselves | in the glass? Have not those young ladies | *se regarder* (247.)

made a mistake? *se tromper*

---

* This rule takes place, when, instead of *avoir*, you may, without altering the position of the objective case, turn the sentence into the passive voice ; that is, use a tense of *être* accompanied by *par*. You may therefore say : *Les femmes ont été appelées par moi,..ont été vues par vous,..on été entendues par moi.*

A well *regulated* family offers the most perfect picture of happi-
bien ordonnée
ness. A well *informed* young lady. Well written letters.
instruit

The letters we have written. Have you received the watches I sent you? The songs you have sung this evening are delightful.

The Participle Past is INDECLINABLE.

250. With respect to the *nominative* of the verb AVOIR.

Cette femme a *parlé*,—*That woman has spoken.*
Ces demoiselles ont *chanté*,—*Those ladies have sung.*

251. Even with respect to the *objective*, if that objective come *after* avoir.

J'ai *vu* ces dames,—*I have seen those ladies.*

252. When, though, with and before *avoir*, the objective is followed and governed by an *infinitive*.

Imitez les vertus que vous avez *entendu* louer,
Imitate the virtues you have heard praised.

Les maisons que j'ai *fait* bâtir,
The houses I caused to be built.

Les règles que j'ai *commencé* à expliquer,
The rules I have begun to explain.

253. When the verb from which the participle is derived, requires *à* or *de*, or any other preposition.*

Voilà la femme dont nous avons *parlé*,
Behold the woman of whom we have spoken.

254. With *impersonals*:

Les chaleurs qu'il a fait cet été,
The heat we have had this summer.

---

* This rule is applicable to verbs conjugated *reflectively*. Ex.
Elle s'est donné la mort,—*She put an end to her existence.*

EXERCISE.

Your mother has *written* a letter to your sister. Have you *sung* a song? The nations in Europe seem to have at last *discovered* that peace tends more to the prosperity of a country than war does.

The houses I saw | *being built* | do not appear to me | to be well
bâtir *sur un bon plan*
contrived. | The gowns you have | *ordered.* | The song I have
faire faire
heard sung.

The persons I have seen and *with* whom I *conversed*. Upon what person have you *relied* in this business? From whom has she *received* these letters?

The rain we have *had* to day.
*faire**

OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

The present of the indicative is used in French, as well as in English, to express—

255. An action doing or going on at the time we are speaking.

J'écris, *I write, I do write,* or *I am writing.*

256. An action done *habitually,* though not at the very moment we are speaking.

Vous apprenez le Latin pendant que vous êtes jeune,
You learn Latin while you are young.

257. To denote a future action about to be done.

Allez vous à Paris cette année?—*Shall you go to Paris this year?*
Attendez moi, je suis à vous à l'instant,
Wait for me, I shall be ready in a moment.

---

* TURN: *The rain that it has made.*

258. The *Indicative** is used with verbs of *belief* and *certainty*.

Je *crois* qu'il *est* venu,
I believe he is come.

Vous *dites* et *affirmez* qu'il *est* venu,
You say and affirm he is come.

259. The *present* of the *indicative*, in French narrative, is often used for the *past*, in order to present the action more immediately before the mind of the reader; but it is usually expressed in English by the past tense, (except in very lively and animated style,) as:

On m'appela, j'accourus: hélas! je le vois étendu par terre, il me tend la main, il ouvre des yeux mourans, qu'il referme aussitôt,
They called me, I immediately ran: alas! I saw him stretched on the ground; he put out his hand to me, he just opened his dying eyes, then closed them again for ever.

EXERCISE.

Shall you go in the country this year? If you will (*vouloir*) stay here, I *shall be* back immediately.
(*de retour à l'instant.*)

I believe you speak the truth. He *assures* us he *is* in good health.
(*dire*)

We | had been sent for | in the greatest hurry; after a (160.) *envoyer chercher* *avec la plus grande dépêche*

great deal of trouble, we *came*, at last; we *asked* what | *was* the matter; *peine* (259.) (259.) *il y a*

| the first thing they did, | was to arrest us and load us with irons.
pour toute réponse *on nous arrête* *mettre dans les fers.*

Here, I will explain the passage to you.
aller (257.)

---

* In opposition to the subjunctive.

The Imperfect Tense.

260. The *Imperfect* Tense, so called, because it denotes an action *not over*, or rather *going on*, while another took place, as:

J' écrivois ma lettre quand vous *entrâtes.*
I was writing my letter when you came in.

Ecrivois shews the first action *going on; entrâtes* shews the latter action, interrupting the former.

There may also be *continuity* of *both* actions, as:

J' écrivois ma lettre pendant que vous *jouiez* du violon,
I was writing my letter while you *were playing* on the violin.

Ecrivois and *jouiez* indicate two actions going on at the same time, and are, therefore, both in the *Imperfect.*

So far the use of this tense may easily be comprehended, as, in English, the *present participle* (in *ing,*) and and a past tense of *to be, (was writing, were playing,)* will exactly express its signification.

261. Again, and still on the same principle of *continuity of action.*—This tense serves to denote actions *continued* or *frequently repeated;* and should, therefore, be used when describing *dispositions* of persons, their *habits, qualities, dresses,* &c. In which case, this tense may be rendered in English by *used to, was in the habit of.*

Quand *j'étois* à Paris, *j'allais* au Muséum; je me *promenois* dans les Thuilleries; ou bien je *fesois* un tour sur les boulevards.
When I was in Paris, I used to go, or was in the habit of going, to the Museum; walked in the Thuilleries, or took a turn on the Boulevards.

J'aimois beaucoup Monsieur B.; il *étoit* aimable en société; ses mœurs exemplaires et ses connoissances le *fesoient* aimer et rechercher de tout le monde.
I was very fond of Mr. B.; he was agreeable in company; his exemplary behaviour and his knowledge caused him to be loved and sought after by every body.

J'ai vu Madame S.; elle *étoit* supérieurement mise; elle *avoit* une robe de satin blanc.
I saw Mrs. S.; she was beautifully dressed; she had on a gown of white satin.

The Preterite or Historical Tense

262. Is used when mentioning any circumstance that took place at a period of time completely over, and distant (at least by one day) from that in which it is related.

Je *rencontrai* votre ami, il y a six mois,
I met your friend six months ago.

Alexandre *mourut* très jeune,
Alexander died very young.

The Imperfect and Preterite compared.

263. The greatest difficulty, now, is to discriminate between the right use of the *Imperfect* and that of the *Preterite*, when used in relating either an anecdote or any common occurrence; in doing which, it will be necessary to divide, in one's mind, the *relating of the account* into two distinct parts; the one which barely tells the *facts* or *heads* of the account, and the other which *describes* the *persons*, and state of things prior to the principal facts which are to form the heads of the narrative. Therefore

264. The *preliminary descriptions* are to be in the *Imperfect.*

265. The *heads* or *main facts* are to be in the *Preterite.*

266. Again, any circumstance of the narrative, *preceding* or *co-existing with* the last fact mentioned, and introduced by way of elucidation, or as a reflection of the author, are to be in the *Imperfect.*

267. And, on the contrary, the circumstances or facts again *following* the thread of the narrative, and regularly advancing towards the conclusion of it, are to be in the *Preterite.* We may, therefore, consider the *Preterite* as the *narrating* or *historical* tense, and the *Imperfect* as the *descriptive* or *digressive* tense.

Observe, that the following words generally require the imperfect after them, *Pendant que, comme, si. &c.*

These usually require the preterite, *Aussitôt que, lorsque, quand, dès que, &c.*

Example of a narration in which each tense is pointed out according to the rules above-mentioned.

A. *avoit* (264 *a.*) pris naissance dans la ville de.—Il *étoit* (264 a.) fils de riches parens, et *avoit* (264 *a.*) des qualités qui l'auroient rendu utile à sa patrie et à lui-même, si son courage, qui *étoit* (264 *a.*) sans égal, ne l'eût entraîné dans l'affaire que l'on va raconter. Etant donc un jour à se *promener à* cheval non loin du Tibre, il *vit* (265 *b.*) à quelque distance deux hommes qui *étoient* (266 *c.*) attaqués par plusieurs autres. Il *vole* (259) à leur secours, se *jette* au milieu d'eux, *met* trois des assaillans hors de combat, et auroit réussi à faire *prendre la fuite au* reste, si ceux qu'il *défendoit* (266 *d.*) n'*étoient* (266 *d.*) pas tombés morts à ses pieds. Ce *fut* (265 *e.*) alors que se voyant lui-même sur le point d'être entouré, il *prit* (265 *f.*) la fuite. Etant poursuivi de près, et ne pouvant plus échapper, il *gagna* (265 *g.*) le fleuve et se *jetta* (265 *h.*) dedans à cheval, à dessein de le traverser quelque rapide qu'il fût. Quand il *fut* (265 *i.*) arrivé au courant, quoiqu'il *fît* pour y résister, il ne *put* (265 *j.*) s'en rendre maître. Il *résolut* (265 *k*) donc de le suivre et de s'y laisser emporter; mais son cheval *étoit* (266 *l.*) trop fatigué pour pouvoir nager longtems, et comme il *s'efforcoit* (267 *m.*) de quitter le fil de l'eau, son cheval, qui *avoit* (266 *n.*) perdu toutes ses forces, *s'abattit* (267 *o.*) sous lui. Il s'y *attendait* (266 *p.*) et par conséquent n'en *fut* (267 *q.*) pas surpris. Il *nagea* encore quelque tems avec le courant; mais ne pouvant le quitter il s'y *noya* (267 *r.*)

A. was born in the town of—— He was the son of rich parents, and he possessed qualities which would have rendered him useful to his country and to himself, had not his courage, which was unequalled, drawn him into an affair, about to be related. As he was one day riding, not far from the Tiber, he saw, at some distance, two men who were attacked by several others; he flew to their assistance, threw himself into the midst of them, disabled three of them, and would have succeeded in making the rest take to flight, if those whom he was defending had not fallen dead at his feet. It was then that, seeing himself upon the point of being surrounded, he took to flight. Being closely pursued, he reached the river, and plunged in on horseback, intending to cross it, notwithstanding its rapidity. When he got into the current, in spite of all his exertions, he could not master it. He resolved then to follow it, and to let himself be carried away by it; but his horse was too much fatigued to be able to swim long, and, as he was endeavouring to quit the stream, his horse, which was exhausted, sunk under him. He expected it, and therefore was not surprised at it. He swam with the current for a long time, but not being able to get out of it, he was drowned.

Explanations of the References.

All the numbers marked (264 *a.*) are affixed to verbs which serve to lay down the *preliminary* descriptions. No. (265 *b.*) begins the first *main fact*. Then (266 *c.*) describes the situation of the two men; the same with the two next numbers. The seven following (265 *e.*) (266 *f.*) &c. resume the facts of the story. Again (266 *l.*) describes the state of the horse previous to the man's crossing the river, which action of crossing was the last fact mentioned. We go on describing with the two following numbers, till we come to a new fact (*s'abattit*). No. (266 *p.*) describes the man's state of mind; and, at last, (267 *q.*) and (268 *r.*) bring the story to a close by the last catastrophe.

In fact, the preceding rules may be condensed into the answers to the following question, which the learner ought to ask himself previous to putting a verb either in the *Imperfect* or in the *Preterite*:

Whether this, (whatever it may be, a *thing*, or a *circumstance*,) existed or took place *before* or *after* the last fact already mentioned?

268. If *before*, (or at the time,) it is to be in the *Imperfect*.

269. If *after*, it is to be in the *Preterite*.

Exercises.

I *saw* your brother last week; he *told* me he *was* much better, and
(262.) (260.)

liked his situation. Do you think he really meant | what he *said*?
être sincère dans

She *was singing* and *accompanying* herself on the guitar, while we *were listening*. I *was writing* when you *came* in. What *were you doing* when I *called* you?

One evening, | in the depth of winter, | about twelve o'clock, we
au cœur de l'hiver

were all *sitting* near the fire, relating* in turn | the different events that
assis

had occurred during the day, when, | all of a sudden, | we *heard* |
avoir lieu (264.) *journée*, *tout-à-coup*, (265.)

a scratching | at the door, | like | one trying | to pick a
gratter *quelqu'un qui essaie* *crocheter*

lock. We immediately *listened* attentively, and soon *heard* several

---

* *Turn*, Each was relating at his turn.

voices whispering. | We *entertained* | no | doubt as to the nature of
* *chuchotter* *avoir* *aucun* *espèce*

the visit we *had* to expect; in order, therefore,* to receive our guests
(266.) *hôtes*

with all the preparations | they were entitled to,† | I instantly | *laid*
(265.) *se*

hold of | a poker, and my friends *followed* my example by arming
saisir de (265.) *en*

themselves with such weapons | as lay in the way, ‡ | and *were* best
de * *instrumens*

calculated to give a proper salutation. While we *were* thus | in
adapter *faire* * *bon accueil* (266.) *dans*

a state of pleasing expectation, | fully determined | to stand on |
une agréable attente *bien* *résolus* (231.) *faire*

no ceremony, the door was | burst open | with incredible violence,
(160.) *enfoncer*

and | in rushed half a dozen ruffians ;§ | unfortunately for them, poor

fellows, they | had no suspicion of | having been heard, and there-
malheureux *ne pas soupçonner* (266.)

fore *proceeded* onward; when, to their great surprise, they all
avancer (265.) *étonnement*

felt applied rather smartly, on their backs and heads, different slight
se sentir (243.) *fortement* (108.)

instruments, such as | fire irons | and broomsticks, which the rather²
(154.) *d'autant plus*

*retarded*¹ their speed, as they *little expected*‖ so ungracious a recep-
(80.) *progrès* *moins s'attendre à* *brusque*

tion.* They at first² *wished*¹ to | make a stand, | and, knowing
vouloir *défendre le terrein*

* Begin the sentence with *therefore*.
† *Turn*, Which were due to them.
‡ *Turn*, Which to them fell under the hand.
§ *Turn*, And immediately half a dozen ruffians precipitated themselves into the room.
‖ *Turn*. They were far from expecting.

they *were* numerous, attempted to retaliate; but it *was* too late:
nombreux *ils assayèrent de riposter*

we, animated by the consciousness of our inferiority, in this re-
nous autres, *idée même* *à cet*

spect, *rushed* upon them, and presently knocked them down, | *tied*
égard se jeter *terrasser* *garroter*

their hands and feet, | and in this comfortable situation, *let* them
* *agréable état* (83.)

wait till sun-rise.
lever

The COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT, *and the* PRETERITE, *compared.*

What has been said concerning the preterite (with regard to its serving to relate circumstances) may be applied to the *Compound of the Present,* with this difference:

270. First: that in this tense, though the time, at which the action took place, is not necessarily specified, yet it should not be far distant.

J'ai été un peu malade, mais à présent je me porte bien,
I was rather poorly, but now I am very well.

271. Secondly: that the time, if specified, ought not to be entirely elapsed.

Je l'ai vu cette année, ce mois-ci, cette semaine-ci, aujourdhui, &c.
I have seen him this year, this month, this week, to-day, &c.

N.B. In conversation, this tense is much more used than the preterite.

EXERCISE.

Did you *see* my brother's partners? Yes, (I did.)* I *was* very ill yes-
(270.) * *
terday, I *was* obliged | to send for | the doctor. As soon as he *saw*
envoyer chercher *medecin*

---

* Turn: *I have seen him.*

me he *bled* me, and ordered me | to lay down. We saw the procession[2] pass[1] by. The King gave orders that the streets | should be | lighted up. Several ships | set sail | for India yesterday.
se coucher (284.) *faire* *éclairer* (271.) *mettre à la voile* *les Indes*

Of the FUTURE.

272. In French, the *future* is used, and, in English, the *present*, after the words *quand, dès que, au moment que, à l'instant que, aussitôt que, toutes les fois que, lorsque, tant que*, when they imply a future action; as,

Quand je vous appellerai, vous viendrez,
When I call you, you shall come.

Dès que, au moment que, lorsque, &c. vous aurez reçu ma lettre, &c.
As soon as you receive my letter.

Tant que vous serez vertueux, Dieu vous protégera,
As long as you are virtuous, God will protect you.

And also after such expressions as the following:

Comme (or) ainsi qu'il vous *plaira*,—*As you please.*
Comme vous voudrez,—*As you like.*

273. The *future* and *conditional* are used after *si*, when signifying *whether*.

Savez-vous *si* mon père *viendra*?
Do you know whether my father will come?

Savez-vous *si* votre mère *aimerait* cela?
Do you know whether your mother would like that?

But when *si* means *suppose that*, WILL is rendered, in French, by the present of *vouloir*, or merely by the present of the next verb.

Nous ferons des progrès si nous *voulons* prendre (or) si nous *prenons* de la peine,
We shall improve if we will take pains—See Conditional.

EXERCISE.

When I *set off*, I shall take your letter. As soon as the messenger
partir (272.)

comes let me know. I shall be of that opinion *as long as* I live.
faire savoir

Shall I accept his offer? Do as you think proper. You shall do
juger à propos

what I *tell* you. No, I will do what I *choose*. If you *will* be attentive
(273.)

you will improve.

I wonder | whether he will come; he has been invited, but
je voudrois savoir

has not sent an answer.

Of the CONDITIONAL.

This tense implies a kind of future action, that would take place, were it not for another on which it is dependent.

274. *Quant* (or) *quant même*, although, requires this tense.

Quant (or) *quant même* vous *auriez* raison, vous ne devez pas le frapper,
Although you would be in the right, you ought not to strike him.

275. After *si*, this tense is not used.—(See *future* No. 273.)

Si vous *vouliez* vous appliquer, (or) si vous vous *appliquiez* vous feriez des progrès,
If you would apply, you would improve.

En cas que vous *sortiez*, faites le moi savoir,
If you should go out, let me know.

276. Unless when *si* means *whether*; in which case the conditional should be used.

Je ne sais pas s'il *viendroit*, si on l'invitoit,
I do not know, in case he were invited, whether he would come.

EXERCISE.

Although you *were* as learned as you imagine, that ought not to in-
(274.) *l'imaginez devroit*

spire you with presumption. *Although* you *would* say so, (or if you
de
were, or were you even to say so,) I would not believe you.

If we *would* speak with a little more firmness, he would not | attempt
óser
| to impose | upon us. If you did make him that offer, I do not
en imposer *à*
know *whether* he *would* accept it, | being situated as he is. |
(276.) *vu la position où il se trouve*

Of the SUBJUNCTIVE *Mood.*

277. First: is used after *que,** preceded by verbs of *desiring, ordering, fearing, doubting,* &c.; or after words expressive of *joy* or *anger,* and in sentences implying such emotions of the soul.

Je désire (*or*) souhaite qu'il réussisse,—*I wish he may succeed.*

Je veux, j'ordonne que vous le fassiez,—*I will have you do that.*

Il craint, il tremble que vous n'arriviez,—*He dreads your arrival.*

Nous sommes bien aises, *or* fachés, que cela soit,
We are very glad, or sorry, that it should be so.

278. Secondly: after *impersonals* of the same import as the verb mentioned above: as,

Il est à *désirer* (*or*) à souhaiter qu'il vienne,
It is desirable that he should come.

Il *faut* que cela vous fasse bien de la peine,
That must give you a great deal of sorrow.

279. Thirdly: *conjunctions* implying doubt, opposition, &c. require this mood.

De crainte, de peur, qu'il ne fasse cela,—*Lest he should do it.*

Quoique bien qu'il ne soit pas riche,—*Though he is not rich.*

---

* Take notice that the subjunctive is not required merely because of *que,* but because of what precedes que; and that *que* always accompanies the subjunctive.

280. Fourthly: after a *negation* preceding one of these relatives, *qui, que, dont, lequel, quoi,* or *où.*

Je ne crois pas qu'il soit venu,—*I do not believe he is come.*

281. Fifthly: after an *interrogation* preceding *qui, que, dont,* &c.

Croyez-vous qu'il soit de retour?—*Do you think he is returned?*

282. Sixthly: after a *superlative,* or *superlative expression,* preceding any of the relatives, *qui, que, dont,* as above.

C'est *le plus grand* homme que je *connoisse,*
He is the greatest man I know.

283. Seventhly: even after such words as *l'unique, le seul,* the only one, *le premier,* the first, and *le dernier,* preceding *qui,* &c. as above.

Le *seul* (or) *l'unique* enfant que vous ayez,
The only child you have.

C'est le *premier* discours que vous ayez prononcé,
It is the first speech you ever delivered.

EXERCISE.

He doubts whether I am honest. You *wonder* that he is not yet
(277.) *douter* *que* *s'étonner* *encore*

arrived. I ⸸ will have ⸸ you do that We ⸸ are afraid ⸸ he
vouloir *que* *craindre*

will come. I am *glad* you have taken that resolution. You are

sorry he is ⸸ gone. ⸸
partir

You *must* write to your father. It is *proper* | for you | to do what
(278.) *juste*

your master orders you. It | is of consequence you should write to
importer

your father. It is *unjust* | we should be | punished.

Although you *are* well now, you | may be ill to morrow.
(279.) *se porter* *pouvoir* *malade*

Do not | go | *without* my* being informed of it. He will be angry
partir *sans que* *faché*

unless you make | an apology.
ne *des excuses*

Do you think he *is* ill? *Are you* sure he *is* poor? *Do they say* he (281.)

arrived?

I *do not* believe he *is* ill. You *are not* certain he *is* so poor as they (280.)

say. I *do not* say that you *are* the richest man in the city.

This is the *richest* vessel that *has* | till now | arrived in this country.
(282.) *être jusqu'à présent*

He is the *best* man I *know*. The *most difficult* language I *ever learnt*.
ce *ci*

He was the *only* man (who *was*) of that opinion. The *sole* object (283.) *unique*

which *keeps* me here *retenir* He is always the *first* who *knows* the news, and

he is the *last* who believes it.

They deprived me of the only child that I | had left.† You are the

first I ever *heard* speak in his favor.

Of the PRETERITE of the *Subjunctive*.

284. What has been said concerning the *Present* of the Subjunctive may be applied to the *Preterite* of the same mood; with this difference, that (speaking of Verbs requiring the subjunctive,) the Present and the Future require the PRESENT;‡ and the Imperfect, Preterite, and Conditional require the PRETERITE.‡

Je *crains* qu'ils ne *fassent* cela.—*Present Tense.*
Je *craignois* qu'ils ne *fissent* cela.—*Preterite.*

---

* Turn: *That I may be informed of it.*
† Turn: *Who remained to me.*
‡ With regard to *Compound* tenses the same rules may be applied.

285. However, if there be a *conditional expression* after even the *present tense*, the *preterite* ought to be used.

Je ne crois pas qu'ils *eussent* été pendus si les témoins fussent arrivés plutôt,
I do not believe they would have been hanged if the witnesses had come sooner.

EXERCISE.

I do not believe that he *is* an honest man. I did not believe he was an honest man. I | am afraid | you are ill. I was afraid
craindre
you were ill. Do you suppose he *would be* imprudent enough to act contrary to your orders?
imaginer *pour* *en opposition*

Of the IMPERATIVE.

286. The Imperative, in French, as well as in English, denotes *commanding* or *intreating*.

The use and construction of this mood, therefore, is nearly the same in both languages. Only let it be remembered that *que* is translated by *let*.

Faites ce que je vous dis,
Do what I tell you.

Qu'il fasse son devoir,
Let him do his duty.

Que votre frère et votre sœur aillent en France,
Let your brother and sister go to France.

Que ceux qui n'ont rien à faire quittent la chambre,
Let those who have nothing to do leave the room.

EXERCISE.

Let us not meddle with what does not concern us. *Let* her speak
se mêler de *regarder*
out. *Let him* that is guilty suffer the penalty of | the law. | *Let*
à haute voix (150.) *punition*

her, or, in fact, any body whatever, who is of a different opinion, act as he thinks proper. Let not those who are innocent suffer for the guilty.
qui que ce soit *juger à propos*

Of the different ways of marking more precisely the *Present, Past, and Future* tenses.

287. *Present.*

Je parle—*I speak.*
Je suis à parler—*I am speaking* (or) *in the very act of speaking.*

288. *Past tense.*

J'ai parlé—*I have spoken.*
Je viens de* parler—*I have just spoken.*
Je ne fais* que de parler—*I have but just spoken.*

289. *Future.*

Je parlerai—*I shall speak.*
Je vais* parler—*I'll speak* or *am going* (*immediately*) *to speak*
Je dois parler—*I am to speak.*

Of *will, shall, would,* &c.

290. When *will, shall, would, should,* are merely signs of the *future* and *conditional,* use these tenses in French.*

I shall speak—Je parlerai. *You will speak*—Vous parlerez.
You would speak—Vous parleriez *I should speak*—Je parlerois.

291. When *will* implies *determination,*† use *vouloir,* &c.

---

* See idioms upon *venir, faire, aller,* and *devoir.*—These four verbs, used as above, should be conjugated according to the tense required; *je viens, je venois, je fais, je fesois,* &c. Be careful to put the *infinitive* after these verbs.

† A native of this country is, of course, aware that *will* and *would,* in the first person singular and plural, imply *absolute will*; and *shall* and *should,* in the second and third, imply *command.*

Que vous le vouliez ou non, je *veux* parler à mon ami,
Whether you like it or not, I will *speak to my friend.*

I will, when emphatic, is, in French,			Je veux.
We will,	,,	,,	Nous voulons.
Thou shalt,	,,	,,	Je veux que tu.
He shall,	,,	,,	Je veux qu'il.
You shall,	,,	,,	Je veux que vous.
They shall,	,,	,,	Je veux qu'ils.

I will have you .. .. do this? .. Je veux que vous fassiez cela.
I would have you, ... ,, ... Je voudrois que vous fissiez cela.

When interrogatively.

Will you .. .. do that?	voulez vous faire cela?
Would you .. .. .. ,, ...	voudriez vous faire cela?
Shall you .. .. .. ,, ...	ferez vous cela?
Should you .. .. ,, ...	feriez vous cela?

292. When *shall* implies *command,* use *je veux que,* &c.

Je veux que vous appreniez,
You shall *learn.*

293. When *would* implies *determination,* use *vouloir,* &c.

Il a dit qu'il ne *vouloit* pas le faire,
He said he would *not do it.*

294. When *should* points to an action *requisite* or *desirable,* (meaning *ought,* and is not merely the sign of the conditional,) use *devoir* (in the conditional.)

Vous *devriez* toujours parler François,
You should *always speak French.*

295. When *can* and *could* imply *power,* use *pouvoir.*

Je *pourrois* le faire; mais je ne le veux pas,
I could *do so; but I will not.*

296. When *may* and *might* imply *possibility* or *permission,* use *pouvoir,* or *permettre.*

Vous *pouvez* sortir,
You may *go out.*

Il m'est *permis* de faire cela,
I may *do that.*

Cela *peut* ou *pourroit* arriver,
That may *or* might *happen.*

297. Express *ought* by *devoir*, in the present or conditional.

Vous *devriez* donner un bon example,
You ought *to set a good example.*

298. Express *must* by *il faut*, &c.

Il faut absolument que vous preniez soin de vous,
You must *absolutely take care of yourself.*

Let. See 286.

299. *To be*, when implying a *future* action, is expressed by *devoir*, and when *possibility* by *pouvoir*.

Il doit être choisi demain ou après demain,
He is to be chosen to-morrow or after to-morrow.

On peut (*or*) pourroit faire une fortune considérable,
A large fortune is to be, (or) *may be made.*

On ne fait pas *or* on ne sauroit faire une fortune considérable à présent.
A large fortune is not to be made now-a-days.

300. I should have / I ought to have } are expressed by { *j'aurois dû.*

Vous *auriez dû* apprendre votre leçon,
You should (or) *ought to* have *learnt your lesson.*

301. I could have / I might have } are expressed by { *j'aurois pû.*

Vous *auriez pû* faire cela, si vous aviez été diligent,
You could have *done that if you had been diligent.*

Ils *auroient pu* se casser le cou, si nous ne les avions pas avertis du danger,
They might have *broken their necks, if we had not warned them of the danger.*

302. *Do* and *did*, as auxiliaries, are used, in English, when asking a question, and when affirming with energy; in French, they are left out.

Do you draw? Yes, I do draw, but not well.
Dessinez-vous? Oui, je dessine, mais pas bien.

Je vous assure que vous avez tort,
I do *assure you that you are wrong.*

303. N.B. Take notice that the foregoing auxiliaries, *will, shall, would, should, do, did,* &c. are never expressed in French, when used by themselves, as they are in English, by way of answer, or assenting to what is affirmed; we simply use the affirmative *oui,* or the negative *non,* or else repeat the whole phrase.

Voulez-vous aller avec moi? Oui.
Will you go with me? Yes, I will.

Me quitterez-vous? Non. (or) Non, je ne vous quitterai pas.
Shall you leave me? No, I will not.

EXERCISE.

What *are* you *doing*? I *am writing* to my brother. Whenever I go in, I see him drawing. What are they busy about? They *are studying*. When we | walked in | she was in the very act of cooking her dinner.

(287.) *occupé à* (287.) *entrer* *préparer*

Have you spoken to Mr. B.? Yes, I | have just | had a long conversation with him. How long have you left him? We | have but just | parted. He | is just | come. I beg your pardon, he has been here an hour. No, I assure you he | is but just | arrived.

(288.) *combien y a-t-il que vous l'avez quitté?* *se quitter.* *arriver.* *il y une heure que il est ici*

To-day or to-morrow I shall see what we had better do. We *are* all *to* appear before the magistrate. *Are* you *to* take a lesson every day? I *will show* you immediately what other authors say on the subject. He *is going* to explain to you how | we *came* to be | late.

avons de mieux à faire. (289. 299.) (289.) (289.) *il se fait que nous sommes en retard.*

You *will* not | send for | the doctor! I *will*. *Will you* go
envoyer chercher *medecin.* *pardonnez-moi*

with me? *Shall* you go with them? You *shall* do what I tell you, or
H *ou*

else I shall | send you away. | She *shall* learn (or I will have her
bien *renvoyer* (292.)

learn) music and all the accomplishments. *Will* you have me do a
arts d'agrément. (291.)

thing which I should afterwards be ashamed of? Would you have
par la suite avoir honté de

me do this? I will not have you make a noise; your father | is asleep,
(291.) *dormir*

you will wake him.

He promised he would remain our friend to the last. He
être (290.) *jusqu'au* *dernier moment.*

said he would pay what he owed.

I *will* go in spite of you. You shall not, I will not let you go.
partir (87.)

Will he or *will* he not do what I order him? He says he will not. As
(87.)

for you, you *may* go, if your work is done; if not, you *may not.*
(296.) *si non*

Can you lift up this burden? Yes, I can, but I *may* not.
(87.) *cela ne m'est pas permis.*

We *can* gather the fruit of these trees, but we must not. We *may* go
(295.) (87.)

and take a walk, whenever | we like, | provided we return in time.
* *faire un tour,* *il nous plait,* *à*

You may tell your father I will no longer take care of you.
prendre soin

| It is a pity | you broke these cups and saucers; you *should have*
C'est dommage *el* (300.)

been more careful. They *ought to have* been more provident, and
prudent,

*laid up for their old age. Yes, Sir, they *could*, if
amasser pour subvenir à leurs besoins dans (301.)

they had known what *was* to happen, have laid up quite enough for
savoir (299.) *tout-à-fait*

their present wants. Why did you go without me? You *might* |
partir

as well | *have* let me know. Could you have helped us? We
* *faire le savoir*

might, perhaps, if we had been aware of your situation.
(303.) *connoître position.*

Of the various ways of asking Questions.

304. When the speaker merely wishes to obtain information, and when there is only a personal pronoun, as the nominative, we put the pronoun after the verb.†

Parlé-je ?—*Do I speak?*
Parlez-vous?—*Do you speak?*
Entendent-ils?—*Do they hear?*

305. When a substantive or pronoun demonstrative is the nominative, the order is as follows:

First.—The *agent* or *nominative,* with the words inseparable from it, such as the article, pronoun demonstrative, and adjective.

Secondly.—The *verb,* if simple, or else the *auxiliary,* if compound, with its adverb.

Third.—The *pronoun personal.*

Fourth.—The *participle* or *adjective.*

---

* Repeat *they ought to have.*

† Except with the first person of the indicative, present tense, of every verb, but those of the first conjugation. Therefore we do not say *agis-je, reçois-ie,* &c. but *est-ce-que j'agis, est-ce que je reçois.*

1 2 3 4 4
L'homme riche est-il toujours heureux et estimé ?
Is the rich man always happy and esteemed ?

Cela est il bien ?—*Is that right ?*

When, however, the sentence begins with such interrogative expressions as *qui ?* who ?—*que ?* what ?—*combien ?* how much ? how many ?—*quand ?* when ? &c., the *nominative* (if there be no accusative in the sentence) is usually placed last.

Que dit monsieur votre père ?
What does your father say ?

Où sont allés vos camarades ?
Where are your companions gone to ?

306. To ascertain or identify the person or object spoken of, we use *est-ce* (sing.) *sont-ce* (pl.) ; also to make the question more emphatic.

Est-ce monsieur qui a fait cela ?
Is it this or that gentleman who did it ?

Sont-ce mes frères qui osent parler ?
Is it my brothers who dare talk ?

307. To point to the *person* or *object* spoken of, we use *est-ce là, sont-ce là.*

Est-ce là votre maître ?
Is that your master ?

Sont-ce là vos maisons ?
Are those your houses ?

308. To shew *astonishment,* we use *est-ce que* before a verb.

Est-ce que vous êtes marié ?
You are not married, are you ?

Est-ce qu'ils sont ruinés ?
Surely they are not ruined, are they ?

309. When denoting previous knowledge, and merely wishing to ascertain the object of the question, we use *n'est-ce pas* after the phrase.

Il pleut, n'est-ce pas ?
It rains, does it not ?

Elle danse bien, n'est-ce pas ?
She dances well, does she not ?

Nous ferons des progrès, n'est-ce pas ?
We shall improve, shall we not ?

310. When wishing to ascertain the object of the question by the testimony of another person, we use *n'est-ce pas que ?*

Mon frère ne croit pas la nouvelle ; n'est ce pas qu'elle est officielle?
My brother does not believe the news ; it is official, is it not ?

311. Combien y a-t-il { *How long ?* / *How far ?* / *How many ?*

And other expressions.

312. QUESTION, (implying a wish to know how long an action, which still continues, has already lasted ; or, if left off, how long it has remained so.)

1. { Combien y a-t-il que* ....vous apprenez †.... / Depuis quand* .....apprenez † vous.... } le François.

2. { Combien y a-t-il-que.....vous n'apprenez plus / Depuis quand .....n'apprenez-vous plus } le François.

1. *How long have you been learning French ?*
2. *How long have you left off learning French ?*

ANSWER.—Il y a † deux ans (understood) que je l'apprends, or que je ne l'apprends ‡ plus.

I have † been learning these two years, or left off, &c.

---

* *Combien y a-t-il* and *depuis quand* are synonimous expressions; only that the next verb should be in the affirmative with *combien y a-t-il*, and in the interrogative with *depuis quand*.

† Take notice, also, that the French, whether in giving an answer, or any information, generally begin with *il y a*, conjugated according to the time alluded to. (See *il y a*, No. 326.)

‡ Whether, therefore, the action is continued or still left off, we use the *present*, both in the question and answer. We even say : (see *il y a*, No. 327.)

A Noël, combien y aura-t-il que vous *apprenez* le François ?
At Christmas, how long shall you have been learning French ?

313. QUESTION, (implying a wish to know how long since the action mentioned took place.)

Combien y a-t-il que..vous avez* fait cela?
How long is it since..you did that?
How long ago..did you do that?

ANSWER.—Il y a deux ans.....(que je l'ai* fait,)
(I did it) two years ago.

314. QUESTION, (implying a wish to know how long an *action*, or *former habit*, has been left off.)

Combien y a-t-il que vous n'y avez écrit à votre père?
How long is it since you wrote to your father?

ANSWER. { Il y a six mois que ‡ je *ne* † lui ai écrit,
or,
Je ne lui ai point écrit depuis † six mois,
I have not written to him for § these six months.

315. QUESTION, (with regard to the *duration* of a circumstance.)

Combien de tems la pièce dure-t-elle?
How long does the play last?

Combien de tems la pièce a-t-elle duré, ou durera-t-elle?
How long did or will the play last?

ANSWER.—Deux heures—*Two hours, or for § two hours.*

316. QUESTION, (implying a wish to know when a circumstance is to take place.)

Dans combien de tems irez-vous à la campagne?
How long will it be before you go in the country?

ANSWER.—Dans un mois—*In a month's time.*

---

* In this case the action alluded to, being past, the French use the *past* tense, in the question and answer.

† These kinds of sentences may be expressed two ways: either beginning with *il y a*, and connecting the next part by means of *que*, as in the above example; or beginning with the verb, either present or passed, and connecting it with the next part, by means of *depuis*.

‡ The negation *ne* (without *pas*) is always placed before the verb, in the like questions, and in the answers to them.

§ Not *pour*. See note (†) to No. 326, of *il y a*.

That is: *pour y passer* trois jours—*To spend three days.*

317. QUESTION, (with respect to *distance.*)

Combien y a-t-il de Paris à Versailles ?
How far is it from Paris to Versailles?

ANSWER.—Il y a quinze milles,
Fifteen miles.

318. QUESTION, (with respect to *number.*)

Combien y a-t-il d'habitans à Londres ?
How many inhabitants are there in London?

ANSWER.—Il y en a à peu près 1,100,000,
There are nearly 1,100,000.

319. QUESTION, (with respect to *price.*)

Combien ce drap ?—*How much is this cloth?*

ANSWER.—Une guinée l'aune—*A guinea an ell.*

320. How COMES IT that, is, in French, *comment se fait il*—que.

Comment se fait il que vous n'êtes pas arrivé plutôt ?
How comes it you did not come sooner?

EXERCISE.

Are you going to London? Shall you | address | the public? (304.) *faire un discours à* (305.) Is *that* right? Are *those* paintings well done? Are all the candles and lamps lighted? Can *a mother*, who | has just | seen her[2] (305.) *venir de*

child[3] die,[1] and whose heart is still rent by her grief, listen to the *navré de*

advice of the most devoted friendship! What will your father say, *sincère*

when he | hears of | all your misfortunes? *apprendre*

Did *you*, or was it you, who committed so foul an action? *Is it* (306.) *atroce*

right? Yes, | it is. | *Do* my riches alone attract you? Will your

brother be elected?

Is *that* the portrait of your wife? Are *these* the fruits of the instruc- (307.)
tion I gave you? Are *those* the beautiful statues you were extolling? *vanter*
Is *that* an apple-tree or a pear-tree? *Is that* the beautiful pear-tree?

You make me repeat very often; you are not deaf, *are you?* You (308.)
are not ill, *are you?* He bid you | good bye | before he set off, did
dire *adieu* *de*
he not? It does not rain, does it?

Have you written to your father? yes, | I have. | Does it rain?

Did it thunder last night?

You are pretty well, are you not? My exercise is correct, is
se porter (309.)
it not? We shall go to the play to-night, shall we not? She is
spectacle
married, is she not? He is in the wrong, is he not?

These gentlemen will not believe that peace is made; is it not so?*
vouloir
It | thundered just now; | oh! no, you | are mistaken. | Well, I
(288.) *oh* *se tromper*
will ask my brother, who | is just come in. | It thunders, brother,
(289.) *d'entrer* (310.)
does it not?

How long have you played on the violin? I have played several
(311.) (312.)
years, but I have received lessons only these two years. How long is
it since you saw your father? How long have you left off drawing?
(314.) *discontinuer*
I used to draw ten years ago, but now I have entirely | left it off. |
(261.) (326.)

How long will your coat last? I shall not have another for a twelve-
(315.) (96.) *d'ici à un*
month. You have not danced these three months. You will go and
an (314.)

---

* Begin with, *is it not that peace*, &c. *this gentleman will not*, &c.

see your friend in six weeks. You will be six hours going* to Brighton.

A month hence I shall go to Paris. He has been ill these two days; (316.) *dans*

this morning he was a little better; but the pain returned two hours ago,

and | has continued | ever since. | What stay do you intend to make
encore *séjour*

in town? I am going there for fifteen days. When shall you be (326.)

back? In a month. We are going in the country for a month. *de retour*

Where were you last year? I remained with my mother for a fortnight. *pendant*

How far is Brighton from London? Fifty-six miles. *How many* leagues is Calais distant from Paris?

How many persons were there at your assembly? There were so many that I could scarcely stir. *How many* volumes are there (96.) *se remuer.*

to that work? How many pages in each volume? *dans*

OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

In the second part, (the accidence, page 66,) we have given a list of verbs which are always reflective; now we wish to give the learner an idea of the facility with which the French can give extension to the signification of a verb by merely making it *Reflective*.† The following rules will apply to most verbs in the language.

321. Reflective verbs are used to denote an action which falls back upon the nominative:‡ as

Je me frappe—*I strike myself.*

322. To shew reciprocity, or an action done mutually.

Ils se battent—*They fight.*

---

* Turn: *for to go, &c.*

† For farther explanation, see Appendix.

‡ We say in the active voice, *lever quelque chose*, to lift up any thing

323. To imply a state of *becoming, growing, getting,* when the active cause is not mentioned, as well as an action done from *custom.*

Le diner s'apprête,
Dinner is getting ready.

Les fleurs se fanent.
Flowers fade.

Le François se parle par toute l'Europe,
French is spoken every where in Europe.

EXERCISE.

Tenir, *to hold.*—A council is held every week in this hall. (No. 323.)

Faner, *to fade.*—Flowers fade away.

Quereller, *to quarrel.*
Battre, *to beat.* } After having quarrelled they fought. (322.)

Parler, *to speak.*—The English language is spoken in America. (323.)

Faire, *to make* or *to do.*—How is that done?

Ecrire, *to write.*—How is that word written or spelt?

Rouiller, *to rust.*—Iron rusts when in the damp.

User, *to wear out.*—Clothes (will) wear out.

OF NEUTER VERBS.

324. A list of verbs* which take ETRE in their compound tenses, when *neuter.*

—and, *promener un enfant,* to take a child out a walking:—but *je me lève,* I rise—*je me promène,* I take a walk;—because the action evidently falls back on the agent.

* Choir, *(obsolete) to fall.* Déchoir, *(only used in the participle past) to decline.* Décéder, *(a law term) to die.*

Aborder*	to land. / to come ashore.	Mourir	to die.
Accourir	to run to.	Naître	to be born.
Aller	to go.	Partir	to set out.
,, (s'en)	to go away.	Retourner	to return.
Arriver	to arrive.	Rester	to stay.
Demeurer	to remain, to stop.	Sortir	to go out.
Descendre	to go or come down.	Tomber	to fall.
Entrer (dans)	to enter, to go in.	Venir	(and all the derivatives of Venir.†)
Monter	to go up.		

EXERCISE.

The whole crew (have) landed without the least accident. He has run to my assistance. I have entered the room. They have gone down into the cellar. They would have died, if we had not come to their assistance. Would you have stopped if I had asked you. We have abstained from drinking wine. I have come twice to see you to-day.

OF IMPERSONALS.

Of *il y a.*

Il y a, there is, there are, is an idiomatic expression of the greatest use in French.

325. Meaning "there exists," *il y a* is used in every kind of style. (See *Voilà*, Appendix.)

Il y a de bien grandes beautés dans cet ouvrage,
There are great beauties in that work.

---

* Some of the above verbs are sometimes taken actively; in which case they require *avoir*. See Appendix.

† Such as devenir, *to become*, convenir, *to agree upon*, disconvenir, *to disagree upon*, intervenir, *to intervene*, parvenir, *to succeed*, provenir, *to proceed from*, revenir, *to come again*, survenir, *to come unexpectedly, to befall.*

Il y a is also used in reference to *time, distance,* and *number.*

326. When pointing to *time,* it means *ago,* or *passed.* Here follows the formula of the usual construction it then requires.

1 2 3 4
Il y a, (the time,) que, the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Il y a* deux ans que j'*étudie* le François,
I have studied French for† these two years.

Il y a* deux ans que *je n'apprends plus* le François,
I have left off learning French for † these two years.

---

* When the action is continued, *depuis,* since, may be used instead of *il y a.* In which case the construction is as follows:

1 2 3 4
The verb, the accusative, depuis, (the time.) Ex.

1 2 3 4
J'apprends le François *depuis* deux ans.

1 2 3 4
Je n'apprends plus le François *depuis* deux ans.

† Let it also be observed that, in referring to time, *for* is never to be expressed by *pour,* but when a verb, such as *passer, demeurer, rester,* &c. is expressed or understood. Ex.

Je vais à la campagne pour trois jours,
I am going in the country for three days.

That is:—

Pour y passer trois jours,—*To spend three days.*

In such sentences as above, *pour* and *pendant* are often misapplied by English learners. *Pour,* as already said, (219) implies an ellipsis (*pour passer, &c.*) whereas *pendant* implies *duration.* Ex.

J'ai eu cet ouvrage *pour* trois jours,
I have had this work (that I might use it) for three days.

J'ai eu cet ouvrage *pendant* trois jours,
I have had this work for, or, *during three days.*

327. Be careful, on such occasions, when the action is *continued*, or, if being left off, it still remains so, to put the next verb in the *present* of the Indicative.

328. Il y a* deux jours que j'ai quitté la France,
I left France two days ago.

In the above example, the action of *quitting* is passed and done with, therefore the past tense is used.

329. When *il y a* is applied to *distance*, such is the construction.

1	2	3	4	5	6
Il y a	(the distance,)	de,	(one place,)	à	(the other place.)
Il y a	(the distance,)	depuis,	,,	jusqu'à	(the other place.)

Il y a 152 miles de Calais à Paris,
——————— depuis Calais jusqu'à Paris,
It is 152 leagues from Calais to Paris.

330. When *il y a* is used with reference to *number*, the construction is the same in French as in English.

Il y a deux cents mille habitans dans cette ville,
There are two hundred thousand inhabitants in that town.

331. *Combien y a-t-il* answers to the three expressions.—*How long? How far? How many?* See No. 311.

EXERCISE.

There is some one in the garden who wishes to speak to you. *There are* several persons of that opinion. *Is there* any thing agreeable in (242.)
that work. *There is* something pleasing in his countenance. *There's voilà* a countenance I like.

I have been in my situation *these three* years. We *saw* him *five days* *place f.* (313.)
ago. They *have* not seen their father for these *four years.*

---

* In the like examples the order might be reversed and we might put,

1	2	3	4
The verb,	*the accusative,*	*il y a,*	*the time,*
J'ai quitté	la France,	il y a	deux jours.

He *has* not been at school for *this fortnight*. He *has* | *been* | twenty
de

years in this country? She *was* in France *a year ago*.

Greenwich *is* five miles *from* London. *How far* is it from Richmond to Windsor? *It is*, at least, twenty miles from this place to that.

There are a hundred boys in that school. There are twenty pounds in the till. *How many* books have you?
tiroir

Of IL EST *and* C'EST.

IL EST *is employed*

332. With nouns denoting the *hour* or *time*, as:

Il est deux heures,—*It is two o'clock*. *Not* c'est deux heures.
Est-il trois heures?—*Is it three o'clock?*
Il est tems de partir,—*It is time to set off.*
Est-il tems de diner?—*Is it time to dine?*

333. With *Adjectives, Impersonal* verbs, or with *Participles* immediately followed by *que*.

Il est *décidé* que l'armée se mettra en campagne,
It is decided that the army will begin the campaign.
Il est* inutile de faire cela,—*It is useless to do that.*
Il pleut, il neige,—*It rains, it snows.*

334. Instead of *Il y a*, meaning *there exists, &c.* (it is used in flowery style,) as:

Il est des cœurs que rien ne peut changer,
There are such hearts as nothing can change.

C'EST *or* CE *is employed*

335. Instead of *cela*, as:

C'est inutile,—*It* or *that is useless.*

---

* When the adjective is followed by *de*, *c'est* may be used as well as *il est*.

C'est juste,—*It* or *that is just.*

Cela est-il bien ? Oui, *c'est* très bien,
Is that right ? *Yes, very right.*

336. To express *emphasis,* that is, the particular word in a sentence.

C'est moi, c'est toi, c'est lui, &c. qui ai, as, a, &c. fait cela.
It is I, *thou,* *he,* &c. *who have,* &c. *done that.*

337. In general remarks, explanations, and exclamations, in which *que de* is used before the next verb, or *que* before the next noun. (Neither *que de* nor *que* is expressed in English 156 and 157.)

C'est beaucoup que de savoir être généreux,
It is a great thing to know how to be generous.

C'étoit un grand homme que Howard !
What a great man Howard was !

Ce que je vous dis, c'est la vérité,
What I tell you, is the truth.

Ce que j'exige de vous, c'est d'aller là,
What I require of you, is to go there.

338. Instead of *c'est parceque,* it is because, as:

Si je ne vous parlois pas, c'est que je ne vous connoissois pas,
If I did not speak to you, it was because I did not know you.

Il est *and* c'est *compared.*

339. *Il* or *elle est* is used after a noun mentioned, and described by an adjective, as :

Aimez votre père, car il est bon et juste.

340. *C'est* is used after a noun mentioned, and described by a substantive, as :

Aimez votre père, car c'est un homme bon et juste.

341. It may also be added, that *il* or *elle* refers only to a *noun* coming before; whereas *c'est,* meaning *ceci, cela,* often relates to a *verb,* or to a part of a *sentence.*

Aimez-vous cette promenade ? Oui, *elle est* charmante, (referring to promenade.)
Do you like this walk? *Yes, it is charming.*

Aimez-vous faire une promenade le matin ? Oui, c'est très agréable,
(referring to *faire une promenade.*)

Do you like to take a walk in the morning ? Yes, it is very pleasant.

Exercise.

It is eleven o'clock. *What's* o'clock ? *It is* half past four.* *It* (332.)

was a quarter[2] past twelve[1] (in the day.) Was it | a quarter to
* *midi* * *une heure moins*

one ? | No, it only wanted ten minutes. It will be six o'clock
un quart *s'en faut*

when we | have dinner. It would be time | for me to |
on *apportera le diner* *que*

have tea. Do you think it is late ? It is | earlier than
prendre I. (281.) *de meilleure heure*

I thought. It is only | twelve o'clock | (at night.)
(73.) *minuit*

It is impossible for me to speak while you are making such a noise.
(232.)

Is it possible for Mr. B. to succeed ?

There is a being in the world whom I sincerely esteem. *There are*
(334.)

emotions of which few people have any idea.

You did not do that. | I did. | *We* saw him first.
ce n'est pas vous qui cD *pardonnez-moi* (336.)

She was victorious, not *he*.

What a building St. Paul's (church) is ! It is madness to pretend
édifice

alone | to be wise. | *What* I am very fond of *is* to take a walk on
de faire

the | sea beach.
rivage

---

* The word *heure* is always to be mentioned.

Do you know | what this is? | *It is* wine. Well, drink
ce que c'est que cela

it, for *it is* excellent. *It is* a kind of wine which I have kept a
(339.) (340.) *depuis*

long time in my cellar; it has now acquired a body and a flavour
du corps bouquet

which make it very agreeable. Do you know Mr. B.? He is very
rendre

clever, is he not? He is not like Mr. C. Oh, no, *he is* quite a
une

different sort of man.
autre espèce

Do you like this book? Yes, for *it is* very instructive. Do you like

| reading? Yes, I do, *for it is* very instructive. We shall buy this
à lire *Je l'aime,*

fruit, for *it is* very wholesome. We eat baked apples before breakfast,
cuite

for *they are* wholesome.

Of IL FAUT. *(See Accidence, p. 97.)*

342. IL FAUT, as mentioned in the second part, (page 97,) governs the subjunctive with *que*.

Il faut que je *fasse* cela,
I must do that.

343. It frequently, also, governs the *Infinitive*, when used in a vague and general sense.

Il faut être juste,
We ought to be just.

344. Or, even when it is well understood who is the person spoken of, or spoken to.

Allons, mes amis, il faut manger avec appétit,
Come, my friends, we must eat with appetite.

But we should say:

Il faut que mes amis fassent un bon repas,
My friends must make a good meal.

345. *Il faut* is also used with the personal pronoun in the dative, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur.* It stands thus:

Il me	faut	*I want*, or *must have.*
Il te	,,	*Thou wantest*, ,,
Il lui	,,	*He wants*, ,,
Il nous	,,	*We want*, ,,
Il vous	,,	*You want*, ,,
Il leur	,,	*They want*, ,,

and so on through all the other tenses. It then implies *need* or *want, to require.*

Il me faut un habit neuf,
I must have a new coat.

Il lui faut un dictionnaire,
He or she wants or must have a dictionary.

EXERCISE.

You *must* do your duty. Come, my boy, you must do your exercise (344.) now. We ought to be just before we are generous. A man | ought
il faut *on* *devoir*

to fear danger before it comes, but despise* it when (it is) unavoidable. (237)

(A man) must be blind, and very weak, not to perceive such gross
il *pour* *si* *grossière*

flattery. Mr. B. must be very clever, to have made such a discovery.
pour

I must go, and you must stay.
partir

Before he sets to work, he | *wants*, or | must have, all his tools.
de *se mettre*

What should you require, to be perfectly happy? When they were

* *On doit* is understood. See No. 243.

young, they always wanted a servant to wait upon them, now they are
servir *

very glad to do without any.
se passer de

Verbs used Impersonally.

346. Besides the Impersonal Verbs given in the Accidence, (page 97,) we often use the following (for the most part neuter) impersonally, especially when speaking of *accidental circumstances, time,* or *weather.*

N.B. The substantive, which is the real nominative to the verb, should be transposed, and come *after* the verb.

Arriver.....Il est arrivé un accident,
An accident has happened.

Apparoître ..Il lui apparut des esprits,
There appeared unto him spirits.

Paroître ....Il parut à l'instant cinq ou six soldats,
Five or six soldiers immediately appeared.

Permettre....Il est permis à chacun d'émettre ses sentimens,
Every one is allowed to speak his sentiments.

Rester .....Il me reste encore bien des choses à vous dire,
I have many more things to tell you yet.

Sembler ....Il semble à un fat que tout doit se rapporter à lui,
A coxcomb thinks every thing must refer to him.

Tomber ....Il est tombé beaucoup de pluie,
We have had a great deal of rain.

Venir .....Il est venu quelqu'un vous demander,
Somebody called to see you.

347. Many other verbs, by taking the *Reflective* form, are also used impersonally.*

---

* The learner must not forget that the transposition must take place with the Reflective impersonals as well as with the neuter.

Agir .....Il s'agit de vos intérêts,
Your interest is the subject we are upon.

De quoi s'agit-il?
What is the matter?

Faire .....Il se fait des préparatifs,
Preparations are going forward.

Passer .....Il s'est passé bien des années depuis,
Many years have elapsed since.

Trouver ....Dans la société, il se trouve des gens qui, &c.
In society you meet with people who, &c.

Tenir .....Il se tint hier un conseil,
Yesterday a council was held.

EXERCISE.

General B. met *arriver* with a misfortune. | All of a sudden *tout-à-coup* | there appeared unto me the figure of my father. Soon a regiment of soldiers appeared. Are you allowed to walk out when you like? I have twenty pounds remaining. He seems *sembler* to think | that you *avoir* | are all in the wrong. Has any body been *venir* to see me? *tort*

What *is the matter?* *There is* a great deal of business going forward. Many errors have been *found* in that work. How many years *have elapsed* since your departure! A meeting, | for the purpose of *pour* | inquiring into *examiner* | his affairs, will be held to-morrow.

OF NEGATIONS.

(See Negations, *Accidence, p.* 100.*)*

348. The following expressions require the *subjunctive* in French, and *ne* before the next verb.

A moins qu' .. on ne fasse cela ..	*Unless..that is done.*
De peur qu' .. „ ..	*For fear .. „*
De crainte qu' .. .. „	„ „
Peu s'en faut qu' .. „ ..	*To be very near..doing that.*
Craindre qu' .. .. „	*To fear..that may be done.*
Appréhender qu' .. „ ..	*To be afraid..lest that is done.*
Ne pas douter* qu' .. „ ..	*Not to doubt..that it will be done.*
Empêcher qu' .. „	*To hinder..that from being done.*

349. The following expressions take *ne* without *pas.*

Il y a (*see* Il y a,) .. .. { Il y a dix ans que je *ne* l'ai vu, / *I have not seen him for these ten years.*

Que, (*meaning* pourquoi) { Que *ne* faites-vous cela? / *Why do you not do that?*

subjunctive.

Qui..ne (*but*, or, *but what*—nom.) { Il n'y a personne *qui ne* le sache, / *There is no one but what knows it.*

Que..ne (do.....acc.) { Il n'y avoit personne *que* vous *ne* connussiez, / *There was no one but what you know.*

350. *Ne* without *pas* is used, for the sake of elegance, with the following expressions:

Oser.....Je n'ôse faire cela,—*I dare not do that.*
Cesser .....Elle ne cesse de parler,—*She does not cease to speak.*
Pouvoir .....Je ne puis parler,—*I cannot speak.*
Savoir (in the cond. T.)..Je ne saurois parler,—*Ditto.*
Avoir garde....Il n'a garde de le faire,—*He is far from doing it.*
Prendre garde. Il prendra garde que je ne le fasse,—*He will take care I do not do it.*

---

* *Douter*, in the affirmative, does not require *ne*. Ex.

Je doute qu'il fasse cela.

How to express the following Negative expressions.

351. *No more* is expressed in French by *ne* before the verb, and *plus* after.

352. *Not more* is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *pas plus* after.

353. *Nor I neither,* ni moi non plus.

354. *By no means,* nullement, en aucune manière.

355. *Never,* in this peculiar construction, *never did,* or *never can,* &c. is, in French, *jamais,* before the substantive, with *ne* before the verb.

Jamais homme ne s'est conduit si honorablement,
Never did any man behave so honorably.

356. *Nor,* ni,—*nor* cannot be translated literally in sentences in which it serves to enumerate. (See Appendix.)

357. *Not at all,* pas du tout; *pas* is even often understood, and we merely say *du tout.*

358. *Not* is *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after, but *ne pas* before an infinitive.

359. *Not much,*—pas beaucoup.

Not very well,—pas très bien.

Not elegantly,—pas élégamment.

Will you do it or not?—voulez-vous le faire ou non?

360. *No* is usually expressed by *non.*

In familiar style *nenni* is sometimes used; *non pas* is also used to give more energy to the negative.

361. *Not that.* This expression is, in French, *non pas que,* or *ce n'est pas que,* or *non que.*

Je l'éviterai à l'avenir, non pas que, (or) non que je le haïsse, mais c'est que, &c.
I shall for the future avoid him, not that I dislike him, but that, &c.

EXERCISE.

Unless you write to your uncle, he will not come. I will prevent (348.)

those people from annoying you. *For fear of* his being* attacked *tourmenter*.

by robbers. He *was very near* | falling into the ditch. I was *Peu s'en fallut qu'il*

in great *fear* | that the fever should return. *revenir*

I *dare* not speak to her. We *constantly* warn them of their errors. (350.) *cesser de*

She *cannot* see them without shuddering. He cannot dance, for his (348.)

leg pains him. You *take care not* | to be guilty of negligence towards (110.) *le négliger*

him. | We *will take care* he does *not* come here to insult you.

I *have not* been to Paris *for* these three years. *Why* did you not (349.)

say so? *Why* did you not explain yourself? There is no one in the

world *but who* would prefer to die rather than drag such a miserable *plutôt que* *si*

existence. I see nothing here *but what* pleases me. There is no one

but what has his good points. There was nobody in the assembly *quelque* *qualité*

but what I knew. There is nothing in that work *but what* I recollect. (284.)

---

* Turn, *that he be.*

OF ADVERBS.

362. General Rule. Adverbs are placed immediately *after* the verb. (Accidence, p. 101—103.)

363. Exceptions and observations.

Bien, mal, mieux, toujours } are placed *before* the *infinitive.**
immediately *after* a *simple tense.**
between the *auxiliary* and the *participle.**

Examples.

Il a cru *bien* faire,
He thought he was doing right.

Il parle mal François,
He speaks French badly.

Il se sont mieux exprimés que vous,
They expressed themselves better than you.

364. Assez souvent, *often enough* (not *souvent assez.*)
Beaucoup trop, *too much, a great deal too much,* (not *trop*, nor *très beaucoup.*)
bien assez, ...*quite enough.*
assez bien, ...*pretty well.*
moins bien, .. *not so well.*

365. Some adjectives are used adverbially.

Juste, ..Joue-t-il juste?—*Does he play in tune?*
faux, ..Elle chante faux,—*She sings out of tune.*
bon, ... } Cela sent bon (*or*) mauvais,—*That smells nice* (or) *bad.*
mauvais, }
clair, ..Je n'y vois pas clair,—*I cannot see.*
tard, (adverbially,) *late.* Vous venez tard,—*You come late.*
en retard, (substantively.) Vous êtes en retard,—*You are late.*

Exercise.

You should try to do *well*, whatever you undertake. He does that *well.* She played that overture *badly.* They speak English very

---

* Even when accompanied by *fort, très, assez, moins, aussi,* and *si.* Ex. Elle a *fort bien* chanté,—*She sang very well.*

badly. She acquitted herself this time *better* than the last. He *always* speaks Italian. Has your health *always* been so good?

We have not seen him *often enough* to judge of him. You give him a great deal *too much*. He speaks French *pretty well*. He is not quite *so well* to-day.

It is very difficult to play *in tune* on the violin. You sing very much *out of* tune. Does this flower *smell* well? No, it smells very bad. Give me a candle to go down stairs, for I cannot see.

The courier is late to-day. Make haste, for it is late.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Having already given a list of Prepositions, (Accidence, pages 104 and 105,) explained the full imports of *à* and *de*, when coming between two substantives, (Syntax, pages 17—19,) and again made observations upon *à, de, pour, en, envers, par,* and *avec,* (Syntax, pages 82—84,) we shall now refer the learner to the APPENDIX, for fuller explanations of this part of speech, and of the light shades of meanings of which it is susceptible; which, though strikingly plain to a Native, are scarcely perceptible to a Foreigner, unless they are pointed out, and examined into with the greatest attention. The English Prepositions will come next to the French, in the same part of this work; they, also, have been treated with some degree of care, as far as the manner of translating them into French is concerned. As such niceties, to be well understood, require the learner to have a tolerable knowledge of the language, we have thought proper to place them in the APPENDIX, which, when wanted, may easily be consulted, as the articles are placed alphabetically.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

366. Conjunctive phrases which govern the *indicative*.

à ce que, *as to, according to.*
à condition que, *on condition that.*
à mesure que, *as, according to.*
au fur et à mesure que, *in proportion as.*
ainsi que. *as well as.*
après que, *after, when.*
attendu que, *as, considering that.*
au lieu que, *whereas.*
aussi bien que, *as well as.*
aussi long-temps que, *as long as.*
aussitôt que, *as soon as.*
autant que, *as much as, as far as.*
bien entendu que, *on condition that.*
tant que, *as long as, as far as.*
tel que, *such as, whatever.*
tellement que, *so that.*
tout..que, *as, though.*
de façon que, de manière que, de sorte que, *so that.*
de même que, *as, in the same manner as.*
peut-être que, *perhaps, it may be.*
selon que, suivant que, *according to.*
si..que, *so..as.*
si bien que, *so that.*
sinon que, *save only that.*
si-tôt que, *as soon as.*
tandis que, *whilst.*
vu que, *considering that.*
puisque, *since.*
dès que, *as soon as.*
d'autant que, *in as much as.*
excepté que, *except that.*
moins que, *less than.*
plus que, *more than.*
outre que, *besides that.*
parce que, *because.*
pendant que, *while.*

367. Conjunctive phrases which govern the *subjunctive*.

à condition que, *on condition that.*
afin que, *that.*
à moins que, *unless.*
avant que, *before.*
en cas que, *in case, if.*
ce n'est pas que, *not that.*
de peur que, *lest.*
de crainte que, *for fear that.*
de manière que, en sorte que, *so that.*
en attendant que, jusju' à ce que, *till, until.*
loin que, *far from.*
bien que, *although.*
bien loin que, *so far from.*
non que, non pas que, *not that.*
malgré que, *though.*
plût à Dieu que, *would to God that.*
Dieu veuille, *God grant that.*
pour que, *that.*
pour peu que, si peu que, *if..ever so little.*
pourvu que, *provided that.*
peu s'en faut que, *there wants but little of, almost.*
quoique, *although.*
sans que, *without.*
sinon que, *but that.*
soit que..ou, *whether..or.*
supposons que, *let us suppose that.*
supposez que, *suppose that.*
tant s'en faut que, *so far from.*

EXERCISE.

After you have done dinner, you generally[2] read[1] the newspa-
fini de diner, *ordinairement* *jour-*

per. | In proportion as | (*or*) as they | keep improving | I give
nal. *à mesure que* *font des progrès,*

them exercises which are more and more difficult.
thêmes *de en* *difficiles.*

Perhaps he is hungry.
a faim.

I made him write an exercise upon every rule that he might un-
lui (*inf.*) *toutes les règles afin qu'* *

derstand them better. *In case* you do wrong, tell me of it; be not
(*subj.*) *mal* * *le* *n'ayez pas*

afraid. *Although* you take pains, yet you cannot
peur . *de la peine,* *cependant* . *ne pouvez*

expect wonderful success. *Suppose* you were ill, what
vous attendre à de grands *succès.* *malade,* *que*

would become of you? *Provided* you improve. *Not that* I am
deviendriez * *faire des progrès.*

satisfied with his conduct.
de ——*uite.*

IDIOMS.

An Idiom, or rather an Idiotism, is a peculiarity of expression, in which the construction differs from that given in the Syntax, or in which the words are taken in a peculiar acceptation.

Although the French language abounds in Idiotisms, we have here given only a small number, and such as are most in use; the others will be found in the Appendix.

368. AGIT DE (il s') *from* agir.—The matter in hand is, it is requisite to.

il s'agit de (telle chose.)		The matter in hand	*is.*
il s'agissoit	,,	,,	*was.*
il s'agit	,,	,,	*was.*
il s'agira	,,	,,	*will be.*
il s'agiroit	,,	,,	*would be.*
qu'il s'agisse	,,	,,	*may be.*
qu'il s'agît	,,	,,	*might be.*

s'agit-il ? (de quoi)		What is the matter?	What is going forward ?
s'agissoit-il ?	,,	,,	,,
s'agit-il ?	,,	,,	,,
s'agira-t-il	,,	,,	,,
s'agiroit-il	,,	,,	,,

EXAMPLE.

Il *sagit de* savoir lequel a raison.
The thing is to know which is in the right.

J'entends beaucoup de bruit ; de quoi *s'agit*-il ?
I hear a great noise ; what is the matter ?

EXERCISE.

What is the matter ? What is the question? I will tell you in very few words *what is the matter.* (153.)

Now we have a house, *the main point is* to furnish it.

*Was it necessary** or whenever *it was requisite** to relieve the poor, he always came forward.

369. AVOIR CHAUD (aux mains,) *to be warm about the hands.*

,,	froid,	,,	*cold.*
,,	faim,	,,	*hungry.*
,,	soif,	,,	*thirsty.*
,,	raison,	,,	*in the right.*
,,	tort,	,,	*in the wrong.*
,,	peur,	,,	*afraid.*
,,	honte	,,	*ashamed.*
,,	1, 2, 3, &c. ans,	*to be* 1, 2, 3, *&c. years old.*	
,,	1, 2, 3, &c. pieds, &c. de hauteur, &c.	,,	1, 2, 3, *&c. feet high, &c.*

* *S'agissoit-il de*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai chaud aux mains,—*My hands are warm.*

Il avoit froid aux pieds,—*He was cold about the feet.*

Avez-vous faim?—*Are you hungry.*

Je ne crois pas qu'ils aient raison,—*I do not think they are in the right.*

Auroit il tort?—*Would he be wrong?*

Aura-t-elle peur?—*Will she be afraid?*

N'avez-vous pas honte?—*Are you not ashamed?*

Elle aura bientôt douze ans,—*She will soon be twelve years old.*

Ce grenadier a six pieds, deux pouces,—*That grenadier is six feet, two inches.*

EXERCISE.

Are your hands *cold?* *I am warm* about the hands. I am cold.

Mr. B. *is thirsty*, but *is* not *hungry.*

She *is right*, and you *are wrong.*

Are you not *ashamed* of speaking in such a manner?

(192.)

Is she *twenty?** No, she *is* only *nineteen.*

That man *is six feet, three inches high.*

370. AVEZ† VOUS (qu')? *What is the matter with you?*

Vous semblez malade, *qu'avez vous?*—*You seem ill; what is the matter with you?*

EXERCISE.

What is the matter with her? *What was the matter with* me?

What will be the matter with us?

Do you want to know *what would be the matter with* them?

---

* The word *an*, year, should always be mentioned.

† From *avoir*; conjugate it thus:—*qu'ai-je, qu'as-tu? &c. qu'avois-je, &c.*

DEVOIR, (see 299.)

371. FAIRE chaud		*to be warm*	
,,	froid,	,,	*dry.*
,,	clair de lune,	,,	*moon light.*
,,	soleil,	,,	*sun shine.*
,,	beau (tems,)	,,	*fine weather.*
,,	vilain,	,,	*bad.*
,,	crotté, sale,	,,	*muddy, dirty.*
,,	jour,	,,	*day light.*
,,	nuit, sombre, obscure,	,,	*night, dark, dusk.*
,,	du vent,	,,	*windy.*

Faire, with regard to *weather*, never can be used but impersonally therefore do not say, *Le tems fait beau.*

Il a fait bien chaud cet été,
It has been very warm this summer.

Fait-il froid déhors ?
Is it cold out of doors?

A présent qu'il fait soleil, sortons,
Now, the sun shines, let us go out.

Faisoit-il beau ou vilain ?
Was it fine or bad?

Il fera très crotté (ou) sale demain,
It will be very dirty to-morrow.

Je ne crois pas qu'il fasse encore jour,
I do not think it is yet day light.

EXERCISE.

Is it warm or cold | out of doors? | It is very cold. Is it? *vraiment* It will be excessively hot this summer. Was it not very cold this winter? In the streets it is either *dirty* or *dusty*. He gets up every morning before *it is day light*. It was dark when I came home. You should not wait till *it is fine weather* to go out. I walk | in all weathers, | *quelque tems qu'il fasse*

rain or shine. It begins *to be dark* at six
qu'il fasse de la pluie ou du soleil

o'clock. Do you like to walk by moonlight, by the side of a brook.
le long de

I will come and see you in the evening when it is moonlight. How windy it is! The wind is very high.

372. MAL* (avoir) à la tête, *To have the head ache.*
„ au bras, „ *a pain in one's arm.*
„ aux yeux, „ *sore eyes.*

J'ai mal à la tête,—*I have the head ache.*
Tu avois mal au bras,—*Thou had'st a pain in thy arm.*
Il aura bien mal aux yeux,—*His eyes will be very sore.*
Oh comme ils auroient mal aux pieds!—*How sore their feet would be!*

EXERCISE.

Oh what a head-ache I had! Have you got the tooth ache? No, but my eyes are sore. She had a pain in her side. When he is older he will feel rheumatic pains, (*douleurs rhumatismales.*)

373. METTRE (se—à,) *To set about.*
Se remettre à, *To set about again.*

Aussitôt que je rentre chez moi, *je me mets* à l'ouvrage.
As soon as I get home, I set to work.

EXERCISE.

Come boys, *set* to work. As soon as I spoke to him, he began to cry.
(120.) *à l'ouvrage*

He *should set to* work and begin his translation.
au travail

---

* We may also use the words *douleur, peine.*

374. PORTER (se—,) (*to be*) *in point of health.*
Je me porte bien,—*I am well.*
Il s'est mal porté,—*He has been ill.*

EXERCISE.

How *are* you ? I *am* pretty well, thank you. How *are* your father and mother ? They *have not been* well lately ; they *would have been* better if they had remained in the country.

375. VENIR, *to come.*
Venir de* (before an Infinitive,) *to have just.*
Venir à (before an Infinitive,) *to happen to.*
Venir à bout de, *to bring about* (or) *succeed.*

*Je viens d'*arriver,—*I am just arrived.*
S'il *venoit à* vous entendre il seroit en colère,
If he happened to hear you, he would be angry.
Si vous vous donnez de la peine, vous *viendrez à bout* de tout,
If you take pains, you will succeed in every thing.

EXERCISE.

He has just done his exercise. He *had just* begun his speech when you came in.

Whenever you *happen to* give your opinion on any subject, he begins to laugh. If he should happen to see you, he would be very much pleased.

There is nothing | like | perseverance | to | *bring any thing about* (or)
tel que *pour*
succeed in any thing.

---

* The verb *venir* is to be conjugated, and put in the same tense as the English tense given, as :

Je viens de,—*I have just.*
Je venois de,—*I had just.*

376. VOULOIR* (requires the subj.) *to will, to desire, to want.*

Vouloir bien. . *to be willing, to be so kind as.*

(*Except in the Conditional.*)

Je voudrois bien,—*I should very much like.*

EXAMPLES.

Je *veux* que vous fassiez votre devoir,
I will have you do your duty.

Que voulez-vous ?—*What do you want ?*

Que me *vouloit-il ?*—*What did he want with me ?*

Voulez-vous aller au parc ? Oui, *je le veux bien,*
Will you go to the park ? Yes, I am very willing.

Je voudrois bien aller à la campagne, mais je n'ai pas le tems,
I should very much wish to go in the country, but I have not time.

EXERCISE.

I will have that done as I told you. *Will you be so kind as* to come in ? Yes, *I will.* I *should very much like* to have that house. I am very willing to grant you any thing you want.

RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

It will, first, be advisable for the learner to read over the "useful hints" laid down in the Syntax, (pages 3 and 4). He is next to study, and frequently to consult, the following remarks and rules. By means of the references† given, these rules will form a concise recapitu-

---

* With *vouloir* the verb *avoir* is usually understood. Ex.

Que voulez-vous ? du bœuf ou du mouton ? *Je voudrois* du mouton.
What do you please to have ? Beef or mutton ? I should like some mutton.

† The Index has been methodically arranged, so as to facilitate every reference.

lation of the most useful parts in the Syntax; they will, at the same time, exhibit a few grammatical peculiarities, and contain directions for the arranging of words in French composition.

377. The pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, ils, elles,* should never be separated from the verb; therefore such expressions* in English, as, *I who saw, &c., they, having had, &c.* never can be translated by *je qui vis, ils ayant eu, &c.* but by *moi, qui vis, eux ayant eu.* (See Nos. 82 and 100).

REFLECTIVE and NEUTER verbs take *être* in their compound tenses. (See Accidence, p. 63, and Syntax, No. 324.)

Remarks upon the Infinitive.

The INFINITIVE. (See Nos. 243 and 244, as well as Appendix.) It is also used

378. When speaking in an indefinite and general way.

Il faut faire sont devoir,—*We must do our duty.*

Il faut réfléchirt avant de parler,
You must reflect before you speak.

379. When two verbs, in English, are each governed by a pronoun in the same person, it is much better,‡ in order to avoid the repetition of the pronoun, to use the infinitive of the next verb. Therefore, instead of saying

---

* *I never am, we always write,* &c. that is, the adverb between the nominative and the verb, should be turned by, *I am always,* je suis toujours. (See Accidence, p. 102.)

† In opposition to the subjunctive, which requires *que* and the *nominative* to be expressed. Ex.

Il faut que nous fassions notre devoir.
Il faut que vous parliez avant que vous réfléchissiez.

‡ Generally speaking, the *Infinitive* is preferred, in French, whenever there can be no ambiguity as to the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of.

Je crois	que je dois..	*say*..	Je crois	*devoir*,	*I think I ought.*
tu	,, tu dois..	,, ..	tu crois	,,	*thou thinkest, thou, &c.*
il	,, il doit ..	,, ..	il croit	,,	*he thinks he, &c.*
&c.	&c.		&c.		

The infinitive often answers to the English gerund, and may be the nominative of a sentence. (See No. 380.)

380. The *infinitive*, by means of the elipsis, is used immediately after *que ? Comment ? Pourquoi* and any of the pronouns *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles.*

Que *faire* et que *dire* en pareil cas ?
What can one do or say in such a case ?

Comment se *tirer* d'un tels embarras ?
How is one to extricate oneself from such a dilemma ?

Comment ne pas se *révolter* d'entendre de tels propos !
How can one help being angry when hearing such language !

Pourquoi *dire* un mensonge ?—*Why tell a story ?*

Pourquoi ne pas dire la vérité ?—*Why not tell the truth ?*

Eux *commettre* un tel crime ! je ne veux pas le croire,
They, commit such a crime ! I will not believe it.

Remarks upon the Gerund.

GERUND. (See Nos. 245 and 246. See also Appendix.)

381. When the gerund, in English, is the nominative to the next verb, it is to be translated into French, by the present of the *Infinitive.*

Agir et *parler* comme il faut, sont les marques distinctives d'un honnête homme,
Acting and speaking properly constitute the true gentleman.

382. When used substantively, in English, it should be turned into a substantive, or an infinitive in French.

Drinking and gambling,
L'ivrognerie et le jeu.

Speaking and acting are two very different things,
Parler et *agir* sont deux choses bien différentes.

383. When the verb in English, is in the *present* or in the *future*, express the following *gerund* by the *present of the indicative*, preceded by *qui*, or by an *infinitive* in French.

I often see him playing in the garden.
Je le vois souvent qui joue dans le jardin.
Je le vois souvent jouer dans le jardin.

384. When the first tense is in the *passed*, express the gerund by the *imperfect*, or the *infinitive*.

I often saw him playing in the garden.
Je le voyois souvent *qui jouoit* dans le jardin.
Je le voyois souvent *jouer* dans le jardin.

385. With verbs indicating *joy, sorrow*, or *surprise*, we may either use the subjunctive with *que*. (See No. 277,) or the indicative with *de ce que*.

I am surprised you bought (or) *at your buying it.*
Je suis *surpris que* vous l'ayez acheté.
Je suis surpris *de ce que* vous l'avez acheté.

How to express BY.

386. *By*, after a comparative or a superlative, and *before* a noun of number or of quantity, is expressed, in French, by *de*.

He is taller by much, by two inches, by a head, &c.
Il est plus grand de beaucoup, de deux pouces, de la tête, &c.

387. *By the*, before a noun of measure, are expressed in French, by *au, à la, aux*.

To sell or buy any thing by the pint, by the pound, &c.
Acheter ou vendre quelque chose à la pinte, à la livre, &c.

388. The English article *a*, is expressed by *par*, in French, when meaning *each, per*, before a noun denoting a division of time.

Twice a day, a week, a month, a quarter, a year.
Deux fois *par* jour, *par* semaine, *par* mois, *par* quartier, *par* an.

We also say: *deux fois, la semaine, l'an.*

389. When speaking of the day of the month, we say, *le premier ;* but we say, *le deux, le trois, le quatre, le cinq, &c.*

ORDER OF WORDS.

The order in which words are placed in sentences is nearly the same in French as in English ; that is, we place

1st. The NOMINATIVE, { which may be a noun or a pronoun, with its *article* and *adjective*, if there be any.

2nd. The VERB,..... with its *pronoun* and *adverb*, if there be any.

3rd. The ACCUSATIVE, { which is represented and accompanied by the same parts of speech as the nominative.

The *Prepositions* and *Conjunctions* come in to connect the different parts of speech together.

Here follow the formulæ of the usual order, in French.

THE NOMINATIVE.			THE VERB.	
1	2	3	4	5
Article.	*Substantive.*	*Adjective.*	*Verb.*	*Adverb.*
l'	homme	vertueux	pense	sagement ;
the	*man*	*virtuous*	*thinks*	*wisely ;*

THE NOMINATIVE.	THE VERB.	THE ACCUSATIVE.
1	2	3
Pronoun.	*Verb and Adverb.*	*Substantive and Pronoun.*
Il	aime tendrement	ses enfans,
He	*loves tenderly*	*his children.*

Conj.	*nominative.*	*verb.*	*accusative.*	*preposition.*	*substantive & pron.*
et	il	fait	du bien	à	ses semblables,
and	*he*	*does*	*some good*	*to*	*his fellow creatures.*

To the preceding general rules for placing words, we shall add some exceptions, which may be classed under the three following titles :

Repetition of words,—Leaving out words or ellipsis,—Transposition of words.

OF REPETITION OF WORDS.

ARTICLES *(le, la, les,* and *un,)* are repeated before every noun to which they refer. (See No. 13.)

L'homme, la femme et les animaux sont mortels,
Man, woman and animals are mortal.

Du, de | la, des and *au, aux* are also repeated.

PRONOUNS are repeated.

Personal.

je, tu, il, nous, vous, ils, me, te, le, lui, nous, vous, les, leur, y, en,	} See No. 83.
moi, toi, lui, nous, vous, eux, ...	Nos. 82 and 84.

Possessive.

Mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur.

Relative.

Qui, que, dont, quel, quoi, où.

Demonstrative.

Ce, cet, ces.

PREPOSITIONS are repeated.

à, de, pour, avec, sans, envers, &c.

CONJUNCTIONS are repeated.

Que, ou, soit, si, et, &c.

390. In the *pathetic* style, in order to give more force, we begin with the pronoun, and put the noun afterwards.

Elle vient à vous *cette digne mère,*
Behold that kind mother coming to you.

In INTERROGATIONS. (No. 305.)

Votre père viendra-t-*il*.

OF WORDS TO BE LEFT OUT.

The article *(le, la, les* and *un,)* left out. (See the whole of the cases, pages 5 and 11, beginning at Nos. 14 and 46.)

With the *infinitive.* (See No. 379.)

With *qui* for *à celui qui,* &c. (See Note to No. 152.)

Parlez *à qui* vous voudrez,—*Speak to whomever you please.*

391. With *qui* meaning *appartenir.*

A qui ce chapeau ?—*Whose hat is that ?*

392. The *Participle* is often used in French at the beginning of a sentence, the auxiliary, *étant,* being understood.

Arrivé chez moi, je me mis à écrire,
Being arrived at home, I set about writing.

393. With the *subjunctive, que* is sometimes left out.

Fasse* le ciel que cela arrive,
Please Heaven that may happen.

394 With *quoique*† the verb *être* is often left out.

Quoique fatigué, je me préparai à partir,
Although tired, I prepared to set off.

395. With *oser, cesser, pouvoir,* the negation *pas* is left out. (See No. 350.)

OF TRANSPOSITION.

With NOUNS. (See No. 59.)

Une porte *de* fer,—*An iron gate.*
Poudre *à* canon,—*Gunpowder.*

---

* Understood : *Je désire beaucoup que.*
† But not with *quand* nor *si,* as in English with *when* and *if.*

Most ADJECTIVES follow their corresponding substantives. No. 66.

Un homme bienfaisant, une femme généreuse,
A beneficent man, a generous woman.

With ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION. (See No. 68.)

Un homme *de* six pieds *de* hauteur,
Un homme haut de six pieds,
A man six feet high.

With CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS, such as, *me, te, se, le, lui, nous, vous, leur.* (See Accidence, p. 10, and Syntax, No. 98, with regard to respective places, and 85, 86, 87, 88, with regard to their use.)

Il me voit,—*He sees me.*
Je lui parle,—*I speak to him.*

With *y* and *en* (No. 98, with regard to their places, and Nos. 91, 92, 93—95, 96, 97, with regard to their use and significations.)

J'y suis enclin,—*I am inclined to it.*
J'en suis content,—*I am pleased with it.*

With the IMPERATIVE. (See No. 99, second exception.)

Parlez-moi,—*Speak to me.*
Envoyez-m'en,—*Send me some.*
Ne m'en envoyez pas,—*Do not send me any.*

The *article* used instead of the *possessivepronoun* before the noun of the body. (See from 108—110.)

Il me coupe le bras.

With DONT. (See Nos. 131, 132, 133 and 134.)

La personne dont j'élève l'enfant,
The person whose child I bring up.

With ON. (See No. 160.)

On bâtit un grand nombre de vaisseaux,
A great number of ships are being built.

With QUELQUE..QUE, *however.* (See Nos. 163, 164, & 165.)

Quelque bonnes que soient vos sœurs,
However good your sisters may be.

Quelques richesses que vous ayez,
Whatever riches you may have.

Quelles que soient vos richesses,
Whatever may be your riches.

With *tel,* (see No. 192.)

Un tel homme,—*such a man.*

396. With *si,* we place *un* before *si.*

Un si grand homme,—*So great a man.*

With *tout,* (see No. 204.)

Tout riche qu'il est,—*Rich as he is.*

With *assez,* (see note† to No. 36.)

Assez de livres,—*Books enough.*

With *il y a,* (see No. 326.)

Il y a trois jours que je suis* ici,
I have been here these three days.

Il y a deux ans que je ne vous ai vu.
I have not seen you these two years.

397. With *combien.*

Combien d'enfans avez-vous ? *or,* combien avez d'enfans ?
How many children have you ?

398. With *aussi, peut-être,* and *à peine,* we frequently, for the sake of elegance, place the pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles,* after the verb, without indicating any interrogation. Ex.

---

* On reading this article, in the Syntax, let the learner recollect to pay attention to the difference of tenses in English and in French.

On nous fit bon accueil; aussi *avions-nous* de fortes recommendations,
We met with a kind reception; I must say we had strong recommendations.

Il ne faut pas gronder, *peut-être* ne sait-il pas que nous sommes arrivés,
You must not scold, perhaps he is not aware that we are arrived.

A peine le soleil *étoit-il* levé,
The sun was hardly risen.

ADVERBS mostly come immediately *after* the verb, or between the auxiliary and the principle. (See Accidence, p 102, and Syn. Nos. 363, &c.

Je vois toujours,
I always see.

Il aime tendrement son ami,
He loves his friend tenderly.

J'ai toujours étudié,
I have always studied.

399. *Adverbs* of *time*, such as *aujourd'hui, hier, demain, quelquefois, Lundi,* &c. may be placed either *before* or *after* the verb. It is generally better to put them as near the beginning of the sentence as possible.

Aujourd'hui je verrai votre père,
I shall see your father to-day.

By the same reason as Adjectives, in French, come *after* their substantives, so will the following sentences differ from the English.

With *plus* and *moins* repeated, (Nos. 78 and 79.)

Plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte,
The longer the day is, the shorter the night.

400. In *exclamations* with *comme, que, combien,* &c.

Comme je suis fatigué?—*How tired I am!*
Que (or) comme il lit bien!—*How well he reads!*
Quelle (or) comme elle est jolie!—*How pretty she is!*

401. With *tant,* by way of reflection upon what has been said. Ex.

Tant il est vrai que, &c.—*So true it is that, &c.*

402. It most generally requires the member of the sentence to go last.

A notre arrivée, nous vimes des arbres déracinés, des débris de chaumières abattues et des animaux noyés ; *tant* les pluies, et l'orage,* avoient inondé et ravagé la contrée !

The constant rain, and tempest had caused such inundations and havoc in the country, that, on our arrival, we beheld trees rooted up, the wrecks of cottages pulled down, and cattle that were drowned.

In Interrogations, (see No. 305.)

Votre père est-il venu ?

But with expressions as *quand, comment, où, quoi,* &c. the nominative may go last.*

403. When a sentence is composed of two or more phrases, harmony and perspicuity generally require the shortest to go first, and so on.

Elle prend plaisir[1] à orner | votre chambre[2] | des plus belles fleurs du jardin[3],

She takes delight in ornamenting your room with the finest flowers in the garden.

Elle prend plaisir[1] à orner | des plus belles fleurs du jardin[3], | votre chambre[2], votre cabinet, et tous les lieux où vous reposez,

She takes delight in adorning your room, your study, and every spot in which you rest, with the finest flowers in the garden.

By the same reason, with a verb followed by a noun in the dative and one in the accusative, we place the one in the accusative before the other.† (See No. 226.)

Je donne un livre à votre frère.

---

* Unless the verb be followed by an accusative : Ex.

Quand votre père écrira-*t-il sa lettre ?* and not, *Quand écrira votre père sa lettre ?*

† Unless the noun in the accusative is described by something coming after. Ex.

J'ai donné à votre frère le plus beau livre de ma bibliothèque.

404. When *faire, laisser, voir, entendre, mener, sentir,* are followed by a neuter* verb, that neuter verb (in the *infinitive* active) is placed immediately after the above verbs.

Faites entrer monsieur,
Ask that gentleman to come in.

Laissons parler cet enfant,
Let us allow this child to speak.

405. Upon the same principle, that is, putting the shortest member first, the NOMINATIVE,† in French, is often placed *after* the verb. (See No. 346.)

Là se reposoit son père,
There his father often reposed.

Bientôt accourut à notre secours une troupe de soldats disciplinés,
Soon a troop of disciplined soldiers ran to our assistance.

---

* If any of the above verbs be followed by an active verb, turn the next verb into the indicative. (See No. 382.)
And if the second verb be followed by an accusative, put that accusative first, and the other noun, accompanied with à, after. Ex.

1 2 3
Faites chanter | une chanson | à mademoiselle,
Ask that young lady to sing a song.

† The *accusative,* in French, cannot, with the same facility as in English, be placed *before* the verb. (See Appendix.) Ex.

What he would have done in other circumstances, I cannot take upon myself to say,
Je ne puis prendre sur moi de dire ce qu'il auroit fait en d'autres circonstances.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

ON THE ARTICLES.

The numbers between parentheses refer to those affixed to each rule in the Syntax.

(2.) Is French more difficult to learn than English? (15.) George the Fourth, the eldest (16.) son of George the Third, was crowned in the year 1820. Charles the Fifth gave up his throne to Philip the Second. If you wish to learn to speak (21.) French, you must not lose an opportunity of speaking it. (8.) Are you acquainted with Lord B? Why do you not write to Captain W? The same articles which are sold by the pint in London, are sold by the pound in the country. (10.) How much is this ribbon a yard? My master comes twice a (387.) week; he charges me half a guinea a lesson. What do you pay him a month? I pay him so much per quarter. I cannot travel without (22) money. Without (11.) gold or silver, men must have had recourse to some other medium to serveas an exchange for services, for talents, and for produce. I have some (27.) bread, but I have no (36.) meat. The face of man is the book in which you may read and learn what takes place in his mind. I was very much astonished at seeing a man's face appear all of a sudden. We went to see a gentleman who is studying Phrenology, and he shewed us men's and women's heads, monkeys', elephants', horses', &c.

They have bought many different works, among which were some entitled, one, "A (50.) History of France," another, "A Treatise upon the Human Mind;" and a great many others, the names of which I cannot remember. As a (47.) member of that society, you should endeavour to support it. He speaks like a Foreigner. Mr. B., a (48.) merchant, has endeavoured to settle all accounts. As an (47.) Englishman, it is very natural you should think as you do. Is he known as a painter or as a sculptor? What a (51.) charming spot, and what beautiful gardens!

ON SUBSTANTIVES.

(56.) Have you been to Mrs. A.'s concert? (57.) Is Mrs. B.'s house as good as Mrs. D.'s? Let us go to my friend Wilson's. (58.)

St. Paul's is not so magnificent as St. Peter's. Your violin is very good; but your friend's is better still. (27.) Is that gold or silver? It is silver. Is that medal gold or silver? (31. and 59.) It is silver. We have bought brass and silver candlesticks, steel snuffers, and plated stands. (59.) Were the snuffers with a spring? Did you also buy table spoons, desert spoons, and tea spoons? Yes; we also bought china tea-cups. Bring the silver branched-candlesticks. Are those marble or stone pillars? What shall you have for dinner? (61.) A meat pie and an apple tart. I am very fond of milk-rice. Do you not like plum-pudding? We shall have a calf's head, a shoulder of mutton, and a pigeon pie. Where is your bed-room?* (62.) The long-ear'd animal came forward.

ON ADJECTIVES.

Have his boots and shoes been cleaned? † The room was swept, and the furniture well rubbed. Is that music pretty? (63.) That violin and that flute are very good. (65.) He makes his sisters happy. (64.) You make your brothers and sisters miserable. A tall young man. A large, powerful man. (66.) That is a very stout woman. She is a fine, clever, well behaved woman. Have they blue or black eyes? (110.) We have bought a large round table, and a small square chest of drawers. You were talking to a very pretty young lady.

How tall is your brother? (69.) He is five feet, ten inches. Is that window four feet wide? No, it is only three and a half. (68.) I saw the other day a tree, three feet in diameter. That well is four and twenty feet in circumference. (386.) By how much is your boy grown lately? By three inches, at least. He is stronger than he was, by much. How much have you in your purse? I have only three shillings. I shall have more than (74.) a guinea. How old are you? I am a twelvemonth older than you. That ditch is more than twenty feet long, and less than three feet broad. The most ambitious (77.) men are generally the most unhappy. Who is reckoned the most

---

* *Turn*: room to lay.

† Participles with *être* follow the same rule as adjectives No. 247.

learned man in the University? He is not the cleverest in the class, but he is the most studious. The more we learn, the more we wish to learn, and the more also we perceive* we have to learn. The older (79.) wine is, the better it is. The more difficult a thing is, the more merit there is in accomplishing† it. Your father has bad health, but he is not the less (81.) agreeable in company; he seems, on the contrary, to be so much the more (80.) content and cheerful, as he has the less cause to be so.

ON PRONOUNS.

(82.) He alone is capable of doing such a thing. You will read, and I will write. Do not give this ring to him, give it to her.‡ First speak to me, then to him, then to her, and afterwards to them. You and I (84.) understood what they meant. You and they may go and take a walk. (87.) Are you tired? Yes, I am. Are they guilty? Yes they are. Are you Mr. B.'s daughter? Yes, I am. You have not done what I told you. I beg your pardon, I have. (88.) Is he as ill as he was? I do not think he is. (87.) Play him a piece of music. Do not tell her what you have heard. Tell them every thing you have heard. (104.) Think of me. I am speaking of thee. If you have any paper, give us some, (95.) for we have none. How many horses have they? They have five; (66.) but they find they have too many, and, therefore, they mean to sell two. This fine piece of furniture is broken; have§ it mended, have‖ a new leg put to it. Are you going to your father's? Yes, I am. (303.) Will you go with me to my uncle's house? No, I am just (288.) come from there. He is very fond of mathematics, and he applies very closely¶ to them. (91.) We are going to Hackney. Do any of your friends live there?

---

* See repetition of words. The conjunction *that* is here understood, but expressed in French by *que*.

† *Venir à bout de.*

‡ Use the disjunc. page 38.

§ Turn: *make it to mend.*

‖ When *have* means *to cause to*, translate it by *faire.*

¶ Turn: *with assiduity.*

(93.) Yes, my father does. (303.) Have you the parcel I was speaking of? Yes, I have. Well, give it me, (99.) for I wish to send it (98.) to your cousin. No, I cannot give it to you, I will give it to him myself. Why did you not send it to him before? (160.) Because it had not been sent to me. Why are you astonished (231.) at receiving (244.) a letter? Because I did not expect it. (91.) Look at me. (99.) Do not look at me. Dress your hair.* Do not dress your hair. Send it me. Do not send me any. I give myself up to thee. (103.) He applies to us. Whom were you thinking of? I was thinking of you. (104.) Come to us, run, make haste.

There is a stool, sit upon it. (107.) Before the play. Before you. The play will begin at seven o'clock, but I shall see you before. Is he out of the house? When I came, he was out. Do not put my hat upon the table; put it under. I have not books enough; I should like to have more.

(108.) Has he trod upon your feet? I am afraid you have hurt your finger. Take her hand, and lead her into the drawing room. He has put out his wrist. (109.) Have you wiped your hands? Shut your eyes. (110.) Open your mouth. They came in with their eyes cast down. Their heads were chopped off. He broke one of his teeth. Take care, you will put his eye out. Is that diamond yours? (113.) It is not mine, but it is my mother's. Of all these jewels, which is yours? Here is mine, and there is my mother's. Whose carriage is that? It is the Duke of C.'s. It is not so handsome as the Countess of B.'s. One ought to look sharp after† one's property. (115.) I like the house itself, but not its situation. We like that house, its appearance, and its situation. How much do you mean to sell that picture of yours for? (118.) There is a friend of mine in the hall who wishes to speak to me. (119.) Sir, how is your mother and sister? (120.) Cousin, come and speak to me. Brother, somebody wants you. (121.) The man who accuses you is the one you ought to fear. (122.) The ladies with whom we were walking. (123.) I like that knife, the handle (117) is very well finished, and the blades are of good steel. Whom have you seen? Whom has he beaten?

---

* *Se coiffer.* † *Veiller.*

Whom were they playing with? (124.) The houses which (121.) belong to you, and those which (126.) you have built, are delightful. (129.) What do you think of that man? (138.) What exploits has he performed? Have you read the book he uses?* (336.) You are indebted to your father and mother for the health and fortune (130.) you enjoy. (228.) Here comes the artist whose (130.) picture pleased you so much. Is that (307.) the artist whose (132.) picture I have bought? There is the artist for whose (133.) picture you have given a hundred guineas. I was speaking with the artist whose picture you had framed.† The reasons on the strength of which I rely, will, I hope, persuade the man whose obstinacy has hitherto caused your misfortunes. Where is the man whose goods I have bought? Where can you find any one upon whose honesty one may depend? Do not touch the penknife with which (135.) I make my pens. Let me look at the silk and fur you gave so much for. You saw so many beautiful earrings and jewels in that shop, that you did not know which (135.) to choose. Of all these ladies, which (137.) are you going to apply to? With which will you dance? What (138.) music do you mean to play? I have brought songs, and different pieces; I will sing or play whichever (150.) you like best. To which (138.) instrument do you give the preference? Whose ‡ composition are you most pleased with? (133.) Whose voice is that I hear? For whose sake did you run the risk of your life. You see those books and those instruments; well, they are my greatest amusement. Can that be what (141.) you take most pleasure in! What do you sew this cambrick with? This is what I work with. (140.) What are you busy about? This is what I am busy about. Where is the drawer in which you have put my papers. Yonder is the spot in which you were born. To get there, where have you to go through? Through two villages. Whose § book is that? Whose houses are those? He does not care

---

* Pronouns are never left out.

† *Faire mettre un cadre à.*

‡ *Turn*, which is the author whose composition pleases you most? (or) of whom do you like best the composition.

§ *Turn*, to whom that book? (or) to whom is that book?

whose property he spoils.* Where do you come from? What places shall you go through?

Do you see that (146.) bird? Will you buy those chairs? Is not that woman the one (150.) with whom you were conversing. Take this (147.) and give me that. What will you do with that? What did you give for this? There are some chairs, take this (148.) and give me that. No, this is broken, and that is not dusted. Is that Mr. B.'s garden? No, it is Mr. C.'s. (149.) Your writing is not so good as your brother's. He who (150.) says so, does not tell the truth. She, whom you saw the other day, is come to settle with you about that affair. Do not give me this pen, † give me that and take the one I offered you at first. That house is pretty; but the one I was speaking of, and in which I now live, is much finer. These guns seem very good; but those for which you gave so much money are better still. (152.) They are truly miserable who find no pleasure in hearing of other people's success.

I know what (153.) pleases you. We do not know what you mean. Do you know what I am speaking of? Have I told you what I want, and what I am fit for?

Whom (123.) are you looking for? What were you looking for? Whom did you apply to?

We (158.) like those that flatter us. What do they say about the news? (160.) There has been no news received at the Admiralty. Some one wants to speak to you. A dinner was got ready for you. No one knows of your arrival. (163.) However clever they may be! Whatever (164.) books you may read, you will never acquire knowledge if you do not reflect on what you read. (165.) Whatever your acquaintances may be, I shall never have confidence in you. They correspond, and always speak well of each other. Apply to either, (179.) you will not receive a satisfactory answer. They depend on each other. They cannot do ‡ without one another.

I cannot rely upon either. Did you ever see any body (186.) so

---

* *Turn*, Little matters to him to whom belongs that property, he spoils it; (or) he spoils that property, no matter to whom it is.

† See Accidence, p. 15, Note †. ‡ *Se passer de.*

well informed? There were several ladies in the room; but none that were handsome. He shewed me several pieces of furniture; but none suitable. Nobody has a right to speak on such an occasion. We have not seen anything (190.) agreeable. There is nothing well done in this picture. Had you ever seen such * a good man. She has bought such an elegant ribbon! Such (193.) an artist as he ought not to suffer himself to be led away by mere fashion. (196.) All his goods are sold. The whole (197.) army was for the King. All the Nations in Europe are now at peace. (198.) Whatever is, is right. Every man should first think of doing his duty. This stuff is quite different from what I shewed you. I know the two brothers, and I do business with both. Your sisters were quite (203,) altered (in their appearance;) they looked quite ill. (204.) Convenient as these tables are, they will not suit me. Agreeable as those ladies are, they do not please. Extensive as these gardens are, yet they contain no fruit tree. She has never complained of any body whatever. (205.) Whoever says so is wrong. He would not expose himself for any thing whatever.

ON THE VERBS.

The nobility in most countries have it † in their power to do a great deal of good and evil. The people are (212.) dissatisfied with the decision of Parliament; they have been very riotous, and have set the magistrates at defiance.

There is a great deal to (217.) do in that house; there are several rooms to be ‡ cleaned, the furniture to be dusted and rubbed, and every thing to be put in order, the cooking to be done, and the children to be taken care of. You are very kind, to (218.) have answered my letter so soon. We thank your friends for (230.) having spoken in our favor. What a painful reflection it is to (218.) have been the cause of the misery of an innocent person. He always reads as he walks. (220.) By speaking ill of others, you give a bad opinion of yourself.

---

* *Turn*, a so good man.
† Turn: *Il est au pouvoir de la noblesse, &c.*
‡ Use the active voice.

You will make this cup of tea very nice, by adding some sugar and milk to it. This bottle was filled with (229.) wine. This decanter was filled by (222.) the servant. The cask was filled with (223.) a funnel. The forest is inhabited by robbers. We were surrounded with robbers. That poor old man was put in prison with two highway robbers. You do not behave to (241.) those people with all the kindness which they deserve. Be good and polite to them, and they will be so to you.

True wisdom consists in (224.) being resigned to the bad, and satisfied with the good that may fall to our share. He spends his money in trifles. What are you thinking of? 225. Your master has taken a port-folio from (226.) your brother; ask him for it, for he will not return it to him. Are (346.) they allowed (227.) to write home as often as they choose? He was promised to have the situation which he so much wished for. The child will hurt himself with that hammer; take it away from (226.) him. Tell her (227.) to make haste! Forgive them their offences, for they sincerely repent. Have you ordered them to attack the place? He refused to answer their letter. Has he promised her to come and see her? We have, for a long time, enjoyed (228.) good health. A child depends upon (228.) his parents. You may depend upon (236.) what I say. We may use, (or) make use of, his name. What are you charged with? (229.) With theft. What! with having robbed your master! Had you threatened him with sending for his guardian? You should not blame him for (229.) writing. I shall never cease to be grateful for (231.) the services you have done me. Do not forget to take what belongs to you. It is time to (232.) set off. It is time for you to set off. How is it possible for him to understand you? It is pleasant for her to know that you are in good health. Is it not an unpleasant thing for your father to be obliged to scold you? Have they the audacity to speak so? Are you in the habit of speaking in public? I hope I shall have the good luck to arrive before he leaves the house. Will that sum be sufficient to (234.) buy what you want? There are too many ornaments in her dress, to please me. I do not think that country abounds in (235.) fruit. He is an honest man; you may rely on what he says to you. People, in general, had rather remain in ignorance, than expose themselves by asking an explanation of what they do not understand. Do you deny (237.)

having broken that bottle? He hopes (237.) soon to see his friends. Do you think you are right or wrong? We ought all to do our duty. They come to wish you good bye. Had they sent for their luggage?

He is not fit (238.) for that situation. Is this shawl like the one you bought the other day? Do not disturb them, they are busy writing. You will be very much pleased with (240.) his way of doing business, for he is exact and precise in (239.) every thing. You must not deal with him, for he is not exact in paying his bills. Be prompt in doing whatever you are bid. Being gifted with an (240.) excellent memory, he makes very little use of his understanding. They were all charmed with his genteel manners. He is mad after every new discovery. You may throw that away; it is good for nothing. You should always be very attentive to (241.) elderly people. Are not the audience *tired of* having the same thing *over again?**

What (242.) is more pleasant than *being* † in the country, and enjoying the fresh air? Have they meat and bread enough? There was nothing good in what they brought. What a number of people there was at the concert.

Can you dictate and write (246.) at the same time? Do you wish you could (243.) speak that language? He does not speak well, but he can make himself understood. (243.) We had the pleasure of seeing them.

Is that table broken? (247.) Have you broken (251.) that table? The table you have broken (249.) was very valuable. The goods have been valued at so much; but they have not fetched more than half of that. I have seen (250.) your mother to-day, and walked with her a little way; she told me she was engaged to dine with some ladies I knew. How was the new play acted? ‡ I understand she has broken † her arm. No, she did not break § her arm, but she hurt herself

---

* *Encore.*

† It will be seen farther on, that when the gerund, in English, is, or may be considered as, the nominative to the verb, the *Infinitive* ought to be used in French.

‡ Use the compound of the present. No. 270.

§ See note to No. 253.

very much. All the songs I have heard that young lady sing (252.) are very beautiful. The house they have begun to build will cost a great deal of money; but the one we pulled down was preferable. What was he doing (260.) when I came in? He was doing his sums. I told him he was to learn his latin lessons. We met (270.) Mr. C., and we told (269.) him you were (268.) gone to his house. When we were (261.) young and at school, we did not know the value of what they endeavoured to teach us; we did not pay attention to our lessons; but now, feeling the necessity of being well informed, we strive, though late in life, to make up for past time. When I call you, (272.) you shall come. Remain there as long as you like. If you will (273.) do that, you will oblige me. He disturbs me very much; I wish him to go. (277.) We will (291.) have you do (277.) this exercise. I am afraid he is ill. They do not think you are (280.) strong enough to lift up that burden. What they have given us is very difficult, but we must (278.) do it, and that as fast as we can. Although you have (279.) not been in France, you speak French remarkably well. He always retires before every body else, without being (160.) perceived. Did he retire last night without being perceived?

When we went in he was in the act of setting (287.) the house on fire. Hand me that dictionary, and I will (289.) shew you the word, the meaning of which (132.) you do not understand. Where are you to go to-morrow? I believe I am to go in the country. Will you go with us? Yes, we will. (303.) Do you understand Italian? Yes, I do. If I had known you were here, I could have (301.) come to see you. You should not have (300.) answered him as you did. (270.)

Is your relation returned from the country? (305.) Why did Cato put an end to his existence? What * are your workmen about? Where is your wife gone to? Is it (306.) your master or your father who gave you leave? Are those the flowers you admired so much? You are not tired, are you? (308.) She was very well, was she not? (309.) They will not believe you have been wounded. Is it not the case? (310.) How long have you been here? We had not

* See the observation annexed to No. 305.

seen her the whole day. How long (315.) do they intend to stay where they are? Do you know how long the vacation will last?

You are not ill, are you? How many (318.) masters are there (289.) to be? How much have you done? How much have you given for what you have bought? (319.)

How are those baskets made? (323.) My shoes and clothes begin to wear. *There happened to be** a great many gentlemen of my acquaintance who began to quarrel.

He had remained (324.) a twelvemonth in his last situation. How far (329.) is it from London to York? As soon as he came (270.) I went down. He would have (324.) died if we had not come to his assistance. For how long (315.) are you going to Brighton? They have now studied latin for (326.) many years, and you see how little they know. We are going to Cambridge for three days. We were at Oxford for a week. How far is it from Edinburgh to London? What is it o'clock? It is (332.) three. Some (334.) hearts are total strangers to sensibility. Have you seen what he has written? Yes, it is (341.) very well done. Have you seen his writing? Yes, it is (339.) very good. Have you seen my cousin? Yes. What do you think of her? She is very handsome, but, at the same time, she is that kind of person who would not please many people. You must (342.) not make a fire here. I do not care where I make it, provided I have one. Many strange events have taken place (346.) since your departure. Two or three persons came for you during your absence. You are not allowed to speak loud. How many guineas have you remaining?

ON NEGATIONS AND ADVERBS.

Unless (348.) you study very closely, you will never succeed. We had better go immediately, for fear he should come. I know no one but what (349.) would have been moved by so touching a description. By† hearing him speak you would think there was nothing but what he

---

* *Il y eut par hazard.*
† *A l'entendre parler.*

knew. I dare (350.) not speak to her. We cannot do what you require. Will you sing, or not? How does he sing? Not very well. (359.) I never go to the opera: not that (361.) I do not like it, but because I have not time. When I was (270.) there last, two of the performers sang (270.) very well, (363.) but all the rest sang quite out of tune. (365.) He does not speak English well, does he? He speaks French better. I slept (270.) pretty well last night.

ON CONJUNCTIONS.

Since (366.) you are happy, why do you wish to change your condition? Although (367.) you are well to-day, you may be ill to-morrow. You never can joke without his being offended. According as you behave, so you will be treated. I tell you of it beforehand, that you may not attach the blame to any one else but yourself.

ON IDIOMS, ORDER OF WORDS, &c.

What is the matter? (368.) Why do you make such a noise? He complains of being cold about his hands and feet. (369.) Let those that are hungry and thirsty, eat and drink. Was she not ashamed of having behaved so imprudently? Are you not sixty or seventy years of age? I am only fifty-eight. What ails you? (370.) What do you complain of? I feel pains all over me. What is the matter with him? He has a shivering, that comes on every hour. What weather is it to-day? (371.) Is it warm or cold? It is neither warm nor cold; it is very pleasant. Yesterday the sun was scorching. Is it wet or dry out of doors? It is not (wet over head;)* but the streets are very dirty. We got up when it was day-light. Where I live it begins, at this time of the year, to be dark at eight o'clock. We will set (373.) to work as soon as it is candle-light. Soon after they had received your

---

* Turn: *It does not rain.*

letter, they set about answering it. I have the head-ache, (372.) from having set up* too late. You seem as if you had † a sore throat; be careful, therefore, to avoid being in a draught. His eyes are sore, they are too weak to be exposed to the light. Ever since he fell off his horse, he has felt violent pains in all his limbs. How are (374.) your father and mother? They are pretty well; but my sister has not been well for a long time, and I am afraid she will never get better. We have just written to the doctor, for the child is very ill. Your clerk had just (375.) called when you came. If you should happen to be in want, pray let us know: we will do every thing in our power to relieve you. Before (377.) we embark in any enterprise we ought to be furnished with sufficient means to carry it on. My friend, we must obey, we have no other resource.

I do not think I (378.) am so strong as you, but I think I am more patient; and *that is what makes me* * bear pain better. (363.) We are afraid we have disturbed you. Are you sorry you have bought this watch? What am I (379.) to do now, I have lost my only support! Well, why not tell him at once it is out of your power to perform what you have promised. Striking (380.) an enemy while he is down, and asks for mercy, detects a cowardly and cruel mind. Whenever I pass by, I hear him play on the violin. They looked out of the window, and they saw us walking together, *arm in arm*.§ If, by chance, she happened to go into the school-room, she always saw the young ladies playing instead of studying. We were all astonished at (384.) your speaking the language so well. How do they sell gooseberries— (386.) by the pint or by the pound? By the pint. What are your master's terms? Ten guineas a quarter; (387.) he comes twice a week. That servant came to us on the first of last month: she *was taken* ‖ ill on the second, and died on the tenth, (388.) in spite of all the care and attendance she had.

---

* Turn, *from having gone to bed too late.*
† Turn, *you seem to have.*
‡ *Voilà ce qui fait que je, &c.*
§ *Bras dessus bras dessous.*
‖ *Tomber malade.*

Methinks I perceive * that man who took such care of our infancy. Oh! behold the venerable old man comes (390.) now to us with his usual smile. *Being so much fatigued,* † we could not attend to duties and ceremonies. Whose (391.) luggage is that? The sun had hardly *risen,* when the enemy made their appearance. He met with the greatest success in London; *it is to be said,* ‡ he had friends of the first respectability. Perhaps he is ill, we must not be astonished at (384.) his not coming. How (400.) vexed (384.) we are we did not know of his arrival! How very large this box is! How well Mr. B. speaks Italian! How lightly her fingers run over the instrument! So pleased was I (401.) with her performance, that I made a point of being at her concert. Incomparable reverses of fortune have so (402.) worn him down, that he (376.) who § formerly braved the fiercest enemy, now shrinks from the least danger or difficulty. He has employed skilful workmen (403.) to do his work. He has employed the most skilful, and most respectable workmen to do this work.

He adorned the table with fruits and flowers. He adorned the table, the mantle-piece, and the *marble slabs*‖ with fruits and flowers. Have you given (226) your brother the money? Have you given¶ your brother the money which you owed him? Have** your carriage (404.) mended. Let him have his pen-knife sharpened. Why do you not get your pen made? We see a great number of people coming this way. When you are at your window, can you see people go by? Now, I hear the mail coming. Where I live, I can always see the mail coming. We cannot understand, or even guess, what all these people mean.

When you intend to translate English into French, you should, (294.) first, read the whole of the sentence, and before you write

---

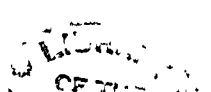
* Turn. *It seems to me to perceive him, that man, &c.* No. 390.
† Turn. *Fatigued as we were so,* No. 392.
‡ *Aussi,* No. 398.
§ Begin the sentence with *lui, qui, &c.*
‖ *Console.*
¶ Page 162, Note †.
** *Faites.*

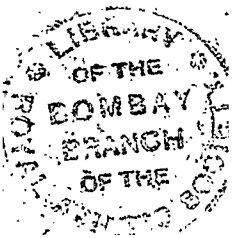
(down)* a (single)* word, translate each phrase *in your mind.*† When the sentence is written down, read it over, that you may see if you have made all the declinable parts of speech (404.) agree. Then you may (296.) endeavour to give it the clearness and smoothness which the French language requires, and of which you may obtain a notion *by* ‡ consulting the rules on "Order of Words." A frequent repetition of this exercise, § will, ‖ more than any thing else, assist you in writing and speaking French correctly. With regard to niceties of language and elegance of style, we must refer you to the APPENDIX, *which is intended* ¶ to prepare the learner** for French composition.

---

* The words between parentheses to be omitted.
† *En vous même.*
‡ *En.*
§ Turn. *This exercise often repeated.*
‖ *Will assist* must come together, *(contribuera, plus que tout autre à vous faire écrire,* &c.)
¶ *Dont le but est,* &c.
** *Pour composer en François.*

THE END.





ERRATA.

No. 132, *for* have brought up, *read* bring up.
No. 133, *for* gave lessons, *read* give lessons.

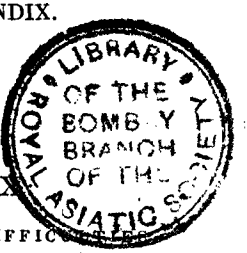
LONDON:
Printed by Anne Maurice, Fenchurch-street.

A

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

DIVIDED INTO FOUR PARTS:

THE PRONUNCIATION, THE ACCIDENCE, THE SYNTAX, AND THE APPENDIX.



PART IV.

APPENDIX

OR, DICTIONARY OF DIFFIC[illegible]

BY P. F. MERLET,

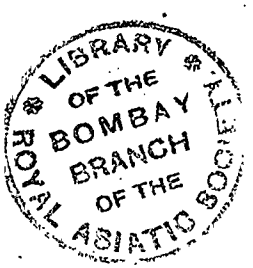
TEACHER OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE TO THE LONDON UNIVERSITY.

J. M. RICHARDSON, 23, CORNHILL;

AND J. TAYLOR, No. 30, UPPER GOWER STREET, BEDFORD SQUARE.

1829.

LONDON:
Printed by Anne Maurice, Fenchurch-street.



ADVERTISEMENT.

THOSE difficulties of the French language which do not strictly form a part of the most necessary rules of Syntax, have been placed here *alphabetically*, for the purpose of being used by way of reference. This portion of the work may be considered as complete in itself, and may, therefore, as well as the *Pronunciation*, the *Accidence*, and the *Syntax*, be had separately; or the four works may be had in one volume, forming a complete French Grammar.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Adjectives	1
Of the formation of Adjectives	ibid.
Of the agreement of Adjectives	2
Of the placing of Adjectives	3
An alphabetical list of Adjectives, in which the meaning of each is explained, according as they are placed either *before* or *after* the Substantive ..	4
Adverbial Expressions	15
Article	21
Ce	22
Concord	25
Conditional	26
Conjunctions (list of,) Prepositions, &c.	ibid.
En	34
English Expressions (or) Anglicisms	35
Future, (the)	36
Gender, (a list, &c.)	ibid.
Government of Verbs, &c. (a list of)	39
Idioms, (selection of)	58

Page.

Peculiar Expressions, Idioms, and Proverbs, (an alphabetical list) 63

A list of Verbs attended by a Noun without Article, form-an idiom 82

Imperfect and Preterite 88

Infinitive .. .. ibid.

Ne 92

Niceties or difficulties 93

Orthography 95

Participle, (Present) 97

Participle, (Past) 98

Prepositions (French) 100

Prepositions (English) 111

Que 122

Reflective Verbs 125

Rien 128

Style .. .. ibid.

Subjunctive 133

Synonymes 136

Tu and Vous 172

Versification (Française) .. .. ibid.

Words, (Formation of) 174

Y, used idiomatically 181

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

APPENDIX, &c.

Of the Formation of some Adjectives.

ADJECTIVES, the feminine terminations of which are exceptions to the rules given in the Accidence, (pages 5 and 6,) are as follow:

Those which double their last consonant with the addition of an *e*.

épais..se....*thick.*.	ancien..ne....*ancient.*
gras ..se....*fat.*	bon ....ne....*good.*
cruel..le....*cruel.*	nul ....le ....*no, not any.*
pareil..le....*like.*	sot ....te....*foolish.*
gros ..se....*big.*	sujet ..te....*subject.*
gentil..le....*pretty.*	

The following words, whether substantives or adjectives, change *eur* into *euse.*

buv-eur....euse..*drinker.*	feseur..euse..*maker.*
chant-eur ..euse..*singer.*	connoiss-eur..euse..*connoisseur.*

The following change *eur* into *rice.**

* Défenseur, *defender*, amateur, *amateur*, senseur, *sensor*, docteur, *doctor*, poëte, *poet*, are the same in the feminine as in the masculine.—*Gouverneur* makes *gouvernante*; *serviteur*, *servante.*

ambassad....eur....rice....*ambassador.*
invent.....eur....rice....*inventor.*
inspect.....eur....rice....*inspector.*
act.....eur....rice....*actor.*
accusat.....eur....rice....*accuser.*
conduct ....eur....rice....*conductor.*
dispensat....eur....rice....*dispenser.*
institut.....eur....rice....*institutor.*
emper .....eur....ératrice *emperor.*

The following change *eur* into *eresse.*

enchant.....eur....eresse....*enchanter.*
veng .....eur....eresse....*avenger.*
pêch .....eur....eresse....*fisherman.*

The following are irregular in their feminine.

beni*n*....igne. *benign.*	jalou*x*....se ..*jealous.*
caduc....que..*decayed.*	long ....ue ..*long.*
dou*x* ....ce ..*sweet.*	mou ....lle ..*soft.*
fau*x* ....sse ..*false.*	malin ....gne..*cunning.*
favori....te ..*favorite.*	public....que..*public.*
fou.....lle ..*foolish.*	roux.....sse ..*reddish.*
frai*s* ....che..*fresh.*	tiers.....ce ..*third.*
Grec ....que..*Greek.*	Turc ....que..*Turkish.*
jumea*u* ..elle..*twin.*	traître ....sse ..*traitor.*

Of Agreement of Adjectives.

When the substantives are of different genders, let the adjective or participle be in the plural and in the masculine.

Son père et sa mère sont morts,
His father and mother are dead.

When there is no verb between the last substantive and the adjective or participle, let the adjective agree with the last.

Il avoit les yeux et la bouche ouverte,
His eyes and mouth were open.

However, it is better, in such a case, to contrive to place the substantive masculine last.

Il avoit la bouche et les yeux ouverts.

Observe—That those adjectives, which come before the substantive, require to be repeated before each.

De grands événemens et de grandes révolutions,
Great events and revolutions.

Observe—The word *feu*, late, is declinable, when preceded by *le, la, les,* as, *la feue reine*, the late queen; but indeclinable, when preceding either an article or a pronoun, as, *feu la reine,* the late queen, *feu ma mère,* my late mother, *feu mes tantes,* my late aunts.

Observe—*Demi*, half, and *nu*, naked, are declinable, when following the substantive, and indeclinable when preceding it, as,

Une livre et demie,	Les pieds nus,	Les jambes nues.
A pound and a half.	*Naked feet.*	*Naked legs.*

But

Nu-pieds,	Nu-jambes,	Une demi-livre,
Naked feet.	*Naked legs.*	*Half a pound.*

Of the placing of Adjectives.

The placing of adjectives, in French, being very arbitrary, we shall lay down the few following rules, or rather observations.

Adjectives are placed *before* their substantive in the following cases.

1. When the substantive governs a preposition.

Ils ont la *noble ambition* de faire leur devoir.

2. In florid style, when the substantive is more harmonious.*

Un doux murmure, un humble toit.

---

* Many adjectives ending in *able* and in *eux* may come before or after the substantive.—*Une agréable conversation*, or *une conversation agréable. Un heureux événement*, or *un événement heureux.*

3. In poetry, most adjectives* may come before or after the substantive.

Mais mon œil attristé par ces *sombres images*,
Se détourne en pleurant vers *de plus doux rivages*.

4. Frequently, also, when the adjective is taken in a figurative sense.

The following alphabetical list will, by being often consulted, give the learner a better idea of the numerous shades of meanings of which some adjectives are susceptible, by being placed *before* or *after* the substantive.

Apre (rugged) follows the noun: un chemin *âpre*, un esprit *âpre*. But we say, Un *âpre* combat, an *obstinate* fight.

Bas, speaking of the tone of voice, of diction or style, of a grovelling mind, and of mean actions, follows the noun: *Parler à voix basse; avoir la vue basse; un style bas; un esprit bas; des actions basses*: but it may precede the noun, to express low, lower, or inferior, with a reference to the situation of places, of the birth of persons, or the value of things, *basse naissance; à bas prix*.

Un bon homme, a weak foolish man; *Un homme bon*, a good man.

Un brave homme, a good honest man; *Un homme brave*, a brave man.

Un certaine nouvelle, some, or some sort of news. *Une nouvelle certaine*, An undoubted piece of news.

Chaud generally follows the noun: We say, however, Pleurer à *chaudes* larmes, une *chaude* alarme, déjà les zéphyrs de leurs *chaudes* haleines, &c. tomber de fièvre en *chaud* mal, to jump out of the frying-pan into the fire.

Mon cher cousin, my dear cousin; *Des marchandises chères*, dear goods.

Clair follows the noun: however, we say, un *clair* ruisseau, une *claire* fontaine.

Commun follows the noun, except when it means unanimous, mutual; as in, d'un *commun* accord, d'une *commune* voix. Une voix *commune* means an ordinary or indifferent voice.

Constant generally follows the noun: however, it often precedes it, to express unshaken, everlasting, unrelenting; as in Une *constante* volonté, une *ferme et constante* résolution, une *constante* prospérité, &c.

Court generally follows the noun, unless it points to a short duration

* Except those the endings of which are mentioned in Syntax, page 22.

of time; as in, La vie est *de courte durée*, une *courte* harangue, une *courte* mémoire, &c. We also say, Un *court* bâton, une *courte* épée, tirer à la *courte* paille, *courte* pitance.

Cruel, in a figurative sense, is to precede the noun; in a proper sense, it may indifferently come before or after the noun, *Une femme cruelle*, a cruel woman; *Une cruelle femme*, a tiresome woman.

Dernier, whether meaning utmost, highest, or last, is placed before its noun: *C'est la dernière année que je veste ici*; except when the noun is any of the months or days of the week, or when it proves to be *nuit, semaine, mois, année, règne, siècle*; as in, La nuit *dernière*, mardi *dernier*, &c.

Différent, meaning sundry, comes before the subst.—Ex. *Différens articles*. It comes after, when it denotes a difference of nature or sort. Ex. *Des caractères différens*.

Double precedes the noun, as *Un double louis, Une double porte*; except in the sense of treacherous, deceitful; as in, Un cœur *double*. We also say, De l'encre *double*, en raison *double*, un corps de logis *double*; and, in speaking of things done in duplicates, Un bail *double*, &c.

Doux is generally placed before the noun, to express gentle, mild, tranquil, or pleasing, agreeable, delightful, melodious, fragrant, flattering, obliging: *Un doux entretien*, a pleasing intercourse. Yet we place it after *vie, Une vie douce, un caractère doux; mort, esprit, humeur* or *naturel, air* or *temps, pluie, billet, homme, voix, raillerie, style, vue, lime, voiture*, and any nouns denoting animals. We also say, Eau *douce*, fresh water, not brackish, vin *doux*, new-made wine, &c.

Droit follows the noun, except with *ligne, chemin, raison*.

Dur follows the noun, to express tough or rough to the touch or taste, firm or hard to break; *Un bois dur*, not smooth, harsh; *la tête dure*, not learning easily; *Il a l'oreille dure*, not hearing easily; *le cœur dur*, insensible, hard-hearted, avaricious, rough in disposition, severe: but in any other figurative sense, *dur* may precede the noun; as in, C'est une *dure* nécessité.

Entier can precede the noun only when we point to moral things, and then it may express full, total, complete, perfect; as in, Avoir une *entière* confiance en Dieu. But we say, Un homme *entier*, a self-willed man; un jour *entier*.

Etroit precedes the noun only when it comes in figuratively: *Une étroite alliance*, close alliance; (union, amitié, &c.) but *un chemin étroit, Un habit étroit*.

Exact generally follows the noun, except in the sense of diligent, accurate; as in, Une *exacte* recherche, &c. but *Un homme exacte, Un compte exacte*.

Fâcheux precedes the noun, to express sad or dismal: *Un accident fâcheux*; but it follows it, to express peevish, troublesome; (yet we say, Un *fâcheux* personage;) as also to express difficult, painful, rugged, *Une fâcheuse nouvelle*.

Faux generally precedes the noun, to denote what is *wrong, not just, not well-grounded, not according to nature, innocent,* (Une pensée *fausse*, un coloris *faux*, un dessein *faux*, un effet *faux*.) Observe that we say, Une chose *fausse*, un diamant *faux*, une pierre *fausse*, une guinée *fausse*, &c. but we say, *Une fausse nouvelle*.

Ferme generally follows the noun: however, when used figuratively, to express undaunted, constant, unalterable, &c. it often comes before; we may say, Une *ferme* résolution, or *Une résolution ferme*.

Fier generally follows the noun, to express proud, haughty, noble: however, we say, Un *fier* rival. *Fier*, in the sense of cruel or barbarous, and in that of valiant or fierce, generally precedes the noun: Un *fier* tyran, ses *fiers* bataillons. *Fier* also precedes the noun in the sense of violent or enormous, (Je lui ai donné un *fier* coup de poing;) as likewise in that of *arrant*, (c'est un *fier* coquin:) this last acceptation is used only in familiar discourse.

Foible generally precedes the noun, to express, figuratively, faint, slight, poor, defective, not well supported by argument, not considerable of its kind; but *foible* may generally follow the noun, to express, in a proper sense, feeble, infirm. We may say, *Un foible argument, de foibles raisons, &c.* but it is safer to place *foible* after the substantive.

Fort——*Une étoffe forte*, strong stuff, (literal;) *Un vent fort*, a high wind; *De forts argumens*, powerful arguments, (fig.) *De fortes sommes*, large sums; *Une forte santé*, a strong constitution; *Un vin fort*, strong wine.

Fou precedes the noun, except to express mad, in a proper sense, or hare-brained.

Frais generally follows the noun, and is often used, instead of an adverb, before a participle past, which does not prevent it from agreeing with the noun, (Un vent *frais*, des herbes *fraîches cueillies*:) however, we say, *de fraîche* date, *de fraîche* mémoire, though we say, Une date *fraîche*, &c.

Franc precedes the noun in the figurative sense of arrant, down-right, mere, (Un *franc* pédant, une *franche* coquette:) it follows the noun, to express free from charges, taxes, &c, (Une lettre *franche*, une ville *franche*.) We say, un homme *franc*, an honest down-right man; un cœur *franc*, a sincere, candid, loyal heart; deux jours *francs*, two days complete, two full days.

Froid, used figuratively, may precede the noun; as in, Une *froide* mine: yet we say, *De sang froid*, unmoved, in cold blood; Style *froid*, an *insipid* style. Un *froid* orateur, means an orator who does not move the heart.

Un furieux animal, means a huge creature; un animal *furieux*, a fierce creature; *un furieux homme*, a man of an uncommon size; un homme *furieux*, a man in a raging passion.

Galant, in the sense of honest, brave, polite, sociable, is to precede

homme, &c.: when *galant* means gallantry, complaisant to the ladies, done with taste, fit for, pleasing; it is to follow the noun. Hence, there is a great difference between *un galant homme* and *un homme galant*. Une femme *galante*, means a woman who has intrigues, &c. *Galant*, after any noun but *homme* and *femme*, means genteel, pleasing, lively, and gallant.

Gentil, meaning brisk, lively, entertaining, follows the noun, (un enfant *gentil*.) In the sense of pretty, agreeable, amiable, fine, delicate, gracious, pleasing, it generally precedes the noun, as Un *gentil* enfant.

Glorieux, in the sense of vain, self-conceited, follows the noun: in the sense of glorious, noble, it may either precede or follow the noun. *Un homme glorieux*, a self-conceited man; *les glorieux travaux*, glorious works.

Grand; *Un grand homme*, a great man; *un homme grand*, a tall man.

Gras generally follows the noun. When used figuratively, it may precede it in the plural; de *gras* pâturages, *rich* pastures; *dormir la grasse matinée*, to sleep late.

Gres precedes the noun, except to express pregnant, *Une grosse femme*, a stout woman; *Une femme grosse*.

Haut generally precedes the noun, except in, La chambre *haute*, (the upper room, or the House of Peers;) une messe *haute*; c'est un homme *haut*, &c.

Heureux, in speaking of condition, life, &c. and to express happy, content, generally follows the noun: Etre dans un état *heureux*; mener une vie *heureuse*. In all other circumstances it may either precede or follow the noun, provided it is not *homme*, *femme*, or *gens*: *Une heureuse rencontre*, a lucky meeting.

When *honnête* is used to express decent, polite, genteel, suitable to one's condition or birth, it generally follows the noun: when it means virtuous, honest, reproachable, it generally precedes the noun. *Un honnête homme*, an honest man; *Un homme honnête*, a well-bred man.

Humble generally precedes the noun, *Mon humble prière*: however, we say, Un homme *humble*, une femme *humble*, les âmes *humbles*, votre serviteur très *humble*.

Joyeux generally follows the noun: yet we say, Mener une *joyeuse* vie, une *joyeuse* nouvelle, le *joyeux* événement.

Juste generally follows the noun, except when the noun denotes punishment or reward, and in the following expressions, La *juste* mesure, la *juste* proportion, un *juste* poids, la *juste* grosseur, un *juste* tireur, (un *juste* arquebusier, or the like;) *à juste* prix, *juste* ciel! *juste* Dieu!

Lâche, meaning slack, loose, faint, weak, languishing, sluggish, is to follow the noun; but in the figurative sense of unworthy, mean, base, shameful, it may come before or after the noun; and in the sense of

cowardly, dastardly, it generally precedes the noun; *Une corde lâche, un ouvrier lâche, un style lâche.*

Large follows the noun, except in Une *large* épée, a sword with a wide blade.

Léger indifferently precedes or follows the noun when used figuratively, to express slight, trifling, superficial; but it generally follows the noun, to express light, free, easy, inconstant, or easy to be endured, (in speaking of yoke or pain.)

We say, *libre* arbitre, free will; avoir un *libre* accès auprès de quelqu'un, donner un *libre* cours à, &c. But, in all other cases, *libre* generally follows the noun; *Une nation libre.* It may also be in the sense of loose, impudent, imprudent, indiscreet; *des discours libres.*

Long generally precedes the noun, to express lasting, not soon ceasing, or to imply duration of time, and even to express tedious; but when it merely denotes the length of a thing, and is opposed to wide, without pointing to any duration of time, it should follow the noun, *Un long discours, une table longue.*

Lourd generally precedes the noun, to express, figuratively, difficult, hard, great, (une *lourde* besogne, une *lourde* faute:) it generally follows the noun, to express not nimble, slow, dull, stupid, (c'est un esprit *lourd.*) It is better to place it after the noun, to express, in a proper sense, heavy, hard to be moved or carried; *Un objet lourd.*

Maigre, to express lean or not fat, generally follows the noun; but it precedes it, to express, figuratively, unpleasant, poor, scanty, pitiful: Un repas *maigre* means an entertainment at which no meat is to be eaten; and, Un *maigre* repas, a poor, (pitiful, scanty,) entertainment.

Mâle, manly, powerful, seldom precedes the noun; *Des vertus mâles;* except in poetry.

Malheureux generally precedes the noun, to denote its being inadequate; as in, Un *malheureux* écrivain, a pitiful writer; il est réduit à une *malheureuse* chambre; il n'a qu'un *malheureux* valet, he has but one footman. *Malheureux* rather follows than precedes the noun, to express unhappy, unfortunate, wretched. *Un homme malheureux*, an unhappy man; *une famille malheureuse*, an unfortunate family.

Un mal-honnête homme means a dishonest man; and *Un homme malhonnête*, an unpolite man.

Malin generally follows the noun: however, we say, Une *maligne* joie, une *maligne* influence.

Menu, used figuratively, to express trifling, small, lower, may generally precede the noun; Le *menu* peuple, de la *menue* monnoie; *De l'argent pour des menus plaisirs*, pocket or pin-money; but *menu*, in its proper sense of small or slender, generally follows the noun, (des jambes *menues.*)

Merveilleux indifferently precedes or follows the noun: however, Vous êtes un *merveilleux* homme may be said ironically, to express,

You are a *strange* man: as to, Vous êtes un homme *merveilleux*, it means, You are a wonderful man, or, You are a man worthy of admiration.

Misérable, when used as an expression of scorn, or figuratively to express bad, scurvy, dull, inadequate, insignificant, is generally better before than after the noun, (de *misérables* rapsodies, un *misérable* grammairien:) but *misérable*, denoting distressed or distressing, may in general follow the noun, *Une famille misérable.*

Morne may in general follow the noun: yet we say, Un *morne* silence, a dead silence, &c.

Mortel may precede or follow the noun, to express, figuratively, violent, excessive, very great, (un *mortel* déplaisir, *or*, un déplaisir *mortel*.) This Adjective always precedes the noun, to express, figuratively, long and tedious, (pendant deux *mortelles* heures, il y a trois *mortelles* lieues d'ici là.) *Mortel* always follows the noun, to express liable to death, deadly, whose consequence will be death.

Mou seldom precedes the noun: yet we say, Une *molle* oisiveté, une *molle* condescendance, &c.

Mûr seldom comes before the noun; except to express mature, in the sense of serious, due; as in, Après une *mure* délibération, un *mûr* examen, une *mûre* réflexion.

Noble is generally better after than before the noun: however, we say, Un *noble* orgueil, un *noble* Génois, (Vénitien, &c.)

Noir, being used figuratively, generally precedes the noun, to denote something wicked or atrocious, something gloomy, dismal, or sorrowful; as also to express black, in speaking of tempests, of people's temper, or disposition. *Un habit noir,—de noirs pressentimens, une noire trahison, une noire tempête, une noire mélancolie.*

Nouveau generally precedes the noun, to express another, another kind of, that has replaced another, (mener une *nouvelle* vie, on fait un *nouvel* armement.) *Nouveau* generally follows its noun, when that adjective is used not merely to denote a change, but to express new, on account of the thing or person not having appeared before, or to imply new by rotation. For instance, *Un livre nouveau* means a book which contains something new; whereas, *un nouveau livre* means merely another book; *du blé nouveau* means corn of a new crop, &c. (*Vide* Synonyms.)

Nu, used with parts of the body, may be placed before them without the article, and then it is invariable; or after them, with or without an article prefixed to them, (Il étoit *nu-tête et nu-jambes*, or Il avoit *la tête nue et les jambes nues;* Il alloit *tête nue* or *nu-tête.*) When *nu* is used with nouns which do not express parts of the body, it follows them, and is declinable, (une épée *nue.*)

Pareil generally precedes the noun, to express merely like, same, very same; but it generally follows the noun, to express equal, of the

same class, (kind or nature.) *Que feriez vous en pareille occasion?* en pareil cas? What would you do in a similar case? *J'ai acheté une étoffe pareille à la vôtre;* I have bought some stuff similar to yours.

Parfait generally precedes its noun, to express quite, an arrant, a consummate; Un *parfait* courtisan, une *parfaite* beauté; and it rather follows than precedes the noun, to express finished, not defective, (un accord *parfait*, un diamant *parfait*;) in other senses, it is indifferent whether it be placed before or after its noun.

Pauvre generally precedes the noun; yet *pauvre*, before a noun, denoting persons, may express, of no merit, or deserving pity; whereas, after such a noun, it may denote poor in circumstances, *un pauvre* auteur, an author of no merit; un auteur *pauvre*, an author in poor circumstances.

Petit is generally placed before its noun: (see *Grand*;) *Un petit homme*, a little man; *Un homme petit dans sa manière d'agir*, a man who is mean in his manner of acting; *Une petite vue*, a prospect of little extent; *Des vues petites*, narrow views, ideas.

Plaisant, after the noun, means laughable. *Un conte plaisant, une histoire plaisante.* But when the noun *plaisant* means impertinent, ridiculous, we say *Un plaisant homme; un plaisant personnage, visage*, &c. never say, *un homme plaisant.*

When *Plein* is merely in opposition to *vide* (empty), and means replete, well-filled, or with little ones, it follows the noun, (une bonteille *pleine*, un visage *plein*, une chatte *pleine*;) but in all other senses *plein* is to precede its noun; un *plein* panier de fruit, a basket *brim-full* of fruit; une *pleine* récolte, a *plentiful* harvest; *plein* pouvoir, *full* power; une *pleine* victoire, a *complete* victory; en *plein* jour, in the *open* day. *Plein* is sometimes a sort of preposition; (Vous avez *de l'*argent *plein* vos poches; or, Vous avez *plein* vos poches *d'*argent, you have your pockets *full of* money.)

Présent generally follows the noun: yet we say, *Le présent porteur* (the bearer), le *présent* billet, aussitôt *la présente* lettre reçue.

Principal may generally precede its noun.

Prochain (next, near) generally follows its noun, especially in speaking of time. We may say, Dans *le prochain* village, *la prochaine* assemblée, &c. But *la semaine prochaine.*

Prodigieux may precede or follow its noun. It is better before the noun, in exaggerations, or to express, figuratively, immense; *Une prodigieuse mémoire; une somme d'argent prodigieuse.*

Profond generally precedes the noun, to express, figuratively, very great, excessive, utmost, profound; *Profond silence, respect, sommeil, profonde douleur, érudition, mélancolie, sagesse.* In order to express very learned, abstruse, we generally place *profond* after its noun. *Profond*, in its proper sense of deep, low, or far in, follows its noun. (Un puits *profond*, une plaie *profonde*, un bois *profond*, &c.

Prompt generally precedes the noun, except in the sense of hot, passionate; *Un prompt succès, retour; une prompte réponse; une humeur prompte*, a hot temper.

Propre generally *follows* the noun, to express clean, neat, decent, genteel, as also to denote proper, or allowed by use; but *propre* precedes the noun, to express own, very, or very same. *Les mains propres* clean hands; *un habit propre*, a clean coat; *le mot propre*, the proper word; *le terme propre*, the proper term; *nom propre*, proper name; *un homme propre à tout*, a man fit for any thing; *une chambre propre à l'étude; le sens propre et le sens figuré*, the literal and figurative sense. *Je me sers de vos propres expressions*, I make use of your own expressions. *Cela n'est pas propre*, therefore, signifies, this is not clean, not that is not proper.

Puissant generally precedes its noun, except (in speaking of persons or animals) to express corpulent or strong-built; *Un puissant roi*, a powerful king; *un homme puissant*, a corpulent man.

Pur generally precedes the noun, to express mere, nothing but sheer, real, very; but *pur* follows the noun, to denote a regularity in speaking or writing, or to express not infectious, pure, spotless, not adulterated by mixtures. *C'est pure vanité, bonté, libéralité; en pure perte*, a mere or sheer loss; *voilà du Francois tout pur, au lieu d'Anglois*, this is downright or mere French, instead of English; *un style pur*, a pure style; *une diction pure*, pure diction; *de l'eau pure*, plain water; *du vin pur*, wine without water; *un cœur pur*, a pure heart.

Ras precedes the noun, only to express, figuratively, *open: en rase campagne*, in the open country; but, *du velours ras*, shorn velvet.

Révérend precedes only the nouns *père* and *mère*, applied to bishops, priests, nuns, &c.

Riche cannot be used before *homme, femme, fille, garçon, fils, gens, personne;* but it may be used before *veuf, héritier, marchand, habitant* and any other noun denoting persons. We also say, Un *riche* parti, or, un *riche* mariage, les *riches* plaines, une *riche* campagne, &c. When *riche* means of great value, stately, magnificent, beautiful, it may precede or follow the noun. When, in speaking of writings, the adjective *riche* means fertile in ideas or images, &c., we place it after the noun, *Une style riche en idées, en images.*

Royal precedes the noun, only when not applied to sovereigns, royal dignities or families. *C'est un royal homme* means he is a just, generous, liberal, honest man.

Rude follows the noun, to express the proper sense of rough to the touch or taste or hearing, uneven, rugged, harsh. *Une toile, un brosse rude, un chemin rude, une voiture rude, un visage rude, des manières rudes*, rough manners. But *rude* precedes the noun, to express, figuratively, great, violent, (Une *rude* tempête, une *rude* attaque, c'est un *rude* joueur.) *Rude* may either precede or follow the noun, to express hard, (Une *rude* tâche, un *rude* hiver, une *rude* condition, un temps *rude*,

une saison *rude*, &c.) *Rude* follows a noun denoting persons, to express too rigid, Un homme *rude*, un maître *rude*. *Une rude épreuve*, a severe trial.

Though *rusé* is to follow *homme* and *femme*, *garçon* and *fille*, it may precede, as well as follow, any other noun. We say, Un *rusé* matois une *rusée* commère.

Sacré generally follows its noun: however, we say, Le *sacré* collège le saint *et sacré* concile, les *sacrés* autels, &c. These examples are scarce, for *sacré*, before the substantive, is used as an oath: *De la musique sacrée*, sacred music; *De la sacrée musique*, vile music. (This expression ought not to be used.)

Sage precedes nouns denoting persons and professions, to express prudent, circumspect, judicious, wise. (Un *sage* magistrat, un *sage* général, un *sage* ministre.) When *sage*, in the preceding senses, is to be joined to any other noun than those of professions, it may either precede or follow that noun, (une conduite *sage*, or une *sage* conduite.) When *sage* means merely good, sober, master of one's passions, modest and virtuous, it follows the noun, unless it comes in as a characteristical epithet: only observe, that, *une femme sage* means a good, prudent, virtuous, and modest woman; whereas *une sage femme* means a midwife; yet, by prefixing *bien*, *forte*, *très*, *plus*, &c. to *sage*, it means again *virtuous*, &c.

Sain, in its proper sense of wholesome, healthy, not infectious, follows its noun: *Un corps*, *un homme sain*; but *sain* generally precedes its noun, to express, figuratively, sound, judicious, orthodox, genuine; (la *saine* raison, une *saine* critique, une *saine* doctrine, de *saines* opinions.) We say, *un esprit sain*, a sound mind.

Saint generally precedes its noun, (une *sainte* action:) however, we say, Une âme *sainte*, l'écriture *sainte*, la guerre *sainte*, la semaine *sainte*, le lundi *saint*, and so on with the other days of the week.

Sanglant, meaning bloody, daubed or besmeared with blood, generally follows its noun; but when used figuratively, to express outrageous or cutting, it is better to place *sanglant* before the noun, if the ear will permit. Un *sanglant* affront, une *sanglante* raillerie, or une raillerie *sanglante*.)

Seul, meaning only one, or one and only one, even or very, precedes the noun. (Un *seul* Dieu; c'est le *seul* homme qui vive de la sorte; Il n'y a qu'une *seule* personne qui puisse vous en dire des nouvelles; le *seul* remède à cela c'est de demander pardon; la *seule* pensée de cette action est criminelle;) but when *seul* means barely alone, in the sense of, and nobody else, or, and nothing else, it must follow the noun, Votre tante *seule* refusa de chanter; son argent *seul* le sauva.)

Simple, meaning simple, bare, mere or merely, nothing but, nobody but, generally precedes the noun, (sur un *simple* soupçon, il n'a qu'un *simple* valet pour le servir, il ne faut pour cela que le *simple* sens commun.) *Simple*, before the noun, often means common, in the sense of

nothing but, (un *simple* soldat, le *simple* peuple;) but *simple* follows its noun, to express simple, plain, artless, silly, and uncompounded; (un habit *simple*, un homme *simple*, un discours *simple*, un corps *simple*;) however, we say, La *simple* nature, la pure et *simple* raison.

Sourd generally follows the noun; yet, to express underhanded, or, secret, it may either follow or precede its noun. (De *sourdes* pratiques, or, des pratiques *sourdes*, de *sourdes* menées, or, des menées *sourdes*.) We also say, *Faire la sourde oreille*, to give a deaf ear.

Souverain, in speaking of sovereigns, princes, dignities, courts, (of law or others,) follows the noun; but joined to other nouns, and in the sense of supreme, highest, most excellent, most efficacious, it may either precede or follow it. *L'être souverain, le souverain être, la souveraine félicité, un remède souverain, le pouvoir souverain.*

Sublime generally follows the noun: however, we may say, De *sublimes* connoissances, les *plus sublimes* connoissances. We say, Le style *sublime*, (not, Le *sublime* style: though we say, Le *haut* style.)

Suffisant generally follows its noun; yet we say, Une *bonne et suffisante* caution.

Superbe generally follows the noun, to express proud, vain, haughty; *Tarquin le Superbe*. It either precedes or follows the noun, to express stately, magnificent, sumptuous. *Un superbe cavalier, un jardin superbe, un superbe cheval.*

Sûr may often precede the noun, to express sure; as in, C'est le plus *sûr* moyen.

Tendre generally follows its noun, to express not tough, soft to the touch; *De la viande tendre, un bois tendre, des légumes tendres*; but, when used figuratively, it may precede the noun, (un *tendre* souvenir, la *tendre* enfance, un *tendre* regard;) yet we say, *un age tendre*, early youth.

Terrible should rather follow its noun, to denote dread or fear. *Une terrible humeur, un tems terrible*; but when used figuratively and familiarly, to denote awful, strange, excessive, most extraordinary, it may precede or follow its noun; and, when we speak ironically or contemptuously, *terrible* generally precedes the noun; as in, *Un terrible* faiseur de vers, *un terrible* harangueur.

Tiers generally precedes the noun; *Le tiers état*, the people that belong neither to the clergy nor to the nobility: however, we say, une fièvre *tierce*, une main *tierce*.

Tout always precedes its noun, if expressed, and even goes before the article of that noun. (*Toute* la ville, *toute* une ville, *tous* nos amis, *toutes* ses filles.) When *tout* is used adverbially, before any other adjective than *autre*, to express quite or entirely, it throws the adjective after its noun. Hence, though we say, C'est la *pure* vérité: yet we must say, C'est la vérité *tout pure*, (instead of, C'est la *tout pure* vérité.) Most authors write, La vérité *toute* pure, because, say they, the adverb *tout*

becomes declinable before an adjective in the feminine, when that adjective begins with a consonant.

Triste generally *precedes* the noun, to express tedious, dismal, sad. *Une triste aventure, un triste accident*; as also to express mean, poor, or what is far from answering our expectation: *Un triste régal, repas. Triste* follows the noun when applied to persons, to express dull, afflicted, or sorrowful; as also, when applied to the weather, places, or colour, to express obscure, dark, dull, unpleasant; *Un homme triste, un temps triste.*

Unique generally precedes its noun, to raise it to a sort of superlative degree, *Unique héritier, son unique occupation, un homme unique dans son genre.* We always place *unique* after *fils, fille, frère, sœur.*

Urgent generally follows its noun: *besoins urgens, affaires urgentes*: yet it may precede it; as we say, On l'assistera dans son *urgente* nécessité.

Vain follows its noun, to denote vanity; *Un homme vain*, a vain man. When *Vain* is used in the sense of fruitless, ineffectual, it generally precedes its noun, *De vaines efforts, vaines sollicitations*; and when it means frivolous, chimerical, it may either precede or follow the noun; *Prétention vaine, idée vaine.* We always say, *La vaine gloire*, for vain glory.

Vaste generally precedes its noun, *Vaste compagne, vaste désert*: however, we say, Un esprit *vaste*, une mémoire *vaste.*

Véritable follows the noun, to denote veracity, (En voici la relation *véritable*;) it *precedes* the noun, to express genuine, (De *véritable* vin de Canarie:) in that of sincere, faithful, or steady, (*un véritable ami*;) and that of good or excellent in its kind, (c'est un *véritable* capitaine, orateur, &c.)

Vert, as an adjective of colour, follows its noun: however, we say, Le *vert* gazon, le *vert* feuillage, sous la *verte* feuillée; and figuratively, meaning full of vigor, La *verte* jeunesse, une *verte* vieillesse, une *verte* (sharp) réprimande, une *verte* réponse, un *vert* galant, (a brisk spark.

Vieux generally precedes the noun, *Un vieux chapeau, un vieil habit*, (*vieil* is placed before, for euphony;) *Le vieux style, un vieux ami*, an old friend, (a friend of long standing;) *Un ami vieux*, an aged friend.

Vif, denoting a great impression which moral or natural things make upon us, may sometimes precede its noun: Un *vif* ressentiment, une *vive* douleur, (a smart pain or profound grief.) We always say, De *vive* force, (by main force;) *de vive voix*, (by word of mouth;) *du vif*-argent, (quick-silver.) *Vif*, in any other circumstance, generally follows the noun, to express quick, alive, lively, mettlesome, *Un homme vif, carpe vive, chaire vive*, quick flesh; *Les passions vives.*

Vil may precede or follow its noun, almost indifferently: however, we always say, De *vil* prix, à *vil* prix; and un homme *vil*, une femme *vile.*

ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

I. *Of the present Time.*

A présent,	*at present.*
pour le pré ent,	*for the present.*
présentement, maintenant,	*now.*
aujourd'hui,	*to-day, now a-days.*
à cette heure,	*at this hour* or *time.*
tout-à-l'heure,	*this minute, presently.*
sur le champ,	*directly.*
à l'instant,	*instantly.*
vîte,	*quickly.*

II. *Of the Time past,*

hier,	*yesterday.*
avant-hier,	*the day before yesterday.*
le jour précédent,	*the day before.*
autrefois,	*formerly, once.*
jadis, (*s* sounds,)	*in times of yore.*
anciennement,	*formerly.*
dernièrement.	*lately.*
depuis peu,	*of late.*
auparavant,	*before.*
récemment,	*recently.*
tout récemment, nouvellement,	*but lately.*
la dernière fois,	*the last time.*
l'autre jour,	*the other day.*
hier au matin, hier matin,	*yesterday morning.*
hier soir, hier au soir,	*last night.*
la semaine passée,	*last week.*
le mois dernier,	*last month.*
l'année passée, l'année dernière,	*last year.*
jusqu'ici,	*hitherto.*
jusqu'à présent,	*till now.*
il y a huit jours,	*a week ago.*
il y a quinze jours,	*a fortnight ago.*
il y a long-temps,	*a great while ago.*
il n'y a pas long temps,	*not long ago.*
il y a quelque temps,	*some time ago.*
il n'y a qu'un moment,	*just now.*
il y a trois jours,	*three days ago.*
il y a un mois,	*a month ago.*
il y a un an,	*a year ago.*
quelque tems après,	*sometime after.*
peu de tems après,	*a little while.*

III. *Of the Time to come.*

demain,	*to-morrow.*
après demain,	*the day after to-morrow.*
le lendemain,	*the next day.*
le sur-lendemain,	*two days after.*
le jour suivant,	*the following day.*
ce matin,	*this morning.*
ce soir,	*this,* or *to-night, this evening.*
cette après midi, cette après-dinée,	*this afternoon.*
demain matin,	*to-morrow morning.*
demain au soir,	*to-morrow night.*
bientôt,	*soon, very soon, in a short time.*
dans peu, sous peu,	*shortly.*
dans peu de temps,	*within a little while.*
tantôt,	*by and by.*
l'année qui vient,	*the next year.*
le mois prochain,	*the next month.*
désormais,	*hereafter.*
dorénavant,	*henceforth.*
à l'avenir,	*for the future.*
dans deux ou trois jours d'ici,	*two or three days hence.*
dans six mois,	*six months hence.*
dans un an d'ici,	*a year hence.*
avant qu'il soit long temps,	*before long.*

IV. *Of a Time unspecified.*

d'abord,	*first, at first.*
souvent,	*often, oftentimes.*
quelquefois,	*sometimes.*
rarement,	*seldom.*

soudain, *on a sudden.*
subitement, *suddenly.*
au plus-tard, *at the latest.*
au plus-tôt, *as soon as possible.*
au plus vite, } *with all*
en toute diligence, } *speed.*
jamais, *never, ever.*
à jamais, *for ever.*
toujours, *always.*
pour toujours, *for ever.*
à toute heure, *every hour.*
à tout moment, *every minute.*
à tout bout de champ, *every moment.*
continuellement, *continually.*
immediatement, *immediately.*
sans cesse, *without ceasing, for ever.*
cependant, *in the meanwhile.*
d'ordinaire, *mostly, most times.*
à l'ordinaire, *usually, as usual.*
ordinairement, *ordinarily.*
communément, *commonly.*
fréquemment, *frequently.*
presque toujours, *almost always.*
presque jamais, *scarcely ever.*
la plupart du temps, *mostly.*
tôt, *soon.*
tard, *late.*
trop tôt, *too soon.*
trop tard, *too late.*
de bonne heure, *early, betimes.*
de bon matin, } *very early, early*
de grand matin, } *in the morning.*
pas encore, *not yet.*
bien long-temps, *a long time.*
alors, *then.*
pour lors, *at that time.*
dès lors, *from that time.*
depuis, *since.*
depuis ce temps-là, *ever since.*
encore, *again.*
de nouveau, *a-new.*
de plus belle, *a-fresh.*
à loisir, *leisurely.*
quand, *when.*
le matin, } *in the morning.*
dans la matinée, }
dans l'après-dinée, *in the afternoon.*
le soir, *in the evening.*
en même temps, *at the same time.*
de jour, *by day, in the day time.*
de nuit, *by night, in the night-time.*
jour et nuit, *night and day.*
en plein jour, } *at noon-day.*
en plein midi, }
de deux jours l'un, } *every other*
tous les deux jours, } *day.*
tout d'un coup, *all at once.*
tout-à-coup, *suddenly, all of a sudden.*
plus que jamais, *more than ever.*
à point nommé, *in the nick of time.*
à propos, *seasonably, a-propos.*
fort à propos, *very seasonably.*
en moins de rien, *in a trice.*
en un clin d'œil, *in the twinkling of an eye.*
tous les jours, *every day.*
toute la journée, *all the day long.*
toute la nuit, *all the night long.*
de jour en jour, *daily.*
au premier jour, *the next day.*
à la première occasion, *by the first opportunity.*
à temps, *in good time,*
avec le temps, *in time.*
de temps en temps, *now and then, from time to time.*
en tout temps, *at all times.*
en temps et lieu, *at a proper time and place.*

Adverbs of Place.

où, *where, whither.*
d'où, *whence.*
de quel endroit, *from what place.*
par où, *which way, thro' where.*
par quel endroit, *thro' what place.*
ici, *here, hither, to this place.*
d'ici, *hence, from hither.*
par ici, *this way, thro' this way.*
là, *there.*
de là, *thence.*
par là, *that way, thro' that place.*
là haut, *above.*
en haut, *up, up stairs.*

ici-dessus, *here, above.*
à bas, *down.*
en bas, *down stairs.*
là bas, *below there, yonder.*
ici dessous, *under here, here below.*
d'en haut, *from above.*
d'en bas, *from below.*
par haut, / par en haut, *upward.*
par bas, / par en bas, *downward.*
du haut en bas, *up and down.*
de côté et d'autre, *here and there.*
dedans, / en dedans, / là dedans, *within.*
dehors, *out of doors.*
en dehors, *without.*
jusqu'où, *how far.*
jusqu'ici, *so far, down to here, as far as this place.*
jusques là, *so far, down to there, as far as that place.*
l'entour, / tout autour, *round about.*
ici autour, *hereabout.*
là autour, / aux environs, *thereabout.*
tous les lieux d'alentour, *all places round about.*
loin, *far.*
bien loin, *very far.*
près, *near.*
bien près, *very near.*
proche, (adj.) *near.*
tout proche, / tout auprès, / tout contre, / près d'ici, / ici-près, / tout près d'ici, *hard by.* / *just by.*
la porte joignante, *the next door to it.*
de près, *close, near, by.*
de plus près, *closer, nearer.*
vis-à-vis, *opposite.*
à côté, *near, by.*
de côté, *aside.*
à terre, *down.*
par terre, *down on the ground.*
devant, / par devant, *before.*
sur le devant, *front part.*
derrière, / par derrière, *behind.*
sur le derrière, *on the back part.*
dessus, *upon it.*
dessous, *under it.*
quelque part, *somewhere.*
nulle part, *no where.*
en aucun endroit, *in no place.*
ailleurs, *elsewhere.*
autrepart, *somewhere else.*
par-tout, *all about, every where.*
en deça, / de ce côté-ci, *on this side.*
en delà, / de ce côté-là, *on that side.*
des deux côtés, / de part et d'autre, *on both sides.*
de tous côtés, / de toutes parts, *every side.* / *on all sides.*
d'un côté et d'autre, *about and about*
au même endroit, *in the same place.*
dans ce lieu-là, / dans cet endroit-là, / dans ce même endroit-là, *in that place.* / *in that very same place.*
par de là, / plus loin, *beyond, farther.*
çà et là, *here and there.*
céans, (obsolete) *here, within.*
à droite, / sur la droite, / à main droite, *on the right,* or *on the right hand.*
à gauche, / sur la gauche, / à main gauche, *on the left,* or *on the left hand.*
tout droit, *straight along.*
en face, *opposite,* or *facing.*
tout du long, / tout le long, *all along.*
depuis le haut jusqu'en bas, *from the top to the bottom.*
dans les pays étrangers, / chez l'étranger, *abroad.*

Adverbs of Order, or Disorder.

premièrement,	*first*, or *firstly*.
secondement, deuxièmement,	*secondly*.
troisièmement, &c.	*thirdly*, &c.
en premier lieu,	*in the first place*.
en second lieu,	*in the second place*.
en dernier lieu,	*lastly, in the last place*.
avant,	*before*.
après,	*after*.
avant toutes choses,	*above all things*.
de suite,	*one after another*.
tout de suite,	*directly*.
ensuite,	*afterwards*.
ensemble,	*together*.
à la file,	*one after another*.
de front,	*a-breast*.
en rang,	*rank and file*.
tour à tour,	*by turns*.
à la ronde,	*round about*.
alternativement,	*alternately*.
à mesure,	*as, in proportion*
à fur et à mesure,	*as, by degrees*.
l'un après l'autre,	*one after another*.
à la fois,	*at once*.
enfin,	*at length, in short*.
à la fin,	*finally, at last*.
pour conclusion,	*to conclude*.
en ordre,	*orderly*.
confusément,	*confusedly*.
pêle-mêle,	*promiscuously*.
en foule,	*in a crowd*.
de fond en comble,	*utterly*.
sens dessus dessous,	*upside down, topsy turvy, the wrong side before*.
sens devant derrière,	*the hind part before*.
tout à rebours,	*the wrong way* or *side*.
pareillement,	*likewise*.
semblablement, de la même manière,	*in the like*, or *same manner*.

Adverbs of Quantity & Number.

combien,	*how much, how many*.
peu,	*little, few*.
un peu,	*a little, some*.
tant soit peu,	*ever so little*.
beaucoup,	*much*.
guères,	*but little*.
pas beaucoup,	*not much*.
assez,	*enough*.
suffisamment,	*sufficiently*.
trop,	*too much*.
trop peu,	*too little*.
peu à peu,	*little by little, by degrees*.
environ,	*about*.
à peu de choses près,	*within a small matter*.
tant,	*so much*.
autant,	*as much*.
plus, davantage,	*more*.
moins,	*less*.
de plus,	*morever, over and above*.
tout au plus,	*at most*.
par dessus le marché,	*over*, or *into the bargain*.
au moins, pour le moins,	*at least*.
plusieurs,	*several*.
du moins,	*at any rate*.
en abondance,	*in plenty*.
abondamment,	*plentifully*.
en grand nombre,	*in a great number*.
en grande quantité,	*in a great quantity*.
à pleines mains,	*plentifully*.
à foison,	*largely*.
cher,	*dear*.
trop cher,	*too dear*.
chèrement,	*dearly*.
entièrement,	*entirely, wholly*.
à demi,	*half, by half, by halves*.
infiniment,	*infinitely*.
à l'infini,	*vastly*.
tout-à-fait,	*quite*.
étrangement,	*strangely*.
admirablement,	*admirably*.

merveilleusement, *wonderfully.*
presque, *almost.*
quasi, (*familiar*) *dilto.*
absolument, *absolutely.*
passablement, *tolerably.*
médiocrement, *indifferently.*
combien de fois, *how many times, how often.*
une fois, *once.*
deux fois, *twice.*
trois fois, &c. *thrice* or *three times.*
en sus, *in addition to, extra.*

Adverbs of Quality and Manner.

bien, *well, right.*
mal, *badly, wrong.*
fort bien, *very well*, or *very right.*
fort mal, *very badly, very ill, very wrong.*
à merveilles, *admirably well, wonderfully.*
ni bien, } *neither well nor badly.*
ni mal, }
sagement, *wisely.*
justement, *justly.*
joliment, *prettily.*
galamment, *in a gallant manner.*
prudemment, *prudently.*
civilement, *civilly.*
constamment, *constantly.*
vivement, *briskly.*
à l'aise, *at ease, comfortably.*
nonchalamment, *carelessly.*
négligemment, *negligently.*
au préalable, *previously.*
préalablement, *first of all.*
de but en blanc, *point blank, bluntly.*
à fond, *thoroughly.*
à plomb, *perpendicularly.*
à plaisir, *for pleasure's sake.*
à faux, *falsely.*
à moitié chemin, *half way.*
à peine, *hardly, scarce, scarcely.*
à regret, *reluctantly.*
à contre-cœur, *against the grain.*
à contre-gré, *against one's will*, or *mind.*
de bon cœur, *heartily.*
de bonne volonté, *very willingly.*
de gaité } *on purpose, for the sake*
de cœur, } *of mischief.*
de plein gré, } *of one's own accord.*
de bon gré, }
à mon gré, &c. *to my mind.*
de force, }
par force, } *forcibly, by force.*
à couvert, *under a cover*, or *shelter.*
à découvert, *openly.*
au naturel, *to the life.*
à reculons, } *backwards.*
en arrière, }
à la renverse, *upon one's back.*
à tâtons, *groping.*
à l'endroit, *on the right side.*
du bon sens, *the right way.*
à l'envers, *the wrong side outwards.*
de mauvais sens, *the wrong way*, or *the wrong side.*
de tout sens, } *every way.*
de tous les sens, }
à bon droit, *deservedly, justly, rightly.*
à tort, *wrongfully.*
avec raison, *with a cause.*
sans raison, *without a cause.*
à l'envi, *in emulation of one another.*
à la rigueur, *strictly.*
de sang froid, *in cool blood.*
exprès, *on purpose, for the purpose.*
à dessein, *designedly, purposely.*
par malice, *maliciously, mischievously.*
de propos délibéré, *on set purpose, intentionally.*
tout de bon, *in good earnest.*
sérieusement, *seriously.*
pour rire, *in a joke.*
pour badiner, *in a jest.*
en riant, } *for fun.*
en badinant, }
de son chef, } *of his* or *her own*
de sa tête, } *head, mind, or accord.*
étourdiment, *giddily.*
à l'étourdie, *heedlessly.*
sottement, *in a silly manner.*

témérairement, *rashly.*
à la légère, *lightly.*
à la hâte, *hastily, in a hurry.*
précipitamment, *with precipitation.*
brusquement, *bluntly.*
par inadvertence, *inadvertently.*
par mégarde, *by oversight.*
par méprise, *through a mistake.*
au hasard, *at random.*
par hasard, *by chance, accidentally.*
à l'aventure, *at a venture.*
à tout hasard, } *let the worst come*
au pis aller, } *to the worst.*
goutte à goutte, *drop by drop.*
à l'étroit, *narrowly.*
d'accord, *right, agreed.*
à genoux, *on one's knees.*
à mort, *mortally.*
à la mort, } *at the*
à l'article de la mort, } *point of*
au point de la mort, } *death.*
tout au long, *at full length.*
de bonne foi, *sincerely.*
de nécessité, *necessarily.*
de toutes les manières, *all ways.*
à tous égards, *to all intents and purposes.*
à l'improviste, *unawares.*
au dépourvu, *unthought of.*
sans y penser, } *unexpectedly.*
sans s'y attendre, }
inopinément, *unexpectedly.*
à l'amiable, *amicably.*
en ami, *friendly.*
à fleur d'eau, *between wind and water.*
à l'étuvée, *stewed.*
en paix, *in peace.*
paisiblement, *peaceably.*
en repos, *quietly.*
à vide, *empty.*
à sec, *dried up.*
sans façon, *without ceremony.*
de travers, *the wrong way, across.*
de biais, *slopingly.*
de niveau, *even with.*
avec soin, *carefully.*
exactement, *exactly.*
grossièrement, *rudely.*
d'une manière grossière, *unmannerly.*
fort et ferme, *stoutly.*
en diligence, *in haste.*
à pied, *on foot.*
à cheval, *on horseback.*
à califourchon, *astraddle.*
en carrosse, *in a coach.*
en bateau, *in a boat.*
à la mode, *after the fashion.*
à la Françoise, *after the French way or fashion.*
à l'Angloise, *after the English fashion.*

Adverbs of Affirmation.

oui, *yes.*
oui-dà, *ay, ay, marry.*
oui vraiment, } *yes, indeed.*
oui en vérité, }
certes, } *sure, to be sure,*
assurément, } *assuredly.*
certainement, *certainly.*
en vérité, *indeed.*
à la vérité, *to be sure.*
vraiment, *verily.*
véritablement, *truly.*
sans doute, *without doubt.*
volontiers, *readily, willingly.*
sans faute, *without fail.*
immanquablement, } *infallibly.*
infailliblement, }
indubitablement, *undoubtedly.*

Of Negation.

non, ne, ni, } *no, not.*
point, pas, non pas, }
point du tout, *not at all.*
nullement, *by no means.*
en nulle manière, *in no wise, not in the least.*
aucunement, *by no means.*

Of Doubt.

peut-être, *perhaps.*
probablement, *probably.*
vraisemblablement, *very likely.*

Adverbs of Comparison, &c.

ainsi,	*thus.*
de même,	*so.*
comme cela,	*like this*, or *that.*
de cette manière,	*after this manner*, or *in that manner.*
en partie,	*partly.*
tout autant,	*as much, exactly so.*
tout à la fois,	*altogether.*
séparément,	*separately.*
à part,	*by, aside.*
à l'écart,	*away from.*
moins,	*less.*
mieux,	*better.*
plus,	*more.*
pis,	*worse.*
de pis en pis,	*worse and worse.*
de mieux en mieux,	*better and better.*
tant mieux,	*so much the better.*
tant pis,	*so much the worse.*
ni plus ni moins,	*neither more nor less.*
de part et d'autre,	*on both sides.*
à plus forte raison,	*much more*, or *much less.*
universellement,	*universally.*
généralement,	*generally.*
doucement,	*softly, gently.*
autrement,	*otherwise.*
particulièrement,	*particularly.*
en particulier,	*in private.*
principalement,	*chiefly.*
sur-tout,	*above all.*
après-tout,	*after all, upon the whole.*
au contraire,	*on the contrary.*

Of Interrogation.

quand,	*when.*
pourquoi,	*why.*
combien,	*how much, how many.*
combien de fois,	*how often, how many times.*
comment,	*how.*
où,	*where.*

ARTICLE. Further remarks on No. 8, Page 2, *Syntax.*

Although we use *le, la, les*, with a name of dignity; yet, when addressing the person, we leave the article out,

Général, je vous demande pardon. Caporal; faites votre devoir.

When calling out to any one in a familiar way, again we use the article.

Eh! la femme! Eh! l'homme au poisson!

With proper names, we may use the article in the plural; it then implies characters of the same kind, as:

Les Alexandre et *les* César, ne valent pas *les* Cicéron ni *les* Newton.

Further remarks upon No. 11, page 3, and No. 22, page 6.

C'est *avec le* chêne que l'on construit les vaisseaux.	Il agit *avec* franchise, *avec* probité.
Ni l'or, *ni les* grandeurs, ne nous rendent heureux.	Nous *n'*avons *ni* argent, *ni* crédit.
Ni l'or que vous m'avez donné, &c.	

*Entre l'*honneur et l'intéret il ne faut pas balancer.	*Entre* amis, *Entre* homme.
*Sans l'*argent, il n'y auroit ni tant de vertus ni tant de vices.	Je suis *sans* amis, *sans* crédit.
*Sans l'*argent que vous m'avez donné, &c.	

Remarks on No. 26, page 7; No. 31, page 8; and 59, page 18, *Syntax.*

It may be observed here, as a farther illustration of the above cases, that *de* (only), between two nouns, makes, as it were, an adjective of the second noun, and, therefore, that the real and chief object in the mind is pointed out by the first noun, and qualified by the second; as, in *Un appartement* de *Roi,* the chief object is an *apartment,* the beauty of which is worthy of a king; whereas, in *l'appartement du Roi, Roi* is pointed out by the article as an individual who is the owner, and which individual serves also to distinguish that apartment from others. Hence, substantives which are compounded with *de* are generally preceded by the indefinite article *un,* and those which are joined with *du,* &c. are preceded by the definite article *le.*

Here follow a few sentences, exemplifying both cases:

Elle a *un* air *d'*affectation qui me déplait.	Evitez l'air *de l'*affectation.
Comblé *de* bienfaits.	Comblé *des* bienfaits les moins mérités.
Le Roi *de* France.	Le Roi des Français.
Il a besoin *de* livres.	Il a besoin des livres que vous lui avez promis.
Les vins *de* France. Les ports *d'*Angleterre.	Les avantages *de la* France. Les richesses *de l'*Angleterre.
Du poisson *de* mer.	Du poisson *de la* mer du Nord.
Une mémoire de faits.	La mémoire des faits est la plus brillante.

For examples on No. 21, page 6, see *Verbs attended by nouns,* &c.

CE. This pronoun is the root of all demonstrative pronouns.

Its chief use, when joined with *être* (*c'est*), is to point to the most important or emphatic word or words in the

sentence; which emphatic word ought immediately to follow *c'est.**

You *walk to London to-morrow,*
C'est *vous* qui allez demain à Londres.

You walk *to London to-morrow,*
C'est *à pié* que vous allez demain à Londres.

You walk to London *to-morrow,*
C'est *à Londres* que vous allez demain.

You walk to London to-morrow,
C'est *demain* que vous allez à Londres.

The same rule will take place with regard to the Interrogative.

Do you walk to London to-morrow?
Est-ce que vous allez demain à Londres?

Do you *walk to London to-morrow?*
Est-ce *vous* qui allez demain à Londres?

Do you walk *to London to-morrow?*
Est-ce *à pié* que vous allez demain à Londres?

Do you walk to London *to-morrow?*
Est-ce *à Londres* que vous allez demain?

Do you walk to London to-morrow?
Est-ce *demain* que vous allez à Londres!

By the following examples of *remarks, explanations,* and even *exclamations,* the learner will see what force *c'est*† gives to the sentence.

Desires are nothing but torments,
Ce sont des tourmens *que* les desirs.

Even knowing how to set about learning a language is a great deal,
C'est déjà *beaucoup que de* savoir étudier une langue.

Real goodness *makes true friends, and not talents alone,*
C'est *la vraie bonté* qui fait des amis, et non les talens seulement.

I owe you *all I possess,*
C'est *à vous* que je dois tout ce que je posséde.

I wish to speak to Mr. B.—*My* name is B., Sir.
Je voudrois parler à Mr. B.—C'est *moi,* Monsieur.

What a great man *Howard was!*
C'étoit *un grand homme* que Howard!

---

* Syntax, Nos. 146; also from No. 335 to 341, inclusive.
† With *c'est* we use *que* before a substantive, and *que de* before a verb.

What I tell you, is the truth,
Ce que je vous dis, c'est *la vérité.*

What he is most anxious for, is to become learned,
Ce qu'il desire le plus, c'est de *devenir savant.*

Your father *is the man I like best,*
L'homme que j'aime le mieux, c'est *votre père.*

That brother of yours is very *agreeable,*
C'est un *aimable* garçon que votre frère.

A friend is a treasure!
C'est *un tresor* qu'un ami!

A man must be very wicked *who does mischief for mischief's sake!*
C'est *être bien méchant* que de faire le mal pour l'amour du mal!

Any one may be happy *who will think himself so,*
C'est *être heureux* que de croire l'être.

That is what may be called acting a friendly part!
C'est, or Voilà ce qui s'appelle agir en ami!

England is the country for horse-racing,
C'est *en Angleterre* qu'il faut voir les courses de chevaux.

Meaning *because.*

If I have done wrong, it is because *I was not warned,*
Si j'ai mal fait, *c'est que* je n'ai pas été averti.

Before *Devoir* and *Sembler.*

That must be a very wicked man!
Ce doit être un bien méchant homme!

You seem rather vexed,
Vous êtes ce semble, un peu fâché.

In asking questions, to ascertain, *Est-ce.* (Synt. No. 306.)

Did this gentleman do that?
Est-ce monsieur qui a fait cela?

To *point to* the object, *Est-ce là.* (Synt. No. 307.)

Is that your house?
Est-ce là votre maison?

To shew *astonishment, Est-ce que,* before a verb. (Synt. No. 308.)

You are not married, are you!
Est-ce que vous êtes marié!

To denote previous knowledge, *N'est-ce pas.* (Synt. No. 309.)

Il pleut, *n'est-ce pas?*

To ascertain by the testimony of another, *N'est-ce pas que*. (Synt. No. 310.)

N'est-ce pas que la nouvelle est officielle?
La nouvelle est officielle, *n'est-ce pas?*

Difference made between *C'est* and *Il est*. (Synt. 339 to 341.)

Different Idioms formed by means of C'est *and* Il est.

C'EST.	IL EST.
C'est à .... à. It is the turn of .... to.	*Il est à*, implying *probability*.
C'est à mon frère *à* jouer, *It is my brother's turn to play.*	Il est à croire que nous aurons la paix, *It is probable we may have peace.*
Est-ce à moi *à* parler? *Is it my turn to speak?*	
C'est à .... de. It is the duty of .... to, &c.	*Il est de*, implying *duty*.
C'est à mon frère *de* prendre votre parti, *It is my brother's duty to take your part.*	*Il est d'*un honnête homme de faire son devoir, *It is the part of an honest man to do his duty.*
Est-ce à moi *de* faire cela? *Is it my part to do that?*	*Il en est de .... comme de*, implying *comparison*.
	Il en est de la poësie *comme de* la peinture, *It is with poetry as with painting.*

Concord. As the difficulty of Concord consists in the agreement of those parts of speech which are susceptible of inflexions, we beg to refer the learner to the Article, Adjective, Pronoun, and Verbs; but chiefly to the Adjective, Synt. Nos. 63—65; and to the Verb, with regard to its Nominative, Synt. Nos. 206—212, as well as to its Participle past, Nos. 247—254.

We shall merely add the following rule:

A verb following such an expression as *un* or *une des*, "one of the," with a superlative, is not only to be in the subjunctive, but also in the plural.

C'est un des meilleurs hommes qui existent,
He is one of the best men who exist.

Son règne est un des plus longs qui aient été rapportés dans l'histoire,
His reign is one of the longest which have been related in history.

CONDITIONAL. The *conditional* likewise, besides its usual import, in French, also means surprise, astonishment.

Comment j'aurois travaillé toute ma vie pour si peu !
What! shall I then have worked all my lifetime for so little!

Tu aurois fait cela, toi!
Could you ever be guilty of that!

CONJUNCTIONS (list of), Prepositions, and Adverbial Expressions, exhibiting at one view their formation* and difference of meanings.

Afin de .....*in order to*—afin de plaire.
afin que .....*in order to*—afin que je plaise. (Subj. Synt. No. 367.)
enfin.....*in short, to conclude.*
à la fin .....*at last, at length, at the end.*
abord (*subst.*) .....*access.*
d'abord (*adv.*).....*first, at first.*
ailleurs.....*elsewhere, somewhere else.*
d'ailleurs.....*besides.*
arrière (*subst.*).....*stern* (a sea term)
en* arrière .....*behind* (it indicates motion.) Marcher, &c.
ainsi.....*thus, so.*
ainsi que .....*as well as* (meaning including.) Ex. Il sera puni ainsi que vous.
aussi.....*also, as, therefore.* When *aussi* begins a sentence, it means "therefore." (Synt. No. 398.)

---

* In order to understand the formation of the above conjunctions, &c. it will be advisable for the learner to bear in mind the original significations of *à, de, pour, avec, par, en.*

A, *to, at,* indicates "motion towards," or "stopping at a place."

DE, *of, from,* shews "connexion," when placed after the preposition, and "distance" when before.

POUR, *for, for the purpose of.*

AVEC, *with, in company with.*

PAR, *by, through.* It implies "coercion," or "passing through," therefore "motion."

EN implies *by means of,* "the manner and time" in which any thing is done, also "motion."

Observe, also, that a simple preposition is placed before a substantive. When accompanied by *de,* it is placed before a verb in the infinitive. When accompanied by *que,* it is placed before a verb, either in the indicative, or in the subjunctive. (See Synt. 366 and 367.) Ex. *Avant le jour.—Avant de partir.—Avant que je parte.*

avant .....*before* (applied to time—*see* devant.)
avant de .....*before* (before an infinitive.) Ex. Avant de parler.
avant que.....*before* (before a subj.) Ex. Avant que je sois, &c.
auparavant (*adv.*) ....*before* (time.) Ex. Vous partirez, mais faites cela auparavant.
Bien.....*well, very ;* très bien, fort bien, *very well ;* assez bien, *pretty well.*
bien que .....*although.* (Subj. Synt. No. 367.)
si bien que .....*so that, in such a manner that.*
aussi bien que .....*as well as.*
eh bien.....*well!*
ou bien.....*or else.*
Comme.....*as, like.* (It is often used for aussi..que. Ex. Il est grand comme vous.
comme.....*how!* when exclamative. Ex. Comme vous courez! (*See* que.)
comme de coutume / comme à l'ordinaire } ..*as usual.*
car (*conj.*) .....*for, because.* (*See* puisque *and* parceque.)
c'est.....*it is.*
c'est pourquoi .....*therefore.*
c'est-à-dire .....*that is to say.*
c'est que ..... / c'est à cause que } ....*it is because.*
combien (de) .....*how much, how many* (affirmatively and interrogatively.) Synt. No. 242.
comment .....*how* (affirmatively, interrogatively, and exclamatively.) Ex.
Vous savez comment je fais cela.
Comment faites-vous cela? Comment faire?
Comment! Est-il mort?
contraire (au) .....*on the contrary.*
cause .....*cause.*
à cause de .....*on account of* (only before nouns.)
à cause que .....*because* (only before verbs in the ind.—parceque is preferable.)
pour cause .....This expression is thus used: Je l'ai fait, "et pour cause."—*I did it, and "I had my reasons for it."*
côté .....*side.*
à côté (*adv.*) .....*near it, by the side of it.* Ex. Je demeure à côté—Voici mon chapeau, mettez le vôtre à côté. (Synt. No. 107.)
à côté de .....*by the side of.* Ex. Venez vous asseoir à côté de moi.
de côté.....*aside, on one side*—mettre.—*See* de, note, p. 26.

de tous côtés .....*on all sides.*
du côté de .....*on the side of.*
de côté et d'autres ....*here and there, every where.*
Dans (*prep.*) .....*in, into.* (*See* Prepositions.)
dedans (*adv.*) .....*in it, into it.* (Synt. No. 107)
en dedans .....*within-side.* When in opposition to *en déhors*, without, or outside; as *en* gives an idea of motion, *en dedans* implies that the object has "been placed" within. Ex. Tourner les pieds en dedans, *To turn one's feet in*, J'ai fermé la porte, et j'ai laissé la clé en dedans.
au dedans .....*within, in the inside.* In opposition to *au déhors*, at the outside, and contrary to *en dedans*; it is stationary. (*See* à, note, p. 26.) Ex. Le mal est au dedans, *the ailment is inwardly.* Les richesses au dedans et la misère au déhors.
là dedans ....*in that place*, (pointing to the inside of a place.)
derrière .....*behind.*
le derrière .....*the back of a house, &c.* Ex. Je suis logé sur le derrière.
dès .....*from, at, from the very moment*, (before a subst.)
dès que .....*as soon as, from the moment*, (before a verb.)
devant .....*before*, (used when speaking of place. *See* avant.) Ex. Vous êtes devant le feu.
le devant .....*the front* (of a house, &c. *See* derrière.)
au devant de (aller) ..*to go and meet any one, to anticipate.*
ci-devant .....*that formerly was, above mentioned.*
par devant .....*In front* (with motion.) Attachez ce ruban par devant. It is also a law term. Par devant notaire, *before a notary.*
sens devant derrière ..*the wrong side before.*
donc.....*then, therefore*, implies conclusion, result. See *puis* and *alors*. Beware not to use it for *alors* or *puis*, when enumerating facts. Ex. Vous comprenez donc bien ce que je vous ai expliqué. Vous avez agi contre les ordres de votre maitre; donc vous avez tort, *You have acted against your master's orders, therefore, &c.*
Egard .....*regard, respect.*
à l'égard de.....*with regard to, or respect to.*
à cet égard .....*in this respect.*
encore .....*again.* J'ai encore parlé à Mr. B.—*I again spoke to Mr. B.*
still. Quoique vieux, il est encore fort—*although old, he is still strong.*

encore .....*yet.* Je ne l'ai pas encore vu—*I have not yet seen him.*
besides. Qui encore ?—*Who besides ?*
some more. Donnez moi encore du pain—*give me some more bread.*
only, but { Encore si je pouvois la revoir—*if I could but see her again.* / Encore si vous m'en aviez averti—*if you had only warned me.*

exception.....*exception.*
à l'exception de .....*except.*
Fois .....*time,* (duration is not implied.)
une fois, deux fois, &c...*once, twice, &c.*
toutes les fois .....*every time.*
toutes les fois que ....*every time that.*
toutefois .....*however.* (*See* Synonymes.)
autrefois .....*formerly.*
quelquefois .....*sometimes.*
force (*subst.*) .....*force, strength.*
à force de.....*by dint of.*
hors .....*except,* (before a subst.)
hors de.....*out of ;* hors de la maison,—de saison, &c. hors de soi, *beside oneself.*
déhors .....*out, out of doors.*
en déhors.....*without side, out.* In opposition to *en dedans.* Ex. Tournez les pieds en déhors, *turn your feet out.*
au déhors.....*outside,* (stationary. *See* au dedans.)
hormis .....*except ;* tout est perdu, hormis l'honneur.
Jamais .....*never, ever.*
à jamais .....*for ever.*
jusque .....*till, until,* (before a subst.) for time or place. Ex. Depuis ici jusque là.
jusqu'à.....*as far as, till.*
jusqu'à présent .....*till now.*
jusqu'à ce que.....*till, until,* (before a verb in the subj.)
jusqu'à quand ? .....*how long ?*
jusqu'où ?.....*how far ? whereabouts ?*
Lieu.....*place, spot.*
au lieu de .....*instead of, in lieu of.*
au lieu que .....*whereas.*
lors....du, de la, &c. ....*at the time when.*
alors.....*then, at that time.* (*See* donc.)
pour lors .....*then,* denotes a succession of facts.
dès lors .....*from that time.*
lorsque .....*when,* (synonymous with *quand.*)
Gré .....*will, consent, liking.*
au gré de.....*to the liking of ;* à mon gré, &c.
bon gré mal gré .....*whether one likes it or not.* Ex. Il le fera bon gré malgré.

de bon gré, de mauvais gré ..... *willingly, unwillingly.*
malgré ..... *in spite of.* Ex. Malgré les ordres.
malgré que ..... *although.* (before a verb in the subj.)
Même ..... { *same.* (when before a subst.) Le même homme. *very.* (when after a subst.) L'homme même. *even.* (when with a verb.) Elle a même pleuré.
milieu ..... *middle.*
au milieu de ..... *in the middle* or *midst.*
moins ..... *less.*
à moins ..... *for less.*
à moins de ..... *unless.* (before an inf.)
à moins que ..... *unless.* (before a subj.)
pour le moins ..... *at least.* } both referring to quantity or
au moins ..... *at least.* } number.
du moins ..... *at least, at any rate.* (*See* Synonymes.)
néanmoins ..... *nevertheless.*
Or ..... *but, now.* (used in reasoning.) Ex.—Telle est la règle; *or* vous l'avez enfreinte, donc vous avez tort.
ou, (conj.) ..... *or.*
où, (adv.) ..... *where.*
d'où vient que ? ..... *whence is it that ?*
outre ..... *besides.* (with subst.) Ex. Outre mes livres, &c.
outre que ..... *besides.* (with verbs.) Ex. Outre que vous avez mal fait, &c.
Part ..... *share.*
de ma part, de ta, &c... *from me or thee,* (or) *with my compliments, &c.*
de la part de ..... *with the compliments of—*
à part ..... *apart, aside.* Mettre—
de part et d'autre .... *on each side.* Ex. Ils donneront des ôtages de part et d'autre.
de toutes parts ..... *on all sides.*
quelque part ..... *somewhere.*
autre part ..... *somewhere else.*
de part en part ..... *through and through.*
Peu ..... *little,* (or) *few.* (for *quantity* or *number.*)
dans peu } ..... *in a short time.*
sous peu }
depuis peu ..... *of late.*
plus ..... *more.*
ne plus ..... *no more.*
pas plus que ..... *not more than.*
plus de ..... *no more.* (when beginning a sentence,) Ex. Plus de pain, *no more bread.*
près ..... *near.*
près de ..... *near.* Près de Londres.
de près ..... *near,* (at a very short distance from,) Ex. Regardez de près, *look close.*

à cela près .....*that excepted,* A l'argent près, *money excepted.*
à peu près .....*nearly.*
auprès, (adv.) .....*near it, them.* (Synt. No. 107.)
auprès de, (prep.) ....*near.* do.
ici près.....*just close to this place.*
après .....*after.*
d'après.....*from, after, according.*—Ex. D'après nature.
prêt à, (adj.) .....*ready to.*
Proche, (de) .....*near.* (It implies that the object is closer than *près* does.) It is used for time and place.
propos .....*discourse, talk.*
à propos .....*seasonably.*
à propos de .....*as we are talking of.*
bien (or) mal-à-propos..*very seasonably,* or *unseasonably.*
puis (adv.) .....*then, next,*—(is used in relating a series of circumstances.) Ex. J'allai chez moi, puis je me mis à écrire, ensuite je me couchai.
puis que .....*since, on account of, owing to,* (never used for time.)
depuis .....*since,* is used when alluding to time and place.—Ex. Depuis son enfance. Depuis ici jusque là.
depuis que .....*since,* (for time.) Depuis que je ne vous ai vu.
depuis quand? .....*how long since?*
pendant .....*during,*—Pendant mon absence.
pendant que .....*while,*—pendant que vous faites votre ouvrage.
cependant .....*however.*
Quand (adv.) .....*when* (governs the future, Synt. No. 272.)
quand ..... } quand, } il me verroit mourir de faim.
quand même .... } *even though,* quand-même,
quand bien même } quand-bien même.
que .....*that.* (See *que,* appendix.)
parceque .....*because.*
de ce que .....*from what, on account.*—Ex. De ce que vous dites cela, il ne s'en suit pas que vous ayez raison.
à ce que .....*according to what, &c.*—A ce que je vois, vous faites bien vos affaires, *according to what I see, your business goes on well.*
en ce que.....*because.* Ex. Il me blame en ce que je ne puis réussir.
quoique .....*although.* (subj.)
Rebours (à) .....*the contrary way.*
Sans.....*without.*
que .....*without.* Ex. Sans que je fasse du bruit.

si .....*if.*
si fait .....*yes.* I beg your pardon, (familiar.) We use it when contradicting in the affirmative.—Vous n'avez pas écrit. Si fait.
sorte .....*sort.*
de sorte que.....*so that.*
suite.....*following, past.*
ensuite .....*afterwards.*
par la suite .....*afterwards.*
soit .....*let it be so.*
soit—soit—ou .....*whether, or,* Ex. *Soit que* vous le fassiez, ou non.—Soit que vous ne le fassiez pas.—Soit intérêt, Soit clémence, Soit par intérêt, Soit par clémence.
suivant.....*acording to.*
que .....*according as.*
sur (prep.) .....*on, upon.*
dessus (adv.) .....*on it, upon it.* (Synt. No. 107.) Voici une table ; mettez votre chapeau dessus.—It is also taken substantively,—Le dessus, *the upper part, the upper-hand.*
en-dessus.....*upon it,* (pointing to the interior, and motion implied ;) pointing to some shelves, for instance, we should say,—ne mettez pas votre chapeau en dessus, mettez le en dessous.
au dessus .....*over, above.* It shews the object is at a distance, but stationary,—Il demeure ici, et nous demeurons au-dessus.
au-dessus de .....*over, above.* Ex. L'étoile polaire est au-dessus de nos têtes.
par dessus .....*over.* It denotes motion. Ex. (speaking of a wooden bar put across.) Si vous ne pouvez pas sauter par dessus, passez par dessous.
ci-dessus .....*above, overhead, mentioned above.*—Il loge ci-dessus ;—ce que j'ai dit ci-dessus.
là dessus.....*upon. that, thereupon* —Upon that subject.
sans dessus dessous ....*topsy turvy.*
par dessus tout .....*above all things.*
surtout.....*above all.*
sur le champ.....*immediately.*
sous (prep.).....*under.*
dessous .....*under it.*
en dessous .....*underneath.*
au dessous .....*underneath.*
au dessous de.....*below.*
par dessous .....*underneath.*
ci dessous.....*below, mentioned below.*
là-dessous .....*under there.*

The same explanation given for *sur* and its derivatives, will apply to *sous* and its derivatives.

sus .....*upon* (obsolete.)
en sus (adv.) .....*extra*, in addition to. Ex. Il faut payer une guinée en sus.
en sus de (prep.) ....*extra*, in addition to. Ex. En sus de ce que j'ai déjà payé, il faudra donner une guinée.
Tant.....*so much, so many.*
tant que .....*as long as.* (Synt. No. 272.)
autant .....*as much, as many.*
d'autant plus, *or* d'autant
moins .....*so much the more* or *less.* (Synt. No. 80.)
tant mieux, tant pis....*so much the better, so much the worse.*
tandis.....*while.*
tandis que.....*while.*
tard (adv.).....*late.* Il est tard, il vient tard. (See *tard* and *en retard*, Synt. No. 365.)
trop tard .....*too late.*
en retard .....*late.* Ex. Nous sommes en retard.
toujours .....*always.* Ex. Il est toujours malade, *he is always ill.*
toujours .....*still.* Il est toujours malade, *he is still ill.*
tôt .....*soon.*
aussi tôt .....*immediately.*
aussi tôt que .....*as soon as.*
si tôt .....*so soon.*
plutôt .....*sooner, rather.*
plutôt que .....*rather, or sooner than.*
tantôt .....*by and by, this evening.*
bientôt .....*soon, very soon.*
trop tôt .....*too soon.*
tout .....*all, quite, the whole.*
tous deux, tous trois, &c.*both, all three, &c.*
tous les deux, les trois &c.*both, all three, &c.*
tout-à-fait .....*quite.*
tout-à-coup .....*all of a sudden.*
tout-d'un-coup .....*all at once.*
tout-au plus.....*at most.*
tout (après).....*after all.*
tout (rien du) .....*absolutely nothing.*
tout bas .....*quite low.*
tout-de-bon .....*in earnest, earnestly.*
tout-de-même .....*just the same.*
tout le monde .....*every body.*
tous les jours .....*every day.*
toutes les fois .....*every time.*
tout à l'heure .....*presently, by and by.*
tout de suite .....*immediately.*
tour .....*turn.*
autour de .....*about, round.*
a l'entour.....*round about.*

travers ..... *extent across.*
à travers le ..... *thro'.* (shewing no resistance.)
au travers de ..... *do.* (shewing resistance.)
en travers ..... *across.*
de travers ..... *on one side, awry.*
trop ..... *too, too much, too many.*
de trop ..... *too much, too many.* Ex. Vous êtes de trop, *you are not wanted.*
Vérité ..... *truth.*
en vérité! ..... *indeed!* (when expressive of *assurance, surprise* and *doubt.*) Ex. En verité, j'ai compris ce que vous m'avez dit.
à la vérité ..... *It is true, to be sure, it must be admitted,* or *allowed that,*—à la vérité, (*or* il est vrai que,) je ne savois pas ce qui s'étoit passé.
vers ..... *towards.*—(*vers* is used for *time* and *place.*) Vers Londres, *towards London.* Vers l'an 1785.
envers ..... *towards. Envers* is always used figuratively, Ex. Soyez poli envers les dames, *be polite to the ladies.* (see Synt. No. 241.)
vu ..... *considering.*—Vu la cherté des vivres, je m'étonne que vous puissiez vivre avec si peu,—*considering the high prices of provisions, I wonder you can live upon so little.* Vu son âge, *considering his age.*
vu que (with a verb) .. *considering,*—Ex. *Vu qu'*il connoit les affaires, je m'étonne qu'il se soit laissé attraper.

EN. As this word has been treated of, in the Syntax, Nos. 95—97, as a pronoun, we shall here give a few sentences, which, by means of this word, become idiomatic.

Où *en* êtes*-vous? *or* où en êtes vous resté?	*Whereabouts are you?* (concerning any subject; reading, writing, or any business whatever.)
J'irai à la campagne, et là *je m'en donnerai.*	*I shall go in the country, and there I shall enjoy myself.*
Je suis bien fatigué, *je n'en puis plus.*	*I am quite knocked up with fatigue.*

* *Ou êtes vous?* without *en*, means "where is your person, where are you standing or sitting," in the literal sense. *En*, in fact, in the sentence above, and in the following, implies an ellipsis which may generally be supplied by the expressions, "concerning this," "of the object in question," &c.

Ces gens *en savoient* trop pour ajouter foi aux contes que vous leur débitiez.	*Those people had too much experience, or were too knowing, to believe the stories you told them.*
J'en ai été quitte pour des remontrances.	*They let me off with a lecture.*
Je *n'en reviens* pas! comment vous vous êtes échappé!	*I wonder at it! How is it possible you could escape!*
Il *en a* dans l'aîle.	*He is caught or bit.*
Il faudra bien *en passer* par là.	*You must put up with that.*
Nous en usons avec vous comme vous *en usez* avec nous.	*We act towards you as you act towards us.*
Eh bien, après tous ses discours, où veut-il donc *en venir*?	*Well, what is he aiming at with his speeches!*
Ils finirent par *en venir aux mains.*	*They, at last, came to blows.*
Je lui *en veux* de ce qu'il s'est conduit de cette manière.	*I owe him a grudge for his having behaved so.*

English Expressions, (a few), or Anglicisms, to be avoided.

To know may be translated by *savoir* or *connoître*. (*See* Synonymes.)

Female is never translated by *femelle* but when speaking of animals, birds, or fishes:—use *femme*, dame, demoiselle.

For *people*, meaning *company*, use *gens, monde.*

To ask a question is, in French, "Faire une question," not "demander une question."

Translate *to hear* by *apprendre*, when it denotes *being informed.*

Very is often used in English in answer to such a question as this: "Are you very well? *Yes, very.*" Do not say *très* by itself, but repeat *très bien.*

To beg or *to desire* any one to., "Prier quelqu'un de, or demander à quelqu'un de," &c.

Country, meaning a kingdom, &c. in French, is *pays;* meaning out of town, *campagne*, as: *allerà la campagne;* meaning native land, *patrie.*

Apology is, in French, *excuse*, not *apologie.* To apologize, *faire des excus s.*

Happy, meaning glad, is *ais, content, ravi, enchanté.*

Relation parent—*parents*, in English, *père* and *mère.*

To take any body, any where, *mener* or *conduire*, not *prendre.*

To be warm or *cold.* *See* Idioms.

Mener, to lead, to take. *Amener*, to bring with one, (only by shewing the way.) *Emmener*, to take one away.

Porter, to carry. *Apporter*, to bring, (by carrying.) *Emporter*, to carry away.

To trouble, donner de la peine.

To disturb, déranger.

To surprise (with a sudden shock) troubler.

To walk for pleasure; *faire une promenade;* for business, *Marcher, faire du chemin.*—*To walk*, in opposition to *to ride*, is *aller à pied.*

To do, in the sense of *to be sufficient, to fit, &c.*, is, in French, *suffire, aller, être bien, &c.* as: *Will that do?* Cela suffit-il? &c. but never cela fera-t-il?

Such expressions as "I have cut my hand," "You have trod upon my foot," are *Je me suis coupé la main, &c.* Syntax, No. 108.

Voilà is used when the object is in view, and pointed to. *Il y a* merely implies *there is, there exists.*

To sleep, referring to the "spot or bed in which one lays," should be translated by *coucher*, and not by *dormir*. Ex. "In which room do you sleep?" *Dans quelle chambre couchez-vous?*

To look at, is *regarder*, (not *regarder à.*)

To look for, is *chercher* (not *chercher pour.*

FUTURE. The *Future* tense in French, besides its usual acceptation, often implies doubt, surmise, and conjecture; it is expressed in English by a past tense.

Qu'ai-je fait de ma lettre? oh, je l'aurai sans doute mise dans mon porte-feuille—*What have I done with my letter? I dare say I put it into my pocket-book.*

Quelqu'un sera peut-être venu, et ne me voyant point ici aura cru que, &c.—*Perhaps some one came in, and not seeing me at home, thought that, &c.*

GENDER. A list of nouns *masculine*, though ending with an *e* mute.

Abîme,	*abyss.*	bitume,	*bitumen.*
acte,	*act.*	bronze,	*cast copper.*
adverbe,	*an adverb.*	buste,	*bust.*
adultère,	*adultery.*		
aigle,	*eagle.*	Câble,	*cable.*
albâtre,	*alabaster.*	cadavre,	*a corpse.*
ambre,	*amber.*	cadre,	*frame.*
ange,	*angel.*	calibre,	*size.*
angle,	*angle.*	calice,	*chalice.*
antidote,	*antidote.*	calme,	*calm.*
antre,	*a cave.*	camphre,	*camphire.*
arbitre,	*umpire.*	cantique,	*spiritual song.*
arbre,	*a tree.*	caprice,	*whim.*
arbuste,	*shrub.*	caractère,	*character.*
artifice,	*artifice.*	casque,	*a helmet.*
asthme,	*asthma.*	catalogue,	*a catalogue.*
astre,	*star.*	cautère,	*an issue.*
asile,	*sanctuary.*	centre,	*centre.*
auspice,	*auspice.*	cercle,	*circle.*
axe,	*axis.*	chanvre,	*hemp.*
		chapitre,	*a chapter.*
Bénéfice,	*a living.*	chiffre,	*a cypher.*
blâme,	*blame.*	cidre,	*cyder.*

cierge,	*wax taper.*	équilibre,	*equilibrium.*
cigne,	*a swan.*	équinoxe,	*equinox.*
cilice,	*hair-cloth.*	esclandre,	*a bustle.*
cylindre,	*cylinder.*	escompte,	*discount.*
cimeterre,	*cimeter.*	évangile,	*gospel.*
clistère,	*a clyster.*	exercice,	*exercise*
cloître,	*cloister.*	exode,	*exodus.*
code,	*code.*		
coffre,	*a trunk.*	Faîte,	*top.*
colloque,	*a conference.*	faste,	*ostentation.*
commerce,	*trade.*	fiacre,	*hackney coach.*
concile,	*council.*	flegme,	*phlegm.*
concombre,	*cucumber.*	fleuve,	*river.*
cône,	*a cone.*	frontispiece,	*frontispiece.*
congre,	*a conger.*		
compte,	*an account.*	Genièvre.	*juniper.*
conte,	*tale.*	genre,	*gender.*
contraste,	*contrast.*	germe,	*bud.*
coude,	*elbow.*	geste,	*gesture.*
couvercle,	*lid.*	glaive,	*a sword.*
crépuscule,	*twilight.*	globe,	*a globe.*
crêpe,	*a crape.*	globule,	*globule.*
crible,	*sieve.*	gouffre,	*whirlpool.*
crime,	*crime.*		
cube,	*cube.*	Havre,	*haven.*
cuivre,	*copper.*	homicide,	*a murder.*
culte,	*worship.*	hôte,	*landlord.*
Dédale,	*maze.*	Jeûne,	*fast.*
délire,	*delirium.*	insecte,	*insect.*
désastre,	*disaster.*	isthme,	*isthmus.*
désordre,	*disorder.*		
dialogue,	*dialogue.*	Labyrinthe,	*labyrinth.*
diamètre,	*diameter.*	légume,	*pulse.*
dilemme,	*dilemma.*	lierre,	*ivy.*
diocèse,	*diocese.*	lièvre,	*hare.*
divorce,	*divorce.*	linge,	*linen.*
dogme,	*dogma.*	lucre,	*profit.*
domaine,	*domain.*	lustre,	*lustre.*
domicile,	*abode.*	luxe,	*luxury.*
doute,	*doubt.*		
		Mâle,	*male.*
Ebène,	*ebony.*	maléfice,	*witchcraft.*
échange,	*exchange.*	manifeste,	*manifesto.*
édifice,	*edifice.*	marbre,	*marble.*
éloge,	*praise.*	martyre,	*martyrdom.*
émétique,	*emetic.*	masque,	*a mask.*
empire,	*empire.*	massacre,	*a slaughter.*
emplâtre,	*plaister.*	membre.	*member.*
épisode,	*episode.*	mélange,	*mixture.*

mensonge,	*a lie.*
mérite,	*merit.*
merle,	*a blackbird.*
météore,	*meteor.*
meuble,	*furniture.*
meurtre,	*murder.*
ministère,	*ministry.*
mobile,	*motion.*
modèle,	*model.*
monarque,	*monarch.*
monde,	*the world.*
monastère,	*monastery.*
monopole,	*monopoly.*
monstre,	*monster.*
mystère,	*mystery.*
Navire,	*ship.*
négoce,	*trade.*
nombre,	*number.*
Ongle,	*nail.*
opprobre,	*reproach.*
ordre,	*order.*
organe,	*an organ.*
orge,	*barley.*
Pacte,	*a bargain.*
paradoxe,	*a paradox.*
parricide,	*parricide.*
participe,	*participle.*
patrimoine,	*patrimony.*
peigne,	*a comb.*
pêne,	*a bolt.*
peuple,	*people.*
phénomène,	*phenomenon.*
plâtre,	*plaister.*
poivre,	*pepper.*
pôle,	*pole.*
portique,	*portico.*
pouce,	*thumb.*
précepte,	*precept.*
précipice,	*precipice.*
préjudice,	*prejudice.*
prestige,	*an imposture.*
prétexte,	*a pretence.*
principe,	*a principle.*
prodige,	*prodigy.*
proverbe,	*proverb.*
pupître,	*a desk.*
Régime,	*a diet.*
règne,	*reign.*
remède,	*remedy.*
reptile,	*a reptile.*
reproche,	*reproach.*
reste,	*rest.*
rêve,	*a dream.*
rhume,	*a rheum.*
risque,	*a risk.*
Sable,	*sand.*
sabre,	*broad-sword.*
sacrifice,	*sacrifice.*
sacerdoce,	*priest-hood.*
salpêtre,	*salt-petre.*
scandale,	*scandal.*
sceptre,	*a sceptre.*
schisme,	*a schism.*
scrupule,	*a scruple.*
seigle,	*rye.*
service,	*service.*
sexe,	*a sex.*
siècle,	*an age.*
signe,	*a sign.*
songe,	*dream.*
souffle,	*breath.*
soufre,	*sulphur.*
spectre,	*a ghost.*
style,	*a style.*
subside,	*subsidy.*
sucre,	*sugar.*
supplice,	*a torment.*
symbole,	*a symbol.*
synode,	*a synod.*
synonyme,	*a synonima.*
Télescope,	*telescope.*
terme,	*a term.*
texte,	*a text.*
théâtre,	*theatre.*
triangle,	*triangle.*
trône,	*a throne.*
tropique,	*tropic.*
trouble,	*trouble.*
tube,	*a tube.*
tumulte,	*tumult.*
Vacarme,	*uproar.*
ventre,	*belly.*
verbe,	*verb.*
verre,	*glass.*

vestibule,	*entry.*	ulcère,	*ulcer.*
vice,	*vice.*		
vinaigre,	*vinegar.*	Zèle,	*zeal,*
volume,	*volume.*	zéphyre,	*zephyr.*

N. B.—There are some more, but they are so little used, that I have not thought proper to insert them.

GOVERNMENT of Verbs, Adjectives, and Adverbs.

Although we endeavoured, in the Syntax, (pages 82 to 99,) to give a clear idea of the government of verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, in French; yet the same verbs, &c. with different prepositions, assume so many diverse shades of meanings,* that we have thought it proper to give a list of them, to be used by way of reference.

s'abaisser (*to stoop to*) devant *quelqu'un*, à *une chose*, à (*or* jusqu'à) *faire.*
abandonné (*abandoned, resigned*) de *quelqu'un*, à *une chose.*
abonder (*to abound in, or with*) en *hommes*, en *fruits*, &c.
aborder (*to come up to*, or *with*) quelqu'un, or à un endroit.
aboutir (*to end*) à *une chose*, à *un endroit*, à *faire.*
s'absenter (*to absent from*) d'auprès de *quelqu'un*, d'*un lieu.*
abuser (*to make an ill use of*) d'*une chose*: s'abuser (*to be mistaken.*)
accabler (*to overwhelm*) une personne d'une chose: *accablé de* douleur, &c. *accablant.*
accès:—*avoir accès* (to have access) *auprès de* (or *chez*) quelqu'un, *dans* une maison, &c.
s'accommoder de *quelque chose*, to make one's-self contented with *something*: s'accommoder (*to agree*) avec *quelqu'un* sur *une chose*, or d'*une chose.*

---

* However difficult the above list may, at first sight, appear, to be remembered, the learner may rest assured, that by bearing in mind, as we have already recommended in the formation of ADVERBIAL PHRASES, the full significations of those prepositions which are used as governments, he will easily become familiar with all the shades of meanings above-mentioned. (See Synt. Nos. 217 to 223; and *Appendix*, FRENCH PREP.) The following list will also be a guide.

à, implies an object in view, an action to be done.
de .. a cause, an origin.
pour .. an intention, for the sake of.
par .. motion, coercion.
avec .. in company with, points to the instrument.
sur .. resting on, reliance upon.
envers, behaviour to.
auprès, making interest with, interceding for. Also *d'auprès*, implying "leaving any one with whom one has been staying."
contre, opposition, ill-will against.
en is used with "abounding, fertile in."

accompagner *une chose* d'*une autre*, to let *a thing* be followed by *another:* accompagner *quelqu'un* avec le *piano.*

accord :—*tomber d'accord*, or *demeurer d'accord* (to agree) *avec* quelqu'un d'une chose : *être d'accord* (to have agreed), and *s'accorder* (to agree) *avec* quelqu'un *sur* une chose.

accoutumé :—*être accoutumé* (to be used) *à* une personne, *à* une chose, *à* faire: *s'accoutumer à* une chose, *à faire.*

accrocher (*to hang* or *hook*) une chose *à* un clou : *sa robe* s'accrocha à (*hung by*) une épine : *s'accrocher* (to hold by) *à* une chose.

accueil :—*faire accueil à* quelqu'un, *to receive any* one *politely.*

*s'*accuser d'*une chose*, d'*avoir* fait, *or* de ce qu'*on a* fait.

*s'*acharner, *or* être acharné (*to be irritated*, or *cruelly bent upon*) contre *quelqu'un* sur *sa proie*, au *combat*, à *faire.*

acquiescer (*to assent*) à *une chose*, à *faire*, à ce qu'*on fasse.*

*s'*acquitter (*to acquit one's self*) envers *quelqu'un*, de *sa promesse*, &c.

*s'*addresser à *quelqu'un*, to address *or* apply to *one.*

affaire :—*faire son affaire* d'une chose (*to take* a thing *upon one's-self*) : avoir affaire (*to want*) d'*une chose*, or d'*une personne. J'ai bien affaire* (an expression of scorn, *Great need I have indeed*) d'*une chose*, d'*une personne*, de *faire*, qu'on *fasse.* Avoir affaire *avec* quelqu'un, to have an intercourse, or business *with* any one. *Avoir affaire à* quelqu'un, *to have to deal with* one, *to have something to transact with* one.

âge :—*être en âge de* faire (*to be old enough to* do), *hors d'âge de* faire (*not of an age to* do :) *âgé de* quatre ans, four years *of age*, or *old.*

air :—*avoir l'air* (to look like) *d'*une personne, or *d'*une chose : vous *avez l'air de* souffrir (you *look as if* you suffered.)

aller, *to go* : aller *faire* (to go *and do*, or to be going *to do* :) aller *chercher* (to go *for*, to go *and fetch*, or to go *and look for* :) aller *trouver quelqu'un* (to go *to one* :) aller *chez quelqu'un* (to go *to a person's house, apartment*, &c. :) cette robe *va bien à* votre sœur (that gown *fits*, or *becomes* your sister :) *il y va de* votre fortune (your fortune *depends upon it*, or *is endangered by it.*)

allier (*to unite*) une chose *avec* une autre : *s'allier* (to marry, to form an alliance with) *à* or *avec* une famille, &c.

apercevoir (*to see*) quelqu'un, *or* une chose : *s'apercevoir* (to discover) *d'*une chose, *or qu'on fait.*

applaudir (*to clap, to applaud,*) *and* applaudir à (*to applaud*, to shew approbation :) *s'*applaudir *de* faire, or *de ce qu'*on fait, to be pleased with, &c.

apprendre (*to learn*) de (*from*) quelqu'un, une chose, *à* faire : (*to teach*) *à* quelqu'un, une chose, or à faire.

apprêter *à* rire *à* quelqu'un, *to give any* one *room to* laugh : s'apprêter *à* faire (to prepare *for* doing.)

approcher (*to bring* or *put near*) une chose *du* feu, &c. : *s'approcher* (to come near) *de* quelqu'un, or *d'*une chose : *approcher* (to be almost like) *d'*une chose.

appuyer (*to dwell*) sur *une chose* : s'appuyer sur (*to lean*), être appuyé (*to recline*) sur (*upon*), contre (*against*) une chose : appuyer un avis, une motion (*to second, to corroborate.*)

armer (*to arm*) quelqu'un *d'*un bâton, *contre* quelqu'un : *s'armer d'*une chose, *de* courage, &c. *contre* les accidens, *contre* le froid, &c.

arracher (*to wrench*, or *force from*) à *quelqu'un*, or des mains de *quelqu'un*, une chose, *d'*un endroit : (*to rescue*) quelqu'un, *à* la mort, *à* un danger, &c. *s'arracher*, or *être arraché à* (or *d'auprès de*) quelqu'un, or *à* une chose.

ascendant, *influence* : avoir de l'*ascendant sur* une personne, *sur* une chose.

assister (*to assist*, or *help*) quelqu'un *de* sa bourse : assister à un dîner, à une assemblée, &c. (*to attend.*)

associer (*to associate*) quelqu'un *à* (in) un emploi : *s'associer* avec *quelqu'un.*

assouvir (*to satiate*) sa cruauté : *assouvir* un animal *de* (with) chair : *s'assouvir de* carnage.

assurer *à* quelqu'un une chose, *avoir* vu, or *qu'on a* vu : *assurer* quelqu'un *de* sa reconnoissance, &c.

atteindre (*to hit*) quelqu'un *d'un coup de* (with a) pierre : *atteindre* (to equal) une personne : *atteindre* (to reach, or come to) *à* une chose : *atteint* (afflicted) *de* maladie : *atteint* (accused) *de* trahison : *donner atteinte* (to touch, to hurt) *à* une chose; *à* la réputation de quelqu'un.

attendre (*to wait for, to want*) une chose, une personne (or *après* une chose, *après* une personne) *attendre* quelqu'un *à* dîner : *attendre* (to expect, hope for) une chose *de* quelqu'un : *s'attendre* (to depend upon, to expect) *à* quelqu'un (or *que* quelqu'un fera) *à* une chose, *à* faire.

attendrir (*to move*) quelqu'un *par* nos larmes, *sur* nos malheurs : *s'attendrir sur* une chose, *de* voir, or *en* voyant.

attenter (*to try to hurt*) *à* l'honneur, *à* la vie, *à* la liberté, *sur* or *à* la personne de quelqu'un, *contre* la liberté.

attentif (*attentive*) *à* une chose, *à* faire : *avoir des attentions pour* quelqu'un : *avoir attention*, or *faire attention* (to be attentive to) *à* ce qu'on fait (or *à ce qu'on fasse*, to express a will that a thing may be done :) *avoir l'attention de* faire, or *avoir de l'attention à* faire.

avantage :—*avoir l'avantage sur* (or *par dessus*) quelqu'un : *avoir l'avantage* (the pleasure) *de* connoître quelqu'un : *il est avantageux de* faire, or *qu'on fasse.*

s'avilir (*to undervalue*, or *debase one's-self*) auprès de *quelqu'un*, aux yeux de *quelqu'un*, par *ses actions*, jusqu'à *faire.*

aviser (*to consider* of) *à* une chose, *à* ce qu'on à faire : *s'aviser* (to think of) *d'*une chose : *s'aviser de* faire (*to take it into one's head* to do.)

Baigner (*to dip*) ses mains *dans* le sang : *baigné de* (bathed in) *larmes.*

bailler (*to yawn*) d'*ennui*, de *sommeil.*

battre (*to beat*) quelqu'un : *le* cœur *lui bat, his* or *her* heart *beats* : se battre (*to fight with*) *contre* une personne, *au* pistolet, *à* l'épée, *à coups de* poing or *de* bâton, &c.

bercer (*to amuse, to feed*) quelqu'un *d'*une chose.

besoin, *want, need* ; il est besoin (*there is a necessity* for) *d'*une chose, *de* faire, *qu'on fasse* : avoir besoin *d'*une chose, *de* quelqu'un, pour faire.

blasé (*surfeited* with, *satiated*) *sur* une chose.

bon, *good, proper:* il est bon *de* faire, *que l'on fasse: à quoi bon* (why) *faire?* bon *à* faire.

bord:—*à bord d'*un vaisseau, *on board* a ship.

border (*to border*) une robe *de* rubans: *bordé de* précipices, *de* fleurs.

borner (*to confine*) ses désirs, *and* se borner à une chose, *à* faire.

bouder (*to pout*) quelqu'un, or *contre* quelqu'un.

brûler (*to burn*) d'*ambition*, de *colère*, d'*impatience*, &c.

Cacher (*to conceal, to hide*) une chose, *à* (from) quelqu'un: *se cacher à* quelqu'un (*not to want to be seen by* one:) *se cacher de* quelqu'un (*not to let one's actions* or *thoughts be known by* one.)

caution, *security: se rendre caution*, or *servir de caution* (to bail) *pour* quelqu'un.

céder, *to yield:* le céder (*to be inferior* to) *à* quelqu'un *en* talens: céder quelque chose à quelqu'un (*to sell.*)

cesser (*to cease, to leave off*) ses plaintes, *de* se tourmenter.

c'est sagesse, &c. (*it is wise*, &c. in) *à* vous *de* faire.

chasser, (*to drive away*) une personne, *d'*un endroit, *d'auprès de* or *de la présence de* quelqu'un: *chasser* (to go hunting or shooting for) *aux* loups, &c.

chercher (*to look for*) quelqu'un *or* une chose: (*to try, to want*) *à faire*, to express *to fetch*, or *to go for*, we use *aller chercher* quelqu'un *or* une chose. We say, *Chercher querelle à* quelqu'un, *to pick a quarrel with* one.

coiffé: *être coiffé* and *se coiffer* (to be infatuated with) *d'*une personne, *d'*une chose.

combattre (*to oppose, struggle with*) les ennemis, ses passions, la faim, or *contre* la faim, &c. *combattre avec* quelqu'un *de* politesse (*to vie with* one *for* politeness:) *combattre à qui sera* plus polis, (*to vie who shall be* most polite.)

commander (*to command*) une chose; un habit, une paire de souliers, &c. *à* quelqu'un: *à* quelqu'un *de* faire; *qu'on fasse:* commander *à* ses passions: *commander* une armée, un régiment, un vaisseau, &c. *dans* une *ville*, sur *mer*. We may say: Ce prince *commande à* une partie de l'*Asie*, *à* ses sujets: le père *commande à* ses enfans, le maître *à* ses domestiques, le capitaine *à* ses soldats, &c.: la citadelle *commande* la ville.

commencer (*to begin*) une chose, or *à* faire: *commencer à* (at) un endroit, *par* (with or by) une chose, or *par* faire.

compatir (*to sympathise* in, *to be indulgent* to) à la douleur, *aux* infirmités de quelqu'un: (*to suit, to agree* with) *avec* une personne.

compétiteur *à* (for) l'empire,

complaire (*to conform one's self to the disposition* or *opinion*, &c. of) *à* quelqu'un, *en* or *dans* une chose: Il se complaît (*he has self-complacency,—to have a good opinion of,*) *en* lui même, *en* or *dans* ses ouvrages, &c.: complaisant *pour* (to) or *envers*, or *à l'égard de* quelqu'un.

compliment:—*faire des complimens* (to compliment) *à* quelqu'un *de la part d'*une personne, or *d'*une chose, or *sur* une chose, *de ce que* or *sur ce que* l'on fait.

se comporter (*to behave* to) *envers* or *à l'égard* de quelqu'un.

compromettre (*to bring into trouble* or *disgrace*) quelqu'un *avec* une personne or *dans* une affaire ; se compromettre, *to commit one's-self.*
concourir (*to concur*) avec *quelqu'un* à *une chose*, à *faire.*
conférer, (*to bestow*) une dignité, un bénéfice à (upon) quelqu'un : (*to argue*) avec *quelqu'un.*
confesser (*to acknowledge*) à *quelqu'un*, une chose *or* avoir fait : *se confesser* (to confess) à une prêtre, d'une chose, *d'avoir* fait.
congédier (*to dismiss*) quelqu'un *d'auprès* d'une personne.
conjurer une personne d'une chose, *de* faire, *qu'on fasse.*
se connoître (*to be a connoisseur* in) *à* or *en* une chose. S'y connoître, *to be a judge of it.*
conseiller (*to advise*) à *quelqu'un*, une chose, or *de* faire or *qu'on fasse.*
consister *en* or *dans* une chose, à faire or *en ce qu'on* fait.
contraire à, *contrary to :* le contraire de, *the contrary to.*
crédit, *influence :* avoir du crédit *auprès de* (over) quelqu'un.
crever (*to put out*) les yeux *à* quelqu'un : *se crever* (to kill one's-self) *de* fatigue, *de* boire, *de* rire : *crever* (to be full) d'orgueil, &c.
crime : *faire un crime à* quelqu'un d'une chose (*to look upon* a thing *as criminal* or *wrong in* one) or *de* faire.
croire (*to believe*) quelqu'un *or* une chose : *croire* (to have faith in) *aux* astrologues, *aux* songes, *au* rapport d'une personne, *en* Dieu.
cruauté, *cruelty :* exercer sa cruauté *sur* des innocens : user de cruauté *envers* quelqu'un.
curieux, (*curious* in, *fond* of) *de* fleurs, *de* tableaux, *de* nouvelles, *de* voir, &c. (*particular in*) *en* linge, *en* habits.
Débuter (*to begin, to start with*) *par* une chose, *par* faire.
déchaîner (*to let loose*) les chiens *contre* quelqu'un : *se déchainer* (to fly into a passion with) *contre* une personne.
déchoir, être déchu (to have lost) *de* sa réputation. Il est bien déchu, *he is very much fallen off.*
décider (*speaking of the fate, life*, or *fortune of* a person) *du* or *sur le* sort, &c. : *décider si* l'on *fera* or *si* l'on *doit faire :* je me suis décidé *à* cela, or *à faire* cela, I have determined to do that,
dédommager quelqu'un (*to make one amends* for) *d'*une chose.
se défaire (*to part* with, *to get rid* of) *de* quelqu'un, *d'*une chose.
défaut : *au défaut de*, for want *of : il a le défaut de* jaser ; *he has this fault, that he will prattle.*
défendre (*to defend*) une personne, *de* or *contre* la fureur d'un ennemi ; cet habit me *défendra* du froid, or *contre* le froid : défendre (*to forbid*) de *faire*, or *que* l'on *fasse*, and à quelqu'un *de* faire.
défier (*to challenge*) quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire : je vous *en défie* or je vous *défie de* le faire (I *defy* you *to do it :*) se défier (*to mistrust, to suspect*) de *quelqu'un*, d'*une chose.*
dégout (*dislike* to) pour une chose : *dégoûter* (to disgust) *quelqu'un* d'*une chose*, de *faire :* dégoûté (*disgusted* at *or* with) d'une chose.
déjeûner (*to breakfast : manger du* pain, *prendre du* thé, &c. *pour son déjeûner, to breakfast upon* bread, *with* tea, &c. avec du pain.
déguiser, (*to disguise*) une chose *à* quelqu'un.
demander (*to beg, to intreat*) à *quelqu'un* une chose *or* de *faire*, or *qu'on fasse. Demander à* manger, *to ask for something* to eat : *demander à*

sortir or *à* quelqu'un *de* sortir, *to ask leave to* go out: il ne *demande qu'à* faire, *all* he *wishes is* to do; *demander des nouvelles de* quelqu'un, *to enquire after* one: *demander à* quelqu'un *des nouvelles d'*une personne, *to enquire of* one *after* a person.

démanger, *to itch:* la main, l'épaule, &c. *lui* démange; his *or* her hand itches.

démêler (*to disentangle, to distinguish*) le vrai *d'avec* le faux.

se départir (*to give up*) *de* ses prétentions, *de* son devoir.

se dépêcher (*to make haste*) de faire.

dénué (*destitute* of) *d'*amis, *de* grâce, *d'*esprit, &c.: *se dénuer* (to bereave one's-self of) *d'*argent, &c.

dépenser (*to spend, to lay out*) son bien *en* chevaux, *à* faire.

dérober (*to steal, to conceal*) une chose *à* (from) *quelqu'un.*

désespoir: être au désespoir (*to be much vexed* or *concerned* at) *d'*une chose, *si* l'on *fait*, or *que* l'on *fasse.*

désirer (*to wish for*) une chose, faire, *que* l'on *fasse.*

détromper (*to undeceive*) *sur le compte de* (about) quelqu'un.

dévoiler (*to unveil* or *disclose*) une chose *à* (or *aux yeux de*) quelqu'un.

devoir, *duty:* les devoirs *des* sujets *envers* le prince: *se mettre en devoir* (to prepare *for*, to set *about*) de *faire une chose.*

disparoître (*to disappear* from) *aux yeux de* quelqu'un, *d'*un endroit.

disputer (*to contend for*) une chose *à* quelqu'un: (*to argue*) avec *quelqu'un* sur *or* d'*une chose:* le disputer (*to contend* with) *à* quelqu'un en mérite, &c.: *disputer* (to contend who) *à qui* sera.

se divertir (*to find a pleasure* in) *à* une chose, à faire de quelqu'un.

docile *aux* leçons, *au* joug, *à* faire.

donner (*to give*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, *à* faire: *donner à* souper, *to give a* supper; *donner à* penser, *to give room* to think: *donner* (to fall, to rush) *sur* l'ennemi, *dans* une piège: *donner* (to front, to communicate) *sur* la rue.

douter (*to doubt, to question, to be dubious*) *d'*une chose, *de* pouvoir, *qu'on fasse: avoir des doutes sur* une chose: *se douter* (to suspect) *d'*une chose, *que* l'on *fera.*

droit, *right, claim:* être en droit, *or* avoir le droit (*to have a right*) de *faire.*

Éblouir (*to dazzle, to deceive*) quelqu'un, *par* les richesses, or *de* l'éclat des richesses: *se laisser éblouir à* l'or, *par* l'éloquence.

échapper (*to get out* of) *de* prison, *d'*un péril, *des mains de* quelqu'un: *échapper* (not to be taken *or* seen by) *à* une personne, *aux* chiens, a la vue, *aux* ennemis: *il échappe à* quelqu'un de faire, *it happens that* one does *unthinkingly.*

éclaircir quelqu'un (*to inform any one, to satisfy one's doubts*) *d'une chose* sur *une affaire.*

écouter (*to listen to*) quelqu'un *or* une chose, or à une porte.

*s'*emparer (*to seize upon*) *de* quelqu'un or *d'*une chose.

empire, *power, influence:* avoir de l'empire *sur* (over) quelqu'un.

emporter (*to take away*) une chose *à* (from) quelqu'un, *d'*un endroit: *se laisser emporter* (to give way to) *à* la vengeance: *s'emporter* (to fly into a passion with) *contre* quelqu'un *jusqu'à* faire: *l'emporter* (to be superior to) *sur* quelqu'un, or *sur* une chose.

empressement, *eagerness:* avoir de l'empressement (*to be eager* or *anxious for*) *pour* quelqu'un, *pour* une chose, or *à* faire : *s'empresser* (to be eager for) *à* or *de* faire.

emprunter (*to borrow*) une chose *à* or *de* quelqu'un.

enchérir (*to surpass, to go beyond*) sur *quelqu'un*, sur *une chose*.

endurcir (*to harden*) quelqu'un *au* travail, *au* vice, or *dans le* vice.

enfler (*to swell*) le cœur *or* le courage *à* quelqu'un : *les* jambes *lui* enflent : *s'enfler d'*orgueil : *enflé d'*un succès.

engager quelqu'un *dans* une affaire, or *à* une chose, engager *à* faire, *to incline to.*

enhardir (*to embolden*) quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire.

enivrer (*to intoxicate*) quelqu'un *de* (with) vin : *s'enivrer d'*espérance *d'*amour : *être enivré de* sa fortune, *de ses* talens.

ennuyer quelqu'un (*to tire one, to make one dull either by something unpleasant or too long*) par (*or* avec *or* de) ses écrits : *s'ennuyer* (to grow tired or dull) *d'*une chose or *de* faire.

enseigner (*to teach, to shew*) *à quelqu'un* une chose, or *à faire.*

entendre (*to hear*) une chose, or *dire, chanter,* &c. : *entendre chanter* quelqu'un, *entendre chanter* une chanson *à* (by) quelqu'un : *entendre* (to understand) un auteur, un passage, &c. : *entendre* (to insist, require, expect) *que* l'on *fasse* or *que* l'on *fera : entendre,* to mean ; Quand je dis qu'il écrit bien, *j'entends* parler de sa prose, et non de ses vers : *s'entendre* (to be good *at,* to understand) *à* une chose, *à* faire : *s'entendre mal* (to be bad *at,*) not to understand) *à* une chose, *à* faire : *s'entendre* (to be a connoisseur in) *en* tableaux, *en* musique, &c. : *s'entendre* (to have underhand dealings with) *avec* quelqu'un : *être entendu* (to be clever or versed in) *aux* affaires or *dans* les affaires : *bien entendu* (with this proviso) *qu'on fera,* and sometimes *qu'on fasse.*

enticher, *s'enticher d'*une personne, *d'*une opinion.

entraîner (*to draw along or over*) une personne *or* une chose : la guerre *entraîne avec* elle or *après elle* (war *is attended with*) les maux les plus affreux : *se laisser entraîner* or *être entraîné par* quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire.

entrecoupé (*traversed, interrupted*) *de* rivières, *de* sanglots.

entretenir quelqu'un (*to feed any one* with) *d'*espérances : (*to keep, maintain one* in) *d'*habits, *de* linge : *entretenir* la paix, l'union *dans* les familles, &c. : *s'entretenir* (to converse or talk) *avec* quelqu'un *d'*une personne *or* d'une chose.

envi :—*à l'envi* l'un *de* l'autre, in emulation of one another.

envie :—*avoir envie* (to have a mind or wish for) *d'*une chose, *de* faire, qu'on *fasse :* mourir or bruler d'envie (to *long* or *pant* for) *de* faire, *qu'on fasse :* l'envie leur a pris, *or* il leur a pris envie d'aller à Rome, a fancy took them to go to Rome : *porter envie* (to envy) *à* quelqu'un *d'*une chose, *d'avoir* fait, *de ce qu'on a* fait.

envier (*to envy*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, *le* bonheur *de* quelqu'un, or *à* quelqu'un *son* bonheur : *être envié de* or *par* quelqu'un.

envoyer (*to send*) quelqu'un *faire, dire,* &c. (or *pour faire,* &c. if several words are to be between *envoyer* and the infinitive) : *envoyer* une chose *à* quelqu'un ; *or* quelqu'un *à* un endroit, or *auprès d'une* personne, *chez* quelqu'un, &c. *envoyer chercher* (to send for) une personne *or* une chose.

épargner (*to spare, to save*) une chose *à* or *pour* quelqu'un : *épargner* du chagrin *à* quelqu'un. (As *épargner* only means *to save*, we cannot, as in English, say *Je puis épargner ce livre*, meaning "I can spare this book," but, Je puis vous prêter or céder ce livre.

épreuve, *proof, trial, experiment* : à l'épreuve (*proof* against) *d'*une chose (mettre à de.)

épuiser (*to exhaust, to draw*) quelqu'un *d'*argent, un pays *d'*hommes : *s'épuiser à* travailler.

ériger (*to erect*) une statue *à* quelqu'un : s'ériger (*to set up, to pretend to be*) en *connoisseur*, en *critique*, &c.

essayer (*to try, to endeavour*) une chose or *de* faire, and *à* une chose or *à* faire : essayer (*to make an experiment, in order to discover the abilities or properties* of) *d'*une personne, *d'*une chose : *s'essayer* (to try one's abilities, strength, &c.) *à* une chose. *à* faire.

essuyer (*to suffer*) un affront *de la part de* quelqu'un.

état, *condition, state* : être en état (*to be able*) de *faire* : être hors d'état (*to be unable*) de *faire* : mettre quelqu'un hors d'état (*to put it out of one's power*) de *faire* : faire son état de (*to make any thing one's business.*)

s'étourdir (*to turn one's thoughts from*) *sur* une perte, *sur* le temps à venir : *s'étourdir* (to prepossess one's self with) *de* chimères : *étourdir* (to stun) quelqu'un *d'*un coup, or *à force de* crier, &c.

être :—en être (*to have left off* at, *to be now come* to) *à* une chose, *à* faire.

s'étudier (*to study* how to) *à* faire une chose.

exceller (to excel) sur *or* par-dessus *quelqu'un* en *une chose*, dans *les beaux arts.*

excuser (*to excuse*) une chose, une personne *auprès de* quelqu'un : (*to dispense*) une personne *de* telle chose, *de* faire.

exécration :—être en exécration (*to be execrated* by) *à* quelqu'un : *avoir une exécration* (to detest) *pour* une chose, *pour* une personne.

exercer (*to train, to exercise*) quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire : *exercer* sa mémoire, la patience de quelqu'un, une profession : *s'exercer* (to exercise one's-self in, to practise), *être exercé* (to be exercised in), *à* la course, *à* la vertu, *à* chanter, *à* jouer du violon.

Face :—*faire face* (to front, to face) *à* la plaine, *à l'ennemi.*

fâché, *angry, sorry* : être fâché *contre* quelqu'un, *d'*une chose, *de* faire, *qu'*on *fasse* or *de ce qu'*on *fait* : *se fâcher* may be followed by the same governments : *fâcher* quelqu'un, *to make one angry*, or *to give* him *displeasure* : il fâche *à quelqu'un* (it pains *one*) de *quitter* une personne, *de ce qu'*on *fait.*

faillir, *to fail* : j'ai failli *à* or *de* tomber, I have been like (I was like) *to fall.*

faim, *hunger, thirst after, vehement desire of* : *la faim des* richesses.

faire. (See Idioms.)

fait, *qualified* : être fait *pour* une chose, *pour* régner : *c'est fait* or *c'en est fait* (it is done, it is all over, with) *de* lui, *de* mon argent.

falloir, *to be necessary* : il faut une chose *à* quelqu'un, il faut *faire* or *qu'*on *fasse* ; *s'en falloir*, to be wanting of ; il s'en faut *de* deux guinées *que* la somme y *soit.* For *peu s'en faut, Il ne s'en faut pas*, &c.

se familiariser (*to grow familiar*) avec *quelqu'un*, avec *la douleur* : se familiariser *une langue*, le style de Cicéron.

fatiguer (*to fatigue, to teaze*) quelqu'un *par* or *avec* le récit, or *du* récit : *se fatiguer à* une chose, *à* faire.

faute d'argent, *d'*homme, *de* faire (*for want of* money, &c.)

fête :—*faire fête à* quelqu'un, *to receive* one *kindly*, or *to make much of* one : *faire fête d'*une chose *à* quelqu'un, *to promise* a thing *to* one.

feu :—*mettre le feu à* une chose, *to set* a thing *on fire*.

fier (*to trust*) une chose *à* quelqu'un : *se fier à* sa fortune, *à* or *en* quelqu'un *d'*une chose or *du soin de* ses affaires.

finir (*to finish, to end*) une chose or *de faire* (doing) : *finir par* faire, *to finish in* or *with* doing : il y a des mots qui *commencent par* in et *finissent en* ment.

fleur :—*à fleur de* terre, *even* or *level with* the ground.

fonder (*to ground*) son espérance *en* Dieu, son opinion *sur* une chose, or *sur ce* qu'on dit : *être fondé en* bonnes raisons, *à* croire ; *se fonder sur* une chose, *sur ce qu'on* dit.

force :—à force (*by dint of*) d'*argent*, de *faire*, qu'on *fait*.

former (*to train up*) quelqu'un *à* la vertu, *sur* de bons modèles.

fort :—se faire fort (*to take upon one's-self*) d'*une chose*, de *faire*, qu'on *fera*.

fourmiller (*to swarm, to abound* with) *de* soldats, *de* fautes.

fournir (*to supply*) quelqu'un *de* charbon, *or* du charbon *à* quelqu'un : (*to contribute* towards, *to hold* through) *à* la dépense, *aux* besoins, *à* tout.

frapper (*to strike*) quelqu'un *de* or *avec* sa canne : *frapper sur* l'enclume ; *frapper d'*un bâton : *être frappé d'*étonnement, *de* la foudre.

frustrer quelqu'un (*to deprive one* of, *to disappoint one* in) *de* ses droits, *de* ses espérances : *frustrer* l'espérance de quelqu'un.

Garde :—*être* or *se tenir en garde*, or *sur ses gardes* (to be upon one's guard) *contre* une chose.

gémir (*to be deeply afflicted* by, *to grieve* for) *sur* les malheurs d'autrui, *sur* les pécheurs, *de* ses (propres) péchés : *gémir de* douleur : *gémir* (to groan under) *sous* un fardeau, *sous* la tyrannie.

gloire :—faire gloire, *or* se faire une gloire, *or* se glorifier (*to glory* in) *d'*une chose, *de* faire : *il est glorieux à* or *pour* quelqu'un *de* faire, *qu'*on *fasse*.

gloser (*to misconstrue, to criticise* upon) *sur* les actions de quelqu'un.

grâce :—rendre grâces, *or* rendre des actions de grâces (*to thank*) *à quelqu'un*, *d'une chose*, pour *une chose*, *d'avoir fait*, de ce qu'on *a fait*.

graver (*to engrave*) une chose *dans* sa mémoire, *dans* son cœur, *sur* le sable, *sur* l'airain, &c. : see *imprimer*.

gré, *will, taste, opinion* : au gré *de* tout le monde, *des* flots, *du* vent : *savoir gré* or *bon gré à* quelqu'un *d'*une chose (*to take* a thing *kind of* one, *to be obliged to* one *for* a thing) *de* faire, *qu'*on *fasse*, or *de ce qu'*on *fait* : savoir mauvais gré (*to be displeased, to take unkind*) requires the same governments, as well as *se savoir bon gré* (to be pleased with one's-self.)

grimper (*to climb*) sur *un arbre*, au haut d'*un arbre*.

Habile (*clever, fit*) en or dans *un métier* : *habile* (diligent) *à* une chose, *à* faire.

habiller quelqu'un (*to dress one,*) être habillé (*to be dressed,*) en noir (*in black,*) à la Françoise (*in the French fashion.*)

hazarder (*to venture*) son argent *au* jeu, *dans* le commerce : *se hazarder à* or *de* faire,

hériter (*to inherit*) d'*une personne*, d'*une chose*, or une chose *d'*une personne ; but not *une* chose alone.

hésiter (*to hesitate*) sur *une chose*, dans *une affaire*, de *faire*.

heureux (*lucky*) à *quelque chose*, à *la guerre*, au *jeu*, à *faire* : heureux (*happy,*) par *ses enfans* : heureux (*happy* am I, &c.) *de* faire, *si* je fais, &c. *il est heureux pour* quelqu'un *de* faire, *que* l'on *fasse*.

honte, *shame* :—avoir honte (*to be ashamed*) d'*une chose*, de *faire*, qu'on *fasse* : *faire honte à* quelqu'un (*to make* one *ashamed*) d'*une chose*, d'*avoir fait* : c'est une honte *pour* les hommes *qu'*ils *soient*, &c.

horreur, *horror, horrid thing* : avoir horreur d'une personne, *d'*une chose, *de* faire : *avoir* une personne *or* une chose *en horreur* ; avoir de l'horreur *pour* une personne, *pour* une chose : inspirer l'horreur *du* vice, *or* de l'horreur *pour* le vice : *être en horreur* (to be detested by) *à* tout le monde.

humeur, *humour, temper* : être d'humeur (*to be naturally inclined* to) *à* tout souffrir : *être en humeur* (to be in a humour for) *de* s'aller promener.

Ignorer (*to be ignorant of, not to know*) une chose, *que* l'on *fasse* or *si* l'on *fait*. We say, *N'ignorer de rien*, to know every thing.

imaginer, *to fancy* : s'imaginer *une chose* : il s'imagine *être* le seul à bien penser.

impénétrable *à* l'eau, *aux* balles, *aux yeux des* hommes.

importer, *to be important* : il importe *à* quelqu'un *de* faire, or *que* l'on *fasse* : qu'importe (*of what importance is it,*) il importe peu (*it is of little importance*) à *quelqu'un* que l'on *fasse* : il est important *pour* quelqu'un, *pour* le bien public, *de* faire, *que* l'on *fasse*.

impossibilité :—*être dans l'impossibilité* (to be unable) *de* faire.

imprimer (*to imprint*) une chose, and then *sur* in a proper sense, and *dans* in a figurative sense ; *sur* la neige, *sur* le papier, &c. but *dans* l'âme, *dans* le cœur, &c.

inconnu (*unknown*) à *quelqu'un*, though *connu* requires *de* or *par*.

inculquer (*to instil*) une chose *à* or *dans l'esprit de* quelqu'un.

indigné, *exasperated* : être indigné or s'indigner *contre* quelqu'un, *d'*une chose, *de* faire, *qu'*on *fasse*, or *de ce qu'*on fait.

induire (*to stimulate, to lead*) quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire ; *en* erreur, *en* tentation.

indulgence :—*avoir de l'indulgence pour*, or *user d'indulgence envers*, quelqu'un : *être indulgent à* or *pour* quelqu'un, *pour* les fautes de ses amis.

inébranlable (*not to be shaken*) aux *accidens*; *dans* une résolution.

informer (*to inform*) quelqu'un d'une chose : *informer contre* quelqu'un : *informer* d'un assassinat : *s'informer* (to enquire) *auprès de* quelqu'un, *d'*une chose.

s'ingérer (*to meddle* with) d'une affaire, *de* donner des avis.

injure :—*dire des injures* (to abuse) *à* quelqu'un, or *injurier* quelqu'un :

faire une injure (to injure) *à* quelqu'un : *c'est une injure* (it is an insult) *à* mon honneur : *vomir des injures*, or *se répandre en injures* (to abuse unmercifully) *contre* quelqu'un : *cela est injurieux à* or *pour* sa famille, *pour* lui, &c.

insu, *or* insçu :—à l'insçu (*unknown* to) d'une personne.

insister *sur* une chose, *sur ce qu'on fasse.*

inspection :—*avoir inspection* (to inspect) *sur* quelqu'un, *sur des* ouvrages.

inspirer *à* quelqu'un une chose, or *de faire.*

instance, *intreaty* : faire des instances pressantes *à* or *auprès de* quelqu'un *pour qu'il fasse.*

instruire (*to inform*) quelqu'un *d'*une chose : (*to teach*) quelqu'un *dans* les sciences, *aux* lettres, *aux* affaires, *à la* chasse, &c. *à faire* : instruire le procès (*to prosecute*) *à quelqu'un.*

insulte :—*faire insulte à* quelqu'*un* (*to insult* one :) *insulter* quelqu'un *de* paroles. When we wish to express "to take advantage of the misery or unfortunate condition of one so as to offend him," we say : *insulter aux* malheureux, *à la* misère de quelqu'un, &c.

intention : *avoir l'intention* or *être dans l'intention* (to intend) *de* faire.

intercéder (*to intercede*) pour (*for*) une personne *and* auprès de (*to*) quelqu'un.

intéresser (*to interest*) quelqu'un *dans* une affaire, *dans* un parti, *à* faire : *s'intéresser dans* or *à* une chose, *pour* quelqu'un, *à ce qu'on fasse* : avoir intérêt *or* prendre intérêt *or* être intéressé *à* une chose, *à* faire, *à ce qu'*on *fasse* : il est de l'intérêt (*it is the interest* of) *de* quelqu'un *de* faire, *qu'*on *fasse.*

interprêter une chose *à* quelqu'un *en* François, *en* bien, *en* mal.

introduire une personne *and* s'introduire *auprès de* or *chez* quelqu'un, *dans* une maison, *à* la cour, *sur* la scène.

invectiver *or* se répandre en invectives (*to inveigh* against) *contre* quelqu'un, *contre* le vice.

investir (*to invest*) une place *avec* une armée, quelqu'un *d'*une charge.

inviter (*to invite*) quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire, rather than *de* faire.

irriter (*to irritate*) une personne, *contre* une autre : *s'irriter* and *être irrité* contre une personne *qu'*elle *fasse* or *de ce qu'*elle *fait.*

Jeter (*to throw*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, *à la tête* or *au visage de* quelqu'un, *au* feu or *dans le* feu, *à* la mer or *dans* la mer, *par* la fenêtre : *jeter au sort*, to cast lots : *jeter* les yeux *sur* une chose ; *se jeter dans* un endroit, *sur* quelqu'un, *au cou de* quelqu'un, *sur* une chose : *se jeter à la tête de* quelqu'un, *to be over officious and force one's-self into* a person's *notice* : *jeter* une chose *à la tête de* quelqu'un, *to give* one a thing *without his asking for it.*

joie, *joy* : though we say *la joie* d'une chose, *de* faire, and *se faire une joie de* faire ; yet we say, *avoir, sentir, trouver, goûter*, &c. de la joie, *or* une joie extrême, &c. *à* faire.

joindre (*to unite, to join*) la prudence *à* or *avec* la valeur, la prudence et la valeur : *joindre* deux ais *avec* de la colle forte, *avec* des chevilles.

joncher (*to fill, to strew*) une église *de* fleurs, la campagne de morts.

jouet, *play-thing* : servir de jouet *à* (être le jouet *de*) quelqu'un, *to be a butt for* or *the sport of* one.

jour :—je vois jour (*I see a possibility*) à le servir : *je vois jour à* cela :

se faire jour (to make one's way) *au travers des* or *à travers les* ennemis.

juger (*to judge*) is active only for trials, quarrels, &c. determined or decided by a judge or an umpire ; *juger* un procès, un ouvrage, une personne. *Juger* (to give one's opinion of *or* about, *as also* to be a connoisseur in *or* to judge of) *d'*une chose, *de* la poésie, *du* mérite d'une chose, &c. *juger d'*une personne *par* or *d'après* soi-même.

jurer (*to affirm, promise, vow*) une chose *à* quelqu'un *de* faire : *jurer contre* (to swear *at*) quelqu'un : we also say, *jurer d'*une chose (to affirm a thing ;) il ne faut *jurer de* rien.

justifier une homme *auprès de* (to,) *envers* (towards) quelqu'un : *justifier* quelqu'un *d'*une chose.

Laisser *faire* quelqu'un, to let one *do* : laisser *faire* une chose *à quelqu'un*, to let *one do* a thing ; je *lui laisse à* penser ce qu'il en arrivera, I *leave it for him to* think what will happen : *se laisser aller à* une chose, *à* faire : *se laisser conduire, entraîner*, &c. *par* quelqu'un, *par* or *de* quelque chose, *à* une chose, *à* faire : *ne pas laisser de* or *que de* faire, to do *for all that*.

lassé (*fatigued*) du *chemin*, du *travail* : se lasser (*to grow fatigued* or *tired*) *d'une chose*, d'*entendre* toujours les mêmes choses : *se lasser* (to tire one's self by) *à* une chose, *à* marcher, &c.

lier, (*to tie, to bind*) un homme *à* un arbre *avec* des cordes ; *lier amitié* or *lier d'amitié* (to engage in friendship) *avec* quelqu'un : *être lié d'*amitié, *d'*intérêt, *avec* quelqu'un : *être lié par* une clause.

louer (*to praise*) quelqu'un *d'*une chose or *en* une chose, *se louer* (to be pleased with, and speak well of) *de* quelqu'un, *de* quelque chose : *louer* (to hire) une chose *de* or *chez* quelqu'un : *louer* (to let) une maison *à* quelqu'un.

mander (*to send for*) quelqu'un *à* la cour : (*to send word, to inform*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, *de* faire, *qu'*on *fait*, or *qu'*on *fasse*, when there is a kind of command.

manquer (*not to have any*) ne pas manquer (*to have*) *d'argent*, *d'appétit*, de *courage*, de *vanité*, &c. We may say *l'argent lui* manque, *les vivres* manquent *aux assiégés*, *l'appétit lui* manque, &c. instead of *il* manque *d'argent*, *les assiégés* manquent *de vivres*. Manquer (*not to keep*) *de parole* or *à sa parole* : manquer (*being deficient in*) *à ses devoirs*, *à son honneur*, *à un rendez-vous* : (*to be deficient in respect*) manquer *à quelqu'un* : manquer (*to decay*) par *les jambes*, par *les fondemens* : manquer (*to have lost* or *mislaid*) is used impersonally, the agent generally becoming a dative case ; *il manque* une paire de bas de soie *à* votre sœur ; *il manque* bien des livres *à* or *dans* ma bibliothèque : *ne pas manquer* (not to forget, not to fail) *de* faire : *manquer* (to be like, just to escape) *de* tomber, *d'*être tué, &c.

médire (*to slander*) de quelqu'un.

méditer (*to plan*, or *to consider how it is possible to execute* or *bring about*) une entreprise, la ruine de quelqu'un, une bonne action, sa retraite, *de* faire quelque chose : *méditer* (*to think on*) *une vérité*, *une matière*, sur *un ouvrage*.

mêler (*to mix*) une chose *avec* une autre, la douceur *à* la sévérité, l'agréable *à* l'utile : *se mêler* (to meddle with, to dabble in, to be concerned

in, to intermeddle in *or* with) *de* quelque chose, *de* faire : ce froment est *mêlé de* seigle : leurs adieux furent mêlés *de* larmes.

ménager quelqu'un, *to take care not to offend or disgust* one : *ménager* une chose, *to be sparing of* a thing, *not to lavish* a thing : *ménager* (to procure) un plaisir, &c. *à* quelqu'un.

métamorphoser une chose *en* une autre.

moitié : *être de moitié* (to go half) *avec* quelqu'un.

monter (*to go up*) une montagne, l'escalier, *sur* une hauteur, *à* une tour, *au haut d'*une tour, *à* une échelle, *au* ciel, *dans* une chambre, *en* carrosse, *dans* un carrosse, *en* croupe, *à* cheval, *sur* un cheval : *monter à cheval* has no reference to the quality of the horse : *monter un cheval* implies a quality peculiar to the horse spoken of, whether that quality be mentioned or not. *Monter* (to rise to) *à* un grade, *au* faîte des honneurs, *au* trône : la rougeur *lui* monte *au* visage : *monter* (to carry up) des meubles *dans* une chambre, une chose *au* grenier, &c.

mourir (*to die* with, for, from) *de* peur, *de* chagrin, *d'*une fluxion : *mourir d'envie* (or *du désir*) *de* faire, *to long to* do.

le moyen (*the means, way*) *de faire ;* un *moyen pour* faire : *le moyen* (how can one) *de* faire *qu'on fasse ?* il y a moyen (*there is a possibility*) de *faire*, qu'on *fasse* : y a-t-il moyen de *faire*, qu'on *fasse ?* Is there any possibility *to do ?* Il n'y a pas moyen de *faire*, qu'on *fasse*, there is no doing.

munir (*to provide by way of precaution*) quelqu'un *d'*une chose *contre* le froid, *pour* un voyage : *se munir de* patience, &c.

murmurer (*to murmur, to grumble*) contre *une chose*, contre *quelqu'un d'une chose*, de ce qu'*il fait* : murmurer (*to whisper a thing about*) d'*une chose*.

Nantir une personne *de quelque chose*, to give a person *something* as a security : être nanti, *to have a security*.

nécessité, *necessity* : il est de nécessité, il est d'une nécessité absolue, c'est une nécessité, *de* faire, or *qu'on fasse*.

nourrir (*to feed*) une personne *de* quelque chose ; *se nourrir* (to live upon) *de* bœuf, *de* mouton, &c.

noyé (*drowned*) dans *les larmes* : se noyer *dans* les plaisirs, les yeux noyés *de* larmes.

nuire (*to hurt*) *à quelqu'un*, *à quelque chose*, en *faisant*.

s'obstiner (*to be obstinate* in) *à* or *dans* une chose, *à* faire, *obstiner* quelqu'un, *to tease any one*.

obvier (*to obviate*) *à une chose*.

occuper (*to employ*) une personne, *à* une chose, *à* faire : *s'occuper* (to apply) *à* l'étude : *être occupé* or *s'occuper* (to be taken up with, or employed about) *de* quelque chose, *du* soin de sa santé, *à* lire : un secret *les occupe* or *ils sont occupés d'*un secret, *they are taken up with* a secret.

odieux (*odious*) *à quelqu'un* : il est *odieux de* plaider contre sa promesse.

œil, *eye* : avoir l'œil *sur* quelqu'un, *sur* or *à* une chose, *à ce qu'on fasse* : fermer les yeux (*to wink* at) *sur* quelque chose : donner l'œil à quelque chose, *to watch*.

ombrage, *shade* : donner de l'ombrage *à* quelqu'un, to give *any one* um-

brage: *prendre ombrage* (to take umbrage at) *d'*une chose: *ombragé* (shaded by) *d'*arbres: *sous ombre* (under pretence) *de* piété: *à l'ombre* (shaded, supported by) *de* votre protection.

ordonner (*to order, to bid*) à *quelqu'un*, une chose.

ordre, *order*: donner ordre à quelqu'un *de faire*, donner ordre *qu'on fasse*: avoir ordre *de faire*: mettre ordre (to prevent) à une chose, *à ce qu'on fasse*: mettre ordre (*to put in order, to settle*) à *ses affaires*.

outré *de* douleur, de *colère*.

Pâmer or se pâmer (*to be ready to faint*) de *douleur*, de *joie*, de *rire*, à force de *rire*.

parcourir *des yeux* une assemblée, un livre, to cast *one's eyes* over an assembly, a book: *parcourir* un pays, *to travel over* a country.

pardonner (*to pardon* or *forgive*) à quelqu'un une chose, *d'avoir* fait or *de ce qu'*il a fait: pardonner à (*to make allowance for.*) Le tyran ne pardonne ni a l'âge, ni au *sexe—spares neither age nor sex.*

pareil (*like*) *à* cela: *rendre la pareille* (to return like for like) *à* quelqu'un.

parer (*to adorn, to array*) une personne *or* une chose, *de* ses plus beaux habits, *de* plumes: *parer* (to parry off, to avoid) un coup or *à* un coup, *de* la main (*with* one's hands:) *parer* quelqu'un (*to shelter one*) *du* soleil or *contre* le soleil; il tâche de *se parer des* or *contre les* incommodités de la saison.

participer (*to share in*) *à* une conjuration, *à* la douleur de quelqu'un: *participer* (to partake of the nature of) *du* cheval, *du* feu or *de* la nature du feu.

parvenir (*to succeed* in, *to come* at) à une chose, à un lieu, à faire.

passer (*to cross over, to go beyond*) une rivière: cela leur a passé *de* la mémoire, that escaped *their* memory: passer son tems *à*. Se passer *to pass away*, se passer de, *to do without.*

payer (*to pay*) une chose à quelqu'un: *payer de sa personne*, to behave well in danger: *payer* (to requite, to reward) quelqu'un d'ingratitude; une faveur *de* quelque service: *payer* (to give, to show) *de* belles paroles, *de* raison, d'effronterie, *d'*audace: *se payer* (to be satisfied with) *d'*une excuse.

penser (*to think* of, *to remember*) *à* quelqu'un, *à* une chose, *à* faire: *penser* (to have an opinion, *or* to form a judgment of) une chose *d'*une personne or *d'*une chose; as in *Que* pensez-vous *de* (*or sur le compte de*) cette dame? Je vous dirai demain ce *que* j'*en* pense, que pensez-vous *de* cela? *penser* (to be like *or* near, to escape narrowly) *tomber*, &c.

persévérer (*to persevere, to persist in*) *dans* une chose, *à* faire.

persuader (*to convince*) une personne; (*to advise*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, or *à* quelqu'un *de* faire: *se persuader* (to imagine) une chose, *avoir* fait or *qu'on a* fait.

se piquer (*to pique one's-self* upon) *de* générosité, *de* faire.

piquer, *to prick* (fig.) *to offend.*

pitié, *pity, compassion*: par pitié *pour*, in pity *to*: avoir pitié (*to have pity on,*) prendre pitié (*to take pity* on) *de* quelqu'un: faire pitié *à quelqu'un*, to excite *one's* compassion; *also* contempt.

plaindre (*to pity*) quelqu'un *d'être* or *de ce qu'il est* obligé de faire:

plaindre (to grudge) une chose *à* quelqu'un : *se plaindre* (to complain) *à* quelqu'un *de* quelqu'un or *d'*une chose, *de* faire, *qu'*on *fasse* or *de ce qu'*on *fait* : porter des plaintes (*to complain*) contre *quelqu'un*.

plaire (*to please*) à *quelqu'un* : se plaire (*to delight* or *take pleasure* in) *à* une chose, *à* or *dans* un endroit, *à* faire : se plaire *à*, *to take delight in* doing.

pleurer (*to mourn* or *grieve for*) quelqu'un, une perte, &c. : *pleurer* (to cry for *or* on account of) *de* joie, *de* dépit, &c. *de ce qu'*on fait.

plier (*to bend*, *to fold*) une chose *en* deux, &c. : *se plier* (to conform or yield) *à* une chose, *à* la volonté de quelqu'un, &c. : *plier* (to bend, to submit to) *sous* un joug, *sous* l'autorité, &c.

porter (*to incline*, *induce*, *apply*) quelqu'un *à* une chose, *à* faire : *porter un coup* (to give a blow) *à* quelqu'un : *porter une santé* (to give a toast) *à* quelqu'un : porter amitié *or* affection (to love, to bear an affection to) *à* quelqu'un : *être porté d'amitié* (to be friendly inclined to) *pour* quelqu'un : *porter honneur*, or *respect*, or *envie* (to honour, *or* respect, *or* envy) *à* quelqu'un : cette poutre *porte* (rests or lays) *sur* le mur, *à* faux.

pourvoir (*to provide*) quelqu'un *de* (with) quelque chose : (*to provide* for *or* against) *à* une chose, *aux* besoins de.

prendre (*to take from*) *à quelqu'un* (or, *d'un endroit*) une chose : (*to mistake*) une chose *pour* l'autre : *se prendre* (to lay hold of) *à* une chose : *se prendre d'amitié* or *prendre de l'amitié* (to take a friendship to) *pour* quelqu'un : *se prendre* (to begin, to fall) *à* rire, *à* pleurer : *s'en prendre* (to impute it to, to lay the blame upon) *à* quelqu'un *de ce qu'*une chose arrive : *prendre exemple* (to take example of *or* by) *sur* une personne : la fièvre *lui a pris*, he has been taken with *a fever* : je vous y prends, *I catch you at it* : je prends sur moi *de* vous faire avoir cet emploi.

présider (*to preside over*) *à* une assemblée, *à* un festin, *à* la conduite d'un ouvrage.

presser (*to urge*) quelqu'un (*par* de fortes raisons) *d'*une chose, or rather *de* faire une chose : *se presser* (to hurry, to hasten) *de* faire : *pressé* (pressed) *par* la faim.

présumer (*to presume*, *to have a good opinion of*) trop, beaucoup, assez, &c. *de* (on, upon, of) quelqu'un, *de* son pouvoir.

prétendre (*to think one's-self entitled to*) une chose, *faire* quelque chose : (*to aspire* at) *à* un emploi, *à* faire : (*to maintain*) qu'une chose *est*, &c. : (*to intend*) badiner, faire un voyage : (*to insist*, *to desire*) qu'on *fasse* son devoir.

prêter (*to lend*) une chose *à* quelqu'un : *prêter* (to lend upon) *à* intérêt, *sur* gage : *se prêter* (to lend one's-self to) *à* une chose, *à* faire, *à ce qu'*on *fasse*.

prévaloir (*to get the better* of) *sur* la raison : *se prévaloir* (to take advantage of) *de* son autorité, de la foiblesse de quelqu'un, or *de ce que* quelqu'un est foible *pour* faire, *also* to profit by.

prévenir (*to come before*, or *to be beforehand with*, *to anticipate*) quelqu'un *or* une chose : (*to prepossess*) une personne *en faveur de* or *pour* quelqu'un, and *contre* quelqu'un (*to inform*, *to warn*.) Je vous préviens que, &c.

prier (*to beg, to ask*) quelqu'un *de* faire, or *qu'il fasse* une chose : (*to invite*) quelqu'un *à* diner, &c.
primer (*to surpass, to be uppermost*) sur *les autres.*
profiter (*to profit by, to take advantage* of) *d'*une chose *pour* faire.
protester *contre* une chose : *protester de* son innocence : *protester* (to affirm) *à* quelqu'un, une chose, or *de* faire.
puiser (*to draw* or *take* from) *à* la fontaine, de l'eau *à* or *dans* la rivière, dans un livre, dans un auteur, &c.
se raccommoder (*to get reconciled*) avec *quelqu'un.*
rappeler (*to remind of*) une chose *à* quelqu'un : *se rappeler* (to recollect) une chose *dans* la mémoire : *rappeler* (to call back) quelqu'un *d'*un endroit, *à* la vie, *à* son devoir.
rapporter (*to bring back, to relate*) une chose *à* quelqu'un : (*to refer, to attribute*) ses actions *à* Dieu, l'effet *à* la cause : (*to tell tales*) *contre* quelqu'un : *s'en rapporter* (*to refer it* or *the matter* to, *to leave it* to, *to rely* upon) *à* quelqu'un, *à* la décision de quelqu'un, *à* ce qu'on dit.
ravir (*to take away, to deprive of*) une chose *or* une personne, *à* quelqu'un, *d'entre* les bras *or* les mains de quelqu'un : (*to charm*) quelqu'un *de* joie, *d'*étonnement : *être ravi* (to be enchanted, very glad) d'une chose, *d'*apprendre, *qu'*une chose *se fasse* or *de ce qu'*une chose *se fait.*
réclamer (*to implore, to claim*) le secours de Dieu, une soldat, une terre : (*to protest against* or *contradict*) contre *une chose :* se réclamer *d'une personne,* to declare that one belongs to *a person.*
récompenser (*to reward*) quelqu'un *de* (for) quelque service, *en* argent, *en* faisant : *se récompenser de* ses pertes : *récompenser* le temps perdu.
réconcilier (*to reconcile*) une personne *avec* une autre, un hérétique *à* l'église.
redevable, *indebted* : être redevable *d'*une chose *à* quelqu'un.
redoubler *d'*attention, *d'*aversion, &c. *pour* quelqu'un.
refuser une chose *or* quelqu'un ; *refuser de* faire, *refuser à* quelqu'un une chose or *de* faire : *se refuser* (to deny one's-self) le necessaire : *se refuser* (to withstand, not to indulge one's-self in) *à* l'évidence d'une preuve, *à* la force des raisons, *aux* plaisirs, *à* la joie.
remédier (to remedy) *à* un inconvénient.
remercier (*to thank*) quelqu'un *d'*une chose, *d'avoir* fait or *de ce qu'il a* fait.
renoncer (*to renounce, to give up*) *à une chose,* à *faire* une chose : (*to disown*) quelqu'un *pour* (as) son ami.
répondre (*to return an answer to*) *à quelqu'un,* à *une chose :* (to confute, correspond with, lead to, return) *à* une chose, *à* une idée, *à* un endroit, *à* l'amitié de quelqu'un : (*to bind one's-self for, to bail, to warrant*) de *quelqu'un,* or d'*une chose* à quelqu'un : we also say, *répondre pour* quelqu'un, *to be a security for* one.
se reposer (*to trust to*) *sur* quelqu'un (*sur* la probité *or* l'amitie, &c. de quelqu'un,) *d'*une chose, *du soin de* faire.
reprocher (*to reproach*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, *d'avoir* fait, *de ce qu'*il a fait : un *reproche de la part de* quelqu'un.
résister (*to resist*) *à quelqu'un,* à *une chose.*
ressembler (*to resemble, to be like*) *à quelqu'un,* à *quelque chose :* il a de

la ressemblance (*he resembles*) avec *un tel:* le fils est la vraie *ressemblance du* père: il y a beaucoup de ressemblance entre eux, *entre* la copie et l'original.

ressentir (*to feel, to experience*) un grand plaisir: *se ressentir* (to suffer yet from) *d'*une maladie, *d'*une perte, &c.: *se ressentir* (to share in) *de* la libéralité de quelqu'un.

se ressouvenir (*to remember*) d'*une chose, de* faire, *d'*une personne *auprès de* (to) quelqu'un: *faire ressouvenir* (to remind of) quelqu'un *d'*une chose, *de* faire: *leur en* ressouvient-*il? do they* remember *it?*

rester, *to remain:*—*il leur reste* trois pages *à* écrire, il ne *reste à* votre frère que l'espérance, il *leur* reste *à* vous dire que, &c.: voilà *ce qu'il lui reste* (what he has left, what remains to him) *de* son bien.

retrancher (*to lessen, to suppress*) *de* sa dépense, un passage *dans* un livre, les abus: on *lui a retranché* (they *took from him*) sa pension: les médecins *lui* ont *retranché* (have *forbidden him*) le vin: *se retrancher* (to confine one's-self) *à* une chose or *à* faire, *à* un ou deux amis: *se retrancher* (to shelter one's-self under, to make one's bulwark of) *sur* sa bonne intention, *sur* les bienséances, &c.

revaloir, *to be even with:* je *lui revaudrai* cela, I *shall be even with him for* that.

rêver (*to dream*) une chose, but more frequently *d'*une chose, *que* l'on fait: (*to be thinking, musing*) *à* une chose, or *sur* une chose, or *pour* faire.

réussir (*to succeed*) à *or* dans *une chose*, auprès de *quelqu'un*, à *faire:* tout réussit à cet homme, *that man succeeds in every thing.*

riche *en* argent, *en* beauté, *en* mérite, *en* blés: *riche de* son patrimoine, *des* bienfaits du roi, *des* biens de l'esprit.

Saisir (*to snatch* or *take* from) *à* quelqu'un une chose: *se saiser* (to take hold of) *de* quelqu'un, *de* quelque chose: *être saisi* (to be seized with) *de* crainte, &c. *saisir* l'occasion, &c.

sécher, *to dry:*—sécher *de* tristesse, to pine away *with* melancholy.

sensible *à* la douleur, *à* l'amitié, *aux* injures, &c.

seoir, *to be becoming:* il sied *à* quelqu'un *de* faire: cette robe ne *lui* sied pas.

servir (*to be as, to be a kind of*) à *quelqu'un* de *père*, de *médecine*, &c.: *servir* (to be of use in, to be good, or fit, or useful for, to be employed to *or* at *or* in, to be of service in *or* for) *à* faire, *à* quelque chose; *à* quoi *sert* cette machine: servir (*to serve, to assist*) quelqu'un *de* (with) son crédit, *de* sa bourse, &c.: *servir* (to serve one with something at table) quelque chose *à* quelqu'un: *servir* (to be of service to) *à* quelqu'un, as in, Cet habit ne peut *lui servir:* se servir (*to make use of* or *to use*) *de* quelqu'un, or *de* quelque chose *pour* faire: *Que sert, de quoi sert* or *à quoi sert* (of what service is it) *de* faire or *qu'on fasse?* il ne sert de rien (*it is of no service*) à *votre* frère *de* faire or *qu'on fasse.*

sevrer (*to wean, to deprive*) quelqu'un *de* quelque espérance, &c.

soigneux (*solicitous* about) *de* sa réputation, *d'*obliger ses amis: *avoir soin* (to take care of) *de* quelqu'un, *de* quelque chose, *de* faire, *qu'on fasse:* mettre (donner, apporter) tous ses soins *à* une chose *à* faire.

sommer (*to summon*) quelqu'un *de* payer, *de* sortir d'une maison.

se soucier (*to care* for) *de* quelqu'un, *d'*une chose, *de* faire.
souhaiter (*to wish*) une chose *à* quelqu'un, and *de* faire or *qu'*on *fasse*: souhaiter (to chuse, to want) *une chose* or *faire*.
soulever, *to set against*: son insolence *souleva* tout le monde *contre* lui: *se soulever* (to rebel) *contre* son général: *le cœur lui* soulève, his stomach rises: vos flatteries *lui font soulever le cœur*, your flatteries *turn her stomach*, or *disgust her*.
souper:—*See* déjeûner.
soupirer (*to be in love* with) *pour* quelqu'un: (*to pant* after, *to wish* for, *to seek* for) *après* quelque chose: *soupirer de* douleur, *to sigh for* grief, &c.: *Il en soupire*, that makes him sigh.
sourire (*to smile* at) *à* quelqu'un, *de* or *à* quelque chose.
soustraire (*to take away*) une chose *à* quelqu'un: (*to shelter* or *rescue*) une personne *à* la fureur d'une autre: *se soustraire* (to free one's self) *à la* tyrannie, *à* or *de* l'obéissance due au souverain: *se soustraire* (to avoid) *au* châtiment.
se souvenir (*to remember*) de *faire*, de *quelque chose*, and de *quelqu'un* auprès d'*une personne*.
subvenir (*to relieve*) *à* quelqu'un dans son besoin, *aux* besoins de quelqu'un: we say, On ne sauroit *subvenir à* tout, one cannot *provide for* (or *against*) every thing: Comment voulez-vous que je *subvienne à* tant de dépenses? How do you think I can *afford* so much expence?
succéder (*to succeed* one, *to take* one's *place*) *à une chose*, *à une personne*.
suffire (*to be sufficient*, *to be enough*) *à quelqu'un* pour *une chose*, pour *faire*. Ce valet *ne peut suffire à* servir tant de personnes, *it is impossible for* that footman *to* serve so many people: La dépense est trop grande, il ne peut pas *y suffire*, the expense is too great, he cannot *afford it*. See *subvenir*.
suppléer (*to make amends for*, *to supply the want of*, *to make up*) *à une chose*.
supposer *une chose*: supposer une chose *à* quelqu'un.
survenir, *to come unexpectedly*: il *leur* survint compagnie, du monde.
suspendre (*to hang* something *on*, or *to*, *in*, &c.) une chose, *à* un clou, *à* une corde *à* une voûte, *sur* la tête de quelqu'un, *en* l'air, *dans* un endroit: (*to suspend*) son jugement *sur* une chose.
Tâcher (*to aim at*, *to strive to get* at, *to strive to succeed* in) *à* une chose, *à* faire: (*to endeavour* or *to try*) de *faire* or qu'on *fasse*: prendre à tâche (*to make it one's business*) de *faire*.
taire une chose *à* quelqu'un, to conceal a thing *from* one, to keep a thing *from* one: *se taire* (not to speak of, to keep secret) *sur* quelque chose: *faire taire* (to silence.)
tarder (*to delay*, *to be long in*) *à faire*: il tarde *à votre sœur* (your sister longs or finds it long) *de* faire or *qu'*on *fasse*.
se targuer (*to be proud* of) *de* sa noblesse, *de* ses biens.
tarir (*to dry up*, *to drain*) une source: elle *ne tarit point sur les* louanges de son amie, she *never thinks she has said enough in* praise of her friend.
teindre (*to dye*, *to stain*, in a proper sense) une chose *en* noir, *au* petit teint, &c. le vin blanc *avec* du vin rouge: *to dip*, *to stain*, in a figurative sense) ses mains *de* sang.

un témoignage (*testimony, mark, proof*) *de* son affection: *rendre témoignage à* la vérité.

témoin, *witness*:—être témoin *d'*une chose: servir de témoin *à* or *pour* quelqu'un: *prendre* des personnes *à témoin* (to call *people* to witness) *de* la *vérité, qu'*on a fait: *témoin* les femmes d'Athènes.

toucher, *to touch* (*by putting one's hand to*) une chose or *à* une chose, adding sometimes *de* la main: (*by contact*) to express with what the person is touched, we say, *toucher* quelqu'un *du* pied, *avec* un gant, *d'*une baguette, &c.; and to express what part *of* the person is touched, we say either, *toucher* quelqu'un *au* bras, or *toucher le* bras *à* quelqu'un: (*to move tenderly*) le cœur *à* quelqu'un: (*to touch*, in the sense of *to reach*) au *plancher*, de *la tête*, &c.: (*to be near* or *adjoining* to) *à* Noël, *à* une maison: (*to take* from, *to make some alteration* in) *à* son argent, *à* la religion, *aux* loix: *être touché* (to be concerned, moved, &c.) *d'*une chose, *de* faire: *toucher* (to play upon) le clavecin, l'orgue, &c.

tourner (*to turn*) une chose *or* quelqu'un *en* ridicule: *tourner* une chose *du côté de* or *vers* quelqu'un (*vers* un endroit:) cela ne peut que *tourner à* votre honneur: cet enfant *se tourne au* bien: ce qu'on mange *se tourne en* bile.

traduire (*to translate*) un livre *de* l'Anglois *en* François.

transformer une chose *en* une autre.

travers:—*au travers de*, or *à travers* (through, across) *quelque endroit.*

trève, *truce*: trève *de* cérémonies, &c. have done *with* ceremonies, &c.

triompher (*to triumph* over) *d'*un ennemi, *de* ses passions: (*triumphantly to rejoice* at) *de* voir.

se tromper (*to deceive one's-self, to be mistaken*) en *une chose*, de croire.

troquer (*to exchange*) une chose *contre* une autre.

l'usage (*the* use) *d'*une chose, *de* faire: *faire usage* (to use, to employ) *d'*une chose, *pour* faire.

user *or* faire usage (*to use*) de *douceur* envers *quelqu'un*: il use bien *or* il fait un bon usage *de* sa faveur; *c'est mal user* or *c'est faire un mauvais usage* des *grâces* que Dieu vous a faites: *en user* (to act by, to behave to) bien *or* mal, &c. *avec* or *envers* quelqu'un; *on en use* ainsi *en* ce pays-là, *entre* gens de qualité; *user* (to wear *out*) un habit, un cheval *de* fatigue, ses yeux *à force de* lire or *à* lire, sa jeunesse *auprès de* quelqu'un: *s'user, par* le travail, *à force de* faire, or *à* faire.

usurper (*to usurp*) une chose *sur* quelqu'un.

Vanter (*to boast, to extol*) quelqu'un *or* une chose: *se vanter* (to boast) *d'*une chose, *de* faire, *qu'*on *fait.*

vaquer (*to apply* to, *to employ one's-self* about) *à* ses affaires.

venir (*to come* and) *faire*: venir de *faire*, to have just *done*: venir *d'arriver*, to be just *arrived*: venir *à faire*, to chance *to do*, to happen *to do*; s'il *venoit à* vous en *parler*, if he *should* (or *were to*) *speak* to you about it: *en venir* (to come even *to*) *à* une chose, *aux* coups, *aux* menaces, *aux* extrémités, *à* la violence, *à* un procès, *à* faire or *jusqu' à* faire.

verser (*to pour*) une chose *sur* or *dans* une autre: être versé (*to be skilled* or *conversant* in) *dans* les sciences, *dans* les négociations.

vide (*empty, void of,*) *de* sens, *de* raison.

vivre (*to live* upon *or* by) *de* racines, *de* son bien, *d'*aumône, *d'*industrie, *d'*espérance, *de* la foi, &c.: (*to live* like) *en* grand seigneur, *en* gueux, &c. (*to live* at, in, *or* with) *à* la ville, *à* la campagne, *à* la cour, &c. *dans* la tristesse, *dans* la solitude, &c. *avec* quelqu'un, *auprès de* quelqu'un, &c.: *du vivant* (in the life-time) *de* son père.

voler (*to fly*) à (auprès de, vers *or* chez) *quelqu'un*, à *un endroit*, &c.: (*to rob*) une chose *à* quelqu'un.

vouloir (*to want, to wish, to chuse, to insist upon*) faire, *or* qu'on *fasse*: vouloir *une chose;* vouloir une chose *à* quelqu'un: *que veut dire* (what means) *ce passage?* Que veut dire *persifler?* what does *to humbug* mean? Que veut-il dire *par* ce mot? *En vouloir à* quelqu'un, *to spite* one: *en vouloir à* une charge, *to wish for* (or *to aspire at*) a place: il *en veut à* cette fille, he *has a design upon* that girl: *à qui en voulez-vous?* whom do you want? *as also* what would you be at (*or* what is the matter with you,) that you scold, &c. in this manner? *Dieu veuille* or *veuille le ciel* (God *or* heaven grant,) *que* telle chose *se fasse!* Vouloir du bien *or* du mal *à quelqu'un*, to bear a good *or* ill will *to one*: vouloir bien (*to condescend to*) une chose, *or* que l'on *fasse.*

vue, *sight:* perdre *quelqu'un* or *une chose de vue*, to lose *sight of a person* or *thing*: garder quelqu'un *à vue*, to keep a person *in one's eye*: ma maison *a vue sur* le parc, my house *looks into* (or *has a view of*) the park: *donner dans la vue à* quelqu'un, to please *or* to strike one agreeably: avoir une chose en vue, avoir en vue *de* faire: *avoir des vues* (to intend to get) *sur* quelque chose, *sur* quelqu'un: *avoir des vues pour* quelqu'un, *to intend to do something for* one.

IDIOMS, (Selection of.)

Aimer mieux*.....*to have rather.* This expression requires no prep. before the next verb. (Synt. No. 237.)

ajouter foi.....*to believe.*

aller trouver quelqu'un.....*to go and call upon any one.*

au devant de quelqu'un .....*to go and meet any one.*

ventre à terre .....
bride abattue .....
} *to go full speed.*

il y va .....*at stake.* Ex. Il y va de la vie, de l'honneur, de ma fortune, &c. *Life, honor, my fortune, &c. are at stake.* Observe, that *va* comes from *aller*, and may be conjugated through every tense. Il y va, Il y alloit, il ira, &c.

---

* Although the infinitive of the verb only has been given all through the above idioms, it is taken for granted that the learner will be able, if necessary, to conjugate them through every tense. See Syntax, p. 146. For further idiomatic expressions on some of the verbs given above, see *Peculiar Expressions*, Appendix.

autres (avec vous, &c.) .....*with you, gentlemen.* (Familiar.) Ex. Avec vous autres, François. It is used in opposition to another nation.

avoir mal { aux dents ..... / à la bouche ..... / à l' épaule, &c. .. } ..(*See synt.* No. 372.)

avoir beau .....*it is in vain for any one to. Avoir* may be conjugated all through, as, j'ai beau, tu as beau, &c.; j'avois beau, j'eus beau, j'aurai beau, &c. This expression must be followed by a verb, without a preposition, and that verb is to be in the infinitive mood. Observe also, that *avoir beau* is never conjugated negatively nor interrogatively, like *c'est en vain.*

avoir des égards pour quelqu'un ..*to be attentive to any one (from respect.)*

avoir de quoi .....*to have enough, to be in good circumstances.*

avoir envie de .....*to have a mind to.*

avoir bien la mine de .....*to appear very much as if.*

avoir chaud aux mains, &c.....*to be warm about the hands.* (Synt. No. 369.)

n'avoir que faire de .....*to have no occasion for.*

n'avoir garde de, se garder bien de..*to be sure not, or by no means.*

C'en est fait (or) c'est fait de moi, &c. .....*it is all over with me, &c.*

change (prendre le).....*to be deceived.*

(donner le).....*to deceive.*

comble de (pour).....*in addition to.*

mettre le comble à .....*to complete.*

au comble de .....*at the very height of.*

connoître (s'y).....*to be a judge of.*

coup de bonheur .....*lucky hit.*

malheur .....*unfortunate stroke.*

peigne.....*dressing of the hair.*

tonnerre .....*thunder clap.*

foudre .....*ditto.*

bierre .....*a draught of beer.*

dent .....*a bite.*

langue.....*backbiting,*

canon .....*a gun shot.*

fusil.....*musket shot.*

hazard.....*an unexpected circumstance.*

pied .....*a kick.*

filet.....*a profitable hit.*

main .....*a sudden attack.*

coup de fouet .....*a cut with a whip.*
vent .....*a sudden gust of wind.*
grace .....*the last blow.*
d'œil .....*a glance.*
d'epée.....*a blow with a sword.*
d'essai.....*a trial.*
croire devoir faire une chose .....*to think proper to do any thing.* (Appendix. *Infinitive.*)
Défaire de (se) .....*to get rid of, to part with.* As *se défaire de* is made a reflective verb, it of course takes *être* in the compound tenses. Ex. Je mesuis défait de mes mauvaises habitudes.
donner atteinte à la réputation de....*to defame.*
dire (cela va sans) .....*of course.*
Egal .....*equal.* Ex. Cela m'est égal, *That is all one to me, I do not care about it.*
emporter (s') .....*to fly in a passion.* See the observation on *se défaire.*
l'échapper belle .....*to have a narrow escape.* Ex. Je l'ai échappé belle, tu l'as—Il l'a—Nous l'avons, &c.
Fait à *la fatigue*, &c.) .....*to use to, to accustom.*
faire l'homme d'honneur .....*to assume or put on the man of honour.*
" le savant, le riche, &c. .....*to pretend to be learned, rich, &c.*
" le malade .....*to sham sickness.*
" l'école buissonnière.....*to play truant.*
" de son mieux .....*to do one's best.*
" semblant .....*to pretend.*
" part de .....*to communicate.*
ne faire que de.....*to have but just.*

Faire before another verb means *to cause to, to occasion to, to order to* —*See* PECULIAR EXP.

Faire naître .....*to give rise to.* Ex. Faire naître des troubles, une occasion, des soupçons, &c.
" répéter.....*to hear any rehearsing.*
" savoir .....*to let any one know.*
" faire.....*to order.* Je me suis fait faire un habit, *I have ordered a coat, &c.*

Besides the expressions above-mentioned, *Faire* is also used before some verbs, the action of which proceeds from a secondary cause, such as "heat" or "cold;" therefore we say,

Faire chauffer du linge, &c..... *to warm linen.*
" bouillir de l'eau, &c. ..... *to boil water.*

Faire cuire de la viande, &c. .....*to cook meat.*
" sécher du linge, &c. .....*to dry or air linen.*
" refroidir du bouillon .....*to cool broth.*
" évaporer la fumée .....*to cause smoke to evaporate.*
" rôtir un jigot .....*to roast a leg of mutton.*
" accroire .....*to impose upon.*
s'en faire accroire.....*to be conceited.*

It becomes *impersonal* when accompanied by the following expressions concerning the weather. But never say, *le tems fait chaud*, &c.

Il fait soleil .....*the sun shines.*
" clair de lune .....*the moon shines.*
" beau, *or* beau tems .....*it is fine weather.*
" chaud..... " *warm.*
" froid ..... " *cold.*
" vilain ..... " *bad weather.*
" crotté, sale..... " *muddy, dirty.*
" jour ..... " *light.*
" nuit, sombre, obscure ..... " *dark.*
" du vent ..... " *windy.*

Garde de (prendre).....*to take care not to.* Ex. Prenez garde de tomber, *Take care you do not fall.*
gré (à mon) .....*to my liking.*
bon gré, mal gré.....*whether you like it or not.*
(de bon,) (contre son) .....*willingly, against one's will.*
Il est question de .....*the question is.*
il n'y a pas jusqu'à .....*even to.* Ex. Il n'y a pas jusqu'aux hommes qui ne versassent des larmes, *Even men, or men themselves, shed tears.*
il me tarde .....*I long to.*
il s'en faut que je.....*I am very far from.*
peu s'en faut que vous.....*you were very near.*
Jetter des cris .....*to shriek, or scream out.*
Laisser (se) tomber, tromper .....*to suffer one's-self to fall, to be deceived.*
ne pas laisser de .....*nevertheless for all that.* It is thus conjugated: Je ne laisse pas de parler, &c. Tu ne laisses pas de..&c. Ex. Quoique foible, il ne laisse pas de résister à la tyrannie, *Although weak, he nevertheless resists tyranny.*
lieu de (tenir) .....*to fill the room or place of.* Ex. Vous me tenez lieu de père, *You are a father to me.*
il y a lieu de croire .....*there is room for supposing.*

Même.

mettre à même de .....*to enable any one.* Ex. Il vous mettra à même de faire votre fortune, *He will enable you, or put you in the way of, making your fortune.*

être à même de.....*to be enabled, to have it in one's power to.* Ex. Etant sur les lieux, je suis plus à même de juger des richesses du pays, *Being on the spot, I am more in the way of judging of the riches of the country.*

mettre à, (se) remettre à.....*to set about....again.*

se mettre en devoir de.....*to set about.*

mettre pied à terre .....*to alight.*

moins .....*less.*

il n'est rien moins que prodigue ..... { *he is far from being prodigal.* / *he is any thing but prodigal.*

Nouvelles de (savoir des) .....*to have heard of.*

(recevoir des) .....*to hear from.*

(donner des).....*to let any one know.*

Où en êtes vous ?.....*where did you leave off?* Ex. Où en suis-je ? *or* Où en suis-je resté ? où en es-tu ? où en est-il ? &c. *See* EN.

Pieds (les) lui brulent.....*he is very anxious.* It is thus conjugated: les pieds me brulent, les pieds lui brulent, &c.; les pieds me bruloient, &c.

pousser des cris, (*or*) des soupirs....*to scream, or sigh.*

passer de (se) .....*to do without.* Ex. Je me passe de vin, *I do without wine.* Je puis me passer d'argent, *I can do without money.* Tu peux te passer de, &c. Il peut se passer de, &c.

penser .....*to have like to have.* Ex. J'ai pensé tomber.

prendre à (s'en) .....*to lay the blame on any one.*

prendre (s'y) .....*to set about any thing. See* PECULIAR EXP. *Appendix.*

Qu'est-ce que de nous ! .....*what wretched beings we are!*

Raison (comme de).....*of course.*

Surcroit de (pour) .....*in addition to.*

savoir .....*to be able, (only in the condit.)*

je ne saurois faire cela.....*I cannot do that.*

je ne saurois qu'y faire.....*I cannot help it.*

Tirer (se) d'affaire .....*to extricate one's-self, or get out of any bad business. See* PECULIAR EXP. Appendix.

tant soit peu.....*the least, in the smallest degree.*

trancher du philosophe .....*to set up for a philosopher.*
de l'homme d'importance ..*to wish to pass for a man of consequence.*
tenez, tenez .....*here, look here.* This expression is used when we want to call a person's attention to what we have to say or shew. It is familiar.
trouver (se) quelque part .....*to be or happen to be in some place.*
" (se) mal .....*to faint away.*
" mauvais que.....*to take it ill of.*
" à redire à.....*to find fault with.*
tenir qu'à (ne).....*to have it in one's power.* *Tenir*, in this case, is never used but impersonally.
" à (s'en) .....*to abide by.*
User avec (en).....*to behave to.*
Vouloir bien.....*to be very willing, to be so kind as.*
que voulez vous? .....*what do you want?*
en vouloir à quelqu'un ....*to owe any one a grudge.*
voir....(n'y voir goutte) .....*not to be able to see at all.*
venir à bout de.....*to bring about.*
venir de (*before a verb*) .....*to have but just.*
voilà me, te voilà .....*here I am, thou art, &c.*
la voilà à pleurer à chaudes larmes .....*she began to cry most bitterly.*

PECULIAR EXRESSIONS, IDIOMS, AND PROVERBS.

Abois (aux)—*at the last extremity.* Ce cerf est aux abois. Un malade est aux abois.

s'abreuver—(*to drink deep*) s'abreuver de sang, d'amertume, &c. *to give way to sorrow.*

accès—(*fits of*) avoir des accès de dévotion, de libéralité, &c.

accroire—(en faire) *to impose upon.*
" (s'en —) *to be vain.*

achoppement—une pierre d'—, *an obstacle.*

acquit—(par manière d'—) *carelessly.*

affaire—(se tirer d'—) *to extricate one's-self from an awkward business.*

affronter—quelqu'un, *to affront, &c.*
" les dangers, to *brave, &c.*

âge—l'âge d'or, d'argent, d'airain, de fer. Les siècles du moyen âge, *the middle ages.*

aguerrir—on est aguerri à la fatigue, à la faim, à la soif, *we may be inured to fatigue, hunger, thirst, &c.* Aguerri aux affronts, aux insultes, &c. *callous to, &c.*

aider — aide-toi, Dieu t'aidera (*prov.*)

aiguiser— (*to sharpen*) l'esprit, l'appétit, &c.

aile—(*wing*) il ne bat plus que d'une aile, *he is much the worse.*

air—avoir l'air, *to look like.* Se donner des airs, *to give one's-self airs.* Le grand air, *out in the air.*

air—le bel air, *the manners of the great.* Prendre l'air, *to take the air.*

aise—être à son aise, *to be comfortable, or to be in good circumstances.* Prendre ses aises; *to make one's-self comfortable,*

whether at the expense of other people or not.

alambiquer—des pensées, des expressions alambiquées, *studied, or far-fetched thoughts or expressions.*

aller pas à pas, *to go step by step,*
" ventre à terre, *to go full speed.*
" bride abattue, *to go full speed.*
" trouver quelqu'un, *to go and call upon any one.*
" au devant de quelqu'un, *to go and meet any one.*
au pis aller, *let the worse come to the worst.* Il y va de la vie, de l'honneur, *life and honor are at stake.*

allumer, la guerre, les passions, la colère, &c. *to excite war, &c.*

âme—(*soul*) donner de l'âme à un ouvrage, *to give expression to a work.*

amitié—faites bien des amitiés, *many compliments to.*

anse—(*handle*) faire danser l'anse du panier, *to get perquisites.*

apostropher—(*to address*) used both in a serious and ludicrous manner.

appétit—(*appetite*) il n'est sauce que d'appétit, *an appetite is the best sauce.*

apprêter—apprêter à rire, *to afford matter of laughter, to give cause for laughing.*

arc—(*bow*) avoir plusieurs cordes à son arc, *to have several strings to one's bow.*

armes—rendre les, *to give up.*

assiette—être (en) n'être pas dans son assiette, *to be or not to be in one's usual comfortable state of mind or body.*

assouvir ses passions, *to gratify one's passions.*

avénement à la couronne, *accession.*

aussitôt dit que fait, *no sooner said than done.*

autre—à d'autres, *go and tell that to somebody else.* Il n'en fait pas d'autres, *that is just like one of his tricks.*

Bâclé—il a bâclé son ouvrage, *he has done his work hastily, any how.*

bagage—plier bagage, *to be off, big and baggage.*

baigner—(se —) dans le sang, *to welter in blood.*

baisse—la hausse et la baisse des fonds, &c. *the rise and fall of the stocks.*

bandeau—avoir un bandeau sur les yeux, *not to see what one ought to see.*

battre—il faut battre le fer pendant qu'il est chaud, *to strike the iron while it is hot.*

beau—(*see* Idioms) père, fils, frère, belle-mère, *father, mother, son, brother-in-law.* Un beau matin, il vint me trouver, *one morning he came unexpectedly to see me.* L'échapper belle, *to have a narrow escape.*

bercer—bercer quelqu'un de belles espérances, *to lull any one with fine hopes.*

besogne—tailler de la besogne, *to cut out plenty of work.*

besoin—être dans le, *to be in want.* Il n'y a pas besoin de faire tant de bruit, *there is no necessity for so much noise.*

bête.—Though the primitive meaning of this word is "*beast,*" however it often means a "*fool,*" and *bêtise* a "*foolish thing,*" or *foolish action.*

biaiser—(lit.) *to cut slant ways.* Signifies figuratively, "*to use a subterfuge.*"

bien—faire une chose en tout bien tout honneur, *to do any thing for the best, with the best motives.* Vouloir du bien à quelqu'un, *to wish any one well.*

blanc—faire or dire quelquechose de but en blanc, *without a proper introduction, unexpectedly.*

blesser la pudeur, l'honnêteté, *to shock modesty, &c.*

bois—il ne sait de quel bois faire flèche, *he is reduced to the last shift.* Trouver visage de bois, *to find the door of a house shut, and nobody in it.*

bon—tenir bon, *to resist firmly.* Aller par sauts et par bons, (*fig. and lit.*) *to have an unequal grace.* Faire faux bon à, *to disappoint any one.*

bord—à bord d'un vaisseau, *on board a ship.* Avoir la mort sur le bord des lèvres; être sur le bord du tombeau, *to be near death's door.*

bosse—("bump from a blow.") Cet homme ne demande que plaies et bosses, *he breathes after nothing but mischief, fighting, bloodshed.*

bouche—il dit tout ce qui lui vient à la bouche, *he says every thing that comes into his head.* Faire venir l'eau à la bouche, *to make one's mouth water.* Garder quelque chose pour la bonne bouche, *to keep the best for the last.*

bourreau—*hangman, executioner,* (fig.) *a cruel man, a blood-thirsty tyrant.* Un bourreau d'argent, *a spendthrift.*

bout—rire du bout des lèvres, *a forced laugh.* Savoir une chose sur le bout des doigts, *to have any thing at one's finger's ends.* Pousser à bout, *to make any one angry.* A tout bout de champ, *every moment.* Le haut et le bout d'une table, *the upper and lower end of a table.* Tirer à bout portant, *to touch the object that one is going to shoot at.* Venir à bout de, *to succeed in.* (See Idioms.)

branle—donner le branle à, *to set a going.* Il branle dans le manche, *he is indecisive.*

bras—avoir de terrible affaires sur les bras, *to have an unpleasant business on one's hands.* Les bras de la mort, *the jaws of death.* Il ne vit que de ses bras, *he lives by his own work.* Se jetter entre les bras de quelqu'un tendre les bras. Ces enfans lui ont été laissés sur les bras, *these children have been left on his hands.*

bref—*in short, to make short of my tale, &c.*

bride—lâcher la bride à quelqu'un, à ses caprices, a ses passions, &c. *to give way to, &c.* Tenir la bride, *to keep in proper subjection, &c.* Courir, aller bride abbattue, *to go full speed.*

brillant—du brillant, du faux brillant, *what is really brilliant; what is false, whether in riches or thought, tinsel.*

brisées—aller, courir sur les brisées de quelqu'un, *to cut the grass under one's feet.*

briser—tant va la cruche à l'eau qu'à la fin elle s'y brise, *the pitcher goes so often to the well that it gets broken at last.*

brocher—une lettre, un ouvrage, *to do any kind of work carelessly.*

bruler—du desir de voyage, *to long to travel.* Nous brulons de le voir, *we are very anxious to see him.* Les pieds lui brulent d'y aller, *he longs to go there.*

brusque—*rough, blunt, and cross.* Brusquer quelqu'un, *to receive any one roughly.*

buissonnière—faire l'école buissonnière, *to play the truant.*

but—être but à but, *to be even.* (See blanc.)

Cachet—*seal, stamp,* (fig.) Cet ouvrage porte le cachet du génie, *that work bears the stamp of genius.*

campagne—battre la campagne, *to be out of one's mind.* Se mettre en campagne, *to set out.* Aller à la campagne, *to go in the country.*

capable—il a l'air capable, *he looks clever.* Il fait le capable, *he puts on the clever man.*

cape—rire sous cape, *to laugh without being perceived.*

caquet, rabattre le caquet à quelqu'un, *to silence any one by threats.*

carreau (*floor*)—coucher sur le carreau, *to lay or knock flat on the ground.*

carrière—*career, scope.* Donner—à ses passions, *to get vent to one's passions.* Donner—à son esprit, *to give full scope to one's wit.*

carte—perdre la—*to lose one's wits.* Ne pas perdre la—Donner (or) avoir carte blanche, *to have full liberty.*

cas—faire cas de, *to make much of.* Faire beaucoup de cas de.

casser—qui casse les verres les paye, *whoever does any mischief is responsible.* Payer les pots cassés, *to smart, to suffer for any damage done.*

caution—être caution pour quelqu'un, *to bail him.* Etre sujet à caution, *not to be trusted.*

censé—*supposed*, il est censé savoir tout ce qui se passe, *he is supposed to know whatever occurs.*

cervelle—bruler or faire sauter la cervelle à quelqu'un, *to blow any one's brains out.*

champ—champ de bataille, avoir or donner la clé des champs, *to have or give full liberty to go any where.*

charger—*to overdo, to caricature.* une description, un portrait.

charge—aller à la charge; *to make a charge against the enemy.* Revenir à la charge, *to make another attempt.*

charier—une rivière charie, *a river covered with large pieces of ice.*

charité—bien ordonnée, commence par soi-même, *charity begins at home.* Faire or donner la charité, *to give alms.*

charrue—mettre la charrue devant les bœufs, *to put the cart before the horse.*

chasser—*to hunt, to send away,* l'ennemi, un domestique.

chat—n'éveillez pas le chat qui dort, *do not bring up an unpleasant subject.* A bon chat bon rat, *tit-for-tat.*

château—faire des châteaux en Espagne, *to build castles in the air.*

chaud—cela ne fait ni chaud ni froid, *that does not matter.*

chausser—" to dress the legs and feet," that is, " *to put on shoes and stockings,*" in opposition to *habiller*, " to dress the body," and *coiffer*, " to dress the head." Une jolie, une vilaine *chaussure.*

chef—faire une chose de son chef, *with one's own authority.*

chef-d'œuvre—the best action or work; it is often taken ironically.

chemin—je lui ferai voir du chemin, (used to shew spite,) *I'll puzzle him, I'll cut him out plenty of work.* Mettre en beau chemin, *to set a person a-going; to explain all the difficulties.* Demeurer en beau chemin, *to stop when the work is half done.* Chemin fesant, *on the way, going along.*

chère, faire bonne (or) mauvaise chère, *to live well or badly.*

chevalier—d'industrie, *a sharper.*

cheveux—cela fait dresser les cheveux à la tête, *it makes one's hair stand on end.* Un raisonnement, une preuve, &c. tiré par les cheveux, *far-fetched, ill grounded.*

cheville—*a peg,* (fig.) *a useless epithet.*

chien—qui m'aime, aime mon chien, *love me love my dog.*

chiffonner—*to rumple, to puzzle, to put out.*

clerc—(*a lawyer's clerk.*) Faire un pas de clerc, *to make a mistake from inexperience.*

cœur—un homme de, *a man of courage.* De bon cœur — de mauvais.

cognée (*a hatchet.*) Jeter le manche après la cognée, *to give up in despair.*

coiffé—être né, *to be born lucky.*

coin—(*stamp.*) Une chose marquée au bon coin, *any thing stamped as of the best kind; applicable to style, expressions, authors, &c.*

collé—avoir les yeux collés sur les livres, *to be very studious.*

collier—de misère, *daily hardships.*

combat—être or mettre hors de combat, *to be routed, or put to the rout, or to disable the enemy.* Combattre la faim, les vents, sa colère, &c.

commande — des souliers, &c. de commande, *bespoke shoes, &c.* Une montagne, une citadelle commande la ville, *a mountain, a citadel commands the town.*

comptant—argent comptant, *ready money.*

compte—les bons comptes font les bons amis, *short reckonings make long friends.* Qui compte sans son hôte, compte deux fois, *he who reckons without his host, reckons twice.* A bon compte, *cheap.*

condamner—une porte, une fenêtre, *to block up a door, a window, &c.*

confidence — faire confidence à quelqu'un, *to entrust any one with a secret.*

conscience — décharger sa conscience, *to make a compensation for the mischief one has done.*

connoissance — faire connoissance avec quelqu'un or faire la connoissance de quelqu'un, *to become acquainted with.* Perdre connoissance, *to faint.*

contenance — faire bonne contenance, *to look satisfied.* Etre décontenancé, *to be out of countenance.*

corps—c'est un drôle de corps, *he is a droll fellow.* S'exposer au danger, à corps perdu, *to rush headlong into danger.* A son corps défendant, *in spite of one's wishes.*

corvée—(*a tax.*) Tout est une corvée pour lui, *he does every thing as if it were a task.*

coucher—un enfant, *to put a child to bed.* Coucher, *to sleep.* Se coucher, *to get into bed.* Aller se *to go to bed.* Coucher par écrit, *to write down.*

coup — *a blow; also any action done suddenly.* Un coup de pied, de poing, *a kick, a blow with the fist.* De vent, de tonnerre. Faire d'une pierre deux coups, *to kill two birds with one stone.*

couper—un coupe gorge, *a place in which one runs the risk of being assassinated.* Couper-court, *to cut short, applicable to speaking.*

cour—faire sa cour à, *to endeavour to ingratiate one's-self by attentions and assiduities.* Faire la cour à, *to pay one's addresses to.*

courbettes — faire des, *to bow and cringe.*

courir—il court un (or) des bruits, *there are reports about.* Faire courir des nouvelles, *to set news afloat.* Courir les spectacles, les bals, &c. *to be constantly at playhouses, balls, &c.*

couronner—la fin couronne l'œuvre, *all's well that ends well.*

court—être court d'argent, &c. *to be short of money.* Demeurer court, *to stop short.*

cousu—cet homme est tout cousu d'or, *that man is excessively rich.*

couture—L'armée a été battue à platte couture, *the army has been beaten soundly.*

couvrir—sa marche, son feu, *to conceal one's march, one's fire.*

crédit—donner à, *to sell on credit.* Il fait crédit depuis la main

jusqu' à la bourse, *he requires ready money.*

crever les yeux, *to put a person's eyes out.* (Familiarly speaking) Crever de dépit, de jalousie, de boire, &c. *to die with rage, &c.*

croquer—faire croquer le marmot, *to make any one wait at the door.*

cueillir des lauriers, des palmes, *to gather laurels, &c. to gain victories.*

culbuter l'ennemi, *to overthrow the enemy.*

cultiver la connoissance, l'amitié de quelqu'un.

cygne—le chant du cygne, *a poet's last composition.*

Darder—le soleil darde ses rayons sur la cime des montagnes, *the sun darts his rays on the tops of the mountains.*

débandade—après la défaite tout étoit à la débandade, *after the defeat every thing, soldiers and all, were thrown in disorder.*

débiter ses marchandises, *to retail out one's goods,* (fig.) Avoir le débit agréable, *to speak in an easy and agreeable manner.*

décliner son nom, *to tell one's name.*

décousu—des propos décousus, *unconnected speech.* Ce style est décousu, *this style is unconnected.*

dédire (se) il est avancé dans cette affaire, il ne peut plus s'en dédire, *he is too far advanced in this affair, he cannot retract.*

défaite—ce n'est qu'une *défaite, it is only a come off, a false pretence.*

défiler—l'armée défile de ce coté-ci, *the army passes through here.*

délicat—un affaire delicate, *a nice ticklish business.* Délicat sur le point d'honneur, *easily offended.*

délit—être surpris en flagrant délit, *to be caught in the fact.*

démordre—ne pas en démordre, *not to give up, (an opinion; a right, &c.)*

dent—rire du bout des dents, *a forced laugh.* Etre sur les dents, *to be exhausted.* Ne pas desserer les dents, *not to whisper a word.* Armé jusqu' aux dents, *completely armed.* Vouloir prendre la lune avec les dents, *to wish to do impossibilities.*

dépaysé—être dépaysé, *to be like a fish out of water.* Avoir l'air dépaysé, *to seem at a loss.*

dépourvu—être pris au dépourvu, *to be caught unaware, to be off one's guard.* Ne demeurez jamais au dépourvu, *do not be off your guard.*

dérobé—escalier dérobé, *a private staircase.* Heures dérobées, *spare hours.* A la dérobée, *by stealth.*

dérouter—*to put out, to puzzle,* (*in an argument, &c.*)

dessiller—*to open a person's eyes* (both lit. and fig.) *that is, with regard to what is true or false.*

dessus—il est au-dessus de cela, *he is above that, or above doing such an action,*

détourné—chemin—*out-of-the-way road.*

détraqué—le cerveau, *insane.* L'estomac—*out of order.*

dévorer des yeux, *to envy, to wish for ardently.*

dire—le cœur vous en dit-il? *Have you a mind for it?*

proposer—l'homme propose, et Dieu dispose, *nothing can be done without the assistance of God.*

distingué—(*genteel.*) Un homme, une femme, un habit, un chapeau distingué.

doigt—montrer au, *to point to.* S'en mordre les doigts, *to repent.* Il est à deux doigts de la mort, de sa perte, *he is very near dying; near his being ruined.*

Dommage—c'est, *it is a pity.*

Don le—de plaire, de la parole, de se taire, *the gift of pleasing, &c.*

donner—le vin donne dans (*or*) monte à la tête, *wine gets up to one's head.* Donner or tomber dans le piège dans le panneau, *to fall into the snare.* Aller donner de la tête contre les murs, *to knock one's head against the wall.* Tel régiment a donné, *such a regiment has fought.* Que donne-t-on aujourd' hui au spectacle? *what is acted this evening at the theatre?* Cette porte donne dans la rue, *this door leads into the street.*

dorer—le soleil dore les montagnes, *the sun gilds the tops of the mountains.* Les moissons dorées, *the golden harvest.* Dorer la pillule à quelqu'un, *to gild the pill, to make him, by means of fair words, take what is unpleasant.*

dormir—il n'y a point de pire eau que l'eau qui dort, *quiet people are the most to be dreaded.*

doublure—(speaking of an inferior actor who takes the part of a superior one.

dresser un animal, *to train up an animal, &c.*

durer—il faut faire vie qui dure, *it is proper to lay by for a rainy day.*

eau—porter de l'— à la rivière, *to carry coals to Newcastle.* Laisser couler l'eau, *to let things take their course.* Prov.

écharpe—porter le bras en —, *to wear one's arm in a sling.*

écouter—il s'écoute trop, *he gives way.* Il s'écourte parler, *he speaks slowly, and likes to hear himself talk.*

emblée (d')—*at once, easily.* La ville a été emportée d'—, *the town has been taken at one charge.*

embourbé—(lit.) *deep in the mud;* (fig.) Il est dans une mauvaise affaire, *he has got into a hobble.*

embrasser—qui trop embrasse mal étreint, *grasp all, lose all.* La défense, la querelle, le parti des armes, &c. *to embrace, to take, &c.*

empoisonner l'esprit d'un enfant, &c. *to corrupt the mind of a child, &c.*

encenser—*to throw up frankincense by way of worship, to praise, to flatter.* Jeter de l'encensoir par le nez, *to flatter to an excess.*

enchère—(*a public sale.*) Payer la folle —, *to smart for one's rashness.*

enfariné—venir la gueule enfarinée, *to come in hopes of obtaining something advantageous, and being disappointed,* (very familiar.)

enfiler des perles, *doing nothing.*

engoué d'une personne, d'un ouvrage, d'une opinion, *to be over fond of any one, &c.* (*without any sufficient cause.*)

enragé—cet homme a mangé de la vache enragée, *that man has experienced want, misery, &c.*

enseigne—je ne le ferai qu'à bonnes enseignes, *I will not do it unless it be quite deserved.*

enseveli—(*buried, completely absorbed,*) dans la retraite, dans le chagrin, la mélancolie, &c.

entente—une phrase, à double entente (and not a "double entendre,") *a sentence with a double meaning.*

entendu—être bien — à, *to understand perfectly.* Faire l'entendu, *to pretend to be clever at any thing.*

entortillé—(*twisted.*) Un style, un discours, une phrase —, *style, &c. the construction of which is so forced and twisted as to be wanting in clearness, unintelligible.*

entrer dans le monde (*or*) faire son entrée dans le monde, *to be introduced into the world, coming out.*

épine—il n'y a point de roses sans épines, *there is no rose without a thorn.*

épingle—être tiré à quatre épingles, *to be affectedly nice and clean.* Tirer son épingle du jeu, *to extricate one's-self out of a bad business.*

éplucher un ouvrage la vie, les mœurs, &c. *to try to find out what fault can be found with a work, &c.*

éponge—passer l'éponge sur une action, *to forget an action.*

épouser le parti de, *to espouse any body, party, quarrels.* (*See* Marier.)

épreuve—être a l'—, *to be proof against.* Mettre à l'—, *to put any one to the proof.*

équipage—avoir —, *to keep a carriage.* Equipage, *ship's crew.*

s'escrimer—(*to fence,*) also *do any thing with bombast, show, &c.*

estropier—(*to lame.*) (fig.) *to murder.* Estropier une langue, un passage de la poësie (ou) de la musique.

éteint—(*extinguished*) used figuratively. Les yeux éteints, *a person's eyes dead, from illness, &c.* La voix éteinte, *an exhausted dying voice.*

étendard—il a levé l'étendard de la révolte, *he is the chief of the rebellion.*

étourdi d'une chute, *stunned with a fall.* De quelque bruit.

face, faire—à, *to face* (lit. and fig.) *Face*, used for visage, is vulgar; though we say, figuratively, la face du ciel.

façon—(*the workmanship.*) La façon de ces couteaux, de ces habits, &c. Un homme plein de façons, *a ceremonious man.* Voilà un coup, une ruse de sa façon, *there is a trick after his own nature.*

fagoté, être —, *to be badly dressed.*

faire.—

Although the acceptations, in which *faire* is taken, seem innumerable, yet, by tracing back the primitive meaning of this word, we may be able to discover how far its ramifications partake of the original import.

The primitive meaning is, "to create, to give birth to, to produce."* Ex. Dieu a fait le ciel et la terre. Hence we use *faire* to express "engendering the human and animal race," (with *enfans* and *petits.*)

Hence *faire* is used when speaking of the productions of the mind or hand, whether with regard to science or art. Ex. Faire un ouvrage, un livre, un poëme, une tragédie, une comédie, une statue, un bâtiment,† du drap, &c.

Hence *faire* means "to do, to act, to commit." Ex. Faire une action, un crime, la charité. Faire son devoir, son apprentissage, de son mieux, &c.

Hence *faire* is used to express "assuming, putting on the character of," "acting a part, in real life or in a play;" therefore we say, Faire le riche, le pauvre, le savant, l'ignorant, le malade, &c. *Talma a fait le rôle de Néron, de Scylla, &c.*; or even *à fait Néron, &c.*

---

* Therefore do not use *faire*, when the object is not "produced," but merely "altered, made better or worse," take, *rendre.* Thus we say, *rendre bon, mauvais, joli, heureux, malheureux, &c.*; not *faire bon, mauvais, &c.* Ex. Vous avez rendu votre père heureux. *Tailler une plume*, not *faire une plume.*

† There are, of course, other more appropriate terms, such as *bâtir, construire*; but *faire* may be considered as a generic expression.

Hence *faire* is used to express " to finish, to go through, to perform." Ex. Faire du chemin, &c., de l'ouvrage, deux ou trois pages d'écriture, &c.

Hence *faire* is used to express " to arrange, to put in order, to do the needful to." Ex. Faire un lit, une chambre, la barbe à quelqu'un, se faire la barbe,* faire du feu, &c.

Hence *faire* is used to express " to make or cause, to order," before another verb. Ex. Faire aller, venir, savoir, marcher, lire, écrire, voir, connoître faire ; as, Faire marcher* une machine, *to set a machine a going.* Faites faire un habit, *cause to be made, or order a coat.*

Faire is also construed with a substantive. See the following list of verbs attended by substantives.

fait—c'est un homme—*he is quite a sober and steady man.* Je lui ai bien donné son fait, *I told him plump what I thought of him.* Etre au fait de, *to understand fully the point in question.* Je suis sûr de mon fait, *I am certain of succeeding.* Au fait, au fait, *come to the point.*

faut—il me faut, *I want.* Combien vous faut-il ? *How much do you want ?* Peu s'en faut qu'il n'ait fait sa fortune, *he is very near having made his fortune.* Tant s'en faut que je ne pense ainsi, *I am very far from thinking so.*

Familiarité, la—engendre le mépris, *familiarity breeds contempt.*

fausser une signature, *to forge.*

félé. (*cracked.*) Avoir le timbre—*to be cracked, insane.*

fendant—faire le, *to strut about, to boast, &c.*

fendre—la tête lui fend, *his head is fit to split.* Il gèle à pierre fendre, *it freezes very hard.*

ferré, ferré à glace, *rough-shod.* Un homme ferré à glace, (*in science or in learning of any kind,*) *a man who has firm grounds for what he advances.*

fête, je me fais—de vous voir chez moi, *I look forward with pleasure to the day when I shall see you at my house.*

feu—le feu a pris à la maison, *the house took fire.* On a mis le feu à la maison, *the house was set on fire.* Il jette feu et flamme, *he is in a terrible passion.* Les soldats ont mis tout à feu et à sang dans la ville, *the soldiers destroyed every thing with fire and sword.* Il prend feu pour la moindre chose, *he flies in a passion for the least thing.*

fieffé—(*downright.*) C'est un fou, un coquin, *that is—arrant, a downright fool, knave, &c.*

flambeau, le—de la guerre, *the cause of the war.*

flamberge, (*a sword.*) Mettre—au vent, *to take sword in hand,* (generally used ironically.)

flétri, flétrissure—(*faded.*) Sa réputation est flétrie pour jamais, *his reputation is stained for ever.* Flétrissure, *a stain to the honor, reputation.*

flux—un grand—de bouche, *a great loudness for talking.*

foible—le fort et le foible d'un sujet, *the strong and weak side of a subject.*

foin—chercher une aiguille dans

---

* Take notice, that the following verb (in the infinitive) always comes immediately after *faire.* Synt. No. 404.

une botte de foin, *to look for a needle in a bottle of hay*

fondre, (*to melt, to rush,*) en larmes, *to melt into tears.* Fondre sur l'ennemi, *to rush upon the enemy.*

forger—à force de forger on devient forgeron, *by dint of trying, one is sure of succeeding.* Se forger des chimères, *to be led away by one's imagination.*

fort—il se fait fort de réussir, *he makes no doubt of succeeding.* Voilà son fort, *that is his fort.* Au fort de la mêlée, *in the thick of the fight.* Il est fort de sa vertu, *his strength lays in his virtue.*

fou—un fou, *means a "mad man," not a "fool."* Il est fou de la musique, *he is mad after music.* A chaque fou sa marotte, son hochet, *every one his hobby.*

frais—(*expense.*) Faire les frais de la conversation, *to find out matter for, and keep up the conversation.* Se mettre en frais, *to put one's self to a great expence.*

fraude—faire la, *to smuggle.*

frayer—se frayer un chemin à travers l'ennemi, *to cut one's way through the enemy.*

frein—rouger son, *to conceal one's feelings of anger.*

friper, to tumble, to rumple. Une robe fripée.

friser—(*fig. to pass slightly and quickly by.*) La balle lui a frisé l'épaule, *the ball grazed his shoulder.*

frouler—(*to blame, to criticise.*) Fronder le gouvernement, la religion, les mœurs, un discours.

front—de quel—osez-vous paroitre ici! *how can you have the face to come here!*

frotter, (*to rub.*) Se frotter à, (*to have any thing to do with.*) Qu'il ôse se frotter à moi, vous verrez comme je l'arrangerai, *let him dare to come to me, you'll see how I will deal with him.*

fumer—il fume encore de colère, *he is still in a great passion.*

gagner—la faim le gagne, *he begins to be hungry.*

garde—prendre garde *de* tomber, *to take care not to fall.* Prendre garde à une chose (*dangereuse,*) *to beware of any thing.* Se mettre en garde contre; se mettre sur ses gardes, *to be on one's guard.* N'avoir garde de parler, *not to have it in one's power to speak.*

gâteau—avoir part au, *to share any advantage.*

gâter—un enfant gâté, *a spoilt child.*

glace, (*ice.*) Rompre la glace, *to begin, to venture upon any hazardous business, to break the ice.* Il nous a reçus avec un visage de glace, *he received us coolly.* La frayeur avoit glacé tous mes sens, *fright had benumbed my senses.*

glisser (se)—il s'est glissé dans cet endroit sans avoir été apperçu, *he slyly introduced himself, &c.* Il s'est glissé dans les bonnes grâces du prince, *he insinuated himself into, &c.*

gloire—se faire gloire de, *to glory in.*

gorge, tenir à quelqu'un un poignard sur la gorge, *to hold a dagger to a person's breast.*

gout—chacun à son gout, *every one his taste.*

goûter—je goute assez ce qu'il dit, *I rather approve of what he says.* Je ne saurois gouter ce qu'il dit, *I do not relish what he says.*

grâce, (*a favor.*) Faites moi la grace de me prêter cela, *do me the favor.* Faire une grace, *to do service.* Avoir de la grâce à, *to be graceful in, &c.* Faire

grâce, *to pardon.* Gâgner les bonnes grâces, *to gain the favor of.* Avoir mauvaise grâce à faire une chose, *it would not be becoming of one to, &c.*

graisser le marteau, *to give something at the door; to obtain entrance.*—la pate, *to bribe.*

grappe—(*bunch of grapes.*) Il a mordu à la grappe, *he has accepted our proposal.*

gros—(besides its usual signification also means "the big, strong part of.") Le gros de l'armée, *the strongest part in the army.* Faire le gros, *to give one's-self an air of importance.*

Habit—l'habit ne fait pas le moine, *we must not judge of a man by his dress.*

hameçon, mordre a l'—, *to be taken in.*

hasard: (de)—, *second hand.* Des souliers de —, *second hand shoes.*

hausser les épaules, *to shrug up one's shoulders.* *See* Baisse. Les fonds haussent ou baissent, *stocks rise or fall.*

hauteur—traiter avec hauteur, *to behave with pride.*

hérissé—"*bristled up,*" from hérisson, "*hedge-hog.*" Un bataillon hérissé de piques, *a battalion opposing their pikes.* Une mer herisée de rochers, d'écueils, de navires, &c.

heure—de bonne —, *early.* A la bonne —, *very well, I consent to it.*

honneurs—faire les honneurs de la maison, *to do the honors, &c. of the house.*

honni soit qui mal y pense, *evil be to him who evil thinks.*

humanités—avoir fait ses, *to have had a college or university education.*

Jet-d'eau, a water spout.

jeux de main, jeux de vilain, *rough play always causes some accident.* Avoir beau jeu à, *to have a fine opportunity to.* N'avoir pas beau jeu avec quelqu'un, *when the other is more than a match.*

joli and *joliment* are frequently, but familiarly, used ironically, meaning "*badly.*"

joue — (*cheek.*) Coucher en—, *to aim.*

jouer—on a fait jouer l'artillerie, *the artillery was made to play.* Se jouer de, *to make sport of.* Se jouer à, *to expose one's-self to.* Il joue à se ruiner, *he exposes himself to ruin.* Jouer d'un instrument quelconque, *to play upon any instrument whatever.* Jouer sur les mots, *to play upon words.* Il joue de son reste, *to make the most, by way of enjoyment, of what is left him.*

jour—elle est belle comme le —, *she is very beautiful.* Cette vérité est claire comme le jour, *this truth is as clear as day-light.* Mettre une pensée dans tout son jour, *to give an idea all the clearness of which it is susceptible.* Se faire jour à travers, *to cut one's way through.* Ce tableau est dans un faux jour (*or*) ce tableau n'est pas dans son jour, *this picture is not in its right light.* Vivre au jour la journée, *from hand to mouth.*

Lâche — (*slack.*) Le tems est lâche, mou, humide, *the weather is muggy, close, damp.* Un style lâche, *a slack slovenly style.*

lâcher pied, *to give way, to take to one's heels.*

lancer des regards, *to cast wistful looks on, &c.*

langage, langue. (See *synonymes.*) Le langage des yeux, de la nature, &c. C'est une mauvaise langue, *he has a mischievous tongue.* Avoir un mot sur le bout de la langue, *to have a word on the tip of the tongue.*

languir—(fig.) *to dwindle away, to*

flag, &c. Les plaisirs, les affaires languissent, la conversation, un discours, &c. languissent.

laver — s'en — les mains, *to wash one's hands of it.*

lauriers, cueillir, moissonner des —, *to gather laurels.* Etre couronné de, *to be crowned with, &c.* Se reposer à l'ombre de ses, *to rest after victory.*

lécher — (lit. *to lick.*) Un ouvrage, un dessin trop léché, *a work of any kind too minutely finished.*

léger may be used almost in every case in which "*light*" or "*slight*" may be employed. Il est léger, *he is giddy, thoughtless.*

légère—être vêtu à la, *to be dressed in a light way.*

leste—(*light.*) Discours un peu leste, *rather free manner of speaking.*

lettre—prendre les choses au pié de la lettre, *to take any thing literally.*

lèvres—cet homme a le cœur sur les lèvres, *that man is frank.*

liaisons — étroites —, *close, intimate connexion.*

lice — (*list.*) Entrer en lice, *to enter the list.*

licencier des soldats, *to discharge soldiers.*

lieu—être sur les lieux, *to be on the spot.* N'avoir ni feu ni lieu, *to have neither money nor dwelling.* Tenir lieu de, *to fill the place of.* Cet homme m'a tenu lieu de père, *that man has been a father to me.* Avoir lieu, *to take place.*

lièvre—il ne faut par chasser deux lièvres à la fois, *we must not have too many irons in the fire.*

limer—(*to file.*) un ouvrage, un écrit, *finishing a work; any writing with the greatest care.* Quoique fini, le style ne doit pas paroître limé.

lit d'honneur, *the field of battle.*

livre—traduire, chanter, jouer à livre ouvert, *to translate, sing, play at sight.*

loi—la loi du plus fort est toujours la meilleure, *possession is nine points of the law.*

louche—(*squint-eyed.*) Une phrase, une traduction louche, *a sentence wanting in clearness.*

lumineux—un esprit, *a profound, though bright mind.* Des principes clairs et lumineux.

lutter — (*to struggle.*) contre les vents, les flots, la tempête, contre sa conscience, les passions.

Machiner—il fait jouer toutes sortes de—pour arriver à son but, *he uses every means to arrive at his ends.*

main—faire main basse sur l'ennemi, *to kill every one that comes in the way.* En venir aux mains, *to come to blows.* Mettre la dernière main à un ouvrage, *to complete a work.* Faire quelque chose sous main, *to do any thing in an under-handed manner.*

maître—une maître homme, *a particularly clever man.* Un maître filou, coquin, *an arrant knave, scoundrel.* Vous avez enfin trouvé votre maître, *you have at last met with your match.*

malheur—à quelque chose malheur est bon, *a misfortune is not without its good effects.* Un malheur ne vient jamais seul, *a misfortune never comes alone.* Malheur à qui, &c. *woe to him who.*

manger — l'accent est si fort en Anglois qu'il fait qu'on *mange* la moitié des syllabes, *the accent is so strong in English that it causes the other syllables to be scarcely heard.*

manteau — (*cloak.*) On se sert souvent du manteau de la religion pour commettre les plus grands crimes.

marché—(*bargain.*) Pardessus le— *in the bargain.* A bon marché, *cheap.*

marier—*to give a person away in marriage;* which is done by the priest, the father, mother, or any one who has the authority of so doing. Se marier à quelqu'un, *to take any one in marriage.* Therefore never say, ce jeune homme a "marié" cette demoiselle, but a "épousé" cette demoiselle. Marier sa voix avec un instrument de musique; *to blend;*—l'élégance avec l'énergie. Ces couleurs sont bien mariées. Des sons mariés.

mêlée—les dragons se sont jetés dans la mêlée, *the dragoons rushed in the thickest part of the fight.*

ménager quelqu'un, *to spare a person's feelings, to pass over his faults in such a manner as to make him favorable to one's views.*

ménagemens—il y a bien des—à prendre avec une telle personne, *one must be very particular how one deals with such a person.*

menus plaisirs, *pin-money.*

merci, à la—de quelqu'un, des flots, des vagues, *at the mercy of, &c.*

merveille — promettre monts et merveilles, *to make great promises.* A merveille, *wonderfully well.*

mesure—cet homme ne garde point de mesure avec qui que ce soit, *that man pays no regard to any body whatever.* Se mesurer (is said of rivals of any kind who attentively eye each other before the contest.) Mesurer ses discours, ses demarches, &c. *to speak, to act in a guarded manner.*

meublé — (*furnished.*) Avoir la mémoire bien meublée. Se meubler la mémoire, *to furnish, &c.*

midi—cet homme nous a dit qu'il fait jour en plein midi, *that man has been telling us truisms.*

mieux — a qui mieux mieux, *in emulation of each other.* Travaillons à qui mieux mieux, *let us try which of us shall work the hardest.* Il vaut mieux parler franchement, *it is better to speak candidly.*

mince—un revenu—*a small income.*

mine—(*looks, appearance,*) *applicable to persons or things.* Bonne (or) mauvaise mine, *good or bad looks.* Faire bonne (or) mauvaise à quelqu'un. Faire la mine, *to seem not to like.*

moissonner — sa vie a été moissonnée dans sa fleur, *he was cut off in the prime of life.*

monde—le beau monde, le grand monde, *the fashionable world, the high people.* Nous aurons beaucoup de monde à dîner, *we shall have a great many persons to dinner.*

morceau d'architecture, de littérature, *pieces of architecture, of literature, &c.*

mort—il est mort de sa belle mort, *he died a natural death.*

mourir de faim, de soif, de rire, de froid, &c. Se mourir, *to be dying away.*

mortel — (*excessive.*) Il fait un froid mortel. Trois mortelles lieues, *three excessively long leagues.*

mot—il a toujours le mot pour rire, *he always turns every thing to fun.* Se donner le mot, *to have an understanding together.* Qui ne dit mot consent, *silence gives consent.* Prendre quelqu'un au

mot; *to take any one at his word.* Un bon mot, *an ingenious arrangement of words.* En un mot, *in a word.* En un mot comme en cent, *in one word as in a thousand.*

mûr—(*ripe.*) Un jugement mûr, *a sound judgment.*

muser—*to be musing one's time away about trifles that have no connexion with what is going forward.* Il passe son tems à muser.

Nager—(*to swim,*) dans l'abondance, dans l'opulence, dans la joie, *to revel in plenty, &c.*

naïf—(See *synonymes.*) Une expression, une personne naïve, *an ingenious person, &c.*

naître—(*to be born.*) Faire naître, (*to give rise to,*) des soupçons, des troubles, &c. *suspicions, disturbance.* Un gazon naissant, *new and fresh turf.* Une fleur naissante, &c.

né—mort-né, (speaking of a child) *still-born.* Aveugle-né, *born blind.*

néant (*nothingness.*) Le néant du monde, des biens de la terre, &c. Je le ferai rentrer dans le néant d'où il est sorti, *I will reduce him to the low state out of which he springs.*

nerf, nerveux. The words *nerf* and *nerveux* always imply "*sinewy, strong,*" in French, even in the literal sense, unless it be accompanied by maladie, accès, foible; and in the figurative, when applied to style, it has the same meaning as in English. On the like occasion, un homme nerveux means "*a strong sinewy man.*" But "*a nervous man*" is, in French, un homme qui a la fibre irascible. L'argent est le nerf du commerce, de la guerre, &c. *money is the life of commerce, war, &c.* Ce discours manque de nerf, est sans nerf.

net, nette—avoir la conscience nette, les mains nettes, *to have a clear conscience, clean hands, &c.*

neuf—*nouveau.* (See Synonymes.)

nez—il nous a tiré les vers du nez, *he pumped us, he tried to know our secrets.* Rire au nez de quelqu'un, *to laugh in a person's face.* Se couper le nez pour faire dépit à son visage, *to cut off one's nose to be revenged on one's face.*

niveau—(*level.*) Deux personnes qui sont de niveau, *two persons who are upon a level.*

noircir quelqu'un (fig.) *to defame any one.*

nôtres, vôtres, &c. Je suis des vôtres, &c. Ex. Nous allons au spectacle, voulez-vous être des nôtres? *we are going to the play, will you be one of our party?*

nouvelles—(*tidings.*) This word may be used in a threatening way. Vous aurez de mes nouvelles, *you shall hear from me.*

noyau—*fruit stone,* (fig.) Faire noyau, *one round whom people gather or muster; a man that forms a nucleus.*

nuages—*clouds* (fig.) Les passions sont des nuages qui offusquent la raison, *the passions are clouds which darken reason.*

nue—(see Synonymes.) Tomber des nues, *to fall from the clouds.* Elever quelqu'un jusqu'aux nues, *to extol any one to the skies.*

œil, yeux—coup-d'œil, *glance, sight.* Avoir le coup-d'œil juste, *to see any thing correctly at a glance.* Regarder quelqu'un entre deux yeux *to look at any one stedfastly.* Jeter de la poudre aux yeux, *to dazzle, either by show or by promise.*

œuf—il donne un œuf pour avoir un bœuf, *he throws in a sprat to catch a mackerel.* Il tond sur un œuf, *he would skin a flint.*

œuvre—(see Synonymes.)

oiseau—la belle plume fait le bel oiseau, *fine feathers make fine birds.* Petit à petit l'oiseau fait son nid, *by dint of perseverance, any one may expect to succeed.*

ombrage donner de l'—; *to give umbrage, to excite jealousy.*

ondée—un ruban ondée, *a wavy ribbon.* Une ondée de coups, *a shower of blows.*

ondoyant—(*wavy.*) La mer ondoyante, les flôts ondoyans.—Les contours —, les blés —.

or—tout ce qui reluit n'est pas or, *all is not gold that shines.* Il vaut son pesant d'or, *he is worth his weight in gold.*

ordonnance—une—du roi, *the king's decree.* L'— du medecin, *the doctor's orders.*

orgueil— l'— et la pauvreté font fort mauvais ménage, *pride and poverty are ill suited to each other.*

ourdir (lit. *to spin*)—(fig.) — une trame, une conspiration, une trahison, *to carry on a conspiracy, &c.*

ours—il ne faut pas vendre la peau de l'ours, avant qu'il soit mort, *you must not make sure of what is not in your power.*

ouvert—avoir l'esprit —, *to be clear of conception.* Avoir l'appétit ouvert, *to feel an appetite.*

ouvrier — à l'œuvre on reconnoit l'ouvrier, *you may know the workman by his work.*

Pair—traiter quelqu'un de pair à compagnon, *to treat any one as one's equal.*

paquet — (*hint.*) Vous lui avez donné son paquet.

pareil—rendre la pareille, *tit for tat.*

parti—*side, resolution, &c.* Prendre le parti de quelqu'un, *to take any one's part.* Prendre son parti, *to make up one's mind to.* Prendre le parti de faire une chose, *to come to a resolution to do any thing.* Prendre un parti, *to take a resolution, to resolve upon something.* Tirer parti de quelque chose, *to make the most of any thing.*

partie—qui n'entend qu'une partie n'entend rien, *you should hear both sides of the question.*

pas—(lit. *step.*) Il s'est tiré d'un mauvais pas, *he has extricated himself out of a bad business.* Faire un faux (or) mauvais pas, (lit.) *to stumble,* (fig.) *to make a mistake.*

passer—en passer par, *to put up with.* Il faut bien en passer par tout où il veut. Se passer de, *to do without.*

pâte—(lit.) *dough,* (fig.) *nature.* C'est une bonne pâte d'homme, *he is a good-natured man.*

pâtir—les bons pâtissent pour les mauvais, *the good suffer for the bad.*

pavé—(*pavement*) battre le pavé, *to run about.* Etre sur le —, *to be without an asylum.*

paupière—je ne puis fermer la paupière, *I cannot sleep.* Je lui ai fermé la paupière, *I was present at his death.*

payer—payer de sa personne, *he is not afraid of danger.* Il payera les pots cassés, *he is answerable for the damage or the expenses.* Payer d'ingratitude, *to be ungrateful in return;* — d'audace, *to brave danger;* —d'effronterie, *to stand out in a lie, &c.*

pêcher en eau trouble, *to fish in troubled water.*

peigné (*combed*)—fig. *over-finished.* Un style peigné, *an over-smooth affected style.*

peindre—cette personne est faite à peindre, *that person is a model in point of shape.* Cet auteur s'est peint dans ses ouvrages.

peine—j'ai peine à me contenir, *I can scarcely contain myself.* Toute peine mérite salaire, *labour ought to be rewarded.* Nul bien sans peine, *nothing to be had without trouble.* La chose (or) cela vaut bien la peine qu'on fasse des démarches, *it is well worth the trouble.* Cela n'en vaut pas la peine.

perdre—je me perds quand j'y pense, *I am completely at a loss.* Perdre quelque chose de vue, *to lose sight of any thing;* —la tête, *to be quite bewildered, to have lost self-possession.* Tirer à coups perdus, *to fire at random.* Perdu de réputation, *whose reputation is lost.*

perspective—(*prospect*) (lit. and fig.) Il a une belle perspective, *he has a fine prospect.*

pièce—cet homme est près de ses pièces, *that man has very little money.* Ses paroles emportent la pièce, *she is very cutting in what she says.*

pié—si vous lui donnez un pié, il en prendra quatre, *give him an inch, he will take an ell.* Il ne sait sur quel pié danser, *he is without resources.* Ne remettez plus les piés ici, *never set your foot here again.* Attendre quelqu'un de pié ferme, *not to fear the arrival of any one.* Sur quel pié êtes vous? *what footing are you upon here?*

pierre—faire d'une pierre deux coups, *to kill two birds with one stone.*

pilule—dorer la pilule à quelqu'un, lui faire avaler la pilule, *to make an unpleasant circumstance appear agreeable by false representation.*

piquer—(*to pique, to wound.*) Vous l'avez piqué—il se pique aisément, se piquer d'honneur, de générosité, de courage, *to try to out-do any one in point of honor, generosity, courage, &c.*

pis—cela va de mal en pis, *from bad to worse.* Un pis-aller, *the last resort.*

pleuvoir—il pleut des richesses, des honneurs, des coups, &c. *riches, honors, blows, &c. come showering down.*

pli—prendre un bon (or) un mauvais pli, (fig.) *to contract good or bad habits.* (See Synon.) Il vaut mieux plier que de rompre, *it is better to bend or give way than break.*

plomb—à —, *perpendicularly,* (fig. *steady.*) Voilà un homme qui a beaucoup d'aplomb, *there is a man who has great firmness, self-possession, assurance, &c.*

pluie—après la pluie vient le beau tems, *after sorrows and tears, comes joy.*

pont—voilà le pont aux ânes, *the asses' bridge.*

portée (*reach*) à la —, *within reach* (lit. and fig.) à la portée d'un fusil, à la — de l'entendement, *within the reach of a gun, — of the understanding.*

posséder (se)— *to preserve self-possession, cool and collected.* Je ne me possède pas de joie, de rage, &c. *I can scarcely keep within bounds for joy, &c.*

pourpre—*of deep red colour,*—is often taken for "royalty." La — éblouit les hommes, *royalty dazzles men.*

pousser l'insolence jusqu'a —, *to carry insolence so as to —.*

pouvoir—je n'en peux plus, *I am knocked-up.* cela se peut, *that may be.* Cela ne ne se peut pas, *that cannot be* (or) *cannot take place.*

prendre—s'y prendre, *to set about.* S'en prendre à —, *to lay the blame upon any one.*

prêter (*to lend*)—se prêter à, *to lend*

one's-self to. C'est une espèce d'étoffe qui prête, *it is a kind of stuff which gives.*

prise—être aux prises, *to be struggling.* Il sont aux prises, *they are fighting, struggling.* En venir aux prises, *to come to blows.* Donner prise à la critique, *to expose one's-self to a critique.* Lâcher prise, *to let go.*

prix—mettre la tête de quelqu'un à prix, *to offer a reward for any body's head.*

procès—intenter un procès à quelqu'un, *to bring an action against any one.*

profiter—bien mal acquis ne profite jamais, *riches ill got never thrive.*

proie—être en proie à, *to be a prey to.*

propos—à propos de bottes. (Used when a person mentions any thing quite foreign to the subject.) Chercher querelle à-propos de bottes. Faire une chose de propos délibéré, *to do any thing coolly and designedly.*

quatre—se mettre en quatre pour servir ses amis, *to do one's best to serve one's friends.* Comme quatre, (a very familiar expression) which means "as much as four persons can do." Travailler, manger comme quatre.

question—faire une question, *to ask a question.* Il est question de, *the matter in hand is, &c.*

quiproquo—*a mistake, a misunderstanding.* Faire un quiproquo, *mistaking one thing for another.*

quitte—(*quits, rid of.*) Nous sommes quittes, *we are quits.* Me voilà quitte de la fièvre, *now I have got rid of the fever.* J'en serai quitte pour être grondé, &c. *they will let me off with a scolding.* Tenir quitte de, &c. *to let any one off for, &c.*

qui va-la? } *who is that?*
qui-vive? }
Etre toujours sur le qui-vive.

raillerie—entendre —, *to take a joke.*

raison—perdre la raison, *to become crazy.* Entendre raison, *to hear reason.* Parler raison, *to speak reasonably.*

recherché—(*far-fetched, over nice, not natural.*) Une personne est recherchée dans ses repas, ses ajustemens, ses meubles. Des pensées recherchées, *far-fetched thoughts.*

recueillir—(*to gather together*) une succession, les fruits de son travail, les débris d'une armée, d'un naufrage; — les voix, les suffrages. Se recueillir en soi-même, *to commune with one's-self.*

reculer (*to go back.*) Reculer pour mieux sauter, *to hang back in expectation of greater success.*

redresser—(dresser, means *to set upright;* redresser, *set upright again:* (fig.) *to set any one right, or in the right way.* Il a parlé malhonnêtement, mais nous l'avons redressé.

regarder—vous y regardez de trop près, *you are too particular.* Cette fenêtre regarde sur la mer, *this window looks on the sea.*

relief—(lit.) in architecture, that part which comes or projects out from the flat work—*relievo:* (fig.) *influence, a name, authority.* Cette charge vous donnera du relief.

repaître—(only fig.) *to glut one's-self.* Se repaître de sang et de carnage.

reprise—à plusieurs reprises, *several times over.*

ressort—(lit.) *spring.* (fig.) *province, department.* Cela est de mon ressort, *that is within my department, capacity.*

reste—il ne demanda pas son reste, *He was very glad to get off without entering into particulars.*

retour—faire un—sur soi-même, *to reflect seriously, to repent.*

retrancher, (se.) Il se retranche toujours sur sa bonne intention, *he always gives his good intentions as an excuse.*

revenant bon, (*extra profit derived from an employment,*) *perquisite.* Un revenant, *a hobgoblin.*

revenir—(fig.) ceci me revient fort, *I like this very much.* Il est revenu de ses égaremens, des plaisirs de ce monde, *he has lost all inclination, or relish for pleasure, &c., he is reclaimed.*

rideau—tirons le rideau là dessus, *let us drop the subject.*

rire—tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera, *If you laugh to-day, you'll cry to-morrow.*

rompre—ne me rompez pas la tête, *do not split my head.*

rouler—pierre qui roule n'amasse point de mousse, *rolling stones gather no moss.*

ruisseau—des ruisseaux de sang, de vin, de larmes, *torrents of blood, &c.*

sage—*as an adjective it means "prudent, circumspect," not "learned."*

sain—sain et sauf, *safe and sound.*

sec—(*"dry." when literal, and "harsh" when fig.*) Un compliment sec, une réponse sèche, *a harsh, &c.* Un ouvrage sec, *a tiresome, dry composition.* Je suis à sec, *I have no money left.*

sécher—sécher d'ennui, de tristesse, *to linger with weariness and sadness.*

sécurité, sureté, (see Synon.)

semblant—faire—de, *to pretend, to make pretence.* Il fait semblant de ne pas comprendre.

sens—in French has about the same acceptation as in English.

sevrer, (to wean, is used both lit. and fig. in the sense of "deprived.")

siffler (*to whistle.*) *At a theatre in France, the audience express their displeasure by "whistling;" which has the effect of "hissing" in England.* Le nouvel acteur a été sifflé, *the new actor has been hissed.* On le siffla tant qu'il fut obligé de se retirer, *he was hissed off.*

soi—chacun pour soi, et Dieu pour tous, *every one for himself, and God for us all.*

soulier—vous ne savez pas où le soulier blesse, *no one knows where the shoe pinches but he who wears it.*

sourd—faire la sourde oreille, *to pretend not to hear.* Une lanterne sourde, *a dark lantern.* Des menées, des pratiques sourdes, *sly dealings.* Des bruits sourds, *secret reports.*

sphère and *style* are each used in the literal and figurative sense in English and French; and in both languages are taken nearly in the same acceptation.

suffire—il faut savoir se suffire à soi même, *we ought to have resources within ourselves.*

suivre—un discours suivi, *a well managed discourse, one in which every part is well laid down.* Ce prédicateur, ce professeur est bien suivi, *that preacher, that professor is run after.*

tablature, donner de la—*to puzzle, to torment.*

table—tenir—ouverte, *to keep an open table.*

tapis—cette affaire a été sur le tapis, *this business has been the subject of conversation.*

tarir (*to dry up*)—Quand il s'agit de raconter, il ne tarit jamais, *when he once begins to relate any thing, there is no end to it.*

tâter—le pouls, *to feel the pulse.*

tâtons—aller à, *to go groping along.*

tendre—l'âge le plus tendre, de sa plus tendre jeunesse, *from his earliest youth.*

tenir—il ne tient qu'à moi, qu'à toi, *it is in my power.* (*see* Idioms.) Je m'en tiens à cela, *that will do, I will not go any further.* Je m'en tiens à ce que vous dites, *what you say is quite satisfactory to me.* A l'impossible nul n'est tenu, *no one is obliged to do impossibilities.* Tenir à *is used literally and figuratively,* Ce papier tient à la muraille, *this paper sticks to the wall.* Cette corde tient au clou, *that cord holds by the nail.* Il tient beaucoup à ses anciennes habitudes, *he clings to his old habits.* Je tiens beaucoup à le rendre heureux, *I am particularly anxious to make him happy.* Je ne tiens pas à conserver l'estime d'un tel personnage, *I am not anxious to preserve, &c.*

tête—avoir la tête fêlée, timbrée, *to be crazy.* La tête lui tourne, *he is quite giddy.* Faire à sa tête, *act according to one's fancy.* C'est un coup de sa tête, *one of his pranks.* Une tête folle, écervelée, éventée; évaporée, sans cervelle; de linotte, de girouette, légère, *giddy head, hair-brained.* Tête froide, *cool-headed.* Avoir de la tête, *to be firm, and have presence of mind.* Perdre la tête, *to be bewildered.* Un homme de tête, *a profound, clever, cool-headed man.* Tenir tête à quelqu'un, *to oppose or keep up with any one.* Il ne sait ou donner de la tête, *he does not know what to have recourse to.* Tête-à-tête, *an interview, conversation between two persons.*

tirer—cette affaire tire en longueur, *this business begins to drag, is longer than it should be.* Tirer au sort, *to draw lots.*

titre—c'est à juste titre qu'il a obtenu sa promotion, *he justly deserved his promotion.*

ton—le prendre sur un ton qui choque. Here *ton* implies tone of voice, and peremptory manners. Un ton doucereux, or doux. Le bon ton et le mauvais ton, *genteel and vulgar manners.*

tout—il n'avoit pour tous gages que, *that is,* Tous les gages qu'il avoit ne se montoient qu'à, *the whole of the wages he had amounted to.* Il avoit pour toute fortune, pour tout bien, &c., *his only fortune, &c.*

train—(the rate that one goes at) aller grand, petit train, *may refer to the quickness with which one travels, or the rate one lives at.* Je suis en train de travailler, d'écrire, &c., *I am just in the humour for writing, &c.* Faire du train, *to make a noise.*

tranchant—(the edge of a cutting tool)—le tranchant d'une lame. Une lame à deux tranchans. Une couleur tranchante, *a glaring, gaudy, showy color.*

trancher—(lit. *to slice off at one blow.*) Ex. trancher la tête à quelqu'un, *to chop any body's head off.* Hence, *in the figurative sense,* trancher *means* "to give one's opinion in so decisive and peremptory a manner as not to admit of a reply." Voilà un homme qui tranche. Il est bien ignorant, et cependant il tranche sur tous les sujets.

tremper, (*to steep,*) tremper ses mains dans le sang, *to imbrue one's hands in blood.* tremper dans un crime, *to be an accomplice.*

trempe, (*the temper of a blade, &c.*) (fig,) cette personne a l'esprit et le corps d'une bonne trempe, *that person is quite sound with regard to mind and body.*

trève, (lit. *truce.*) *When fig.* Trève de cérémonies, de complimens, de railleries, de morale, *no more of your ceremonies, compliments—put a stop to, &c.*

triomphe—when speaking of a part of a play, or any thing that an actor, an artist, or any man of talent, particularly shines in, we say, *c'est son triomphe.*

trop—vous êtes de trop, *you are not wanted.* Je crains d'être de trop, *I am afraid I am intruding.*

trouver—comment trouvez vous cela? *How do you like that?* Il se trouva un chelin de moins, *there happened to be, &c.*

user—en user avec, *to deal with.* Il en use librement et familièrement avec ses amis. User quelque chose (*without a preposition*) *to wear out.* User ses habits, ses souliers, user de, *to use.* (See Synonymes.)

valoir—il vaut mieux (without a preposition before the next verb,) *it is better.* Il vaut mieux aller seul que mal accompagné, *it is better to go alone than in bad company.* Faire valoir un bien, ses talens, *to render property, or one's talents, valuable or productive, or to shew one's merit to the best advantage.* Se faire valoir, *to make the most of one's-self.* Autant vaut faire une chose qu'une autre, *one may as well, &c.*

venir, (see Idioms,) je viens de parler à votre père, *I have just spoken to your father.* S'il vient à pleuvoir, *if it happens to rain.* En venir aux coups, aux mains, *to come to blows.*

vent—au gré des vents, *at the mercy of the winds.*

ventre—aller à cheval, ventre à terre, (or) bride abattue, *to go full speed.*

vert—*green; but fig. it means "vigorous,"*) il est encore vert pour son âge, *he is strong and hearty for his age.* Une vieillesse verte, *a hearty old age.*

vertu—il faut faire de necessité vertu, *we should make a virtue of necessity.*

vif—de vive voix, *by word of mouth.* Piqué jusqu'au vif, *stung to the quick.*

vin—entre deux vins, *half seas over.*

vinaigre—on attrappe des mouches avec du miel et non avec du vinaigre, *mild ways do better than harshness.*

visage—faire bon, mauvais visage à quelqu'um, *to put on a good or a sour face.*

visite—rendre visite, *to pay a visit.*

vivre—il faut vivre à Rome comme à Rome, *you must live at Rome as they do at Rome.*

voie—mettre quelqu'un sur la voie, *to put any one in the way.*

volée—ce monsieur est de la première, de la haute volée, *this gentleman is of high connexions.*

vouloir—en vouloir à quelqu'un, *to have a spite against any one.*

vomir des injures, des imprécations, des blasphèmes contre, &c., *to utter insults, imprecations, &c.*

A LIST *of* VERBS, *attended by a Noun without an Article, forming together but one particular idea.*

Ajouter foi à .....*to give credit.*
Avoir accès à .....*to have free access to.*
affaire à .....*to have to do.*
besoin de .....*to want, to be in need of.*

avoir appétit .....*to have an appetite.*
bon / grand } appétit ..*to have a good appetite.*
faim .....*to be hungry.*
grand faim ..... *very hungry.*
soif .....*to be dry,* or *thirsty.*
grand soif ..... *very dry.*
froid .....*to be cold.*
chaud ..... *hot, or warm.*
envie de .....*to have a mind.*
dessein de .....*to have a design, to design, to intend.*
droit de .....*to have a right.*
égard à .....*to have a regard.*
coutume de .....*to use, to be wont.*
compassion de ....*to compassionate, to commiserate.*
pitié de .....*to pity, to have pity on.*
honte de .....*to be ashamed.*
part à .....*to have a share, to be concerned in.*
patience .....*to have patience.*
confiance en .....*to repose confidence in.*
peur de .....*to be afraid, to fear.*
connoissance, avis de *to have notice.*
permission de..... " *leave.*
carte blanche de.. } "
plein pouvoir de.. } " } *full power, and*
tout pouvoir de .. } " } *liberty.*
lieu de ..... " *room.*
sujet de ..... " *cause.*
raison de .....*to be in the right.*
soin de .....*to have care.*
grand soin de..... " *a great,* or *special care.*
ordre de ..... " *order.*
occasion de ..... " *an opportunity.*
obligation, à de ....*to be under obligation.*
tort de .....*to be in the wrong.*
grand tort de .....*to be very much in the wrong.*
horreur de .....*to quake with horror.*
vent et marée .....*to sail with wind and tide.*
querelle avec .....*to have a quarrel.*
rapport à .....*to refer to.*
mal à la tête .....*to have the head-ache.*
aux dents .... " *the tooth-ache.*
aux yeux ..... " *sore eyes.*
aux pieds..... " *sore feet.*
au ventre ..... " *the stomach ache.*
au côté ..... " *a pain in one's side.*
au bras ..... " " *arm.*
à l'épaule ..... " " *shoulder.*
au nez ..... " *a sore nose.*
à l'oreille, &c.. " *sore ears.*

Chercher chicane à .....*to cavil.*
fortune .....*to seek one's fortune.*
querelle à .....*to pick a quarrel.*
Couper court .....*to abridge.*
Courir risque .....*to run the risk.*
Crier vengeance .....*to call for revenge.*
Demander audience à ....*to ask audience.*
avis à ..... " *advice.*
caution ..... " *a security.*
compte à .... " *an account.*
conseil à .... " *counsel.*
grâce, pardon à " *pardon.*
quartier à ....*to beg quarter.*
justice à.....*to demand justice.*
raison à / satisfaction à } *to demand a satisfaction.*
Demeurer court .....*to be at a stand, mum; to stop.*
Dire vrai .....*to speak the truth.*
faux .....*to tell a falsehood.*
Donner atteinte à .....*to strike at.*
audience à .....*to give an audience.*
avis à .....*to give advice, to let one know.*
beau jeu à .....*to give fair play.*
conseil à.....*to give advice.*
caution .....*to give bail, a security.*
carrière à son esprit *to give one's wit its full scope.*
congé à .....*to give leave,* (also) *a holiday.*
permission à ....*to give permission.*
envie à .....*to put in mind, excite the wish.*
exemple à .....*to set an example.*
parole .....*to give one's word.*
plein pouvoir à / tout pouvoir à / carte blanche à } *to give full power and liberty.*
ordre à .....*to give orders.*
charge à .....*to charge any one.*
leçon à .....*to give a lesson.*
jour à .....*to fix upon a day.*
prise .....*to give an advantage, a hold over one.*
quartier .....*to give quarter.*
quittance .....*to give* or *write a receipt.*
rendez-vous ....*to make an appointment any where.*
lieu de .....*to give room.*
sujet à ..... " *occasion.*
occasion ..... " *an opportunity.*
Entendre raison .....*to hear reason.*
malice ..... / finesse ..... / raillerie..... } *to give, to take a joke well.*
L'échapper belle .....*to have a narrow escape.*

Faire abstinence .....*to fast.*
alte .....*to halt.*
argent de .....*to raise money with.*
affaire avec.....*to do business.*
attention à .....*to attend, to mind.*
cas de.....*to value.*
affront à .....*to affront.*
banqueroute .....*to break, to fail.*
bonne or à .....*to put a good or bad face on the matter.*
mauvaise mine à....*to give a good or a bad reception.*
brèche .....*to cut.*
bombance } ....*to feast, to live, to feed luxuriously.*
bonne chère }
choix de.....*to make choice, to choose.*
difficulté.....*to make a scruple.*
compassion .....*to raise compassion.*
confidence à .....*to trust a secret with one.*
éclat .....*to break out, to come abroad.*
envie .....*to excite envy.*
emplette.....*to purchase.*
épreuve de .....*to prove.*
excuse à .....*to beg pardon.*
face à .....*to face.*
feu .....*to fire.*
long feu .....*to flash in the pan, to miss fire.*
fond sur .....*to depend upon.*
fortune .....*to make a fortune.*
foi .....*to prove.*
grâce à .....*to forgive.*
gloire d'une chose (se) *to pride one's-self upon.*
gras ou maigre ....*to eat flesh* or *abstain from it.*
honneur à .....*to do honour.*
déshonneur à .....*to disgrace.*
honte à .....*to shame, to disgrace one.*
horreur à .....*to strike with horror.*
insulte à .....*to abuse, to insult.*
injure à .....*to do an injury, to offend.*
impression sur ....*to make an impression.*
justice .....*to do justice.*
jour (se faire) à travers *to make way, to break through.*
marché avec .....*to make a bargain, an agreement.*
main basse sur ....*to put all to the sword.*
mine de .....*to look as if, to seem.*
parade de .....*to make a parade* or *show.*
naufrage .....*to be shipwrecked, to be wrecked.*
pacte .....*to make a pact.*
part .....*to impart, to communicate.*
pitié .....*to move* or *excite pity, or compassion.*
plaisir à .....*to please.*
peur à .....*to frighten.*

Faire partie de.....*to make part of.*
pénitence .....*to do penance.*
présent de, à .....*to make a present, to present with.*
place à .....*to make room.*
provision.....*to provide one's-self with.*
preuve de .....*to give proofs of.*
quartier .....*to give quarter, to spare.*
raison à .....*to pledge, to satisfy any one.*
réflection sur .....*to reflect.*
réparation .....*to make a satisfaction.*
route (ensemble) ..*to sail, to travel (together.)*
semblant de .....*to pretend, to feign, to act as if.*
scrupule de.....*to scruple.*
sentinelle .....*to stand sentry.*
serment de .....*to take an oath.*
signe à, de .....*to make a sign, to beckon, nod, wink.*
tapage.....*to make a racket.*
tort à .....*to wrong.*
trafic ou commerce..*to traffic, to deal, to trade.*
trêve à .....*to forbear.*
usage de.....*to use, to make use of.*
vie qui dure .... { *to live within compass.* / *to spare oneself.*
bonne vie ..... } *to lead a merry life.*
joyeuse vie..... }
voile vers .....*to set sail, to make sail.*
Filer doux .....*to give fair words, to sneak off.*
Jeter feu & flammes ....*to fret and fume.*
Lâcher prise .....*to let go one's hold.*
Lier d'amitié .....*to engage in a friendship or correspondence.*
commerce.....*with one.*
Mettre bas .....*to bring forth,* (speaking of animals.)
fin.....*to put an end.*
pied à terre .....*to light* or *alight.*
ordre à .....*to settle, to set to rights.*
Obtenir permission .....*to obtain leave.*
Parler raison .....*to speak reason.*
clair ..... *plain sense.*
juste ..... *right.*
vrai ..... *the truth.*
François ..... *French.*
Latin ..... *Latin.*
Anglois, &c..... *English, &c.*
Perdre courage .....*to be disheartened, to despond.*
patience .....*to lose patience.*
terre .....*to go out of one's depth.*
fond .....*to drive with the anchors.*
Plier baggage .....*to pack off, to pack up one's all, bag and baggage.*
Porter bonheur à.....*to bear good luck.*

Porter malheur à.....*to bear ill luck.*
préjudice à .....*to be prejudicial.*
envie à .....*to bear envy.*
témoignage .....*to bear witness.*
Prendre courage .....*to cheer up, to take courage.*
conseil / avis } de.....*to take any one's advice.*
congé de .....*to take one's leave of one.*
garde à, de .....*to take care* or *notice.*
feu .....*to take* or *catch fire.*
confiance .....*to have more confidence.*
connoissance de . .*to take notice* or *to inform one's-self.*
example sur quelqu'un ..... *to take example by one, to square one's life* or *conduct by his.*
goût à .....*to like.*
jour .....*to appoint a day.*
haleine .....*to take one's breath.*
naissance .....*to be born.*
médecine .....*to take physic.*
pitié de.....*to take pity,* or *compassion, to commiserate.*
part / intérêt } .....*to take a part, to concern one's-self in a thing.*
plaisir à .....*to take pleasure, to delight.*
place.....*to take one's place.*
patience .....*to take patience, to bear* or *wait patiently.*
pied .....*to take, to get a footing.*
racine .....*to take, to strike root, get a footing.*
séance .....*to take one's place (in.)*
soin de .....*to take care of, to look to,* or *after a thing.*
terre .....*to land, to get ashore.*
parti .....*to enlist as a soldier.*
Prêter serment .....*to take an oath.*
Promettre (monts & merveilles) *to promise wonders.*
Recevoir ordre de .....*to receive orders.*
Rendre compte à.....*to account for,* or *give an account of.*
gloire à.....*to give glory.*
grâce à.....*to return thanks.*
hommage à .....*to pay homage.*
justice à .....*to do justice.*
raison à .....*to give an account of.*
service à ..... .*to do service.*
témoignage .....*to witness.*
visite.....*to pay a visit.*
Savoir gré (bon *or* mauvais) *to take a thing kindly.*
Tenir bon .....*to stand firm, not to give up.*
compte .....*to give value for.*
lieu de .....*to be as,* or *keep the place of.*
tête à .....*to cope with any one, to oppose, to resist.*
parole .....*to be as good as one's word.*

Tenir table ouverte ....*to keep an open table.*
boutique .....*to keep a shop.*
Tirer avantage or parti de *to make the most of.*
Vivre content de .....*to live contentedly.*
Vouloir mal à quelqu'un ..*to bear one a grudge.*

IMPERFECT and PRETERITE.—Having treated of this subject at full length in the Syntax, pages 105 to 108, we shall only add the following observation:

That, when reading an account of a man's life, the learner will often meet with the *Preterite*, used to mention actions that must have been done frequently, and even habitually, and which, therefore, according to the given rules, ought to be in the imperfect; but, in such a case, he will perceive that the author does not intend, by so doing, to describe or delineate these actions in particular, but that he merely enumerates them as so many facts or points which serve to characterise the man, and, in fact, as being the result of habitual actions. Ex.

Socrate *apprit* à ses compatriotes à raisonner sur l'immortalité de l'âme; il *réussit* à leur donner des idées sublimes d'un Dieu créateur de l'Univers.

Apprit expresses an action that must have occurred several times; but here this word, as well as *réussit*, is taken for the *result* of the instruction given by Socrates.

INFINITIVE.* (Syntax, No. 243 and 244—378 to 380 incl.)

The never failing principle that "two verbs coming together, the second (being governed by the first) is always in the *infinitive*," will account for the following sentences, the construction of which is peculiar to the French language.

When speaking in an indefinite and general way. (Syntax, No. 378); also see subjunctive, Appendix.

Il faut faire son devoir.—*We must do our duty.*

---

* The *Infinitive* is rather a favorite mood, in French, when there can be no ambiguity, because, by avoiding a repetition of *que's*, it makes the sentence more concise, and also more harmonious.

Which expression has about the same import as

Il faut qu'on fasse, &c.; also,
On doit travailler, (*or*) Il faut qu'on travaille.
Il ne faut pas toujours penser à soi.*
Avant de parler, il faut réfléchir.

To avoid the repetition of *que* and the pronoun† (Synt. No. 379.)

Nous croyons devoir vous avertir du danger que vous courez.	(instead of)	Nous croyons que nous devons vous avertir, &c.
Croyez-vous pouvoir faire cela?		Croyez-vous que vous puissiez faire cela?
Elle craint de tomber.		Elle craint qu'elle ne tombe.

When the person, which is to be the agent to the next verb, is sufficiently pointed out, whether by a dative coming before, or by the context:

J'ordonne *à* votre frère *de*‡ *faire* cela.	J'ordonne que votre frère fasse cela.
Je *lui* ai commandé *d'être*‖ prêt.	J'ai commandé *qu'il fût* prêt.

Avant de le punir, dites lui pourquoi il a tort. (*and not*) Avant que vous le punissiez, &c.

Dites sufficiently shews the person one speaks to. But we should say,

Nous dirons notre leçon avant que *vous partiez.*

With *se faire, se laisser* the infinitive in the active voice, because the reflective already implies a passive voice.

Il se fait *comprendre,*
He makes himself understood.

Nous nous sommes laissé *prendre,*
We suffered ourselves to be taken.

---

* *Il faut* being, like *on*, a vague expression, has *son, ses, se*, and *soi*, for its correlatives.

† If there should be a pronoun of a different person, the construction with *que* and the pronoun ought, of course, to be preferred, as, *Nous croyons* qu'il *doit vous avertir.*

‡ Not J'ordonne à votre frère *qu'il* fasse cela.

‖ Syntax, page 87, No. 227.

The infinitive, (Syntax, page 154, No. 380,) by means of the elipsis, is used immediately after *que? Comment? Pourquoi?*

Que *faire* et que *dire?*	(for)	Que (*dois-je*) faire, &c.
Comment *se tirer* d'embarras?	(for)	Comment (*peut-on*) se tirer, &c.
Pourquoi *dire* un mensonge?	(for)	Pourquoi (*irais je* (or) *faut-il*) dire, &c.

With *moi, toi, lui, nous, vous, eux,* or any noun, the Infinitive is used to express *surprise, horror, contempt.*

Moi! faire cela! (or) Faire cela! Moi!
I! do that! (or) *Do you think me capable of that!*

Eux! justifier le parjure!
Shall they justify perjury!

Un homme comme vous, parler de la sorte!
A man like you, speaking in that manner!

When the gerund in English is the nominative to the next verb, it is to be translated into French by the present of the *infinitive.*

Lire est une bonne et agréable occupation,
Reading is a good and agreeable occupation.

Pouvoir lire une langue n'est pas *pouvoir* la parler,
Any one may be able to read a language, and yet not be able to speak it.

Etre toujours content de soi, est vanité ; *n'être* jamais content de soi, est mauvaise humeur,
Being always pleased with one's-self is vanity, never being satisfied with one's-self is ill humour.

Flatter, c'est tromper; tromper, c'est haïr,
Flattering is deceiving, deceiving is hating.

With the same favourite construction, the following emphatic sentences, expressive of hurry and action, are well worth noticing.

Se précipiter sur l'ennemi, le mettre en déroute, le poursuivre l'épée dans les mains ; tout cela ne fut que l'affaire d'un moment,
Rushing upon the enemy, putting them to the rout, pursuing them sword in hand; all was the affair of a moment.

The *infinitive* beginning the second part of a sentence is preceded by *à;* meaning *if, by, when,* &c.

A en juger par le train qu'il mène, il doit être riche,
If we judge by the rate he lives at, he must be rich.

A l'entendre dire, on croiroit qu'il a beaucoup de crédit,
By hearing him talk, you would think that he has a great deal of credit.

A le voir, on ne diroit pas qu'il est si habile,
By seeing him, you would not imagine he is so clever.

A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin.
If he continues to live as he does, he will not go far.

A vous parler franchement, je n'en crois rien,
If I must speak candidly, I do not believe it.

The *infinitive* with the preposition *à*, meaning *the way of, fit for*, &c. may sometimes have a *passive* acceptation, though it be used in the active voice in French. (See French Prep. A.)

C'est une affaire à vous ruiner,
It is a kind of business which is likely to ruin you.

Mon frère n'étoit pas homme *à profiter* de l'expérience,
My brother is not the kind of man that would profit by experience,

Voilà des chiffons à brûler,
Here are rags fit to be burnt.

C'est un coquin à pendre,
He is a rogue, that deserves nothing but hanging.

Il est bien à plaindre,
He is very much to be pitied.

Voici du fruit à cueillir,
Here is fruit fit to be gathered.

De with an *infinitive* may begin a sentence; it is then generally followed by *c'est*, and seems to indicate a transposition.

De faire des promesses et *de* n'en tenir aucune, *c'est* à quoi il ne s'expose jamais,
Making promises, and keeping none, is what he will never expose himself to.

De vous dire ce qu'il y avoit d'agréable, *c'est* ce que je ne puis,
Telling you what was agreeable is what I cannot do.

We might have said, by turning the sentences,

Il ne s'expose jamais à faire des promesses, &c.

Je ne puis vous dire ce qu'il y avoit de plus, &c.

NE. (Accidence, page 100, and Syntax, page 140.)

Although French writers, in such sentences as the following, use the negation *ne* somewhat indiscriminately, yet we will venture to clear up doubts by giving the following rules:

1. When the comparison is expressive of *superiority*, of *inferiority*, or of *difference*, use *ne*.

Vous êtes plus heureux que je ne le* suis,
You are happier than I am.

Il y a des auteurs qui écrivent mieux qu'ils *ne* parlent,
There are authors who write better than they speak.

C'est tout autre chose que je *ne* croyois,
It is quite different from what I thought.

2. When the comparison is merely expressive of *equality* or *resemblance*, *ne* should not be expressed.

Peut on être plus heureux que je le* suis!
Can any body be more happy than I am!

Etes-vous plus savant qu'il l'*étoit?
Are you more learned than he was?

NE (without *pas*) may be considered as a word implying doubt, and not as a *negative*; it is, therefore, used after the following expressions, which are all, in fact, in the subjunctive.

ne pas nier ..... Je ne nie pas que cela ne soit,
I do not deny but what that may be.

nier—(*interrogatively.*).. Peut-on nier que la santé ne soit préférable aux richesses?
Can any one deny but that health is preferable to riches.

désespérer—(*negatively.*) Je ne désespère pas que nous n'ayons beau tems,
I do not despair of having fine weather.

disconvenir-(*negatively.*) Il ne disconvient pas que vous ne soyez instruit,
He does not deny but what you are well informed.

douter—(*negatively.*) .. On ne doute pas qu'il n'arrive,
They have no doubt but that he will arrive.

---

* Though *le*, standing for the foregoing adjective, seems to an Englishman perfectly useless, yet it is always expressed in French. (Syntax, No. 87.)

empêcher .....J'empêche qu'il ne vienne,
I prevent his coming.

Je n'empêche pas qu'il vienne,
I do not prevent his coming.

Empêcherez-vous qu'il vienne ?
Shall you prevent his coming ?

N'empêcherez-vous pas qu'il vienne ?
Shall you not prevent his coming ?

défendre .....J'ai défendu que vous ne fissiez cela,
I forbade your doing that.

Il ne tient pas à ....Il ne tient pas à moi que cela ne se fasse,
It is not in my power to prevent that from being done.

craindre .....Je crains que cela n'arrive,
I fear lest that should happen.

Je tremble que cela n'arrive,
I tremble lest that should happen.

J'appréhende que cela n'arrive,
I am apprehensive lest that should happen.

se défier .....On doit se défier qu'il ne vienne,
We must suspect his coming.

prendre garde .....Prenez garde que cet enfant ne tombe,
Take care lest that child should fall.

peu s'en faut que....Peu s'en est fallu qu'il ne fût tué,
He was very near being killed.

NICETIES *or* DIFFICULTIES *(some of the) of the French Language.*

Avoir l'air—bon, méchant, cruel, &c. The adjective used with *avoir l'air* agrees with *l'air*, that is, is masculine, though speaking of a woman, when *l'air* refers to outward appearance. Thus we say, *Elle a l'air bon, méchant, distingué, commun*, &c. But when *l'air* refers to a physical defect or quality, it is better to use *être* or some other equivalent expression, such as *sembler, paroître*, &c. Ex. *Cette demoiselle a l'air d'être bossue; Ces terres me paraissent ensemencées; Ces fruits me paraissent bons.*

Verbs that require *à* cannot be turned into the passive; therefore do not say, *Je suis obéi, elle est répondue, les méchans sont résistés, ma famille a été nuie par vous*, &c. because of *obéir à, répondre à*, &c. but turn these sentences into the active voice, and say, *On m'a obéi, on lui a répondu, on a résisté aux méchans, On or des personnes ont nui à ma famille.*

It is improper to translate "To observe to any one," by *Observer à quelqu'un*; it should be *Faire observer à quelqu'un*. (To observe any

one," is, in French, *observer quelqu'un.*) Ex. *Permettez, monsieur, q*
je vous fasse observer, qu'en pareil cas vous auriez tort d'agir ain
Allow me to observe to you, that, in the like case, you would be wro
to act so.

Faire immediately before another verb, meaning " to cause," r
quires the accusative (i. e. no prep.) before the next noun. Ex. "
caused or prevailed upon that young lady to sing."

J'ai fait chanter cette demoiselle—vous avez fait écrire vos écolier
&c. But if the second verb (being an active verb) be followed b
an accusative, the first is put in the dative (with *à*). Ex.

" I caused that young lady to sing a song,"
J'ai fait chanter une chanson à cette demoiselle.

You made your scholars write an exercise,
Vous avez fait écrire un thême à vos écoliers.

Still speaking of the young lady, and of the scholars:

Je lui ai fait chanter une chanson. Vous leur avez fait écrire un thême
(Syntax, No. 404, and Note *).

With any other verb than *faire*, the accusative only should be used
Ex. *Je les ai vus écrire une page. Vous l'avez laissé lire un roman*
Nous les avons entendu chanter une chanson.

Eclairer meaning " showing a light to," should be followed by
Ex. *Eclairez à monsieur, car il fait sombre.* Not so when *éclairer* mean
" to enlighten,"

Coucher un enfant, " to put a child to bed," is active.

Coucher, signifying " to sleep," is neuter. Ex. Je couche dans cett
chambre-ci. Où couche-t-il? Où ont-ils couché?

Se coucher, " to be getting into bed," is reflective.

N'entrez pas dans la chambre, il se couche. Aller se coucher, " to
to bed."

Enseigner and *apprendre* (meaning " giving instruction to,") requir
à before the next noun. Ex. *Vous enseignez à ces enfans. Vous les*
apprenez les mathématiques.

Jouer d'un instrument, " to play upon any instrument" whatever
Jouer du violon, du piano, de la harpe, &c. We also say, *Pincer l*
harpe, la guitare, le luth, &c. Toucher l'orgue, le piano. But no
Pincer de la harpe, &c. *Toucher de l'orgue* (with *de*). Instead o
Jouer, we use *Sonner de la trompette*, to blow the trumpet; *sonner d*
cor, to blow the horn; *battre la caisse* or *le tambour*, to beat the drum.

Se Rappeler, to remember, does not, like *se souvenir*, require *d*
Ex. *Je me rappelle le nom de cette personne.* I remember that person
name. Though we say, *je me souviens du nom*, &c. consequently, *je m*
le rappelle, not *je m'en rappelle*; though we say, *je m'en souviens.*

Gens, people, is masculine, when the adjective follows, and feminine when the adjective precedes. Ex. *Des gens instruits, éclairés*, &c. well informed, enlightened people. *De bonnes gens*, kind people. Yet we say (with *tout*) *Tous les gens de bien.*

All numerals are indeclinable, except *vingt* and *cent*, which, when preceded and not followed by another noun of number, take the mark of the plural.

Ex. Quatrevingts.	Quatrevingts hommes.
Eighty.	*Eighty men.*

but we write

Quatrevingt cinq.	Quatrevingt cinq hommes.
Eighty-five.	*Eighty-five men.*

The Orthography of the French language is more difficult than that of any other, because not only words are not written as they are pronounced, but because the articles, substantives, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs, undergo changes depending on grammatical rules; and, consequently, such persons only can be expected to spell correctly, who are well acquainted with those rules. See Syntax for each article above mentioned.

We shall here only remind the learner of those faults which are generally committed from inattention; such as the addition of *e* and *s* to adjectives and participles, when agreeing with a substantive feminine plural. Ex. *Des femmes aimées.*

The acute, grave, and circumflex accents, should also be strictly attended to.

Of Substantives.

Consonants are seldom sounded at the end of words; in order therefore to ascertain which should be the final one, it will, in general, be necessary only to recollect the derivative word. For instance, *hasard*, chance, is pronounced as if spelt *hasar*. On referring to *hasarder*, it will easily be seen that the substantive must be *hasard*: the same rule may be given for the following substantives, as well as for others:

Camper,	Camp.	Ranger,	Rang.
Abricotier,	Abricot.	Débuter,	Début.
Comploter,	Complot.	Réciter,	Récit.
Darder,	Dard.	Fruitière,	Fruit.

The spelling of several other words of different terminations may be found out by applying the same method.

Serine,	Serin,	*not* Serein *nor* Serain.
Voisine,	Voisin.	
Sanguine,	Sanguin.	

Faim is spelt with an *m*, on account of *famine—fin*, because of *finir*, &c. From *aboyer* we make *aboiement, enjouer, enjouement,* though in those substantives the *e* is by no means pronounced. The following do not keep the *e*.

Châtier,	Châtiment.
Remercier,	Remercîment.
Continuer,	Continûment.
Secouer,	Secoûment.

With *adjectives* and *participles* the like method may be used.

Froide,	Froid.	Perdue,	Perdu.
Sourde,	Sourd.	Finie,	Finie.
Altiere,	Altier.	Incluse,	Inclus.
Certaine,	Certain.		

Of Verbs.

The *ent* in the third person plural of verbs should be carefully remembered.

With regard to such verbs, (of the first conjugation) as end with *ger, ayer, uyer, ier, cer, cler, eter, uer,* see Accidence, pp. 31—33.

Observation on oi.

A counsellor, at the parliament of Rouen, in 1675, proposed that whenever *oi* was sounded *è*, it should be written *ai*, instead of *oi*. Voltaire having afterwards adopted that same way of spelling, it has ever since been followed by others; but the French Academy would never adopt it, because that alteration was itself liable to almost as many inconveniences.

Observation on Double Consonants.

Double consonants are used in French, for two reasons: 1st, to mark the etymology of the word, as in *opposer*, from the Latin *opponere*; and 2nd, to show that the preceding vowel is short, though perhaps contrary

to etymology, as in *donner*, from *donare*; *honneur*, from *honor*. As even these two reasons will not always apply, many good grammarians have cancelled one of the double consonants. But this innovation, being again liable to inconveniences, as it would destroy both etymology and quantity, has not been adopted by the *Academy*.

PARTICIPLE (the Present), or GERUND. (Syntax, Nos. 245 and 246—381 to 385). *En* with the gerund has three significations.

1. At the same time as—*en même tems.*
2. By means of—*par le moyen de.*
3. By dint of—*à force de.*

1. Il parle en mangeant.
2. En parlant malhonpêtement, vous offenserez tout le monde.
3. Il a ruiné sa santé en étudiant.

The following English expressions, composed of the present participle, cannot be translated literally. Such are

The participle with, *my, thy, his,* and

My telling you so was from a good motive,
C'est par un bon motif que je vous disois cela.

His writing to us gave offence,
Il a offensé en nous ecrivant.

My, thy, his, with the *participle,* is often translated into French by *de ce que je, de ce que tu, de ce qu'il,* &c. preceded by *de* and *en, sans que,* &c.

He laughs at my not being able to speak French,
Il se moque *de ce que je* ne puis parler François.

We wonder at it's not succeeding,
Nous nous étonnons *de ce que cela* ne réussit pas.

From his saying so, it does not follow we are to believe it,
De ce qu'il le dit, il ne s'en suit pas qu'il faille le croire.

He went away without my being able to wish him good bye,
Il s'en alla sans que je pusse lui dire adieu.

And also such expressions, as

It being out of my power to ——
Comme il (*or*) vu qu'il (*or*) attendu qu'il m'est impossible.

That being the case,
Cela étant, (*or*) cela étant ainsi.

The Participle past.

We have shewn (Syntax, No. 247 to No. 254) all the rules concerning this part of the grammar. These rules, on account of the innumerable exceptions, are considered as a great stumbling block to natives themselves. It is a pity such futile minutiæ should exist in a language cultivated by so many foreign nations; but, as they form a part of the grammar, we will here give the least trifling.

When with and before *avoir*, the objective is followed and governed by an *infinitive*, the participle is *indeclinable*.

Les vertus que vous avez entendu louer,
The virtues which you have heard praised.

Exceptions and *Remarks*.

When the infinitive does not govern the objective, the participle is *declinable*; a circumstance which you may discover by turning the *infinitive* into the *imperfect*, or by introducing *pour* before the infinitive, without altering the sense; as—

La dame que j'ai *vue* peindre (or qui peignoit,)
The lady whom I saw painting.

Les soldats que j'ai envoyés attaquer (pour attaquer,)
The soldiers whom I sent to attack.

Les dames que j'ai entendues chanter,
The ladies whom I heard sing.

Whereas, in the following examples, the participle is *indeclinable*.

Les dames que j'ai *vu peindre*—(being painted,)
Les soldats que j'ai envoyé attaquer—(to be attacked.)
Les chansons que j'ai entendu chanter—(I heard sung.)

The participle is *indeclinable*, when followed by *que*, as—

La route que nous avons résolu que nous prendrions,
The road which we resolved we should take.

The participle is *declinable*, when followed by a *neuter* verb, as—

Les soldats que j'ai vus mourir,
The soldiers whom I saw die.

Les pommes que j'ai laissées tomber,
The apples which I let fall.

When the participle is either DU (in the sense of *ought*) PU been able, VALU and FAIT, the participle is *indeclinable,* because there usually is an infinitive, or some oher expression, understood after them, as—

J'ai pris toute la peine que j'ai pu (prendre,)
I took all the pains I could.

Les louanges que m'a valu cette victoire,
The praises which this victory has caused to be bestowed on me.

Les années qu'il a vécu,
The years he has lived.

N. B. You could not say, La peine qui a été *pue* par moi. Les années ont été *vécues,* &c.

The participle of *reflective* verbs, requiring a preposition, is *indeclinable.*

Elle s'est *donné* la mort, that is—*elle a donné à elle,*
She has inflicted death on herself.

Elles se sont cassé la jambe, that is—cassé à elles même,
They have broken their legs.

Madame n'a plus sa maison, elle s'en est défait—*se défaire de,*
This lady has no longer her house, she has got rid of it.

N. B. When the participle is followed by an infinitive, it is difficult to know which of the two governs the objective. The best method of ascertaining which, is to ask the following questions: *Qui?* or *Qui est-ce que?* for persons, and *qu'est-ce que? quoi?* for things. The answer will shew whether the objective is governed by the participle or by the infinitive. If by the participle, this latter word is *declinable;* if by the infinitive, it is *indeclinable.*

Here follow some words which are *prepositions* (and therefore *indeclinable*) when *before* the substantive, and *participles* (declinable) when *after.*

Attendu les circonstances, *considering circumstances.*
Vu les événemens, *owing to events.*
Excepté les soldats, *the soldiers excepted.*
Nous sommes trois, y compris votre sœur, *there are three of us, your sister included.*
Il recevra *ci-joint,* (or) *ci-inclus* des lettres, *he will, herewith, or here-inclosed, receive some letters.*
Des circonstances *attendues, expected circumstances.*
Des événemens *vus* de nos jours, *events seen in our days.*
Les soldats exceptés, *the soldiers excepted.*
Vous trouverez des lettres *ci-incluses* (or) ci-jointes,
You will find here-inclosed, or *herewith, the letters.*

Prepositions (French.)

The preposition A has the following acceptations.

Direction to, (literally or figuratively.)

Aller *à* Londres—*to go to London.*
S'appliquer *aux* langues—*to apply to languages.*
Donner (quelque chose) *à* quelqu'un—*to give any one something.*
Penser *à* quelqu'un—*to think of some one.*
Commander, Ordonner } à quelqu'un de faire quelque chose, &c.—*to order any one to do any thing.* (See No. 226.)
Oter, Prendre, Arracher } quelque chose à quelqu'un—*to take away any thing from any body.* (See No. 226.)

Succession from one object to another.

Peu *à* peu—*Little by little.*
A mon tour, *à* ton tour ..... } *it is my turn,*
C'est *à* moi, *à* toi, &c. (or only) *à* moi, *à* toi, &c. } *thy turn,* &c.

Following, according to, after the manner of.

S'habiller *à la* Françoise, à l'Angloise—*to dress after the French, the English manner.*
Parler *à* tort et *à* travers—*to speak at random.*
Un moulin *à* vent—*a windmill.*
Se battre *à* l'épée—*to fight with swords.*
Ce dessin est il fait *à* la plume ou *au* crayon?—*Is this drawing done with the pen or chalk?*

Fit for, for the use of, used with, having, enough to.

Avoir quelque chose *à* manger—*to have any thing to eat.*
Donner *à* manger—*to give something to eat.*
Verser *à* boire—*to pour out something to drink.*
De l'huile *à* bruler—*lamp oil.*
De la poudre *à* canon—*gun-powder.*
Une tourte *aux* pommes—*apple-pye.*
De la sauce *à* l'oignon—*onion-sauce.*
Un avis *à* suivre—*An advice fit to be followed.*
C'étoit *à* crever, à mourir de rire—*it was enough to make one die of laughing.*
La déesse aux yeux bleus—*the blue-eyed goddess.*
L'homme aux grandes jambes—*the long-legged man.*
Une voiture à deux, à trois, à quatre chevaux—Une voiture à quatre roues—*a carriage and two, and three, and four—a four-wheeled carriage.*

Indicating Time.

Je me lève *à* six heures—*I get up at six o'clock.*

Place, situation, spot, (synonymous with *en*) *at, in.*

A Paris—*at Paris.*
Avoir mal à la tête—*to have the head-ache.*
Une plume, une épée à la main—*a pen, a sword in one's hand.*

Here follows a list of some expressions made by means of *à.*

à l'abri—*sheltered.*
à peine—*hardly, scarcely.*
à tort et à travers—*right or wrong.*
à tâtons—*groping along.*
à reculons—*backward.*
goutte à goutte, *drop by drop,* peu à peu, *by degrees.*
à bon marché—*cheap.*
à pleines mains—*by handfuls.*
à faux—*falsely.*
à plomb—*equilibrium.*
au naturel—*in a natural manner.*
à force de—*by dint of.*
à mon gré—*to my liking.*
à jamais—*for ever.*
à l'avenir—*for the future.*
à l'huile (peindre)—*to paint in oil.*
à droite, à gauche—*on the right, on the left.*
à la renverse—*backwards.*
à merveilles—*wonderfully well.*
à mesure que—*in proportion as.*
au revoir—*till I see you again.*
à l'aimable—*amiably.*
à fleur de—*even with (any thing.)*
à terre—*on the ground.*
un clou à crochet—*a tenter-hook.*
de l'huile à bruler—*lamp oil.*
il y avoit du monde à étouffer—*the crowd was enough to suffocate one.*
c'étoit à crever de rire—*fit to make any one die of laughing.*
c'est à vous à jouer—*it is your turn to play.*
c'est à vous (or) à vous—*it is your turn.*
à huit, neuf, &c. heures—*at eight, nine, &c. o'clock.*
à la pinte, à la livre, &c.—*by the pint, pound, &c.*
à mains jointes—*with one's hands clasped.*
à génoux—*on one's knees.*
à tort—*wrongfully.*
un chapeau à trois cornes—*a three-cornered hat.*
à cheval—*on horseback.*
à coups d'épée—*with repeated thrusts of a sword.*
à ma tête (j'en veux faire)—*I'll act as I think proper.*

Of De.

With substantives, *de* has the following significations:

It shews the *nature* of the first noun (literally and figuratively) without the article def.

Une mine d'or, d'argent, &c.—*a gold mine, &c.*
Un appartement de roi—*a kingly apartment.*
Un homme de courage—*a courageous man.*

It implies *made of, composed of* (without the article.)

Une montre d'or—*a gold watch.*
Une société d'hommes—*a society of men.*
Ceci est de cire—*this is wax.*

With the definite article, it implies *belonging to.*

L'appartement *du* Roi—*the king's apartment.*
Le maitre de la maison—*the master's house.*

It is used after adverbs of *quantity* and *scarcity.*

Beaucoup de livres—*many books.*
Peu d'amis—*few friends.*

It is used after some indeterminate pronouns.

Il y a eu quelqu'un de tué—*there was somebody killed.*
Il n'y a personne d'élu—*there is no one elected.*

It is used after nouns of number, before the following *adjective* or *participle.*

Cinq maisons *de* brulées,
Five houses burnt.

With verbs, *de* has the following significations.

1. *Extraction, from, out of.*

Prendre *d'*un auteur—*to take out of an author.*
Aracher *des* mains—*to snatch away from the hands.*
Oter (une chose) *d'*un* endroit—*to take any thing away from a place.*

2. *Coming away from.*

Partir *d'*un endroit—*To set off from any place.*
Venir " " —*To come from* "
Sortir " " —*To go out of a* "

3. *Originating from, caused by.*

Fait de marbre—*made of marble.*
Composé de plantes—*composed of plants.*

---

* But we say *ôter une chose à quelqu'un,* to take any thing from any one.

Mourir de joie—*to die with joy.*
" chagrin— " *sorrow.*
" faim— " *hunger.*
Jouir d'une bonne santé—*to enjoy good health.*
Se moquer de—*to laugh at, or mock.*
Rire " —*ditto.*

Setting off, beginning from a place, *at a time fixed.*

Partir *de* nuit—*to set off by night.—by.*
Ne pas avoir parlé, mangé, &c. *d'*aujourd' hui, *de* deux jours—*not to have spoken, eaten, &c. to day, for two days;* (that is, when the sentence is negative.
Il croit *d'*un pouce tous les mois—*it grows an inch every month.*

Pointing to the *nature* of the object used in the action designated by the verb (literally and figuratively)—*with.*

Remplir (une bouteille) de vin—*to fill a bottle with wine.*
Charger (une charette) *de* blé—*to load a cart with corn.*
Combler (une personne) *de* louanges—*to load with praise.*

The participles of some verbs taken *passively* (that is, with *être*) not denoting *motion*—*by, with.*

Il est aimé, estimé *du* peuple—*he is loved, esteemed by the people.*
Nous sommes environnés *d'*ennemis—*we are surrounded with enemies.*

De serves to connect a *verb,* a substantive, and an adjective to a following *verb.*

Je vous ordonne *de* faire cela—*I order you to do that.*
L'ambition de régner—*the ambition to reign.*
Las d'écrire—*tired of writing.*
Il est impossible de lire—*it is impossible to read.*

Idiomatic expressions compounded with *de.*

Si j'étois *de* vous—*if I were you* (i. e. à la place de.)
Son habit est comme *de* soie (i. e. fait de)—*his coat looks like silk.*
De grace—*pray.*
De bon cœur, de gaieté de cœur—*willingly, cheerfully.*
De force—*by force.*
Regardez-le *de* près—*look at it close.*
Ce pain est *d'*hier—*this bread was baked yesterday.*
Vivre *d'*une belle vie—*to live an honorable life.*
Mourir d'une mort glorieuse—*to die a glorious death.*
*D'*une manière—*in a manner.*
De front—*abreast.*
*D'*un air—*with an air.*
Je ne l'ai vu *de* ma vie—*I never saw him in my life.*

Dès—*from the very moment.*
D'après—*from, after, considering, according to.*
De vous dire tout, c'est ce que je ne puis—*to tell you the whole, is what I cannot do.*
Trois hommes *de* tués—*three men killed.*

In the two last examples, *de* shews the ellipses: as,

Si je suis obligé *de* vous dire—*if I am obliged to tell you.*
De ceux dont nous parlons—*of those we speak of.*

De, Par, Avec, *compared.*

De shews the *nature, source, cause.* Is used with passive verbs when *no* action is implied.

EXAMPLES.

Mourir *de* chagrin—*to die with sorrow.*

Il étoit environné *d'*ennemis—*he was surrounded with enemies.*

Il est estimé et aimé *de* ses compatriôtes—*he is esteemed and loved by his compatriots.*

Sortir *de* la maison—*to go out of the house.*

Ces bouteilles sont remplies de vin—*these bottles are filled with wine.*

Je partis aussi-tôt

Par points to the *agent*, the *motive*, and *reason* by which a person is actuated, or made to act; hence it implies *coercion* and *motion.*

EXAMPLES.

Mourir *par* l'ordre du Roi—*to die by the king's order.*

Il s'est laissé environner *par* l'ennemi—*he suffered himself to be surrounded by the enemy.*

Il a été battu *par* des voleurs—*he was beaten by robbers.*

Il a passé (*or*) regardé (*or*) il est sorti *par* la fenêtre—*he passed, looked through the window, or got out of the window.*

Ces bouteilles ont été remplies *par* le domestique—*these bottles have been filled by the servant.*

Il a fini *par* se ruiner

Avec gives the idea of *accompanying, uniting.* The *means*, the *instrument* with which any thing is *made* or *done.*

EXAMPLES.

Mourir *avec* ses soldats—*to die with one's soldiers.*

Il a été battu même *avec* ses soldats—*he was beaten even with his soldiers.*

Il a passé *par* cette ville, *avec* un passeport—*he passed through this town with a passport, &c.*

Ces bouteilles ont été remplies *avec* un entonnoir—*these bottles have been filled with a funnel.*

Il a fini *avec* éclat

DE.	PAR.	AVEC.
qu'il eut fini *de* parler —*I set off as soon as he had done speaking.*	— *he, at last, ruined himself.*	—*he ended with the admiration of every one.*
C'est *de* cette manière que vous réussirez—*by this means you will succeed.*	C'est *par* des manières aimables que vous réussirez—*by agreeable manners you will succeed.*	*Avec* des manières aimables on est sûr de plaire—*with agreeable manners we are sure to please.*
Faire une chose d'une manière, d'un ton agréable—*to do any thing in an agreeable manner, air, look.*		Il m'a parlé *avec* un air doux (*or*) *avec* un ton désagréable — *he spoke to me with a mild look* (or) *with a disagreeable tone of voice.*

DANS *and* EN, *defined and compared.*

DANS particularly designates the *inside* of any spot or object; implying *within.* Hence it is most generally used in a *literal* sense, and almost always requires an article.

EXAMPLES.

Dans Londres, *dans* Paris—*in London, &c.*

Les insectes qui vivent *dans* l'air—*the insects which live in the air.*

Entrer, être *dans* une voiture—*to get into, to be in a coach.*

Etre *dans* un appartement ou *dans* une maison bien garnie—*to be in a well furnished apartment or house.*

Une épine *dans la* main—*a thorn in one's hand.*

Un chelin *dans la* main—*a shilling (enclosed) in one's hand.*

Dans six mois—*six months hence.*

EN refers to a *wide, unlimited* space, to the *manner* and *way* of being or acting. Hence it is most generally used in the *figurative* sense, and requires no article.

EXAMPLES.

En France, *en* Angleterre—*in France, in England.*

En l'air—*in the air (up in any direction.)*

Aller *en* voiture, *en* cabriolet—*to go in a carriage* (merely shewing the *way of* travelling, &c.

Etre *en* appartement ou *en* maison garnie—*to live in ready-furnished lodgings.*

Une épée *en* (or à *la*) main—*sword in hand.*

En six mois—*in six months* (i. e. six months spent in the performance of any thing.)

DANS.	EN.
Dans une colère affreuse (with an adjective)—*in a dreadful passion.*	*En* colère—*in a passion* (without any adjective.)
Dans la mer—*in the sea.*	*En* mer—*at sea.*
Dans un état déplorable.	*En* état de—*in a fit condition, capable of.*

A, DANS, EN, *compared.*

A indicates *position.*	DANS indicates *inward situation.*	EN points to the *manner*, the *way of*, *conduct*, *dress.*
EXAMPLES.	EXAMPLES.	EXAMPLES.
Etre *à* Paris—*to be* in *Paris* (that is, in *or* near Paris.)	Etre *dans* Paris—*to be in* (*the very interior of*) *Paris.*	
A la ville (*in opposition to* à la Scène)—*off the stage.*	*Dans* la ville—*in the town*, (that is, *in the heart of the town.*)	*En* ville — *abroad, not at home.* Diner en ville—*to dine out.* (*Also in opposition to the country.*)
A la scène—*on the stage.*	*Dans* cette scène—*in this scene.*	Etre *en* scène — *to be acting.*
Etre *au* soleil—*to be in the sun*, (that is, *to be exposed to the rays of the sun.*) *Au* clair de la lune—*by the light of the moon.* à la lumière—*by candle light.*	Il y a des taches *dans* le soleil, *dans* la lune—*there are spots in the sun, in the moon.*	
A l'air—*in the air*, (that is, *out in the air.*)	Les insectes qui vivent *dans* l'air—*the insects which live in the air.*	*En* l'air—*up in the air.*
Une épée *à* la main—*a sword in hand.*	Il lui enfonça une épée *dans* la main, le bras, &c.—*he ran his sword into his hand.*	L'épée *en* main (*equivalent to* à la main)—*sword in hand.*
Etre *au* lit (*or* couché)—*to be in bed.*	Être *dans* un lit—*to be in a bed.*	
	Avoir la jambe dans un bas—*to have one's leg in a stocking.*	Etre *en* habit bleu, *en* robe, *en* bas de soie, *en* bottes, *en* souliers,

A.	Dans.	En.
Etre à *l'aise—to be at one's ease, comfortable;* (also say, *a* mon, *a* ton, &c. aise—*at my, thy, &c. ease.* à cheval —*on horsebuck.*		&c.—*to be in a blue coat,* (or) *to have a gown, silk stockings, boots, shoes on, &c.* Etre déguisé, (*or*) habille, *en* paysan, *en* charbonnier, *en* roi, &c. —*to be disguised or dressed in a country-man's, a coal-heaver's, or a king's dress.* Etre métamorphosé *en* animal, *en* oiseau, &c.—*to be metamorphosed into an animal, a bird, &c.* Se conduire, agir *en* roi, *en* honnête homme—*to behave, act like a king, an honest man.*

Pour—for, for the sake of, for the purpose. (See Syntax, No. 219.)

Cela est pour vous. Je fais cela pour vous plaire. Je vous ai écrit pour vous avertir du danger.

This preposition is always used after *assez, trop, suffire, suffisant.*

Nous avons assez d'argent pour acheter cette maison.
Il est trop sensé pour commettre une telle inconséquence.
Cela seul suffit pour vous donner une mauvaise réputation.

It sometimes means *because, considering,* before an infinitive, and beginning a sentence.

Pour n'avoir pas reçu d'éducation, il est très instruit; *also,* il n'en est pas moins très instruit. *Because,* or, *considering he has had no education, he is, however, very well informed.*
Pour avoir de l'argent, il n'en est pas moins sot.

It also signifies *since I must,* &c. in peculiar sentences, either between two infinitives, or between two substantives, without any article; and, in both cases, the same verb or substantive repeated.

Maison pour maison, j'aime mieux celle-ci que celle-là,
If I must have one of these two houses, I prefer this one to that.

Livre pour livre, autant prendre le mien que le vôtre,
Since I must have a book, I may as well have mine as yours.

Mourir pour mourir, il faut mieux mourir en combattant qu'en fuyant,
If I must die, it is better to die in fighting than in running away.

Pour often signifies *quant à.*

Pour moi, pour lui, &c.
Pour ce qui est de moi—*as to what concerns myself.*
Pour et contre—*pro and con.*
(See Formation of Adverbial Expressions, Appendix.)

SUR; *on, upon.* It gives the idea of an object resting, or placed, upon another.

Sur la table, sur un vaisseau. Je m'appuye sur vous, *I rest upon you.* Il est assis sur une chaise.

Hence the following expressions, (mostly figurative:)

Il est sur le pavé, he has no asylum. *Une maison qui a vue sur,* (or) *qui donne, sur le jardin,* a house which overlooks the garden. *Un bâtiment qui ouvre sur deux rues,* which opens into, &c. Qui domine sur la campagne. *Compter sur quelqu'un,* to reckon, to rely on any one. *Ecrire sur du papier. Ecrire sur un sujet.*

It indicates superiority, meaning "over."

Un prince qui règne sur plusieurs peuples. Cette nation a bien des avantages sur telle autre.

Dependance upon. Ex. *Sur sa parole, sur son honneur. Jurer sur l'Evangile.*

Concerning. Ex. *Nous discourions sur un tel sujet, propos.* Il s'excusa sur *son âge,* he begged to be excused, on account of his age. *On nous railla sur notre mise. On ne doit pas juger sur la mine.*

Sur pié, firmly, straight. *Il a remis ses affaires sur pié.*

(See Formation of Adverbial Expressions.)

AVANT, *before*—relates to *time, order, rank,* and *priority,* as well as the English word *before.*

Je suis venu *avant* vous, *I came before you.*
L'honnêteté *avant* tout, *honesty before any thing else.*

Avant is often taken *adverbially,* (expressed in English by *far, deep,*) and used with *si, bien, trop, plus, assez, fort.*

La balle lui est entrée très *avant* dans le corps,
The ball went very deep into his body.

AVANT refers to *time*, DEVANT refers to *place*.

Je suis venu *avant* vous, *I came* before *you*.
Je suis placé *devant* vous, *I am placed* before *you*.

AVANT, *before*—is placed before *substantives* and *pronouns*.

AVANT DE, *before*—is placed before a *verb* in the *infinitive*.

AVANT QUE, *before*—is placed before a *verb* in the *subjunctive*.

EN AVANT, *before*—implies motion, and is used with such verbs as *marcher, aller*, &c.

En avant, marche, *march*, (when giving the word of command.)
Allez en avant, *go on before*.

APRES, *after* (opposed to *avant*, before) refers to *time*, and succession of *actions* and *objects*.

Je suis venu *après* vous, *I came* after *you*.
Etre *après* un object, *to be* (*anxious*) *after an object*.
Courir " *to run* "

après ....*after*, is placed before a substantive.
après que, *after*, is placed before a verb, and requires the *future*.
après quoi, *after which, then*, (is used adverbially.)
après tout, *after all*.
d'après ..*from, according to, conformably to*.
ci-après ..*as follows, in the following part*.

DEVANT, *before*—(in opposition to *derrière*, behind)—refers to *place*. (See *Avant*.)

Vous êtes *devant* le feu—*you are before the fire*.

Is used substantively, and then means, *fore, front*.

Les jambes de *devant*—*the hind legs*.
Le *devant* de la maison—*the front of the house*.

DERRIERE, *behind*—is used with regard to *place*, (in opposition to *devant*,)

Marchez *derrière* moi—*walk behind me*.
Les jambes de *derrière*—the *hind legs*.
Le *derrière* de la maison—the *back part* of the house.

ENTRE, *between, betwixt*.

Entre la France et l'Angleterre,
Between France and England.

Figuratively, it means *in, into*.

Je remets ce trésor entre vos mains,
I deliver this treasure into your hands.

On lui a retiré cet enfant d'entre les mains,
They have taken that child out of his hands.

It also signifies *from, among.*

Il fut choisi entre tous les autres,
He was chosen from among all the others.

CHEZ, *at, or to the house of.*

Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c.
At or *to* my house, at thy house, &c.

It admits of *de* and *par,* as:

Je viens *de chez* vous, et *de chez* votre frère,
I am just come from your house, and from your brother's.

J'ai passé *par chez* eux,
I called at their house.

It also means *parmi,* among, as:

Chez les Grecs et les Romains,
Among the Greeks and Romans.

CONTRE, *against, contrary to.* (Literally and figuratively.)

Contre moi, toi, &c.—*against me, &c.*
Contre son gré—*against his will.*
Se fâcher *contre* quelqu'un—*to be angry with.*

It is sometimes used adverbially, as:

On a fait une proposition, et j'ai parlé *contre,*
A proposal was made, and I spoke against it.

It is used substantively, as:

Avant de donner mon opinion, j'entendrai le *pour* et le *contre,*
Before I give my opinion, I shall hear the pro and con.

It sometimes means *auprès,* near, by—

Nous étions assis *contre* lui—*we were sitting near him.*
Tout contre—*quite close.*

DEPUIS, *since, from*—is used for *time, place,* and has for its correlative *jusqu' à,* as far as.

Depuis un, deux, trois ans—*one, two, three years since.*
Depuis ici jusque là—*from here down to there.*

Depuis is used before a *substantive.*

Depuis un mois—*a month since.*

Depuis que is used before a *verb.*

Depuis que je le connois—*since I have known him.*

Depuis peu—*lately.*
Depuis quand?—*How long is it since?*

JUSQUE, *as far as*—is generally used with *à, jusqu' à,* to, as far as, till—is used both with regard to *place* and *time,* and is the correlative of *depuis.*

Depuis Paris *jusqu'à* Londres,
From Paris to London.

Nous irons *jusqu'à* Edimbourg,
We shall go as far as Edinburgh.

Depuis huit heures *jusqu'à* minuit,
From eight o'clock till twelve.

How far?—jusqu'où.

Jusqu' à is also used before an infinitive and a substantive, meaning then, *even, so far as.*

Il porta la vengeance jusqu'à l'accuser en public,
He carried his spite so far as to accuse him in public.

Il n'y avoit pas jusqu'aux hommes qui ne versassent des larmes,
Even men shed tears.

Jusqu' à ce que, (conj.) till, or until, is used before a verb in the subjunctive.

Jusqu'à ce que vous soyez guéri,
Until you are cured.

Jusqu'à quand, (adv.) how long?

ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

About.

Environ, autour, de, vers.

There were *about* fifty persons.....*environ.*
There are pretty villages *about* London ....*aux environs.*
His friends were all *about* him .....*autour de.*
I shall speak to him *about* that affair .....*sur, touchant.*
To laugh *about* .....*de.*
To talk *about*.....*de.*
To be concerned (afflicted) *about* .....*affligé de.*
busy *about* .....*occupé.*
pleased *about* .....*content de.*
To bring any thing *about* .....*venir à bout de.*
To cry goods (of any kind) *about* the streets.*par.*
I have no money *about* me .....*sur.*
She had *about* £10,000. for her marriage portion .....*à peu près.*
This room will hold *about* twenty persons ..*à peu près.*

He *was about to* sell his house, but I dissuaded him from it ..... } *être sur le point de, être près de.*
Look *about* you..... *prenez garde.*
To be a long time *about* any thing ..... } *long à, &c. long tems à, &c.*
To be but a short time *about* any thing .... *prompt, peu de tems à.*
He *gets about* a little now..... *se remettre.*
Go about your business ..... } *passez votre chemin. mêlez-vous de vos affaires.*
He *went about* like a mad-man..... *aller çà et là.*

Away.

To take away ..... *ôter.*
To carry away ..... } *emporter.*
To fetch away ..... }
Away with it..... *emporter.*
To eat a bit, and *away*..... *partir.*
To pass *away* the time ..... (left out.)
To *steal away*..... *partir furtivement.*
She *pined away* with grief ..... } *languir, or être rongé de chagrin, de soucis, &c.*
You are *arguing away* from the subject .... *s'éloigner.*
Come, *talk away*, I like to hear you ..... *continuez de* parler, &c.
" *eat away*, here is plenty ..... } mangez *tant que vous* pourrez (ou) voudrez.
" *work away*, my lads, &c. &c. ..... *qu'on s'évertue.*

By.

That house was built *by* an eminent architect. *par.*
A book written *by* such an author ..... *par.*
This garden is 60 yards long *by* 40 ..... *sur.*
By so doing, you will gain his confidence .. *en.*
By applying constantly you will improve .. *à force de.*
He made his fortune *by* selling lace..... *à.*
By the weight, *by* the pound, *by* the dozen . *au, à la, &c.*
By the year, month, week, day, hour..... *par.*
Piece *by* piece ..... *à.*
To *pass by*..... *ne pas faire attention à.*
To pass *by* a place, a town ..... *à coté de, près.*
He is taller or shorter *by* an inch ..... *de.*
Our army was stronger *by* 20,000 men .... *de.*
To travel *by* night..... *la nuit,* or *pendant la, &c.*
To set off *by* night ..... *de.*
To work *by* day or *by* candle light ..... *au, à la, &c.*
Followed *by* ..... }
Preceded *by* ..... } *de.*
Attended *by* ..... }
He was killed by ..... *par.*

To be loved by ..... } *de.*
adored by ..... }
hated by ..... }
regretted by ..... }
To put by ..... } *de côté.*
lay by ..... }
To hold *by* a rope, a branch, &c. ..... *à.*
There is no good gained by doing that .... *à.*
By sea and land ..... *par.*
They began *by* saying, &c. ..... *par.*
To go *by* the Paris diligence ..... *par.*
To come or go *by* a coach ..... *en.*
He was wounded *by* an arrow, *by* a cannon } *d'un coup de.*
ball, a musket ball ..... }
To *go by* (or) *pass by* any place ..... *passer devant.*
To go by, to *abide by* ..... { *prendre pour guide, se conformer.*
To *go by* (to go past, by going faster) ..... *passer.*

Back.

Derrière, par derrière.

There is a *front* and a *back* way ..... *de derrière.*
Turn back, and tell him to come ..... *retourner.*
Give back what you have borrowed ..... *rendre.*
I'll soon *be back* ..... *être de retour.*
You ordered the 1st battalion to *fall back* .. *se plier, reculer.*
I did not give you this, I will *have* it *back again* ..... } *ravoir.*
Put back what you have taken ..... *remettre.*

Down.

En bas, à bas, en descendant.

He was up and I was *down* ..... *en bas.*
To put *down* any thing ..... { In the sense of *laying down*, name the spot you wish the object to be laid down upon, as—*à terre, sur la table, &c.*
Up stairs ..... *en haut.*
Take that hat *down* ..... *aveindre.*
We will *take down* his pride ..... *humilier.*
He has been *up and down* the town ..... *parcourir.*
I was up and down stairs all day long ..... *monter et descendre.*
Up and down ..... *çà et là.*
The *ups* and *downs* of life ..... *les hauts et les bas.*
Down with him ..... *tombez sur.*
We will pay the *money down* ..... *argent comptant.*

A *downright* knave .....*franc, insigne.*
He has ordered the troops to *put down* the riot.*appaiser.*
His repeated losses oblige him to *put down* his carriage .....*mettre bas.*
I have *put down* all you have said .....*mettre par écrit.*
Put his name *down* .....*inscrire.*

For,

pour, &c.

This letter is *for* you .....*pour.*
If you are not at home, I will answer for you.*pour.*
If this object is lost, I will answer *for* it....*de.*
For fear of accident .....*de peur de.*

When relating to time.

He is going to Brighton *for* six days .....*pour.*
She was at Brighton *for* three days.....*pendant.*
He will not come *for* a week .....
You shall have nothing to eat *for* the whole day .....*de.* (negatively.)

Verbs and adjectives requiring for.

You *interest* yourself *for* his welfare .....*à.*
What do you *ask for* .....*demander.*
Call for the bill.....*demander.*
To *call for* any thing (at a person's house)..*prendre en passant.*
Some one *inquired for* you .....*demander après.*
Look or *seek for* your words .....*chercher.*
Let us *wait for* him .....*attendre.*
Do you *wish for* riches? .....*souhaiter.*
He is *sorry for* what he has done.....*fâché de.*
If it were not *for* you .....
Had it not been *for* you .....
But *for* you .....*sans, si ce n'étoit que de.*

Forth.

Au dehors, en public, au jour.

To bring forth .....*mettre au monde.*
To put forth .....*mettre au jour, publier.* (literally and figuratively.)
And so forth .....*ainsi de suite.*
I waited to see if his money *was forthcoming*.*se présenter, paroître.*
I heard him *hold forth* in a numerous assembly .....*pérorer* (or) *prononcer un discours.*
He *pours forth* his ideas with surprising eloquence .....*déployer.*
He found a friend into whose bosom he could *pour forth* his grief .....*épancher.*

From.

I come *from* France ..... *de.*
To abstain, to deter from ..... *de.*
Have you read this book *from* beginning to end ..... *depuis*, from ; *jusque*, to.
You shall learn from here down to there.... *depuis, jusque.*
From London *to* Paris ..... *depuis.*
From Christmas *till* Midsummer ..... *depuis, jusquà.*
From his house to here, it is three miles .... *depuis chez, jusque.*
From a principle of honor ..... *par.*
From his infancy ..... *dès.*
From the moment I saw him ..... *dès.*
From what you say yourself I conclude you are in the wrong ..... *d'après.*
I judged *from* appearances ..... *d'après.*
My mother is *from* home ..... turn: *is not at home* (chez.)
When taken in a complimentary way of speaking, from me, from thee, &c. *de ma part, de ta part*, &c. ..... de ma part.
From it, or from there ..... en.

In, into.

Dans, dedans, en.

In a box, a room, a river ..... *dans.*
Here is a box; put your letter *into it* ..... *dedans.*
These are wells, there is a great deal of water *in them* ..... *dedans.*
It is cheaper living *in* France than in England ..... *en.*
It is *in* your power to do that ..... *en.*
What do you put yourself *in* a passion for? . *en.*
When I saw him, he was in a great passion. *dans.*
Somebody knocks at the door; well, tell him to *come in* ..... *entrer.*
The best man *in* the world ..... *du.*
He is naturally obstreperous, therefore you hould *keep* him *in* ..... *retenir.*
I feel a pain *in* my knees, *in* my ancles, in my elbows, and *in* all my joints ..... *au*, &c.
Are you always at home both *in* the morning and *in* the evening ..... (*left out.*)
He is very obstinate, he never will *give in* .. *céder.*
He was obliged to *put in* several *advertisements* ..... *insérer des annonces.*
To talk, to amuse, to work, &c. &c. any one *into* any thing ..... *persuader, gagner quelqu'un à force de parler, amuser*, &c.
I believe *in* the truth of what you say .... *à.*

I believe *in* God .....*en.*
In a manner, *in* the best or worst manner, (whenever *in* comes with the word *manner*). } *de la.*
Do not admit him *into* your confidence ....admettre *à.*
Are you *in* as much pain as you were? .. } *ressentir,* or *éprouver de la peine, de la douleur.*
Let us have more confidence *in* each other..*en.*
Is it written in prose or in poetry .....*en.*
A book bound in calf .....*en.*
Do not run into extremes.....*aller à l'extrême.*
By his entering *into* all the minutiæ, his conversation degenerates *into* pedantry .... } *dans* des *details minutieux,* &c. *en pédanterie.*

To delight *in*
To amuse (one's-self) "
To confide "
To busy "
To spend one's money or time *in* } *à.*

Of

Of the method (or) *of* the art of writing (as a title) ..... } *du,* &c.
A member *of* society .....*du,* &c.
The king *of* England .....*de.*
A bit *of* bread .....*de.*
The king's palace .....*du,* &c.
A *chamber-maid*.....*de.*
We speak *of* this .....*de.*
You speak *of* it—You take care *of them*....*en.*
What will become *of me, of thee,* &c. .... } *of* left out, and the phrase turned thus:—*What shall I become,* &c.

Off.

A *little* (or) a *great way off*..... } *à peu ou à beaucoup de distance de près* (or) *de loin.*
Two miles *off* .....*à—d'ici.*
Now, he is well off ..... } *à son aise, bien dans ses affaires.*
He was formerly *badly off*.....*mal dans ses affaires.*
He has broken off with me .....*rompre.*
Have you cut off a slice from the loaf.....*couper.*
He was *cut off* in the prime of life .....*mourir, moissonné.*
He can do that *off hand* ..... } *sans préparation, sur le champ.*
To be *off* one's guard .....*ne pas être sur ses gardes.*
To *get off* a horse .....*descendre de cheval.*
Be off, and keep out of my sight.....*s'éloigner, s'en aller*
We *came off* better than we expected .....*se tirer d'affaire.*
He is *well off* in the world .....*il est riche, il a dequoi.*

You *are well off* to have such a father ..... *être heureux de*, &c.
You must not *look off* your book ..... *jeter les yeux de dessus son livre.*
You must not *look off* while I am teaching you ..... *regarder de coté et d'autre.*

On or *upon.*

Put that *on* the table ..... *sur.*
Put *on* your hat, coat, shoes, &c. ..... (left out.)
I live *on* bread, meat, and vegetables ..... *de.*
Do you live *on* your income ..... *de.*
Can you live *upon* a hundred a year ..... *avec.*
Come *on* Monday, or any other day ..... (left out.)
Go *on* ..... *continuer.*
On all sides ..... *de.*
On the right, *on* the left ..... *à.*
Upon his honor, his word ..... *sur.*
On the first onset ..... *à.*
On my looking over the account ..... *en.*
On his arrival ..... *à.*
Come on, Gentlemen ..... *allons.*
That boy *comes on* very well ..... *faire des progrès, avancer.*
Play *on*, drink *on*, &c. ..... *continuer de*, &c.
On this condition ..... *à.*
To pass one's judgment *on* any subject ..... *sur.*
To reckon *on* ..... *compter sur.*
To hang any thing *on* a nail ..... *pendre, attacher, accrocher* } *à.*
On the whole ..... *l'un portant l'autre.*
To pay any thing *on* account ..... *en accompte.*
On my, thy, his, &c. *account* ..... *à cause de moi, de toi, &c.*
To take upon one's-self ..... *présumer, prendre sur soi, se faire fort de.*
Think *on* what I said ..... *à.*
Do not *depend on* others ..... } *compter sur.*
Do not *rely on* others ..... }
I *depend upon* his coming ..... *compter que.*
He *depends on* his father ..... *dépendre de.*
Do you *reckon upon* his word? ..... *compter.*

Out—of.

hors, hors de, déhors.

Out of doors ..... *déhors.*
Out of danger ..... *hors de.*
I wish to know the *ins* and *outs* ..... *les moindres détails.*

He was *frightened out of his life* ..... *tout consterné*, or *tout troublé*, or *éperdu.*

Out of love for him ..... } *par.*
Out of good nature ..... }
To translate *out* of (or) from .....*de.*
To drink *out of* a glass .....*dans.*
To go (or) get *out* .....*sortir.*
To make out .....*comprendre.*
To find out .....*découvrir.*
To *put out* any one ..... *embarrasser*, *déranger.* *déconcerter.*
To *fall out* with any one .....*se brouiller avec.*
Out of sight ..... *hors de la portée*, *de la vue.*
Take care, you will *put out* your ankle ....*se démettre.*
The fire is *out* .....*éteindre.*
Out of tune .....*ne pas être d'accord.*
Out of time ..... *ne pas être en mesure.* *hors de mesure.*
Put out your strength .....*employer, faire usage de.*
You have *put* his eye *out* .....*crever.*
You have *put* every thing *out* of order .. *mettre en désordre.* *déranger.*
To go *out of town*.....*à la campagne.*
I was looking *out of* the window .....*par.*
He is never *out of* my mind .....*hors de.*
You are *out of* your mind .....*perdre la tête.*
I am *out of* money, of bread, of cloths *n'avoir pas*, (or) *être sans.*
Out at the elbows.....*les coudes percés.*
To laugh, jeer, ridicule, &c. any one *out of* any thing..... persuader quelqu'un d'*abandonner* une chose *à force de* rire, se moquer, &c. &c.

Over.

(*Sur.*)

To jump *over* the hedge .....*par dessus.*
The play is *over* .....*fini, achevé.*
The rain is *over*.....*passé.*
Dinner is over .....*fini.*
To go over a bridge, &c. .....*passer.*
To cross over a road, a street, &c. .....*traverser.*
It is all *over* .....*c'est fini.*
It is all over with him .....*c'est fait de lui.*
It is all over with it .....*c'en est fait.*

He tried to *talk* me *over* ..... faire adopter son opinion, son parti, *à force de parler*, de cajoler, &c.

Pass over every thing unworthy your notice ..... *sauter.*
Skip over .....

Through.

à travers, par.

Through the window ..... *par.*
He ran a sword *through* his body ..... *à travers du.*
All *through* France and England ..... *par toute la, &c.*
To be wet *through* ..... *trempé jusqu'aux os.*
They perished *through* cold and famine .... *de.*
Through want of skill ..... *faute de*, or *par mal addresse.*
Through this, that, &c. ..... *à cause de cela.* *par ce moyen.*
Through him, &c. ..... *par son entremise.* *par son assistance,* *par son canal.*
He travelled *through* rain and wind ..... *par.*

To and *at.*

He is going *to* Paris (with names and villages) ..... *à.*
Are you inclined *to* do that ..... *à.*
Are they going to England (with names of countries in Europe) ..... *à.*
Are you going to India, China, &c. (out of Europe) ..... *en, à la, &c.*
I shall go *to* Mr. B., and shall lay down my reasons to him ..... *vers.*
She is going to her father's (*dwelling* understood) ..... *chez.*
Be polite *to* the ladies, charitable *to* the poor, and affable *to* every body ..... *envers.*
From house *to* house ..... *en.*
He is *at* sea ..... *en* or *sur.*
He is gone *to* sea ..... *en.*
God created us *to* help each other ..... *pour.*
She is old enough *to* be his mother ..... *pour.*
You are too polite *to* refuse us ..... *pour.*
This sum is sufficient *to* buy a house ..... *pour.*
It was a great loss *to* me ..... *pour.*
To be *at* work ..... *à.*
They are *at* daggers drawn ..... *Etre acharné l'un contre l'autre.*

To swear *at* any one .....*après.*
To *fire at* any object .....*tirer* (*or*) *faire feu sur.*
To be *fired at* what is said .....*excité par, indigné de.*
What is *it* to you ?—I confess, it is nothing to me ..... } *faire* (Idiom.)
To be surprised
" delighted
" frightened } at .....*de.*
" angry
" struck

Under, underneath.

Sous—Dessous. (*Literally and Figuratively.*)

Under the table .....*sous.*
Put my hat on the table, and my shoes *underneath* ..... } *dessous.*
Under the yoke .....*sous.*
Under a show of friendship.....*sous.*
Under pretence .....*sous.*
Under disguise .....*sous.*
Do not sell that horse *under* what it cost....*au-dessous de.*
Under prime cost .....*au-dessous du prix coutant.*
To work in an *under-handed* way .....*par-dessous main.*
You will *fall under* his displeasure ..... { Turn. *You will incur his indignation.*
To be *under* obligation to any one .....turn: *avoir obligation, &c.*
To be under the necessity of doing any thing..... { turn : *être obligé, être dans la nécessité.*
You *labour under* a false conception of the subject. ..... } *avoir une fausse, &c.*
He *labours under* great disadvantages .....*avoir.*
To *be under a curse* .....*être maudit.*
To study *under* a tutor.....*sous.*
He is that kind of a lad that ought to be *kept under* ..... { *Il faut lui tenir la bride haute.*

Up.

En haut, &c,

Take up this burden .....*enlever.*
Up stairs .....*en haut.*
Take it *up* stairs .....*porter, en haut.*
You *took* him *up* sharply ..... { *relever*, or *reprendre*, or *corriger.*
Bring up that parcel.....*monter.*
He *brings up* that child properly.....*élever.*

To go / " walk / " step } up stairs ..... *monter.*
To *go up* a hill ..... *monter.*
To go up a hill (with difficulty) ..... *grimper, gravir.*
There is a great deal of *up-hill* work in learning a language ..... } *il faut bien piocher.*
His blood is soon *up* ..... *se fâcher.*
All *up with* it ..... *c'en est fait.*
Up to this time ..... *jusqu' à présent.*
Up and down ..... *de haut en bas.*
Up, up, gentlemen ..... *se lever.*
Up to one's neck in business, &c. ..... *jusqu' au cou.*
He lives *up to* his income ..... *dépenser son revenu.*
I *walk up hill* and ride down ..... *monter a pié.*

With.

Come *with* me ..... *avec.*
Fill this bottle *with* a funnel ..... *avec.*
Fill this bottle *with* wine ..... *de.*
He was struck *with* a stick ..... *avec.*
He was struck *with* astonishment ..... *de.*

Fatigued	with	*de.*
Tired	"	
Exhausted	"	
Starved	"	
Content	"	
Pleased	"	
Angry	"	
Struck	"	
Loaded	"	
Covered	"	
Endowed	"	
To meet	"	omitted.
Entrust	"	omitted.
Supply	"	omitted.
Reproach	"	omitted.
Upbraid	" or *for*	omitted.

With an intent to kill ..... *dans.*
Have you done *with* this? ..... } Turn the sentence, and give an equivalent, such as, *Avez-vous fini de,* with a verb expressive of the action.
What will you do with this? ..... *de.*
" " *it* or *them?* ..... *en.*
A table *with* drawers, *with* casters, &c. .... *à.*
To draw *with* chalk, &c. ..... *au.*
" fight *with* swords, *with* pistols, &c. ..... *au.*

With his hat on .....*son chapeau sur la tête.*
With a stick or a pen in his hand .....omitted.
With downcast eyes.....omitted.
He writes, speaks, walks, and bows *with* elegance .....
It was *with* the greatest difficulty that he accomplished it ..... } *avec.*
I cannot think *with* you in this circumstance, *comme.*
I want *to speak with* your father .....*s'entretenir avec.*
I *shall be with* you in a moment .....*être à.*
The lady *with* blue eyes .....*aux.*
A table *with* drawers .....
To draw *with* chalk .....
To fight *with* pistols..... } *au, &c.*

Without.

Without me, him, &c. .....*sans.*
To do *without* money .....*se passer de.*

QUE.—This word acts a most important part in the French language; its nature, therefore, should be well understood. It may be a *relative* pronoun (the accusative of *qui*, or an interrogative, standing for *quelle* chose) or a *conjunction*. The *que* relative and *que* conjunctive must not, of course, be taken one for the other. As a relative, it has been fully described, Syntax, p. 50. We shall here consider it as a *conjunctive*. When such, it serves to connect verbs and sentences; and, although it always accompanies the subjunctive, yet it does not, of itself, govern that mood any more than the indicative, but depends entirely upon what is implied in the preceding phrase to affect the following verb; that is, if what precedes implies certainty, the verb following *que* should be in the *indicative*; if, on the contrary, it denotes uncertainty, doubt, the following verb is to be in the *subjunctive*. (See Syntax, Nos. 258, 277, &c.)

It also serves to compose several conjunctive phrases, according to which it again governs either the indicative or the subjunctive. It frequently even stands for some of these conjunctions* when the latter are clearly indi-

* The conjunction might, of course, be used. Lists of them may be seen Syntax, p. 145.

cated by the preceding verb. *Que* is therefore used in the following cases :—

For *afin que*, that, in order that.

Venez, *que* je vous voie—*come, that I may see you.*
Ecoutez, *que* je vous dise quelque chose—*hark you, that I may tell you something.*

For *soit que*, whether.

Qu'il vienne ou non, il faut que je m'en aille,
Whether he come or not, I must go.

For *de peur que*, for fear.

N'approchez pas de ce chien, qu'il ne vous morde,
Do not go near that dog, lest he should bite you.

For *depuis que*, since.

Il y a une heure *que* je ne vous ai vu,
I have not seen you for this hour.

For *jusqu'à ce que*, until.

Attendez, *que* nous venions—*Wait until we come.*

For *à moins que*, unless.

Vous ne partirez point *que* je ne le sache,
You shall not go out unless I know it.

For *sans que*, without.

Il ne sort jamais *qu'*il ne s'enrhume,
He never goes out but he catches cold.

For *quand*, when.

Le jour *que** je vous vis,
The day when I saw you.

A peine eut-il fini *qu'*il partit,
He had hardly done when he set off.

For *parce que*, because (c'est que.)

Pourquoi avez-vous fait cela ? *C'est que* cela m'a fait plaisir,
Why did you do that ? Because I chose.

For *pourquoi ?* why ? interrogative ; and *pourquoi !* exclamative.

Que ne disiez vous que vous étiez malade ?
Why did you not say you were ill?

---

* We could not say " *le jour quand*, &c.

Que ne suis-je aussi riche que vous !
Why am I not as rich as you !

For *comme !* how ! how much ! how many ! (Syntax, No. 400.)

Que je suis fatigué !
How fatigued I am !

Que vous aimez à lire !
How fond you are of reading !

Que d'amis vous avez !
What a number of friends you have !

For *cependant*, yet.

Il me verroit mourir qu'il n'en seroit pas touché,
He would see me die, (yet) *he would not be affected.*

When expressive of *wish*, meaning *may*.

Que Dieu vous bénisse !
God bless you !

Que le ciel vous accorde la santé et la sagesse !
May heaven grant health and wisdom !

When expressive of *horror, dislike*.

Que j'agisse contre ma conscience !
Can I act against my conscience !

When it is the sign of the imperative, meaning *let*. (Syntax, p. 286.)

Qu'il parle, je ne l'en empêche pas,
Let him speak, I do not prevent him from doing so.

Allons, *qu'on* s'amuse,
Come, let us amuse ourselves.

After *c'est*, before a substantive, or with *de*, before an infinitive; *que* is not expressed in English. (Syntax, No. 337.)

C'est ne pas connoître les hommes *que* de croire cela,
Those that believe such a thing, know not what men are.

C'est un trésor qu'un véritable ami,
A true friend is a treasure.

With the article *le*, when emphatic. (Synt. No. 7.)

La belle maison *que* voilà !
What a fine house that is !

When corresponding to *tout,* as, and *quelque,* however. (Synt. No. 204 and 163, &c.)

Tout malade *qu'*il est,
Ill as he is.

Quelque malade *qu'*il soit,
However ill he may be.

When it is the correlative of *plus* and *moins,* &c.

Vous êtes plus savant *que* moi,
You are more learned than I.

When in the middle of a sentence, to avoid the repetition of *si.*

Si vous m'aimez, et *que* vous vouliez me le persuader,
If you love me, and wish to persuade me to it.

It also serves to avoid the repetition of *quand.*

Quand je me porterai bien, et *que* je serai fort, je travaillerai,
When I am well, and strong, I shall work.

It means *just, but just.*

Je ne fais que d'arriver,
I am but just arrived.

It means *only, nothing but,* (ne··que.)

Il ne fait *que* manger et *que* boire,
He does nothing but eat and drink.

REFLECTIVE VERBS. (Accidence, p. 63. Syntax, No. 321 to 323.)

Further Remarks.

1st. Reflective verbs are used as *impersonals,* to express that an action *is, was,* or *will be,* going forward. Synt. No. 347.

Il s'agit de, &c.—*The matter in hand or the question is to, &c.*
Il se fait de grands préparatifs—*Great preparations are going forward.*
Il s'est passé bien des années depuis—*Many years have elapsed since.*

2dly. They are sometimes used in opposition to expressions beginning with *on,* and alluding then more to *custom* or *the established order of things;* whereas *on* designates more expressly an active agent, as:

Ce livre se vend quatre chelins; mais on peut l'avoir pour trois—*This book sells for, or the selling price of this book is, four shillings, but it may be had for three.*

Cela se pratique en France mais non pas en Angleterre—*That is customary in France but not in England.*

3dly. They frequently have also in French a *passive** meaning, or imply the act of *becoming, growing, getting,* (which often happens when the agent or immediate cause is not mentioned.)

Mon habit est commencé, et il s'achève,
My coat is begun, and is finishing.

Accourez, la voilà qui se meurt,
Come, come, she is dying.

Le diner s'apprête,
Dinner is getting ready.

Active Verbs.	*Reflective Verbs.*
Adoucir—*to soften.*	S'adoucir—*to become soft.*
	son cœur s'adoucira avec le tems.
Attendrir—*to move, to affect.*	S'—*to be moved.*
Ennuyer quelqu'un—*to tire any one.*	S'—*to become or get weary.*
Le vent fane les fleurs,	Le fleurs se fanent.
The wind fades the flowers.	*Flowers fade away or become faded.*
Etonner—*to astonish.*	S'—*to be astonished.*
Lasser quelqu'un,	Se—*to get tired.*
To tire, to weary any one.	Être las—*to be tired.*
No active sense.	S'obstiner (à)—to be *so obstinate in the pursuit of, i. e. to persist in.*
L'humidité rouille le fer—*the damp rusts iron.*	Le fer se rouille, quand il est exposé à l'humidité—*iron gets rusty when exposed to the damp.*

4thly. In the first rule the definition of reflective verbs is applied in a physical sense; i. e. the action designated by the verb palpably falls back on the person or agent which is the nominative; but in the following cases the action of the verb is only *mentally* reflective, the action being then more the work and effect of the mind or imagination. Here follows a list of verbs, *active* and *reflective*, from which will be seen the connection which the latter has with the former.

---

* With this difference, that the passive voice, in French, implies an action done with, or finished: as, in the above examples, if, instead of *il s'achève*, there was *achevé*, it would signify that the coat was finished.

Abaisser—*to lower, to let down.*

Abreuver—*to water an animal. (supposed to drink a great quantity at a time.)*

Accommode à—*to accommodate.*

Accorder—*to put in tune.*

Apercevoir quelqu'un, *to perceive any one with the eye.*

Attendre—*to wait for.*

Déchainer—*to let loose.*

Défaire—*to take one object away from another.*

Défier—*to provoke, to excite, to challenge.*

Elever—*to raise.*

Endormir—*to lull asleep.*

Fier (more usually) confier—*to entrust with.*

Hâter quelquechose—*to hasten any thing.*

Imaginer—*to imagine, to conceive, invent, to find out.*

Imaginer un plan un projet—*to conceive a project.*

Jouer—*to play.*

Lever—*to lift up.*

Mêler—*to mix.*

Mettre—*to put.*

Plier—*to fold up.*

Plaindre—*to pity.*

Prévaloir—*to prevail.*

Promener un enfant—*to take a child out a walking.*

S'abaisser (à) *to stoop,* (both *figurative* and *literal.*)

S'—(d') amertume—*to give way to grief.*

S'—(à) *to put up with.*

S'—*to agree.*

S—(du) dessein de quelqu'un—*to perceive, to discern mentally, to be aware of.*

S'—(à) *to expect,* (it implies hope, and therefore is nothing but the effect of the imagination.)

Se—(contre) *to fly in a passion against.*

Se—(de) *to rid one's-self of, to get rid of.*

Se—(de) *to excite one's-self against, to be upon one's guard, to mistrust.*

S' élever—*to rise.*

S'—*to fall asleep.*

Se fier (à) *to place one's confidence in, or trust to.*

Se—*to make haste.*

S'—*to fancy, to think, to believe,* (*therefore also*) *to entertain a false idea of. To give way to one's reveries, to brood over.*

Il s'imagine être très savant—*he fancies himself to be very learned.*

N'allez pas vous imaginer que je sois riche—*do not fancy or imagine I am rich.*

Se—(de) *to make light of, to make sport of, to ridicule.*

Se—*to rise.*

Se—(de) *to meddle with.*

Se—(à) *to put or set (one's-self) to or about any thing, to begin.*

Se—(à) *to bend (one's-self) to comply with, to conform to.*

Se—(de) *to complain of.*

Se—(de) *to take advantage of, to avail one's-self of, to pride one's-self upon.*

Se—*to take a walk (one's-self.)*

Réjouir—*to rejoice.*	Se réjouir de—*to rejoice at.*
Remettre—*to put in the same place again.*	Se—(à) *to set to again, to recover from fright or from a fit, to come to one's senses.*
Résoudre—*to solve, to fix upon doing any thing, to decide.*	Se—(à) (Implying persuading and urging oneself to any thing.) *to come to a determination, to be fully determined to.*
Réveiller quelqu'un—*to awake any one, to call up, to awaken, to rouse.*	Se—*to awake from one's sleep.*
Soustraire—to subtract.	Se—(à) *to take one's-self away from, to avoid, to shun, to fly from.*
Servir—*to serve.*	Se—(de) *to serve one's-self, i. e. to make use of, to use.*
No active sense.	Se Souvenir (de) or se rappeler——[Being only the effect of the memory upon the mind; it can only be reflective] *to remember, to recollect.*
Vanter—*to praise, to extol.*	Se—*to boast, to vaunt, to brag.*

Remark. *To be sitting* may imply two different actions, that of *being in the act of sitting*, and that of *being sat* (or) *seated*. The first should be translated into French by *s'asseyant*, and the other by *être assis*.

RIEN. Syntax, No. 189—191.—When with a verb, or an expression which already implies a negative sense, *rien* does not admit of *ne*.

Peut il y avoir *rien* de plus consolant!
Can there be any thing more consoling.

Nous doutons beaucoup que *rien* puisse le contenter,
We doubt very much whether any thing ever can satisfy him.

Rien may be used substantively; it then means *a trifle*, we say *faire des riens*, to be busy about trifles; *un rien*, the least trifle.

Rien interrogatively, or exclamatively, may even signify *something*. Ex. *Rien* flatte-t-il si délicieusement l'esprit et l'oreille, qu'un discours sagement pensé et noblement exprimé!

STYLE.—The style of every language, as well as that of French, should be *correct, clear, natural, consistent, nervous, elegant* and *harmonious*; but the means of ob-

taining these qualities differ according to the genius* and construction of each language. We will, therefore, in order to be less vague, and to make our observations more truly useful, enter into the mechanism of the construction, and endeavour, thereby, to point out to the learner the method by which he may analyse any sentence, and himself attain the foregoing requisites.

A *correct* style consists in the strict observance of *grammatical rules,* and a choice of *appropriate terms.*

With regard to grammatical rules, we must refer the learner to the Syntax, and to several articles in the Appendix.

By appropriate terms, we mean that the substantive, for instance, should be exactly expressive of the object mentioned, that every epithet, accompanying each substantive, should be such as usage and taste will warrant.†

The following example may be given as exhibiting, by its appropriate expressions, a clear definition of a complex idea:

"On peut dire que la douceur ou l'âpreté des articulations, l'abondance ou la rareté des voyelles, la prosodie ou l'étendue des mots, leurs filiations, et enfin le nom et la force des tournures et des constructions qu'ils prennent entre eux, sont les causes les plus evidentes du génie d'une langue."

A *clear* style should not only possess the requisites necessary to correctness, but the construction ought to be that which is most natural to the language, so as to be most comprehensible to the reader.

As we have already seen in the Syntax that the basis of the construction of the French language may be represented by the following formula,

$$\overset{1}{\text{Nominative.}} \mid \overset{2}{\text{Verb.}} \mid \overset{3}{\text{Accusative or Dative.}}$$

---

* Although the style of a language depends considerably upon the writer, still we may say that the genius, (or the most striking qualities) of the French tongue are perspicuity and elegance.

† The dictionary of the *Académie*, and Des Carriere's, as well as most French works of the kind, give the adjectives and the substantives which usually come together; verbs and their governments, accusative, &c. are likewise given.

We shall now add, that whatever belongs to each of those three parts, that is, whatever tends to qualify or describe, in any way, the first part or substantive, for instance, should be placed as close to it as possible. The same observation will apply to the verb and to its accusative.

Example of a simple sentence.

^{1}Pierre, | ^{2}Contribue | à la gloire ^{3}de sa patrie.

Example in which the nominative is described.

Pierre, bon, aimable, jeune encore et instruit, | contribue | à la gloire de sa patrie.

Example in which the nominative is still more described.

Poussé par une noble ambition, Pierre, bon, aimable, jeune encore et instruit | contribue | à la gloire de sa patrie.

Example in which the verb is accompanied with an adverb.

Poussé par une noble ambition, Pierre, bon, aimable, jeune encore et très instruit | contribue de jour en jour | à la gloire de sa patrie.

Example in which the verb is accompanied with an adverb, and described by a substantive.

Poussé par une noble ambition, Pierre, bon, aimable, jeune encore et très instruit | contribue de jour en jour, par ses ouvrages | à la gloire de sa patrie.

Example in which the third number is described.

Poussé par une noble ambition, Pierre, bon, aimable, jeune encore et très instruit | contribue de jour en jour, par ses sublimes ouvrages | à la gloire de sa patrie, dont les richesses et l'influence n'auront bientot plus de bornes.

Thus we see that each part, though described at some length, but still preserving its proper place, allows the mind of the reader not only to comprehend, but, as it were, to anticipate what is to come.

The learner has already seen, Syntax, p. 156, that a sentence may be lengthened by means of some links, which are called conjunctions, because they join phrases; and by prepositions serving to continue the same phrase; such are

Et, mais que*, &c. *De,† à, par pour*, &c. *qui,‡ que, duquel*, &c. *Celui-ci, celui-la*, &c.

Another very useful word in French, one which, more than any other, tends to render composition perspicuous, is the word *C'est*. (See CE, Appendix.) It points, at once, to the most emphatical part of the sentence; which emphatical part is placed immediately after *c'est*.

A *concise* style is obtained by constantly keeping sight of the idea which is to be expressed, and avoiding introducing into the same sentence another which is not immediately connected with it. Next, the learner should not suffer himself to be tempted to heap many epithets one upon another. Such an observation may, we are aware, be applicable to English composition as well as to French; but it should always be remembered, that English, or, in fact, most other languages, will allow of more ornaments than French will. If we recommend sobriety of embellishment, how much more strenuously shall we blame the learner who, in hopes of dazzling by abundance of expressions, or even for the sake of rounding a sentence, will fall into the common error of using synonymous adjectives, or adding another member to the sentence, which, when looked into, is nothing but a mere pleonasm. Let us follow La Bruyère's advice:

"Que dites-vous? Comment? Je n'y suis pas: vous plairoit-il de recommencer? J'y suis encore moins; je devine enfin: vous voulez, Acis, me dire qu'il fait froid; que ne me disiez vous: il fait froid; vous voulez m'apprendre qu'il pleut ou qu'il neige: dites; il pleut, il neige; vous me trouvez bon visage, et vous désirez m'en féliciter, dites: je vous trouve bon visage. Mais, répondez-vous, cela est bien uni et bien clair, et d'ailleurs, qui ne pourroit pas en dire autant? qu' importe, Acis, est ce un si grand mal d'être entendu quand on parle, et de parler comme tout le monde."

---

* Too frequent a use of this conjunction is made by young learners. (See *puis, alors, ensuite*.—ADVERBIAL EXP.)

† Remember that these prepositions should be repeated whenever the verb, or adjective, which governs them, is understood.

‡ Not only *qui*, and all relative pronouns should be repeated, but great attention should be paid to making them immediately follow the word to which they refer; from the want of care in this particular may be made the most absurd nonsense.

Every style should be *natural* and *consistent*, that is, it should be adapted to the age and character of the person that speaks, or to the subject of which it treats. Hence so many different sorts of styles, each of which may be perfect of its kind.

* Comment se pourroit-il, en effet, (says Marmontel,) que l'homme qui ne parle que pour exprimer ce qu'il sent, dit autre chose que ce qu'il sent, et ne le dît pas comme il convient à son âge, à son caractère, à sa situation? Son langage n'est que l'effusion ou l'explosition de son âme. Pourquoi, dans ses récits, dans ses descriptions, *emploirait*-il des détails superflus, des circonstances inutiles? Il ne songe à dire que ce qu'il a vu, et dans ce qu'il a vu, que-ce qui l' a frappé. En un mot, il ne veut pas être spirituel, singulier, merveilleux; il veut être vrai, ou plutôt il l'est sans le vouloir, et sans songer à l'être.

An *elegant* style will, of course, allow more scope than the former, and will require not only a nicer choice of words, but a peculiar turn of phrases.* This requisite can scarcely be separated from what is called a *harmonious* style, which ought to be constructed in such a manner as to please the ear as well as the mind of the reader.

The following description, by Buffon, may be given as a model of both requisites—*elegance* and *harmony*:

"Tout annonce dans l'homme le maître de la terre; tout marque en lui, même à l'extérieur, sa supériorité sur tous les êtres vivans: il se soutient droit et élevé, son attitude est celle du commandement, sa tête regarde le ciel, et présente une face auguste sur laquelle est imprimé le caractère de sa dignité, &c."

The nervous style is composed of bold and powerful expressions, calculated to clothe ideas of the same stamp. Masillon's description of what we call a hero is a fine specimen of the nervous style.

"Comment ont paru sur la terre ces génies, supérieurs, mais inquiets, nés pour mouvoir les ressorts des états et des Empires, et ébranler l'univers entier? Les peuples et les rois sont devenus les jouets de leur ambition et de leurs intrigues: les dissentions civiles et les malheurs domestiques ont été les théatres lugubres où ont brillé leurs grands talens," &c.

---

* The learner may partly see in the Syntax, Nos. 403 to 405, how far the construction of the French will facilitate the obtaining this object: such as putting the longest member of a sentence last, placing the nominative after the verb, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.—The greatest difficulty that the use of the *subjunctive* offers, is, that it entirely depends on the idea intended to be expressed, that is, whether certainty or uncertainty, informing or ordering, &c. be implied; and, as it frequently occurs that the same verbs have very different acceptations, they sometimes govern the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive. The following observations will correspond with the rules of the Syntax, marked with their respective numbers.

(Syntax, p. 113, No. 277.) With regard to *verbs* requiring the subjunctive, we think it useful to give the following list:*

Douter	que	to doubt.
Appréhender	"	to apprehend.
Craindre	"	to fear.
Avoir peur	"	to be afraid.
Commander	"	to command.
Défendre	"	to forbid.
Nier	"	to deny.
Souhaiter	"	to wish.
Se réjouir	"	to rejoice.
Etre charmé	"	to be delighted.
" ravi	"	
" faché	"	to be sorry.
" chagrin	"	

The following require the subjunctive or the indicative, according to the idea intended to be expressed:

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Entendre—*to hear.*	Entendre—*to intend, to wish.*
Prétendre—*to affirm.*	Prétendre—*to insist upon.*
Dire—*to tell, to say.*	Dire—*to tell, to order.*
Ecrire—*to write.*	Ecrire—*to order (in writing.)*

Je l'entends qui fait du bruit,—*I hear him making a noise.*
J'entends que vous fassiez cela,—*I will have you do that.*

Il prétend qu'il a fait son devoir,
He pretends he has done his duty.

Il prétend que nous fassions notre devoir,
He will have us do our duty.

---

* Neither *espérer* nor *croire* require the subjunctive. *Espérer* requires the *future.*

Vous dites qu'on fait attention—*you say they pay attention.*
Dites* qu'on fasse attention—*tell them to pay attention.*

Il nous écrit qu'il fait des progrès,
He has written to inform us that he makes progress.

Ecrivez* qu'on nous envoie des marchandises,
Write to order some goods.

In the following examples, the using the subjunctive does not even depend on the acceptation of the verb, but on the idea intended to be expressed.

Je choisis un livre qui l'instruira.	Je choisis toujours un livre qui l'instruise.
Montrez lui la route qui conduit à Londres.	Montrez lui une route qui conduise à Londres.

Sembler, attended by a dative case, whether a noun or a pronoun, requires the *indicative*; but the *subjunctive*, if not so.

Il semble à un aveugle que tout *est* noir.	Il semble que ce drap *soit* noir, mais il est bleu.
Il *me* semble que vous *devez* avoir faim.	Il semble que vous *n'ayez* mangé de huit jours.

Impersonals requiring the subjunctive. (Syntax, No. 278.)

Il faut ..... *it is necessary.*
Il importe ..... *it matters.*
Il convient ..... *it suits.*
Il est avantageux ..... *it is advantageous.*
Il est facheux ..... *it is vexatious.*
Il est juste ..... *it is fair, just.*
Il est injuste ..... *it is unfair, unjust.*
Il suffit ..... *it is sufficient.*

Il importe que vous soyez attentifs,
It matters that you should be attentive.

Conjunctions requiring the subjunctive. (Synt. 279.) It is with conjunctions as with verbs, they require either the indicative or subjunctive, according as they are intended to imply doubt or certainty, &c.

J'ai fait cela comme il me l'a dit, *de manière qu'*il a été content.	Faites cela *de manière qu'*il soit content.

* We may give it as a rule, that the *imperative*, followed by *que*, implying *request* or *command*, generally requires the next verb in the *subjunctive*.

Que, in the second part of a sentence, used to avoid the repetition of *si,** or of any other expression implying doubt, requires the *subjunctive;* but if it be used instead of such words as *quand,* or *aussitôt que,* implying *time,* it requires the *indicative.*

Si Mr. B. vient, et *que* je ne *sois* pas à la maison, dites lui de revenir.	*Quand* (or) *aussitôt* que je me porterai bien, et *que* je *serai* fort, &c.
Il n'est pas si ignorant qu'il ne *sache* que vous avez tort.	Il n'est pas si ignorant qu'il le *paroit.*

Interrogations (Syntax, No. 281.) require the subjunctive, because a question naturally implies a doubt.

Je crois qu'il *est* honnête homme.	Croyez-vous qu'il *soit* honnête homme?
Il est vrai que vous êtes malade.	Est-il vrai que vous soyez malade?

Unless the speaker does not imply any doubt about the object mentioned, and merely wishes to know whether the person he speaks to is also aware of it:

Garantissez-vous que ces marchandises soient arrivées?	Garantissez-vous que ces marchandises *sont* bonnes?
Do you warrant whether these goods are arrived?	*Do you warrant that your goods are good?*
	Lui direz-vous que son épouse *est* malade?
	Shall you tell him that his wife is ill?

Negations (Synt. No. 280.) require the subjunctive, because, as well as *interrogations,* they imply a doubt.

Je *ne* dis *pas* que vous *soyez* un fripon.
Il n'est pas vrai que vous soyez malade!

Unless no doubt is entertained, and the person knows that the circumstance alluded to has taken place:

Ne lui dites pas que mon père est arrivé.

Ne croyez-vous qu'il est midi?	Ne croyez vous pas qu'il *soit* midi?
It is twelve o'clock; do you not believe it?	*Do you not think it is twelve o'clock?* or, *it is not twelve o'clock, is it?*

* Although *si* implies a doubt, yet it does not require the subjunctive without *que.*

Take notice, that we often use the *infinitive* instead of the *subjunctive*, when the person, which is to be the agent of the next verb, is sufficiently pointed out, whether by a dative coming before, or by the context. (See Infinitive, Appendix.)

Subjunctive.	*Infinitive.*
J'ordonne *que* votre frère *fasse* cela.	J'ordonne à votre frère *de* faire* cela.
J'ai commandé qu'il *fût* prêt.	Je lui ai commandé d'être* prêt.
Il faut que vous vous appliquiez pour mériter cette récompense.	Allons, Messieurs, il faut vous *appliquer*.

Also when speaking in a vague or general sense, applicable to every one.

Il faut apprendre à obéir avant de savoir commander,
instead of
Il faut que vous appreniez à obéir avant que vous sachiez commander.
Avant de, instead of *avant que*.

Avant de le *punir*, dites-lui pourquoi il a tort, (instead of,) *Avant que* vous le *punissiez*, dites pourquoi, &c.

The following expressions are put in the subjunctive, on account of the elipses.

Je ne sache pas qu'il soit arrivé, (that is) *Je ne crois pas* que je sache, &c.

Fasse le ciel qu'il guérisse! (for) *Je désire* que le ciel fasse, &c.

Puisse le ciel m'accorder sa guérison, (for) *Je désire* que le ciel, &c.

Synonymes are words which are alike in their significations. In the following list, containing remarks and explanations, we have been particular in giving those terms chiefly, which, to an English learner, seem to have the same import. The following definitions will also enable the learner to read the Synonymes written by *Girard, Beauzée*, &c. with more facility, pleasure and profit.

Abandonner, Délaisser.	*Abstrait, Distrait.*
The first means to abandon, to quit, to leave from weariness, or want of constancy.	The first means absorbed in one object; hence we say: *les sciences abstraites*, abstract sciences.
The second, to forsake those whom we ought to support.	The second means *absent, inattentive.*

* Syntax, No. 227.

Accoutumé à (être). Coutume de (avoir).

Etre accoutumé à, (une chose) to be accustomed to.

Avoir coutume de (faire une chose) to be in the habit of doing any thing.

The first is passive, that is, almost involuntary, and is the effect that frequent repetition has upon the mind. The second is active, that is, voluntary, and indicates, on the part of the nominative, habit in frequently doing the same action.

Accusateur, Dénonciateur, Délateur.

Accusateur, accuser, plaintiff.

Dénonciateur, one who, for or against his own interest, brings to light crimes, conspiracies, &c. by accusing the guilty.

Délateur, one who, out of cowardly revenge, or in hopes of reward, takes advantage of a word or action amenable to the law; an *informer*.

Achever, finir, terminer.

The first gives the idea of completing something already begun. The second indicates the finishing of something near its end. The third implies the putting an end to a work, whether complete or not, from a wish of not letting it continue.

Achat, Emplette.

Achat, a purchase, small or great.

Emplette, a purchase of a more trifling kind: *aller faire des emplettes*, to go out a shopping.

Acre, Apre.

Acre, acrid, tart. *Apre*, rough, they are both applied to fruit. We say figuratively *des manières âpres*, disagreeable, repulsive manners.

Action, Acte.

Action—action, is said of every action remarkable or not.

Acte, deed, is said of remarkable actions. We say, *des actes de foi, d'espérance, de charité;* which are nothing but declarations of our sentiments.

Adresse, Dextérité, Habileté.

Adresse, cleverness, handiness; refers to the means one employs.

Dextérité indicates the nimbleness, the quickness, and handiness, with which any one gets through his work.

Habileté, skill, refers more to plans, or to the mind which directs the work.

La Dextérité is more the effect of habit and practice, being more mechanical.

Adresse implies suppleness and circumspection.

L'habileté is more a gift of nature.

Affectation, Afféterie.

Both these expressions imply a wish of appearing what one is not; with this difference, that *affectation* refers to thoughts, sentiments, or taste, whereas *afféterie* is only applicable to coquetish and finical manners. Ex. Les petits-maîtres ont de l'affectation, et les petites-maîtresses de l'afféterie.

Aider, Assister.

Aider, to help. To give assistance in doing any thing which is difficult, or lifting or carrying any burden.

Assister, to assist, implies giving succour in time of distress. Ex. *Assister les pauvres.*

Aimable, Agréable.

Aimable denotes general mildness and cheerfulness in a person, having the wish to please.

Agréable, possessed of qualifications which are desirable in society.

Air, Mine, Physionomie.

Air, look, general appearance; is in use in every kind of style, and applied to persons or objects. Ex. "*Cette personne ou cette chose a bon ou mauvais air.*" This person, or thing, looks well or badly.

Mine, look, is, as well as *air*, applied to persons and things, but only in familiar style; with such epithets as *jolie, belle*, &c. it is always taken in derision.

Physionomie, the look, physiognomy, *only* applicable to man's face.

Aise, Content, Charmé, Ravi, Transporté.

Aise, glad, pleased.

Content, very much pleased.

Charmé, delighted.

Ravi expresses *satisfaction* still more strongly than *charmé*.

Transporté is still stronger than *ravi*.

Aisé, Facile.

Both mean *easy*; but *aisé* refers more to the quality of the object, whereas *facile* indicates more the manner of accomplishing it: Ex. *Un chemin est aisé*, that is, smooth and easy. *Un chemin est facile*, that is, easily found out.

Ajustement, Habillement, Parure, Toilette, Mise.

Habillement, dress in general.

Ajustement refers to the fitting on of the *habillement*.

Parure, dress, adorned with what can set a person off.

Toilette refers to the fitting on of the *parure*, the occupation of dressing.

Mise, referring to the manner of being dressed, is always used with an epithet.

Therefore we say, Il étoit si pauvre que nous fumes obligés de lui acheter *un habillement* complet. Elle n'est pas belle, elle a besoin *d'ajustement*. Il faut nous *mettre en parure* car nous devons avoir de la compagnie. Les femmes aiment la *toilette*. Une *mise* élégante ou ridicule.

Aller, s'en Aller, Partir, Sortir.

Aller, to go. With this verb we must always mention the place to which we are going; therefore, to translate "Good bye, I am going," do not say, *Adieu, je vais*, but *Adieu, je m'en vais*.

S'en aller, to go away, to quit the place in which one was.

Partir, to set off, to take one's departure.

Sortir, to go out.

Alors, Puis, Ensuite, Enfin.

Alors, then, at that time.

Puis, next; it denotes a circumstance that comes next to the one pointed to by *alors*.

Ensuite, afterwards, (comes next to *puis*.)

Enfin, at last, seems to close the series of events.

Amasser, Entasser, Accumuler, Amonceler.

There is the same difference between the above verbs as there is between the substantives from which they are derived. Thus, *amasser* comes from *amas*, an indefinite quantity; *entasser* from *tas*,

a small heap; *amonceler* from *monceau*, a large heap, in the form of a mountain; *amasser*, to amass, to lay by, (whether in a small or in a large quantity;) *entasser*, to heap up, to put heap upon heap; *Accumuler* (from the latin *accumulo*) to accumulate, (this word resembles *amasser*, in signification, only in a greater degree.

Amonceler also means *to heap up;* but giving the idea of *monceau;* it means to *heap up* in a more magnified sense than *entasser*. We should say—*L'homme prudent et sage amasse du bien. L'ambitieux accumule des richesses. L'avare entasse des guinées. La muraille s'étant écroulée, nous vimes des pierres, des briques et des cadávres amoncelés dans le fossé.*

An, Année.

They both mean *year;* but *an* is used with *cardinal* numbers—as, *un an, deux ans,* &c. And *année* with *ordinal*, as *la premiere, la seconde année,* &c. because *an* is used merely to calculate time; and *année* refers more particularly to what has taken place during that time. Therefore we should say, " Il y a trois ans que nous n'avons eu une *année* si fertile."

The same with *jour* and journée, *matin, matinée,* &c.

Jour, a day, 24 hours.

Journée only implies the time that elapses between *getting up* and *going to bed*, and refers to what has transpired during the time. Ex. " Dans trois *jours* d'ici, je passerai une *journée* bien agréable." *Une journée* may signify *a battle, a day's work, or day's earning*, &c. Ex. *La journée de cannes.* Cet homme a fait une *bonne journée.*

The expression *tous les jours* implies any part of every day, were it but one minute; whereas the expression *toutes les journées* se passoient à, &c. means every day, and the whole of the day, was spent in, &c.

Likewise *matin*, morning, is used in opposition to any other part of the day, and any portion of that time. *Matinée* refers to the use made of the time, which lasts from getting up till dinner-time, or, more exactly speaking, till 12 o'clock.

Soir, evening, is used in opposition to day-time.

Soirée refers to the time that elapses between tea-time and going to bed, also to the use made of that time. We say, " Je vais tous les *soirs*, chez mes amis, et j'y passe la *soirée*, à parler, à jouer aux cartes, ou à faire de la musique.

Ancien, Agé, Vieux.

Ancien is applied to a person or thing that we have long known, or had in our possession, without any reference to age.

Agé, although referring to age, is not so harsh as *vieux*, because, we may say of a child, *il est agé de deux ou trois ans;* whereas *vieux* implies caducity, decrepitude. Speaking of a servant, we might say, *Un ancien domestique*, meaning one that we have had long in our service. Un *domestique agé*, a servant in years. *Un vieux domestique*, a servant rather past service. *Un ancien ami*, an old friend.

Appercevoir, S'appercevoir de.

Appercevoir, to perceive with the eye, is always used literally: we say, *J'apperçois une personne de loin.*

S'appercevoir de, means *to perceive* with the mental eye: *Je m' apperçois de votre intentic—*

m'apperçois que vous voulez me tromper.

Apprêté, Affecté, Recherché, Affété.

Apprêté, (lit.) prepared, also (in allusion to the dressing, put on stuffs, silks, &c.) dressed, (fig.) *stiff* and *starched;* with regard to manners.

Affecté, affected.

Recherché, with regard to manners, dress, eating and speaking, *particular, over-nice, far-fetched* in one's expressions.

Affété, affected, (with regard to little finical and foppish ways of dressing.)

Après, D'après.

Après, after, afterwards, (in opposition to *avant,* before.)

D'après, from, according to, conformably to.

Ex. *d'après nature,* from nature.

Apprêter, Préparer.

The first means *to get ready* for immediate use. The second means *to prepare,* for an indefinite time. Ex.

La compagnie est venue, apprêtez le diner.

Nous devons partir demain; c'est pourquoi nous préparons tout pour le voyage.

Assurer, Rassurer.

Assurer, to assure, to affirm with demonstrations of certainty.

Rassurer, to dispel uneasiness, one fear, by words expressive of safety and comfort.

Attendre, S'attendre à.

Attendre, to wait for, also to expect, (bef. a substantive.) Ex. *attendre des lettres,* to expect letters.

S'attendre à, to expect, more frequently followed by a verb.

Je m'attends à recevoir des lettres.

I expect to receive some letters.

Autorité, Puissance, Pouvoir, Empire.

Autorité, authority, is the right of one invested with legal rank or elevation.

Puissance, is the right of the strong.

Pouvoir is the agent of both.

Empire, influence over the mind, proceeding from superiority in strength or merit.

Autrefois, Anciennement, Jadis.

Autrefois, formerly.

Anciennement, a long time ago, is used in opposition to modern times.

Jadis, formerly, in times of yore; used in familiar narration.

Aussi, C'est pourquoi, Ainsi.

Aussi, therefore, adds something else, in order to strengthen what has already been said.

C'est pourquoi, like the word *therefore,* in English, merely draws a conclusion from what has been said before.

Ainsi, so, thus, this being the case, merely *presumes* to make a conclusion from what has been said before. Ex. Il a fait de grandes dépenses; aussi est-il devenu pauvre, *he has been at great expense; and therefore,* (or) *no wonder, he is become poor.*

Avertissement, Avis, Conseil.

Avertissement, warning.

Avis, opinion, way of thinking.

Conseil, advice, counsel.

1, *Aveu*—2, *Confession.*

The first—*avowal*—implies interrogation, intreaty, from another, to disclose what one knows.

The second—*confession*—a voluntary disclosure of one's errors, faults, or sins.

1, *Babil;* 2, *Caquet.*

1st. Chattering.

2nd. Chattering mixed with slander.

1, *Balbutier;* 2, *Bégayer;* 3, *Bredouiller.*

The 1st—to lisp, to speak indistinctly. It may proceed from an impediment, or from fear or confusion.

The 2d—to stammer.

The 3d—to speak so fast and indistinctly as to be quite unintelligible.

Bâtiment, Navire, Vaisseau.

Bâtiment—a vessel, a ship. This word may be applied to all sorts of vessels. We say, *Un petit, gros, beau bâtiment.*—*Un bâtiment marchand.*

Navire—a vessel, a ship. This word is used for all sorts of ships, except men of war. We say *Construire un navire. Un capitaine de navire.*

Vaisseau—a ship. This word is chiefly applicable to large vessels. We say, *Un vaisseau marchand. Un vaisseau de guerre, de ligne.*

En bas, Là bas.

En bas—below.
Là bas—yonder.

Bavarder, Babiller, Causer.

Bavarder—to speak immoderately; to tittle-tattle, and tell other people's secrets.

Babiller—to chat, to prattle harmlessly.

Causer—to chat (in a friendly way.)

Un bavard—a gossip.

Un babillard—a chatter-box.

Le Beau, La Beauté.

Le beau denotes what is really beautiful in every object; it refers more to the ideal, and is felt rather than seen, whether in morality, in composition, in the fine arts, &c.

Beauté expresses that beautiful appearance of any object, which, striking the eye, never fails to win the heart.

Bevue, Méprise, Erreur, Faute.

Bévue—a mistake, caused from want of quicksightedness.

Méprise—a mistake, made in the choice of one object out of many.

Erreur—an error caused by inattention.

Faute—a fault caused for want of knowing better, from ignorance.

Un ministre commet souvent des *bévues.* Prendre un objet ou une personne pour un autre, c'est commettre une *méprise.* On commet des erreurs dans des calculs; dans sa conduite, en quittant le sentier de la vertu. Faire des fautes dans un thême.

Bienveillance, Bienfaisance.

Bienveillance—benevolence, good will towards any one.

Bienfaisance—beneficence, implies the act of doing good.

Bout, Extremité, Fin.

Bout—one end. It refers to length, and supposes two ends, as

in a stick, a string, a garden walk, &c., and is opposed to another end.

Extrémité—extremity, the farthest part, is used in opposition to the centre.

Fin—end, is used in opposition to beginning.

Bord, Côte, Rivage, Rive.

Bord—border, edge. Is applied to the sea, rivers, and brooks.

Côte—coast, when speaking of the sea only.

Rivage—(de la mer)—the sea beach.

Rive—the bank (of a river.)

Bord and *Côte* refer to the edge of the earth.

Rive and *Rivage* refer to the edge of the water.

Bord, besides, means the extremity, the edge, the rim of any vessel, or any other object.

Bruit, Train, Vacarme, Tintamarre, Tapage, Fracas.

Bruit—noise (of any kind.)

Train—noise, implying confusion, and loud sound of several voices, or of any other objects.

Vacarme—an uproar, a great noise or bustle.

Tintamarre—a thundering noise (with confusion and disorder.)

Tapage—a fray, a racket.

Fracas—a fray, the noise of several things upset and tumbling down with confusion.

Cabaret, Estaminé, Gargote, Guinguette, Hotellerie, Auberge, Restaurant, Taverne, Caffé, Hotel.

Cabaret—a public-house.

Estaminé—a low public-house, for the purpose of smoking.

Gargote—a low eating-house.

Guinguette—a country public-house for the purpose of drinking and dancing.

Hotellerie—a little inn. (This word is become rather absolete.)

Auberge—an inn.

Restaurant—an eating-house, or coffee-house of a better sort; and the landlord of which is called *restaurateur* or *traiteur*.

Taverne—a tavern.

Un Café—a coffee-house.

Hotel—an hotel.

Candeur, Ingénuité, Naïveté.

Candeur, besides Candour, also means that purity of mind which prevents him that has this quality from suspecting falsehood or deceit.

Ingénuité—ingenuousness, artlessness, the quality of one who speaks and relates with so much truth and openness, that he has not even the precaution to conceal that which might be unpleasant.

Naïveté—artlessness, the quality of one who not only speaks with *ingénuité*, but sometimes imparts his own ideas and sentiments, without being conscious of the effect they will produce; a circumstance which gives a great deal of piquancy to the speech, and which the most subtle art cannot imitate.

Capable, Habile, Instruit, Eclairé, Clairvoyant, Savant, Erudit, Docte.

Capable is applied to any one having capacity, or being an able person. (Is used absolutely,)—*Voilà un homme capable.*

Habile—clever, able to put into practice his talents, instruction and experience.

Instruit—well informed.

Eclairé—not only well inform-

ed, but whose instruction has been profitable. Enlightened.

Clairvoyant — clear or quick-sighted.

Savant—learned.

Erudit—erudite.

Docte—deeply versed in matters that are the object of memory. We say, Un *habile* chirurgien, général, &c. Un *savant* mathématicien, &c. Un historien, un jurisconsulte est *docte*.

Casser, Rompre, Briser, Fracasser.

Casser—to break, is chiefly applied to brittle objects, such as *ice, glass, china, &c.* Figuratively, we say, *Casser un officier, un arrêt, &c.* To dismiss.

Rompre—to break asunder, is applicable to supple, pliant, and flexible objects, such as *bread, a stick, ties, chains, &c.* Figuratively, *Rompre un homme aux affaires*, to train a man up to business. —*un cheval*, to break in a horse.

Brisé — to break, to dash to pieces, as, *Un vaisseau brisé contre les rochers*, a ship dashed to pieces against the rocks. (Figuratively,) *Avoir le cœur brisé*, to be broken-hearted.

Fracasser — to break asunder with violence and disorder.

Changer, Altérer.

Changer—to change (favourably or unfavourably.)

Altérer—to change, to alter, to fall off, (for the worse.) *Sa santé est altérée*, or *il a altéré sa santé*, his health has fallen off. *Il a le visage altéré*, his face looks much worse.

Charge, Fardeau, Faix.

Charge—a load, the weight of which is supposed to be proportioned to the strength of the carrier or bearer.

Fardeau—a burden, supposed to weigh heavily on the bearer.

Faix—a burden implies bearing down. When taken figuratively, *charge* and *fardeau* mean expence, trouble, &c., the former, borne from a sense of duty, or from necessity, and the latter is often supported voluntarily.

Faix is never used figuratively.

Certificat, Attestation.

Certificat—certificate, a written character from some one in office, from the physician, &c. Also, a character for a clerk, a servant, &c.

Attestation — testimonial, the character given of a clerk, of a youth at college, or at school.

Combien, Comment.

Combien — how much, how many.

Comment—how.

Comme, Comment.

As synonymes, both these two words mean *how*; but *comme* is used in exclamations, and *comment* in interrogations. *Comme vous parlez! Comment parlez-vous?*

Commencer, Se mettre à.

Commencer—to begin (any kind of work.) Is used in opposition to *finir*,

Se mettre à means *to set about* any action. Such as *manger, boire, parler, rire, pleurer, &c.*

Compagnie, Troupe, Bande.

Compagnie—company. It indicates number, union, and order. We say, *Une compagnie de cavalerie, d'infanterie, &c.*, a company

of cavalry, of infantry, &c. *La Compagnie des Indes*, the East India Company.

Troupe, troop, a multitude: it implies *union* and *strength*: we say, *Une troupe de soldats*, a troop of soldiers; *d'acteurs*, a company of actors, &c.

Bande, a band. (It implies *number* and *disorder* going in a string.)

Une bande d'écoliers, a number of school-boys; *de voleurs*, a band of robbers; *de violons*, &c. of fiddlers.

Conduire, Reconduire, Mener.

Conduire, to conduct, to shew the way.

Reconduire, to reconduct, to see any one home.

Mener, to lead, or accompany, by way of shewing the way, or escorting—*Mener quelqu'un au spectacle*, to take any one to the play.

Connoître, Savoir.

Connoître is usually applied to physical objects, to creatures and productions of every description, country, &c.; therefore answers to the English expression, *to be acquainted with*. *Savoir* is used when speaking of sciences, of things that are the object of the intellectual faculties, or that are learnt by heart, and answers more generally to *know*. We say, *Connoître une personne, un pays*, &c. but *Savoir les mathématiques, une langue, sa leçon*, &c. Hence *savoir* implies thorough knowledge, and *connoître* acquaintance from sight or hearsay. *Savoir un morceau de poésie ou de musique* means, to know a piece of poetry, or music, by heart. Whereas *connoître un ouvrage, un morceau de musique*, &c. means only "to recollect the nature of a work, a piece of music, &c. from having seen it, or heard speak of it.

Savoir also answers to the expressions—to be aware, to be conscious,—and is then followed by *que*; whereas *connoître* is never so.

Consumer, Consommer.

Consumer, to burn, to consume.

Consommer, to use up, to consume by either use, eating, drinking, or dissipation. Ex. Tant d'hommes consommeront beaucoup de provisions *So many men will consume a great quantity of provisions*. Le feu a consumé les provisions, *fire consumed the provisions*.

Contredire, Contrarier.

Contredire, to contradict.

Contrarier, to act, or speak in opposition to another person, to tease, to worry, by dint of contradicting.

Convenances, Bienséance.

Convenance, conformity, in point of appearance, with regard to religion, politics, manners and morals. We say, *observer, ménager, sauver respecter les convenances*, to observe, to respect, to be particular in not hurting the feelings of society.

Bienséance, propriety, we say, *Choquer, connoître*, la bienséance, to know, to shock the rules of propriety.

Négliger, respecter les bienséances, to neglect, to respect the rules of propriety.

Corriger, Reprendre.

Corriger is used whenever *to correct* might be used.

Reprendre is never used but to signify "to set right" any one who is

talking incorrectly. They are both used reflectively; with this difference, that we say, *Se corriger d'un défaut*, to get the better of a defect; and *se reprendre*, when, in speaking, one is conscious of having committed an error or mistake.

Couleur, color.
Coloris, coloring.

Couper, Découper, Elaguer, émonder.

Couper, to cut.
Découper, to cut out, (drawings, patterns, &c.) to carve (meat, &c.)
Elaguer, to lop.
Emonder, to lop.
The last two verbs are used in speaking of trees, but the former is also used in most other objects, meaning *to lop off*.

Une Couple, Un Couple.

Un Couple, a man and his wife. *Une couple*, a couple (of any thing.)

Courir, Couler, Ecouler.

Courir, to run, (as a man or an animal.
Couler, to flow, (like fluid.)
Ecouler, to elapse, to pass away, (like time.)

Coutume, Usage.

COUTUME, *custom*, refers to what is usually or habitually done.
USAGE, *custom*, refers more to certain usages.

à couvert de, à l'abri de.

Both mean *sheltered from*; only that the first implies *hidden from* and the second *defended from*: therefore we say, *à couvert du soleil*, and *à l'abri du mauvais tems*.

Creuser, Approfondir.

Creuser, to dig or hollow out, (always literal.)

Approfondir, to search into, to dive into. Approfondir une science. However we say familiarly, *Se creuser la tête pour découvrir quelque chose*. To endeavour to discover any thing.

Déchirer, Arracher.

Déchirer, to tear, to rend any kind of thin composition or stuff. *Déchirer du papier, du linge de la soie.*

Arracher means to pluck off, to tear off. It gives the idea of snatching, pulling off with violence an object which is firmly fastened, as, *S'arracher les cheveux, une dent, arracher une branche d'arbre.*

Décrier, Décrire.

Décrier, to cry down.
Décrire, to describe.

Dehors, Extérieur.

Dehors, the outside (of a vessel, of a house, &c.)
Extérieur, outward appearance of a person or thing.

Denouement, Catastrophe.

In a play, *Dénouement* is the unravelling of the intrigue, and *Catastrophe* is the completion of the *dénouement.*

Dépense, Dépens.

Dépense, (expense.) We say, *faire de la dépense, se mettre en depense*, that is, spending money.
Dépens, (detriment.) We say, *plaisanter aux dépens* des autres, to joke at other people's expense; that is, at their detriment or hurt.

Denrées, Vivres, Provisions.

Denrées, commodity, provisions, whatever is to be sold for man's consumption in point of food.

Vivres relates to whatever is to be used for the consumption of man, whether in a small or large quantity.

Provisions refers more to the quantity, and the time for which it is intended to last.

Dénué, Dépourvu, Privé.

Dénué, divested; implies total lack, absence of what one wants, without even the means or the hopes of obtaining it. Ex. *Dénué de bon sens, dénué de ressources.*

Dépourvu, unprovided, in want of. The want expressed by this word is not so total as by *dénué*; it is more momentary, more accidental.

Privé, deprived.

Dépêcher, Expédier.

Dépêcher, to dispatch (with great haste) a courier, a person entrusted with orders.

Expédier, to dispatch, to send. This expression may be used with regard to *persons, letters*, &c. and does not indicate so much haste.

Dépense, Frais.

Dépense, expense, money expended or spent.

Frais, cost, charges. This word refers more to the cost of the object mentioned.

In a general way, we say, *Faire beaucoup de dépense, la dépense de la maison*; but we say, *Les frais de la guerre, de voyage, de transport*; the latter giving the idea of a certain sum of money.

Also, in the figurative meaning, we say, *Faire les frais de la conversation*, that is, not only to find matter for conversation, but to take upon one's-self the task of talking.

Déporter, Bannir, Exiler, Transporter.

Déporter, to transport, to banish, to convey convicts into exile, in a distant country or colony used for that purpose.

Bannir, to banish, to send away, in disgrace, from one's presence or country.

Exiler, to send away, in disgrace, to a distant country. Ex. *Un souverain exilé, un sujet rebelle.*

Transporter des passagers, des marchandises, &c. to convey.

Désœuvré Paresseux, Oisif, Fainéant, Indolent, Négligent, Nonchalant.

Désœuvré, one who, from choice, is without occupation.

Paresseux, lazy, slothful, (habitually and from disposition.)

Oisif, idle, who does nothing, or is usually busy about trifles.

Fainéant, sluggish, who is averse to work.

Indolent, indolent.

Négligent, neglectful, untidy.

Nonchalant, dawdling, one who is fond of lounging about.

Destin, Destinée, Sort.

Le Destin, fate, was among the ancients what providence is with us, *Le livre des destins.*

Destinée, destiny, is what has been ordered by *le destin*, or providence.

Sort, fate, lot, that *fate* which is decisive of men's destinies.

Détail, Détails.

Détail, the detail, the minute part.

Détails, the particulars of any circumstance.

Dommage, Prejudice, Détriment.

Dommage, damage, injury done

to any body or any thing: (fig.) we say, *C'est dommage*, it is a pity.

Préjudice (only figuratively) harm, mischief done to the reputation or interest of any one. *Porter préjudice à quelqu'un*, to do any thing prejudicial to any one.

Don, Présent, Cadeau.

Don, gift, endowment, left as in a will, or given by nature.

Présent, a present.

Cadeau, a small gift. We say, *Faire un don, un présent, un cadeau. Avoir le don d'écrire*, to have the gift of writing,

Douleur, Mal.

Douleur, (literally,) acute pain, (fig.) grief.

Mal (lit.) ache, sore, (fig.) evil.

Doux, Doucereux.

When applied to persons, *Doux* signifies *mild, gentle, sweet-tempered.*

Doucereux means *soft* and *meek*, but, at the same time, implies insipidity and mean hypocrisy. We say, *Des manières doucereuses, un ton doucereux, une mine doucereuse. Doucereux* and *mielleux* have very nearly the same acceptation.

S'Ebouler, S'Ecrouler.

S'Ebouler, to come rolling down precipitately, like earth, sand, snow, &c.

S'Ecrouler, to tumble down precipitately with a crash, like a wall, a rock, &c.

Ecarter, Eloigner.

Ecarter, to remove more or less out of one's way.

Eloigner, to remove at a greater distance.

The first comes from *écart*, aside, and the other from *loin*, far.

Eclairer, Eclaircir.

Eclairer, (lit.) to light, to shew a light, (when fig.) to enlighten.

Eclaircir, or *rendre clair*, to make clear, or clear up. (When lit.) it signifies thinning, cutting and lopping, to diminish thickness.

We say, *Eclairez à ce Monsieur, car il fait obscur.*

Effacer, Raturer, Rayer.

Effacer, to efface, to blot out.

Raturer, to scratch out.

Rayer, to efface, by means of a line drawn over.

1. *Cela m'est égal;* 2. *cela m'est indifférent;* 3. *peu m'importe;* 4. *cela ne me fait rien;* 5. *Je ne me soucie pas de cela.*

The above four expressions answer to the following: *I do not care about*, &c. *that is indifferent to me*; but the fifth means *I do not like.*

Egards, Ménagemens.

Egards, attentive and kind behaviour, which old age or infirmities, kindness, or even merit, in general, requires of us.

Ménagemens, cautious behaviour used towards touchy or quarrelsome people.

Avoir des égards pour quelqu'un, to be attentive to any one. *User de ménagemens avec quelqu'un*, to behave cautiously with any one.

Egoïste, Personnel.

Egoïste, one who is always *talking* of himself.

Personnel, one who always *thinks* of himself.

But *Egoïste*, in French, seems to be the generic word to express egotism and selfishness.

Elan, Essor, Vol.

Elan, a spring preparatory to a leap, (fig.) a sudden emotion of the heart, *Faire un élan.*

Essor, the flying of a bird away from the spot in which it was, (fig.) flight of the imagination, *Prendre son essor.*

Vol, the flight of a bird, (fig.) it may also be applied to the imagination, *Prendre son vol.*

Emplir, Remplir.

Emplir, to fill (a glass, pitcher, &c.)

Remplir, to fill again.

Figuratively, it means to *fulfil. Remplir son devoir, remplir sa mission.*

Emporter, Remporter.

Emporter, to carry or take away, (fig.) *s'emporter*, to fly in a passion.

Remporter, to take away again, (fig.) to gain, (such as a prize, a victory, &c.)

Enfermer, Renfermer.

Enfermer, to shut in, to enclose. Ex. J'ai enfermé mes livres dans l'armoire.

Renfermer (besides meaning *enfermer* a second time) signifies *to shut up, to contain.*

Le prisonnier a été renfermé. La terre, renferme des trésors. Ce livre renferme des vérités.

Enfin, A la fin, Finalement.

Enfin, in short, comes by way of transition.

A la fin, at the end, at last, refers to the conclusion.

Finalement, finally, refers to the result.

Engager, Porter, Exciter, Pousser.

Engager à, to induce by asking, requesting.

Porter à, to incline to, to prompt by force of example.

Exciter à, to excite, by every way possible.

Pousser à, to urge to.

Il les a poussés à faire le mal.

Enflé, Gonflé, Bouffi, Boursouflé.

Enflé, swelled. Ex. *Un bras enflé par une humeur*, an arm swelled by some humour.

Gonflé, puffed up; gives the idea of tension (lit. and fig.) Ex. *Une vessie gonflée*, a bladder swelled. *Une joue gonflée par une fluxion*, a cheek puffed up by a cold. *Gonflé d'orgueil*, puffed up with pride.

Bouffi, puffed, (so as to look fat;) when literally, it is chiefly applied to the face. We also say, figuratively, *bouffi d'orgueil*, puffed up with pride, (it is a stronger expression than *gonflé.*)

Boursouflé, puffed up, blown out to an extreme size.

Style enflé, bombastic style, (by far-fetched ideas.)

Style bouffi, inflated style.

" *boursouflé*, inflated, (by high sounding words.)

Entrailles, Boyaux.

Entrailles (lit.) the entrails, the intestines (fig.) the bowels, feelings of humanity and pity. Avoir des entrailles de père, de mère, &c. pour un enfant, *to have fatherly or motherly affection for a child.*

Boyaux, bowels, *guts*, this word is never used figuratively.

Nourrir, Alimenter, Sustentir, Supporter, Entretenir, Soutenir.

Nourrir, to nourish, to feed, to

board, to find any one victuals and drink, or find any one his keep.

Alimenter, to keep up furnishing victuals enough so as they may not fail, (figuratively,) to find or furnish the object wanted, in order to keep up—*les affaires*, (with money)—*la conversation*, (with matter) &c.

Sustenter, to provide just enough food to keep up life.

Supporter, to support, (as pillars do with regard to a building) to endure, to bear (patiently what is disagreeable.)

Entretenir, to keep up, to keep in good repair, in good order, to maintain, to find any one in whatever he wants, in point of eating, drinking, dress, or comfort of any kind. Ex. *Entretenir une maison, les routes, les chemins, la conversation, la correspondance, des connoissances, la paix, la guerre, une armée, une famille.*

Soutenir, to uphold, to support, *to sustain, to keep up*, (as a pillar supports a building,) figuratively, *Soutenir* une famille, une maison, le poids des affaires, la conversation. It also means *to persist in.* Ex. *Il soutient que vous avez tort.*

Envier, Avoir envie.

Envier, to envy, to covet.

Avoir envie, to have a mind.

Espérance, Espoir.

Both mean " hope."

Espoir seems to imply a cause for hoping. We therefore say, D'après ce qu'on m'a dit, j'ai l'*espoir* de réussir. Quoique je sois sans ressource, je ne laisse pas de vivre dans l'*espérance*.

Espion, Mouchard.

Espion, a spy, one who wishes to watch and spy the actions of others, for the better to be on his guard.

Mouchard, a base informer, one who insinuates himself in the society of others, for the purpose of taking advantage of any thing said or done.

Esquisse, Ebauche.

Esquisse; a sketch, the outlines (speaking of a drawing, or of any other work.)

Ebauche, a sketch given of a painting, in which the shading is hinted at, so as to give an idea of the forms, the positions, and distances, with regard to perspective. *Esquisse* gives an idea of more correctness in the outlines, but *Ebauche* implies a state of greater forwardness, and therefore a more complete idea of the subject intended to be represented.

Etre égal, Ne pas se Soucier, Peu importe, Cela ne fait rien.

Etre égal, to be all the same, all one. *Cela m'est égal.*

Ne pas se soucier, not to care, not to like. It expresses more than the first, with respect to dislike.

Peu importe, it matters but little.

We say, *peu m'importe, t'importe*, &c. (See page 147.)

S'Evader, S'Esquiver, Se Soustraire, S'enfuir, S'échapper.

S'Evader and *S'Esquiver* both mean " to steal away " slily, without being perceived.

Se Soustraire, to avoid being taken, or seen, by prudent and well-concerted measures.

S'enfuir, to run away, to flee.

S'échapper, to escape. This word implies that the person has already been caught, but by efforts

or stratagems he has effected his escape.

Eveiller, Réveiller.

Eveiller, to wake (at a regular time.)

Réveiller, to wake (at an uncertain time, or involuntarily, by a sudden noise, &c.)

They are also both used figuratively. Generally speaking, we should say, *Eveiller les passions, le courage*, &c. but *Réveiller les passions ou le courage d'une personne abattue*, to awaken the passions or the courage of any one cast down (by any cause whatever.)

Fade, Insipide.

Both mean *insipid, tasteless.*

Fade, when applied to composition, means *void of strength and beauty*, but making a vain attempt at it; whereas *insipide* contains nothing but what is *tiresome* and *tedious*.

Faire croire, Faire accroire.

Faire croire à, to persuade, to convince.

Faire accroire à, to impose upon any one (by making him believe an untruth.)

Fat, Petit-maître.

Un Fat is a coxcomb, a conceited man, wrapped up in himself.

Un Petit-maître is a trifling, effeminate character, whose ambition is to excite notice by his dress and his finical manners.

Il faut, Il est nécessaire, On doit, On devroit.

Il faut, it must.

Il est nécessaire, it is requisite.

On doit, it is proper to.

On devroit, one ought, one should.

The first implies an obligation proceeding from a sense of propriety, custom, or interest. The second has reference to indispensable obligation. The third indicates obligation proceeding from a sense of reason, propriety, and duty. The fourth implies obligation, from the same motives as the third, but is less absolute, as it is conditional.

Ex. *Il faut obéir aux lois*, one must obey the laws.

Il est nécessaire d'être sur ses gardes, it is necessary to be on one's guard.

On doit toujours obéir à son père, it is always requisite that one should obey one's father.

On devroit toujours se conduire en l'absence de son maître comme en sa présence, one ought always to behave in the absence of one's master as in his presence.

Fin, Rusé.

Fin, deep, cunning.

Rusé, sly, tricking.

L'homme fin, finds out any cunning or cheating trick. *L'homme rusé*, tries to take in, to cheat. The first keeps on the defensive, and the second on the offensive. The same kind of explanation is applicable to *finesse* and *ruse*.

Fond, Fonds.

Fond, bottom. Le fond d'un puits, d'une rivière. (When figuratively) it means *thoroughly*. Ex. *Savoir une chose à fond*, to know any thing thoroughly.

Fonds, land, stock (in trade) fund.

Etre en fonds, to have a great deal of disposable money.

Ce marchand a vendu son fonds, that tradesman has sold his stock.

Un fonds inépuisable de science,

an inexhaustible stock of learning.

Cet homme a un grand fonds d'esprit, that man has a great stock of wit.

La Foudre, Un Foudre.

La foudre, thunderbolt, (when fig.) It is applicable to whatever causes dread and awe. We say of an Orator, *qu'il lance les foudres de l'éloquence.*

Un foudre is applied to a hero. We say, *C'est un foudre de guerre.*

Franc, Livre, (tournois.)

Each is worth *twenty sols*, that is ten pence. Formerly, *livre* was chiefly in use, but, since the system of counting by decimals has been adopted in France, *franc* has completely superseded the word livre.

Le Froid, La Froideur, Le Chaud, La Chaleur.

Le froid and *le chaud* refer to the temperature of the air, heat and cold.

Froideur is usually taken figuratively; it means *coolness* in point of treatment from one person to another.

Chaleur means *heat*, from the sun, fire. It burns or scorches, and answers to the chemical expression *caloric.* It is also used figuratively, meaning warmth of feelings, of imagination, &c.

Salaire, Gages, Appointements, Solde, Honoraires.

Salaire, generic word, which expresses a reward due to any one for his work or labour. It is usually used when speaking of labourers or menials in general. It is not therefore used as *salary* in English.

Gages exactly answers to the English word *wages.*

Appointemens, salary.

Solde, soldier's pay, *un officier à demi solde*, an officer on half pay.

Honoraires, fee. *Les honoraires d'un medécin*, &c.

Gai, Enjoué.

Gai, merry. For want of a word, in French, which exactly corresponds with the English word *cheerful*, we use *gai* both for *merry* and *cheerful*, but never for *gay* when implying "richly dressed, or fond of pleasure."

Enjoué, playful, sportful, having a smiling countenance.

Garder, Conserver, Réserver, Préserver.

Garder, to keep, not to give away or part with.

Conserver, to preserve. This word frequently implies a liking for the object preserved, and is therefore stronger than *garder.*

Réserver, to put by one part out of many for another person or purpose.

Préserver, to preserve from, to keep from.

Ex. *Gardez* ce que j'ai mis dans votre assiette; ne le donnez à personne. Vous devriez toujours *conserver* les présens qu'on vous fait— De tous les livres qu'on m'a donnés, je ne *réserverai* que celui-ci, par ce que c'est un présent de l'auteur.

Preservez-moi de pareils malheurs.

Gaspiller, Dissiper.

Gaspiller, to waste. This word is applicable to the waste that takes place among careless people, servants, or children.

Dissiper, to dissipate, to squander away.

Grace, Faveur.

Grâce, grace, pardon, forgiveness, kindness. Therefore we say, *ac-*

corder la grace à un coupable, to grant pardon, &c. *Faire une grace.* It implies any kindness done by one from whom it was not expected, always from a superior to an inferior, by condescension.

Faveur, a favor. This word, in French, always implies "privilege, preference."

Le ministre accorde des faveurs à ses favoris tandis qu'il refuse souvent la grace de l'innocent injustement condamné. We say, Accorder une grâce, faire la grace de. Accorder une faveur, des faveurs. Rendre un service.

Grain, Graine.

Grain, corn.

Graine, seed.

On fait la récolte des grains, on ramasse les graines. (Fig.) Il n'a pas un grain d'esprit, *he has not a grain of wit.*

S' habiller, Se mettre.

S' habiller, to dress, refers merely to the putting on of one's clothes.

Se mettre, to dress, refers to the manner of dressing.

Ex. Dépêchez-vous, habillez-vous, il est tard, *make haste to dress, it is late.* Quoique cette dame passe beaucoup de tems à sa toilette, elle est toujours mal mise, *although that lady spends a great deal of time in dressing, she does not look the better for it.*

Habiller, Chausser, Coiffer.

Habiller, to dress (without any regard to the manner, or what part of the body.)

Chausser, to dress (the feet,) that is to put on shoes, stockings, &c.

Coiffer, to dress the head.

The above verbs have been formed from the substantives. *Habiller*, from *habit*, dress; *chausser*, from *chaussure*, dressing of the feet; *coiffer*, from *coiffure*, head-dress.

Hâter, Presser, Dépêcher, Accélérer.

Hâter, to hasten. It indicates hurry, bustle, continued to the end of the work. Ex. *Hâtez votre départ*, le dîner, la besogne, &c.

Presser, a momentary spurring on of the business. Ex. Vos ouvriers travaillent bien lentement, il faut les presser.

Dépêcher, to despatch. In French, as well as in English, it implies a want of due attention and precision. Ex. *Il dépêche la besogne.*

Accélérer, to quicken, to accelerate. Ex. *Accélérer le pas, le travail*, &c.

Haut, Hautain, Altier, Fier, Orgueilleux, Glorieux.

Haut, high, implies that reserve and distance which rank in life renders it sometimes necessary to be kept.

Hautain, haughty, implies contempt for others.

Altier, very high, that will not bend nor stoop in the least degree, ungovernable.

Fier, proud. This word may be taken in a good or in a bad sense. If in a bad sense, it implies arrogance and disdain with regard to others, averse to any connection, and therefore not communicative. If in a good sense, it indicates a person who has a noble pride, and who, in spite of the mean prejudices of this world, preserves that high esteem for what he thinks praise-worthy. We say, *être fier de sa pauvreté, de sa profession, de son pays*, &c.

Orgueilleux is that kind of *proud*

man, who, different from the *fier*, wishes to make a show of that which, he thinks, places him above others; such as family, riches, authority, &c.

Glorieux is the haughty man, who is more actuated by vanity, and who, having no intrinsic merit, thinks himself above others, merely on account of his high birth or riches. Ex. *L'homme haut est réservé et sérieux; le hautain a le regard dédaigneux; l'altier élève la tête et a l'œil ouvert et fixe; le fier a la démarche droite et ferme. L'orgueilleux se distingue par son langage pompeux, et le glorieux ne fait que parler de sa naissance et de ses possessions.*

Hésiter, Balancer.

Hésiter, to hesitate.

Balancer, having, in its primitive meaning, reference to *weighing*, implies, in the figurative, *considering, attentively*, both sides of the question, hence hesitation.

Honnête, Civil, Poli.

Honnête, besides its first acceptation, implying *honesty, probity*, is also applicable to a man who observes the laws of civility which one member of society has a right to expect from another. This word, in fact, has encroached upon the use we might make of *civil*, and this latter word is seldom used, now, but in speaking of *civil rights*, or rights of a citizen. We, therefore, say, Monsieur est bien honnête (instead of *bien civil*.) Sir, you are very civil (or) polite.

Poli, polite.

Hypocrite, Cafard, Cagot, Bigot, Tartufe.

Hypocrite, a hypocrite, one who dissembles in a moral or in a religious point of view.

Cafard, one who, to arrive at the same end as the hypocrite, puts on an humble and down-cast look, with a soft and meek tone of voice.

Cagot, a hypocrite in point of religion.

Bigot, as well as *cagot*, is a hypocrite in matters of religion, and besides affects to attend to the most minute observance of religion, in order to be dispensed with his other duties,

Tartufe is one who puts into practice all the deception which is peculiar to each of the aforesaid.

Imaginer, S' Imaginer.

Imaginer, to invent, to plan. Ex. *Imaginer une machine, un plan*, &c.

S' Imaginer, to fancy (things which are not real, or are not likely to happen.) Ex. *Vous vous imaginez être malade*, you fancy yourself ill.

Imposer, En Imposer.

Imposer, to awe.

En Imposer, to impose upon, to deceive.

Inclination, Penchant.

Inclination, inclination.

Penchant, inclination.

But *inclination*, in French, indicates *a liking for*, less powerful than *penchant*, because the former proceeds, in a great measure, from habit and imagination, and the latter from nature.

The *inclination* may come and go, but the *penchant* is that bent of the mind which causes us all through life to be *prone to*, or *inclined to*. Ex. *Avoir une inclination* pour, and *Avoir du penchant* pour.

Influer, Influence.

Influer, to influence, implies a latent influence which actuates the person upon whom it falls. We say, *le climat, la nourriture, &c. influent beaucoup sur le moral.*

Influencer quelqu'un means to influence any one by favorable or unfavorable descriptions, whether founded or unfounded.

Laborieux, Travailleur, Industrieux.

Laborieux, laborious, hard-working, ready to set about any kind of work. *Travailleux*, industrious, who keeps on at his own work. *Industrieux*, ingenious.

Langue, Langage, Style, Idiome, Idiotisme.

Langue is the generic term for *tongue* or *language* of a country, as, *la langue Francoise, Anglaise*, &c.

Langage refers more to the style, or rather to the choice of words or expressions. Ex. *Ce langage est celui d'un homme mal élevé, et non celui d'un homme comme il faut.* This language is that of a man ill brought up, and not that of a gentleman.

Style, style.

Idiome, the phraseology of a language.

Idiotisme, idiom, or idiotism.

Lumières, Connoissances.

Lumières means that kind of knowledge which is accompanied with lucid ideas, and delivered or written in such a manner as to enlighten others.

Connoissances may be general knowledge, and therefore requires an epithet such as *grandes, vastes*, to make the possession of it of importance.

Maintien, Contenance, Port.

Maintien means the *habitual* deportment of a person.

Contenance, exterior deportment; but, in opposition to *maintien*, is often put on, and changes whether voluntarily, or involuntarily, according to circumstances. [*Contenance* is never applied to the face.] Ex. *On voit par son maintien libre et aisé qu'il a de l'usage; son ami, au contraire, ne sait quelle contenance tenir, aussitot qu'on lui adresse la parole.*

Port refers more particularly to the beauty or grace of the *body*, especially when placed in fine attitudes.

Mal, Tort, Injure.

Mal, evil, harm, hurt. Besides its generic acceptation, is chiefly used to express *harm* done by an action indicating motion, such as *beating, knocking. Faire du mal*, to hurt; *se faire du mal*, to hurt one's-self.

Tort, any injury, wrong, or injustice, done to the reputation, fortune. *Faire du tort à quelqu'un*, to hurt any one; *avoir tort*, to be in the wrong.

Injure, abusive language. *Dire des injures à quelqu'un*, to call any one names.

Malgré, En dépit.

Malgré, in spite of.

En dépit, in spite of.

The latter expression has more force than the former; it implies stronger opposition and almost spite.

Manières, Mœurs, Morale.

Manières, manners.

Mœurs, good or bad habits, inclinations, ways of living; we say,

De bonnes, et de mauvaises mœurs, des mœurs dépravées, des mœurs Angloises, Françoises.

Morale, doctrine, or reasoning with regard to virtue and vice. We say, *des principes de morale.*

Il me manque, Il me faut, J'ai besoin de.

Manquer, signifying *to be wanting*, or *missing*, which causes the object mentioned not to be complete. *Il me manque*, therefore, implies that one has not what one ought to have. Ex. *Il me manque une guinée pour compléter la somme*, I have the sum complete, all but one guinea. *Avez-vous tous vos livres? Non, il m'en manque deux*, Have you all your books? No, there are two wanting, or missing. *Je ne puis être heureux dans ce monde, car il me manque un ami*, I cannot be happy in this world, for I have not one friend, or I feel the want of a friend.

Il me faut, I must have.

J'ai besoin de, I want, I am in need of. Ex. *Avant de partir, il nous faut absolument des vivres. Je ne puis vous en céder, car j'en ai besoin moi même.*

Marcher, Se Promener, Faire du chemin, Aller à Pied.

Marcher, to walk (on business, or for necessity.)

Se promener, to walk about (for pleasure.)

Aller à pied, to walk (in opposition to "riding," *aller en voiture, à cheval*, &c.)

Faire (du chemin,) to go (a great way. *Faire un, deux, trois milles*, to go one, two, three miles. Without any reference to the manner of travelling.

We say, *Marcher sur les traces de quelqu'un*, to follow a person's steps. *Se promener sur l'eau, en bateau, en voiture*, to take an airing on the water in a boat, in a coach, &c. Also *Promener ses regards*, to look all round.

Marier, Epouser, Se Marier.

Marier, means "to give away in marriage," either by the father, the priest, &c.

Epouser, to take any one in marriage. We say, *Cette Demoiselle épousera ce Monsieur*, or ce Monsieur épousera cette Demoiselle. The person taken in marriage should be mentioned.

Se Marier means *épouser*, without mentioning the person that one takes, and merely implies that one enters the matrimonial state.

Marin, Matelot, Marinier.

Marin, a sea-faring man.

Matelot, a common sailor.

Marinier, a boat-man (or waterman.

Mêler, Mélanger.

Mêler, to mix, to shuffle (without any particular intention as to the result.)

Mélanger, to mix, to make a mixture *(mélange)* to put together different ingredients, with a view to make them amalgamate.

We say, *Mêler les cartes, Mélanger des couleurs.*

Même.

Le même homme, the same man.

L'homme même, the very man.

Il a même juré d'être fidèle, (with a verb,) he even swore to be faithful.

Etre à Même, Etre en état, Etre capable, Pouvoir, Savoir.

Etre à même, to have every facility for doing any thing.

Etre en état, to have it in one's power to, to be able to, &c.

Etre capable, to be capable of, likely to, calculated for.

Pouvoir, to be able, to have strength or ability enough to do a thing.

Savoir is used, in cases in which the English, *to be able*, or *can*, express the ability in doing any thing that is learnt. Ex. I can draw, dance, write, &c. *Je sais dessiner, danser, écrire*, &c. Whereas, the following sentences would be thus translated: I can lift up that burden; can you jump as far as I can? *Je puis lever ce fardeau, pouvez-vous sauter aussi loin que moi?*

Je ne saurois (I cannot) differs from *je ne puis*, inasmuch as it indicates want of capability, and *Je ne puis* implies impossibility.

Mener, Porter, Amener, &c.

Mener, to lead (by way of accompanying or shewing the way.

Porter, to carry (on one's shoulders, head, or any other way as a burden.)

The others being derivatives partake of the same significations as their respective primitives; that is, *amener* means *to bring to*. *Emmener*, to take away with one. In both instances the person brought, or taken away, may be either shewn the way, or led by force, but not carried. The reverse with *apporter*, to bring, or *emporter*, to carry away, the person or object must be carried.

Merci, Miséricorde.

Merci, mercy, is scarcely used but in such expressions: *Etre, S'abandonner à la merci* des hommes, des vents, des flots, &c. to be at or give one's-self up to the mercy of men, of the wind, of the waves; and *Miséricorde* means *mercy* in its full extent. Ex. *Implorer la miséricorde*, to implore mercy: as an interjection, *Miséricorde! Miséricorde!* Mercy! Mercy!

Moissonner, Récolter, Cueillir, Recueillir.

Moissonner, to reap, to cut down the corn, and house it, to make the harvest. It is chiefly applied to corn.

Récolter, to reap, to cut down corn. *Récolter* does not refer to housing, or getting in the corn.

Cueillir, to gather, to pick. This word only refers to what may be picked or plucked, as *fruit* and *flowers*.

Recueillir, to gather together.

Moissonner is used figuratively, *Sa vie a été moissonnée dans sa fleur. La guerre moissonne les bons et les méchans.* Moissonner des lauriers.

Récolter is not used figuratively.

Cueillir des lauriers, to gather laurels.

Recueillir des dettes, des voix, &c.

Au moins, du moins.

Au moins, at least, refers to quantity or number.

Du moins, at any rate, at least.

Ex. Il a *au moins* autant d'argent, d'amis, et de savoir *que vous*, he has, at least, as much money, knowledge, and as many friends as you.

Il devoit du moins vous avertir, he ought, at least, or at any rate, to have warned you.

Pour le moins, at least, stronger than *au moins*.

La morale, Le moral, La moralité.

La morale, the doctrine, or

science which teaches the art of living according to the principles of virtue.

Le moral, inclination, or tendency to good or evil: *le — d'une personne, d'une armée.* &c.

La moralité is the moral deduced from an action, or a fable.

Morceau, Pièce.

Morceau, a bit, a piece.

Pièce, a piece. The difference between *morceau* and *pièce* is, that *morceau* is a part of *pièce*. We call a joint of meat, *une pièce* de viande, and the piece cut from it *un morceau*; therefore we say, *donnez-moi un morceau de pain*, and not *une pièce*, &c. Figuratively, we say, *un morceau d'architecture, de sculpture, de poësie.* We say, *une pièce d'eau*, a piece of water.

Mot, Parole.

They both mean *word*, but *parole* implies a word *uttered*, and *mot* a word that is *written* or *printed*. *Mot* is a sign invented for the purpose of making use of the organ of speech called *parole*. Therefore we say, *Ecrivez, prononcez, épelez ce mot:* and *prendre la parole*, to begin to speak—*demander la parole*, to ask leave to speak—*avoir la parole*, to be in the act of speaking, or have leave to speak.

Nation, Peuple, Gens.

Nation, nation.

Peuple, a people, a nation.

Gens, people, folks, persons. This word is never used but in the plural.

Neuf, Nouveau.

They are both used literally and figuratively. When literally, *neuf* is usually applied to objects of mechanical arts, that is, made or manufactured, such as *un habit neuf, des souliers neufs*, &c. Whereas *nouveau* is applied to objects of liberal arts, such as *un tableau, de la musique*, &c. *Neuf* implies that the object has never been in use before; *nouveau*, that the object has never appeared before. In this sense they may both refer to physical and intellectual objects. Therefore we say, *une idée or une pensée neuve*, meaning a thought newly turned and expressed. *Une nouvelle idée*, or *pensée*, means an idea, or a thought never known before.

Une personne est neuve (dans son art, dans le monde, &c. meaning, "wanting in experience." *Une personne est nouvelle* means a person who has never appeared before. We therefore say of an actor, *il est neuf*; and we also say, un nouvel acteur.

Take notice, that *neuf* is always placed after the substantive, and that *nouveau* comes before.

De niveau, En ras.

De niveau, upon a level.

En ras is always used with the word *campagne*; therefore *en rase campagne*, means in the open plain, free from hills, wood, or any other obstruction.

We also say, *au niveau de*, upon a level with, (literally or figuratively.) Ex. *S'élever, or se rabaisser au niveau de quelqu'un*, to rise or lower one's-self upon a level with any one.

Nippes, Hardes.

Nippes, clothes, a familiar (but not a vulgar) expression, usually denoting a set of common sort of clothes, intended for mere use, for dress, not for ornament.

Hardes, clothes, also a familiar (but not a vulgar) expression, denotes a common sort of clothes, that have been worn before.

Ex. Avant de partir, on lui acheta de bonnes *nippes*. Pendant qu'il étoit à se baigner, quelqu'un vint lui voler ses hardes qu'il avoit laissées sur l'herbe.

Nom, Réputation, Renom, Renommée.

Nom, a name.
Réputation, reputation.
Renom, renown.
Renommée, fame.

Nord, Septentrion, Midi, Sud, Orient, Est, Occident, Ouest, Le Levant, Le Couchant.

Le Nord and *Septentrion* signify both north. *Le Septentrion* is applied to nautical style, as well as *Sud*, *Est*, and *Ouest*. *Le Levant*, is used to mean the rising of the sun. *Le Couchant*, the setting.

Nue, Nuée, Nuage.

Nue, vapours in the sky.
Nuée, a black, rainy cloud.
Nuage, a cloud thick enough to intercept the rays of the sun or of the moon.

Therefore, in the figurative acceptation, *nue* implies height: we say, *Elever quelqu'un jusqu' aux nues*, to raise any one to the skies. *Nuée* indicates quantity, or number, of any beings, or things, coming down with a sinister purpose. Ex. *Des nuées de Cosaques venoient fondre sur nous.* Multitudes of Cossacks kept rushing upon us.

Nuage gives the idea of obscurity. *Avoir un nuage devant les yeux*, to have clouds before one's eyes.

Oisif, Oiseux.

Oisif, one who is seldom employed, who is averse to work. Ex. On voit beaucoup d'oisifs dans les grandes villes.

Oiseux, who or which does nothing, or whose work amounts to nothing. We say, *Une épithète oiseuse*, meaning an adjective which adds no force to the substantive.

Ondes, Flots, Vagues.

Ondes, water flowing gently.
Flots, waves.
Vagues, billows.
Un zéphir agite les ondes. Un grand vent fait enfler les flots. Un vent violent excite les vagues.

Ordinaire, Commun, Vulgaire, Banal, Trivial.

With regard to outward appearance.

Ordinaire signifies *plain, ordinary.*

Commun, vulgar, used by every body.

Vulgaire, seen only among low, vulgar people.

Banal, vulgar, hackneyed, which has been hacked by every body. *Une expression banale.*

Trivial, vulgar, in use only among common people. *Une expression triviale.*

Paître, Brouter.

Paître, to graze, is applied to all sorts of animals. Ex. *La vache, le cheval*, &c. *paissent.*

Brouter, to browse. Ex. *La chèvre et le mouton broutent.*

Pâle, Blême, Livide, Hâve, Blafard.

Pâle, pale.
Blême, of a pale and sickly hue.
Livide, livid, discoloured, with streaks of blue.
Hâve, pale, wan, and disfigured by leanness, ghastly.

Blafard, of a dull, tarnished white, like the complexion of a person in the habit of using white, or the reflection of a feeble, glimmering light. The above epithets are applicable to the word *teint*, complexion.

Pareil, Semblable.

Pareil à, like (in appearance,) so as to match.

Semblable à, like (in resemblance, in feelings.) We say, *des couleurs pareilles des habits pareils*, &c. *Des triangles semblables* (whose angles and sides are equal.)

Substantively, we say, *Vos pareils*, meaning people capable of behaving like you, or of the same birth or extraction. *Vos semblables* mean *fellow-creatures*.

Parfait, Accompli.

Parfait, perfect.

Accompli, when used in speaking of persons, does not, like the English word *accomplished*, mean only one that possesses music, dancing, &c., but one who, besides the requisite qualities and virtues of a gentleman or lady, is also possessed of a mind stored with knowledge, &c.; so that we say, *un homme accompli, une femme accomplie*, meaning a gentleman or a lady perfect both as to their morals, mind and knowledge.

Paroître, Apparoître, Comparoître.

They all three mean *to appear*, only that *apparoître* refers to ghosts and spirits, and *comparoître* is a law term.

De toutes parts, De tous côtés.

De toutes parts, from all parts; (this expression implies *distance*.)

De tous côtés, on all sides; it may mean close to one.

Pas, Point.

Pas, not (*Pas* implies a *step*.) *Point*, not. This word implies a *dot*, and is therefore more expressive of the negative than *pas*. Hence, we do not say *point beaucoup, point bien*. Ex. *Vous n'êtes point riche. Vous n'êtes pas fort riche.*

Une peine, De la peine.

Une peine, bodily pain.

De la peine, sorrow, trouble, grief.

Pendant, Durant.

Pendant, during, refers to a time or season mentioned.

Durant refers to the duration of the circumstance mentioned. Ex. *Durant les vacances*, during the vacation. *Pendant l'été*, during the summer.

Penser à. Penser de.

Penser à, to think of, to bear in mind, not to forget.

Penser de, to have an opinion of. Therefore, when we say, *que pensez-vous de cet ouvrage?* we mean, "What is your judgment upon this work?"

Pères, Aieux, Ancêtres.

All three mean *ancestors*; but *aieux* precedes *pères*, and *ancêtres* is of more ancient date still, or of a farther remove.

Personne, Personnage, Rôle.

Personne, a person.

Personnage, a character, a personage (applicable to men only), a person of high rank.

With regard to a play, *personnage* means one of the *characters*.

Rôle the *part* written for that character.

Phrase, Sentence.

Phrase, any complete sentence.

Sentence, a moral or religious sentiment or maxim, expressed in a compact, pithy sentence. As in English, we say, *prononcer la sentence de mort*.

Plier, Ployer.

Plier, to fold up.

Ployer, to fold, to bend.

Plier is more in use than *ployer*, and is chiefly applied to thin and limp substances, such as linen, silk, &c. *Ployer* is more so to those substances which offer resistance; as a stick, a whalebone, &c. In the figurative sense, meaning *to bend, to give way*, "*ployer*" is rather preferable to *plier*, though the latter is often used in this acceptation. We say, *Les troupes ont plié*.

Plus, Davantage, Encore.

As adverbs of quantity, *plus* and *davantage* have the same signification, but are used differently. *Plus*, negatively, takes *ne* and not *pas*. *Davantage* takes *ne* and *pas*, and is placed at the end of the sentence. Ex. *Voulez vous du thé? Non, je n'en veux plus*, or *je n'en veux pas davantage*. Will you have any tea? No, I will not have any more.

Encore answers to "some more," "one, two, three more," &c. Ex. J'ai déjà bu du vin, mais j'en boirai encore. Je prendrai encore un verre de vin.

De Plus, D'ailleurs, Outre cela, En sus.

De plus, moreover, added to which. This expression strengthens by adding to what has already been mentioned.

D'ailleurs, besides, another reason, coming from some other cause.

Outre cela, besides that, independent of that.

En sus, extra. Ex. Payer une somme *en sus* d'une autre, déjà mentionnée, *To pay any thing extra*.

Porter, Apporter.

Porter, to carry, to bear on one's shoulders, in one's hands, &c.

Apporter, (lit.) to bring (by means of carrying the object) (fig.) apporter de bonnes ou de mauvaises nouvelles. *Apporter* de l'attention à ce que l'on fait.

Porter, Exciter, Pousser.

Porter, to induce, to incline.

Exciter, to excite.

Pousser, to incite to, to drive to, to prompt to.

Pourtant, Cependant, Néanmoins, Toutefois.

Pourtant, however, for all that, in spite of all that may be said. It is the strongest term of all.

Cependant, however. It seems to affirm against what is generally asserted.

Néanmoins pre-supposes two things that seem opposite to each other, and maintains one without destroying the other.

Toutefois, (however, yet.) It mentions a circumstance as an objection to what has been advanced. Ex. Votre oiseau est envolé. Envolé! dites-vous. J'avois *pourtant* pris toutes les précautions possibles. On dit que l'ennemi a été battu; *cependant* nous croyons encore que c'est un faux bruit. Son enfant n'engraisse, ni ne grandit; *néanmoins* il est en bonne

santé. Il semble haïr tout le monde ; *toutefois* il vous considère, et paroit même avoir de l'attachement pour vous.

Près de, Prêt à.

Près de, near to, approaching.
Prêt à, ready to.

Près, Proche.

Both these words signifying *near ;* but *proche* (the use of which is much more limited than that of *près*,) seems to imply greater proximity. We say, *près de*, and *proche de*. But though we say *de près*, we do not say *de proche*. *Près de faire une chose*, not *proche de*, &c.

Privé, Apprivoisé.

Privé, tame, by nature, or from its birth.

Apprivoisé, tame, by art. Ex. *Un chien est un animal privé*. Un lion peut devenir *apprivoisé*.

Probable, Vraisemblable.

Probable, probable, likely to happen.

Vraisemblable, likely, a description or picture of any event or action *agreeing* with what is supposed to be real.

Rapport, Analogie.

Rapport means "connexion between persons or objects."

Analogie, resemblance between objects.

Réchigné, Réfrogné, Maussade.

Réchigné, one who answers or speaks in a *peevish, crabbed*, surly humour.

Réfrogné, one who frowns, and looks peevish and crabbed.

Maussade means one who does not quite, like *réchigné*, give way to temper, but who scarcely will give an answer, or will give it pouting, and in a sulky manner.

Reconnoissance, Gratitude.

Reconnoissance, gratitude. According to the strict etymology of these words, *reconnoissance* would only mean *acknowledgement ;* and *gratitude* would answer to the English word *gratitude*, and imply that warmth of feeling felt by him that has been obliged towards him who has obliged. But custom has caused *reconnoissance* to be more in use than *gratitude*, and it stands in opposition to *ingratitude*.

Regarder, Regarder à.

Regarder, to look at any thing.

Regarder à, to look attentively at, to mind. *N'y regardez pas de si près*, be not particular in this respect. Regardez à votre montre.

Réglé, Rangé.

Réglé, exact, punctual, steady, strictly sober and economical.

Rangé, orderly in one's affairs, property, effects of all kinds.

Rente, Revenu.

Rente is an annual income produced by the interest of a sum of money, deposited in the hands of government, or of any other secure establishment.

Revenu is an annual income produced by other means, such as business, profession, &c.

Renvoyer, Chasser.

Renvoyer, to send away.

Chasser, to turn away.

The first is done merely by orders to leave the place ; the other by harsh means or main force.

Retenir, Détenir.

Retenir, to detain (any one longer than is agreeable or convenient to him.)

Détenir, to keep in prison.

Réussite, Succès.

Réussite means a happy issue in an undertaking or work.

Succès is a series of former successes.

Rêve, Songe.

Rêve, dream, (of an unconnected nature.) Therefore we say, *les rêves du délire*. In the figurative sense, *rêves* implies the chimeras, the visions of a wild imagination. We often say *vous rêvez*, you are talking nonsense.

Songe, dream, (of a connected nature.) Therefore we say, *faire un songe, le songe de Joseph*, d'Athalie, &c.

Revenir, Retourner, Etre de Retour.

Revenir, to come again, to return to the place from which one started. Ex. Je reviendrai ici à cinq heures.

Retourner, to go back, means "to return to the spot to which one has already been. *Je viens de la campagne, et j'y retournerai dans quinze jours. Etre de retour*, to be back, to come back. *Je serai de retour à cinq heures.* This expression has the same signification as *Revenir*.

Rocher, Roche, Roc, Ecueil.

Rocher, rock. An immense mass of stone rising out of the ground. It is usually steep, rugged, and pointed at the top. We use the term *rocher* when there are several together, and this word, therefore, may be considered as the plural of *roc*.

Roc is the same as *rocher*, except that we attach to *roc* the idea of being isolated. It also refers to the kind of substance, which is understood to be very hard.

Roche has also the same signification as the other two, and like *roc* it gives the idea of being isolated. Ex. La roche Tarpéïène. It may also refer to a piece detached from the main body, and frequently contains a clear spring.

Ecueil, a rock in the sea.

Therefore, from the above descriptions, we shall find that *rocher*, in the figurative sense, gives the idea of difficulty and strength. *Roc* implies hardness. We say, *taillé dans le roc*, cut out in the rock. On the other hand, we say, *L'eau de roche, du cristal de roche. Ecueil* gives the idea of dangers and snares. Ex. *Un jeune homme ne sauroit trop être sur ses gardes contre les écueils dont il est entouré.*

Route, Chemin, Voie, Sentier.

Route, road. *La grande route*, the high road or way.

Chemin, way, any track that leads from one place to another. It refers more to the kind of road, whether rough or smooth, short or long, straight or crooked.

Voie, way. It refers to the kind of conveyance used in travelling. Ex. *Par la voie de la diligence. Voie* is also used figuratively, meaning the means of arriving at any destined spot or state of being. Ex. *Les souffrances sont la voie du ciel*, sufferings are the road to heaven. *La vertu est la voie qui mène au bonheur*, virtue is the way to happiness.

Sentier, path.

Sacrifier, Consacrer, Dévouer, Vouer.

Sacrifier, (lit.) to sacrifice (to the Gods,) (Fig.) to sacrifice, to give up any thing that is precious, such as health, money, time, &c. when it might be better employed, or be turned to one's own advantage, and therefore implies regret.

Consacrer, to devote, to apply exclusively one thing to the sole use or promotion of another. Ex. *Consacrer tout son tems à ses études, à ses affaires*, to devote the whole of one's time to one's studies, to business, &c.

Devouer implies *devotedness, blind attachment.* We say, *devouer ses enfans au service de Dieu, de la* patrie. *Etre dévoué* à son roi, à sa patrie, &c.

Vouer implies the same as *dévouer;* but it is done by a vow or an oath. *Vouer ses enfans à sa* patrie. Etre voué à quelqu'un.

Sale, Mal-propre.

Sale, dirty, (actually.)

Mal-propre, dirty, slovenly, (habitually.)

Salut, Salutation, Révérence.

Salut, bow, as a mark of civility.

Salutation, ceremonious bow, (is sometimes taken in derision.)

Révérence, a bow, (is a mark of respect and honor due to the person it is made to.) It implies the bending of the back and an inclination of the head, (as a mark of homage.)

We say, *faire un salut à quelqu'un.*—Faire des salutations—*Faire la révérence.*

On ne sauroit, On ne peut.

On ne sauroit, one cannot. This expression indicates want of power.

On ne peut, one cannot. This expression implies impossibility.

Therefore we never use *pas* with the first; and we sometimes do with the second, to give it more force. Ex. *Je ne saurois chanter aujourd' hui, je suis enrhumé. Je ne puis chanter parce que je n'ai pas de voix.*

Séduire, Suborner, Corrompre.

Séduire (is here considered only with respect to its effect on the mind and reason.) *To mislead*, by means of captivating and alluring; relating to the effect which false eloquence, or insidious writings may produce on the unguarded mind of youth.

Suborner, to inveigle, to allure by means of bribery, or by the promise of some advantage.

Corrompre, to corrupt, by bad advice or bad example, to bribe.

Selon, Suivant.

Both expressions mean *according to;* with this difference that *suivant* implies close and literal imitation, and *selon* refers only to conformity of opinion and principles, or compliance to circumstances.

Un vrai Chrétien se conduit *selon* les maximes de l'Evangile. Nous avons agi *suivant* ses ordres.

Semblable, Pareil, Prochain, Proche.

Semblable, fellow-creature, (respecting the equality that exists between men with regard to their Maker.)

Pareil, fellows, of the same stamp, station in life.

Prochain, fellow-creature, neighbour, (with regard to the charity due from man to man.)

Proches, relatives.

Il semble, Il paroit.

Il paroit, it appears: this expression is the effect of some exterior mark.

Il semble, it seems, is the effect of reflection, excited by the way of acting, or speaking of another; or by a belief proceeding from the appearance of any object, whether founded or unfounded.

Ex. *Il paroit à votre visage que vous êtes malade. A votre manière de parler il semble que vous soyez malade. Il semble que le soleil tourne autour de la terre.*

Serment, Jurement, Juron.

Serment, an oath taken to prove the sincerity of one's promise. We say *faire, prêter serment* (generally in public.) To take an oath.

Jurement, an oath. This word usually denotes passion. It has the same force as *swearing*.

Juron, oath, vulgar and wicked expression, used by the lower class of people.

Serviable, Officieux, Obligeant.

Serviable, one who is always ready to do a service.

Officieux, officious, over-anxious to serve.

Obligeant, obliging.

Seul, Unique.

Seul, alone, without companion.

Unique, the only one of the kind, singular.

Un fils, une fille unique, an only son, an only daughter.

Siècle, Age.

Siècle, a century, an age, a hundred years. We say, *le siècle d'Auguste, de Louis* 14. Even *Le siècle d'or, d'argent, d'airain, de fer.*

Age is of less limited duration. We say, more commonly, *L'âge d'or, d'argent, d'airain, de fer. Le moyen âge*, middle ages.

Signalé, Insigne, Fieffé.

Signalé, signal, famous, is taken in good part—*Un service signalé.*

Insigne, downright, is taken in bad part—*Un insigne coquin.*

Fieffé, arrant, is also taken in bad part—*Un coquin fieffé.*

Simplicité, Simplesse.

Simplicité, simplicity, when applied to persons, is synonymous with *simplesse*. *Simplicité* denotes an artless, candid, and unadorned manner of acting and speaking, which sometimes degenerates into silliness.

Simplesse indicates gentle, mild, unaffected manners, which are the effect of a sweet temper and true modesty.

Situation, Assiette.

Situation, compared with *assiette*, or site of a house, refers not only to the spot, but to the surrounding places.

Assiette only means *site*, or *spot*, on which the building lies.

When used figuratively, that is, when applied to persons, *situation* implies condition or state in which one is at the time mentioned; whereas *assiette* refers only to the habitual state of body or mind. Speaking of a person dangerously ill, we say, *elle est dans une situation dangereuse*, or *déplorable*. But meaning that a person is not quite well or comfortable as to what regards his mind or body, we should say, *il n'est pas dans son assiette aujourd'hui.*

Sobre, Frugal, Tempérant.

Sobre, one that avoids excess in either eating or drinking.

Frugal, frugal, one who takes barely what is necessary.

Tempérant, temperate, one who keeps a just medium, with regard to eating or drinking.

Soins, Soucis.

Soins, cares, troubles which are incidental to any particular situation.

Soucis, vexations which are occasioned by disappointment.

Sombre, Morne, Triste, Abattu.

Sombre, dark, gloomy in appearance. Ex. *Un esprit, une humeur, un visage, l'air sombre.*

Morne, dull, cast-down. Ex. *L'œil, le visage, l'air morne.*

Triste, sad. Ex. *L'air, le visage, l'esprit triste.*

Abattu, dejected, overcome by misfortunes, in a state of despondency.

Somme, Sommeil.

Somme, (masc.) a nap.

Sommeil, sleep.

Faire un somme, to take a nap. *Avoir sommeil*, to be sleepy. We also say, *être assoupi*, to be overpowered by sleep. *Tomber de sommeil*, to be overcome with sleep.

Sommet, Cime, Comble, Faîte, le Haut, Toit.

Sommet, summit, implies a very elevated spot. Ex. *Le sommet d'une montagne.*

Cime, top, implies an elevated object, which terminates in a point. Ex. *La cime d'un arbre, d'un rocher, &c.*

Comble, top, height. It implies an accumulation of materials, the top of which is rounded.

Faîte, the top. It implies different degrees, one over another, or different ranks rising in succession.

Le haut, the highest place or spot.

Toit, roof.

In the figurative sense, we say, Le sommet de la gloire, le faîte des honneurs, le comble du bonheur ou du malheur.

Sot, Bête, Imbécille, Stupide, Bouché, Benêt, Nigaud, Niais, Badaud, Idiot, Insensé, Fou.

Sot, a fool.

Bête, a fool. Though in its primitive meaning this word signifies *a beast*, when used as an insulting epithet, it is equivalent to *sot*, a fool.

Imbécille, a fool, one deficient in capacity, in judgment, and acting only by other people's directions.

Stupide. In French, this word implies *heaviness, stupor*, therefore it is applied, not to an ignorant man, or one of dull comprehension, but to a *dull-looking man.*

Bouché, stupid, of dull comprehension, thick-headed. (In allusion to *bouché*, stopped up), it implies one whose organs of learning are not susceptible of any impression.

Benêt, one who has no mind of his own, and may be led any way, *a weak fool.*

Nigaud, one who goes dangling along without any view or motive, *a sawney.*

Niais, one who is so ignorant of the ways of the world as not to know what to do, what to think, or even how to stand properly, *a country lout or looby.*

Badaud, one who stares at every object as if new, or a great curiosity. It is generally applied to Parisians, as being ignorant of the productions of the country, *a cockney.*

Idiot, idiot.

Insensé, (lit.) mad, (fig.) one who acts against the dictates of reason, who runs headlong into all sorts of extravagance.

Fou, mad, insane, a lunatic.

Rage, rage, is also applied to canine madness, and *enragé* is the adjective.

Soudain, Subit.

Soudain, suddenly, instantaneously. *Subit*, unexpectedly.

Soumettre, Subjuguer, Assujettir, Asservir.

Soumettre, to cause, to submit.

Subjuguer, to subdue, (it implies yoke, *joug*.)

Assujettir, to subject, to reduce to subjection.

Asservir, to enslave, to put into bondage.

Souris, Sourire.

Souris, smile, signifies merely the sign, the mark of a smile on the countenance.

Sourire, smile, (is more than the action of smiling.)

Souris sometimes partakes of contempt, whereas *sourire* merely indicates a mild cheerfulness or sweet serenity.

Suffisant, Important, Arrogant.

Suffisant, self-sufficient.

Important, consequential.

Arrogant, presumptuous, overbearing.

Supporter, Appuyer, Accoter, Adosser, Accouder, Etayer.

Supporter, to support, to bear, to suffer, to endure (lit. and fig.)

Appuyer, not only to support, but to uphold, to strengthen by one's endeavours.

Accoter, to support the sides of, (from *côte*.)

Adosser, to support the back of, (from *dos*) (lit. or fig.)

Accouder, to support with the elbows (from *coude*.)

Etayer, to support, to prop up, such as a tree, a plant, &c. (lit. only.) All but *étayer* are used reflectively.

Surface, Superficie.

Surface, the surface of water or of a country.

Superficie, the outside of anything. This word is always used in opposition to the interior of any substance; therefore, in the figurative meaning, it may signify *smattering*, slight knowledge of anything.

Au surplus, Au reste, Du reste.

Au surplus, let it be added, moreover.

Au reste, *Du reste*, } moreover, added to what has already been said.

The difference between *au reste* and *du reste* is, that *au reste* adds to what precedes, and should be a continuation of the preceding part, whereas *du reste* need not.

Taire, Céler, Cacher.

Taire, (verb act.) not to tell, or to be silent concerning any thing. Taire une circonstance, un événement. *Se taire*, to hold one's tongue.

Céler, to keep any thing from the knowledge of any one.

Cacher, to hide, to conceal.

Tard, En retard.

Tard, (adverb) late.

En retard, late, behind time.

Venir tard, to come late.

Etre en retard, to be late.

Tard refers to the time of the day. *En retard* refers to a time appointed.

Tempérament, Constitution, Complexion.

Tempérament, constitution, a proper quantity or due mixture of humours in the body.

Constitution, the make of all the parts of the body, inwardly or outwardly. (from the verb *constituer.*)

Complexion, constitution, the good or bad habits of the humours of the body.

Terme, Limite, Borne.

These three words mean limit, but *terme* gives the idea of a point, *Limite* that of line, and *Borne* that of an obstacle.

Terme indicates how far one can go; *limite*, the line beyond which one is not to go, and *borne*, that wall, post, or any other visible obstacle which is intended to stop or arrest the progress of any one. Ex. *Il y a un terme à la douleur comme au bonheur. Il faut mettre des limites à ses plaisirs. Nous tâcherons bien de mettre des bornes à son ambition.*

Par terre, à terre.

Par terre, on the ground, or on the floor, is applied to a peron or thing previously standing. Ex. *Un enfant, qui court, tombe par terre.*

A terre, on the ground, is applied to an object that was at some distance from the ground or floor, and happens to fall upon it.

Un chapeau qui étoit pendu à un clou, tombe à terre. *A hat which was hanging on a nail may fall down.*

Terre, Sol, Terrain, Terroir, Terreau, Territoire.

Terre, earth, land. *La terre est ronde*, the earth is round. *Par terre et par mer*, by sea and land. *Une terre*, an estate. *Des terres*, domains.

Sol, soil, is used lit. and fig. Un sol aride, stérile, fertile. Ex. Le sol de la France suffit pour entretenir ses habitans. The produce of the land, in France, is sufficient to support its inhabitants. Les meilleurs principes ne germent que sur un beau sol.

Terrain, space of land, spot, is used in reference to the quality of the land, (lit. and fig.) It means *a field of battle*; spot distinguished or particularised by some action or circumstance. Marquer, le terrain.

Terroir, (soil.) This term is used in an agricultural point of view.

Terreau, black mould, mixed with manure.

Territoire, territory.

1. *Terreur;* 2. *Epouvante;* 3. *Effroi;* 4. *Frayeur.*

1. Terror, that strikes one motionless.
2. Panic, that causes one to fly away.
3. Shuddering, from horror.
4. Fright, sudden fear.

Têtu, Entêté, Opiniâtre, Obstiné.

Têtu, headstrong, perverse, mulish, that will listen to no reason, and yet have none of his own.

Entêté, stubborn, one wedded to his own ways and opinions, though he sees others are better.

Opiniâtre, opiniated, wedded to his own opinions, because his vanity prevents him from thinking any other opinion so good as his own.

Obstiné, obstinate, delighting in opposition and resistance, (figuratively;) *une maladie obstinée*, an illness that cannot be cured.

Tonnerre, Foudre.

Tonnerre, thunder.
Foudre, thunder-bolt.

Tordre, Tortiller.

Tordre, to wring.
Tortiller, to twist in all sorts of ways.

Toucher, Toucher à.

Toucher, to touch.
Toucher à, to meddle with, to take some part away from the object mentioned. *Je ne veux pas toucher à cette somme d'argent.*

Tour, Tournure.

Tour, a natural or artificial turn in the shape of a person or thing which gives it that peculiar outward appearance, termed in French, *tournure.*

Tournure, is therefore the effect of *tour*, and answers to the English words *figure*, *gait*. We say, *Cette femme a une bonne*, or, *une mauvaise tournure.* They may both be applied to the mind, or, in composition, to a sentence. We say, *un tour d'imagination. Un tour de phrase*, meaning a construction peculiar to the language, and *une tournure de phrase*, a peculiar turn in a sentence given by the writer.

Tourmenter, Vexer, Faire endêver, Taquiner.

Tourmenter, to torment.
Vexer, to annoy, (by petty tyranny).
Faire endêver, } to tease, to worry
Taquiner, } about trifles. They are both used in familiar style.

Tournure, Taille, Démarche, Dégaine.

Tournure, outward appearance, implying elegance. Ex. *Cela a de la tournure*, that looks elegant. *Bonne ou mauvaise tournure*, good or bad look. When referring to persons, it is more applicable to the body than the head. *Taille*, shape. *Démarche*, gait, with respect to the manner of walking. But respecting actions with regard to business, it means *step, proceeding. Dégaine*, gait, attitude (very familiar.)

Tout-à-coup, Tout d'un coup.

Tout-à-coup, all of a sudden, all at once, implies surprise felt at an unexpected circumstance.
Tout d'un coup, indicates any thing done at once.

Traiter, Maltraiter, Traiter mal, Traiter de.

Traiter, to treat, (a person or a thing well or badly.)
Maltraiter, to use any one ill, whether by striking or by abusing him.
Traiter mal, not to treat well, not to give a proper reception.
Traiter de is always followed by some epithet of abuse, as *traiter de fripon, de coquin, de voleur*, &c.

Transes, Angoisses.

Transes, excessive fear, apprehension of great evil.
Angoisses, anguish, extreme anxiety. *Etre dans des transes, dans des angoisses mortelles.*

Traîner, Entraîner.

Traîner, to drag, is used in a literal sense only.
Entraîner, to drag along with one, (in a figurative sense) to carry away, to hurry along, whether by the power of eloquence, of music, &c.

Traite, Trajet, Course, Traversée, Voyage.

Traite, length of road, distance from one place to another, applied to land. Ex. Il y a une longue traite de l'Abbaye de Westminster à l'église de St. Paul.

Trajet refers to the space which separates two places, (is applied to water.) Ex. *Le trajet entre Douvres et Calais.*

Course is, in familiar discourse, used to express the length of walk, run, or ride, from one place to another. Ex. Un commissionaire, un cocher reçoit tant par course. *An errand boy, or a porter, a coachman receives so much for his errand, his fare, &c.*

Traversée, the passage (at sea) to be crossed from one place to another. Ex. *Avez-vous fait la traversée entre Calais et Douvres?*

Voyage signifies either "journey or voyage," that is, is equally applicable to land, sea, rivers, &c.

Travail, Ouvrage, Œuvres.

Travail, work, labour, the fatigue undergone in performing any thing, which thing may be called *ouvrage*, and considered as the result of the performance. Ex. Que de *travail*, que de dépense, pour achever un pareil *ouvrage!*

Œuvres, means the collection of all the works of an author. *Œuvres de Molière*, Molière's works.

Travailler, Labourer.

Travailler, to work.
Labourer, to plough.

Très, Fort, Bien.

Generally speaking, the above expressions are used indifferently one for the other, as *superlative expressions.* But, by examining closely, we may perceive a few shades between the meanings of each.

Très, very, expresses superlativeness in a precise degree. Ex. *Dieu est très juste.*

Fort affirms more strongly. Ex. *Les hommes sont* fort *mauvais.*

Bien is more admirative and exclamative. Ex *La Providence est bien bonne!* All three may be used ironically, and still in the same proportion of strength.

Trépas, Mort, Décès.

Trépas, death, is rather poetical. *Un trépas glorieux.*

Mort, death, is used in the common style.

Décès, death, is more used as a law term.

User de, Se servir de, Employer, Usité.

User de (to make use of) refers to the right one has of using any thing.

Se servir de (to make use of) refers to the kind of use we put any thing to; or, rather, to the general use we make of any thing.

Employer à (to employ in) refers to the *particular* use we put a person or a thing to.

Usité, (in use) is only applicable to such words as *forme, mot.* Ex. On *use* de son droit, de sa liberté à son gré, à sa fantaisie. On se *sert* d'un argent, d'un instrument, d'un moyen, comme on le peut. On *emploie* les personnes selon leur habileté, et les choses selon leurs qualités, comme on le juge convenable. Je vous permets *d'user de* mon crédit. Puisque vous ne vous *servez* pas de cet argent, de ces livres, de ce cheval, &c. prêtez les moi. A quoi *employez*-vous tant de domestiques? Ce mot

n'est pas *usité*. *That word is obsolete.*

Va, Sied, Convient.

Va (from *aller*) may, as well as the two others, be used all through the verbs, in this sense. It signifies, *to fit*, to come on, that is neither too small nor too large.

Sied (from *seoir*) means *to become*, to improve the appearance of.

Convient (from *convenir*) *to suit* not only as to appearance, but in every other respect, such as quality of the stuff, its price, &c. Ex. *Ce chapeau vous va bien.* This hat fits you well. *Ce chapeau vous sied bien.* This hat becomes you well. *Ce chapeau vous convient il?* Does this hat suit you?

En vérité, A la vérité.

En vérité, indeed, is used as an assurance of what has been said.

A la vérité, it is true, it must be allowed, confessed, &c. Ex. *Avez-vous été blessé? Oui, en vérité. Mais vous ne paroissez pas souffrir de votre blessure. Non, je ne souffre plus; à la vérité, ma blessure étoit légère, et je fus bien soigné.*

Verser, Répandre.

Verser, (to pour, to shed) when literally, is only used for liquids. The action expressed by *verser* may be intentional or unintentional. Ex. *Versez-moi un verre de vin. Il a versé le sang de son ami.*

Répandre (to spill, to shed, to spread) is used both for liquids and dry objects. It implies scattering and dispersion, as well as effusion. We say, "répandre de l'eau, de l'huile, des fleurs." It is used to express the action of spilling liquid out of a vessel which is too full. We say, *la voiture a versé*, not *répandre*. *Verser*, or *répandre* le sang. *Le soleil répand la lumière.* Les fleurs répandent une odeur délicieuse. Un général répand ses soldats dans un pays. On répand des bruits?

Vêtement, Habillement, Habit.

Vêtement, clothing; mere covering of the body.

Habillement, dress; extends to all the parts of dress, from the hat down to the stocking.

Habit, coat, extends also to whatever is the work of the tailor, and to that only.

Vif, Prompt.

Vif, alive, quick, sharp, lively.

Prompt, prompt, speedy. *Vif* is applied to a person who is apt to be petulant, touchy, and somewhat passionate. *Prompt*, one who sets about any thing quickly, and executes it with celerity. We say, *une chair vive, une douleur vive, un plaisir vif.*

Violent, Emporté, Colère, Vif, Passionné.

Violent, violent, who may be carried away by passion, so far as to strike.

Emporté, passionate, one who is easily irritated, but the effects of whose passion does not go farther than abuse or threats.

Colère, passionate, choleric, constitutionally irritable.

Vif, the primitive meaning of this word is *lively*; but here we may consider it as being a softening epithet for *emporté*. Ex. *Il a bon cœur, mais il est un peu vif.* He has a good heart, but he is rather passionate.

Passionné, this word does not

mean *passionate*, one easily irritated, but one whose passions are easily excited.

Vivre, Demeurer, Résider, Loger, Rester, Se Reposer.

Vivre, to live, to exist.

Demeurer, to dwell, to remain or continue.

Résider, to reside.

Loger, to lodge.

Rester, to remain, to stay, to lodge.

Se Reposer, to rest, to repose.

We say, *Vivre dans un pays, en France, &c. tant d'années*, to live so many years in a country, in France, &c., without any reference to the abode. *Demeurer* chiefly refers to the dwelling, though, as well as *rester*, it may signify *to remain, not to quit*. *Résider* relates to the place considered as the constant place of residence. Ex. Il voyage beaucoup, mais il réside principalement à Londres, et je crois qu'il *demeure*, rue Bishopsgate. *Loger*, meaning "to have lodgings," is less genteel than *demeurer*.

Vol, Essor, Volée.

Vol, flight of but little space or duration, as that of the partridge, &c.

Essor, effort made by a strong bird for a high and distant flight, like that of the eagle, of the falcon, &c.

Volée, flight of long duration and long distance, like the flight of the swallow. Ex. Les hirondelles passent la mer tout d'une volée.

When figuratively, *Vol* is applicable to the efforts of a man who clears away every obstacle, to enjoy his liberty. *Essor* means flight of the imagination.

Voler, Dérober.

Voler, to rob.

Dérober, to steal (slily.)

Volume, Tôme.

Volume, volume. It makes part of a work, but is separated from the rest by the binding.

Tôme refers to the division of the work; so that we may say, *Ce volume contient deux tômes*. This volume contains two parts bound in one.

Vouloir, Avoir envie, Souhaiter, Désirer.

Vouloir, to will, implies authority and power.

Avoir envie de, to have a mind, indicates a sudden fancy for doing anything.

Souhaiter, to wish.

Désirer, to have a great desire for. *Désirer quelque chose*, to wish for the possession of anything. *Désirer avoir quelque chose.*

Le Vrai, Vérité, Le Faux, Fausseté.

Le vrai implies what is consistent with reality, that which is not founded on false bases, that which is not artificial. It is put in opposition to *faux*. Therefore we say, *Il est rare que la jeunesse sache distinguer* le vrai *du* faux, *car elle se laisse éblouir par les apparences.*

Vérité, truth, is opposed to *mensonge*, lying, falsehood.

Le faux, is what is not founded on reason, reality; in fact, the same difference exists between *le faux* and *la fausseté* as between *le vrai* and *la vérité*.

Vrai, Véritable.

The difference between these two words is so nice and metaphysical.

that it would be needless, in a work like this, to enter into all the minute particulars. Let it be sufficient to say, that *vrai* refers more to the reality of the fact, and *véritable* to the manner of telling it; therefore *vrai* means *true, real*; *véritable* means *authentic*. But we think that euphony, more than any other reason, often causes one to be preferred to the other.

Y, Là.

Y, there, is used when the spot alluded to has been already named.

Là, there, is used when the spot is pointed at. Ex. Messieurs, allez-vous là? Oui, Madame, nous y allons.

Zéphire, Zéphyr.

Zéphire is the wind personified. *Zéphyr* is the wind itself.

Tu and Vous, pronouns of the second person singular and plural, often serve to give, in familiar speech or dialogue, many shades of feelings, which it is impossible to express in English.

Tu (the use of which is called *tutoyer*,) may be made to indicate *fondness, affection, familiarity, contempt.*

Vous may imply *respect, distance,* (with regard to manners) *coolness, dislike.* Therefore *tu* is used in the following cases:

1. Sometimes when addressing the Deity.
2. Among *relations, man and wife,* &c. (except, sometimes, from the younger part to their elders.)
3. Among *intimate friends, people of the same profession or trade,* (under the same roof) school-fellows, &c.
4. The master to his servant, &c. and so downwards; when speaking to a *worthless, degraded being.*

1. *Vous*, as in English, is used by a stranger speaking to another.
2. Among the cases before-mentioned, (with regard to *tu*) *vous* is used when the parties, having previously used *tu*, happen to fall out; in which case they immediately show their coolness by using *vous.*

It scarcely needs being mentioned that one gentleman using *tu* to another, with whom he is not intimate, would be considered as offering him an affront; in fact this word, as a term of familiarity, requires so much tact, that the use of it is rather too nice or two delicate to be practised by any one but those that are perfectly acquainted with the language and the manners of the French.

VERSIFICATION FRANÇOISE.

L'art de faire des *vers*, et de les mesurer selon les règles établies, forme la versification.

Un *vers* est une ligne dont toutes les syllabes sont réglées; et elle le

sont, soit pour la quantité, qui les rend brèves ou longues, soit par le nombre de syllabes.

Les vers François ne se mesurent que par le nombre de syllabes.

La *rime*, qui est indispensable dans les vers François, est une uniformité de sons à la fin des différens mots qui terminent les vers.

Il y a deux sortes de rimes, la rime *masculine* et la rime *féminine*, d'où les vers sont appelés *masculins* ou *féminins*. La rime féminine est celle qui finit par un *e* muet seulement, comme dans *ouvrage;* ou par *es*, dans le pluriel, comme dans *célestes;* ou par *ent* dans le pluriel des verbes, comme dans *ils parlent*. La rime masculine est celle qui est formée par toute autre terminaison que par un *e* muet. Dans la rime masculine, c'est la dernière syllabe qui fait la rime, et dans la féminine, les deux dernières.

Dans les rimes masculines, les dernières syllabes des deux vers qui riment ensemble doivent presque toujours se ressembler entièrement, comme *heureux, dangereux;* ces mots riment mal avec *fameux*. *Beauté* rime encore plus mal avec *enflammé*. A moins que le son de la dernière syllabe ne soit fort plein, comme dans *amour, retour, univers, enfer*, &c. Un mot ne peut rimer avec lui-même, à moins qu'il ne soit pris dans une signification différente.

La rime est défectueuse entre deux mots qui riment par *ll*, si elles sont mouillées dans l'un et sèches dans l'autre : *ville* ne rime point avec *famille*, ni *rappelé* avec *émaillé*. Aussi, deux syllabes, dont l'une est brève et l'autre longue, ne peuvent rimer ensemble ; *patte* ne peut rimer avec *pâte*.

Il y a bien d'autres mots qui sembleroient pouvoir rimer, mais qui ne sont point admis ; ainsi que le prouveront l'usage et la lecture des meilleurs poëtes.

On appelle *césure*, une certaine pause qui se fait après les six premières syllabes, dans les *Alexandrins*, et après les quatre premières dans les vers de dix syllabes ; la moitié de chaque vers, divisé par la césure, s'appelle *hémistiche*. La césure ne doit arriver qu'après un sens complet, comme :

1 2 3 4 5 6 1 2 3 4 5 6
Je chan-te ce hé-ros qui ré-gna sur la France,
1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 5 6
Vous près de qui les grâ-ces so-li-tai-res.

On compte cinq espèces de vers en François : — Ceux de 12 syllabes (ou *Alexandrins*;*) Ceux de 10,† de 8,‡ de 7, de § 6. Enfin, ceux

---

* Que l'on nomme aussi *Héroïques*, parceque le rhytme, en étant noble et majestueux, s'emploie dans les grands ouvrages, tels que le *Poëme Epique*, la *Tragédie*, la *haute Comédie*, l'*Epître*, la *Satire*, &c.

† Ces vers ont beaucoup de douceur et d'aisance, et conviennent principalement aux poëmes *Héroï-comiques*, *érotiques*, et *facétieux*, aux *Epîtres badines*, à l'*Epigramme*, &c.

‡ Ces vers sont susceptibles de force et de noblesse. Ils s'emploient dans l'*Ode héroïque et morale*, dans les Epîtres badines, &c.

§ Ces vers sont souvent entremêlés avec d'autres de différente mesure. —Ils s'emploient dans le *Lyrique*, les *Contes*, et les *Fables*.

de 5, de 4, et même de 3, qui ne sont guères d'usage que pour la poësie badine.

Un *hiatus* est la rencontre de deux voyelles; ce qui ne se souffre jamais. Mais quand, dans le corps du vers, la dernière syllabe d'un mot est terminée par un *e* muet, et que le mot qui suit commence par une voyelle ou par un *h* non aspirée; cette syllabe s'élide et se confond avec la suivante. Comme,

Jeune et vaillant héros.

Les mots qui ont une voyelle avant l'*e* muet final, tel que *vie, envie,* ne peuvent entrer avec grace dans le corps d'un vers, à moins qu'ils ne soient suivis d'un mot qui commence par une voyelle, avec laquelle l'*e* muet se confonde; mais s'il est suivi d'un *s* ou de *nt,* le mot alors ne peut se mettre qu'à la fin du vers.

On appelle *licences* dans la Versification, certaines transpositions de mots, l'emploi de plusieurs termes dont la prose n'oseroit se servir, ainsi que le retranchement d'une lettre.

WORDS, (FORMATION OF.)—The Latin and Greek prepositions are used in the composition of French as well as English* words; therefore, by separating these particles from the root, or radical word, and inquiring into the meanings of the prepositions, the learner will not only more satisfactorily understand the significations of each word which is thus composed, and is common to both languages, but will frequently be enabled to find out the import of those which he has never seen before.

It should be observed, that, for the sake of euphony, the prepositions above-mentioned undergo several alterations, whether in taking an additional letter (the first of the radical word,) or in being itself more or less changed. *Ad,* for instance, before *mener* becomes *a,* as *amener,* to bring; *ac* before *cueillir,* as *accueillir,* to receive; *ap* before *porter,* as *apporter,* to bring, &c.

The Latin prepositions are as follow:

Prep.	*Meanings.*	*Examples.*
AB—ABS....	*retrenching, from, away.*	ab-negation, *abnegation, denial.* abs-tenir, *to abstain.*

* See Domergue's Solutions Grammaticales, and John Grant's English Grammar.

Prep.	*Meanings.*	*Examples.*
AD	*addition, to, at.*	a-mener, *to bring.* ad-juger, *to adjudge.* ac-cueillir, *to receive.* af-faire, *affair.* ag-grandir, *to aggrandize.* al-lusion, *allusion.* an-noncer, *to announce.* ap-porter, *to bring.* ar-ranger, *to arrange.* as-sujétir, *to subject.* at-tendre, *to wait.*
AMB.....	*two together.*	ambigu, *ambiguous.* amp-uter, *to amputate.*
ANTE.....	*before.*	anté-cédant, *antecedent.* anti-que, *antique.* anc-iens, *ancient.*
CIRCON	*round about.*	circon-locution, *circumlocution.* circu-laire, *circular.*
CON	*together with.*	con-courir, *to concur.* com-biner, *to combine.* co-opérer, *to co-operate.* cou-vent, *convent.* col-lection, *collection.* cor-respondant. com-munion.
CONTRA	*opposite, in opposition.*	contra-*dictoire.* contre-*danse.* contro-*verse.* contr' amiral.
DE	*departing from, depriving.*	dé-part. dés hériter.
DI, ...		di-ligent. di-rect. dif-ficile. dis-credit.
E—EX.....	*going (or) coming out of, extraction, the late.*	é-cosser, *to shell.* ex-poser. ef-fronté, *shameless.* ex-humer, *to take out of the ground.* ex-empereur.
EN	*the interior of, in.*	en-terrer, *to buy.* en-orgueillir, *to excite pride.* em-paqueter, *to pack up.*
EN	*extraction away*	s'en-voler, *to fly away.* em-porter, *to carry away.* em-mener, *bring away with one.*

Prep.	*Meanings.*	*Examples.*
For	*out of*	for-fait, *a crime.* four-voyé, *misled.*
In	*negative, contrary to, in.*	in-constant, *inconstant.* ig-norant, *ignorant.* il-légitime, *illegitimate.* im-modéré, *immoderate.* ir-régulier, *irregular.*
In	*the inside of, in*	in-corporer, *to incorporate.* im-planter, *to implant.*
Inter	*between, medium, reciprocity.*	inter-venir, *to intervene.* entre-lacer, *to entwine.* entre-sol. s'entre-tuer, *to kill each other.* s'entr-aimer, *to love one another.*
Mis, *in French* mé *or* més.	*contrary to, wrong*	mé-fiant, *mistrustful.* més-intelligence, *misunderstanding.*
Ob	*before in sight*	ob-jet, *object.* oc-casion, *occasion.* of-fusquer, *to be in any one light.* op-poser, *to oppose.*
Per *in French* par.	*through, quite, entirely.*	per-oraison. par-fait, *perfect.* péré-grination. per-spicacité, *perspicacity.* par-jure, *perjury.*
Pre	*before (with respect to time.)*	pré-face, ——. pre-mier, *first.*
Pro—Par ..	*on before*	pro-cession, ——. pro-mener, *to take any one out walking.*
Re	*a second time, repetition.*	re-lire, *to read again.* ré-véler, *to reveal.* ré-imprimer, *to reprint.* r-accommoder, *to mend.*
Retro	*backward.*	rétro-grader, *retrograde.*
Se	*apart.*	sé-duire, *to seduce.*
Sub—Sous ..	*under*	sub-juguer, *to subdue.* sou-scrire, *to subscribe.* su-jet, *subject.* suc-céder, *to succeed.* sug-gérer, *to suggest.* sup-porter, *to support.*
Subter ...	*way, under*	subter-fuge, *subterfuge.*

Prep.	*Meanings.*	*Examples.*
SUPER—SUR	*above.*	super-fin, *superfine.* sur-naturel, *supernatural.* sour-cil, ——, *eye brow.* sus-nommé, *named above.*
TRANS—TRA	*over, beyond.*	trans-planter, *to transplant.* tra-verser, *to cross.*
ULTRA— OUTRE	*beyond.*	ultra-mountain, *over the mountains.* outre-mer, *ultra-marine.* outrer, *to go beyond just limits.*

The Greek Prepositions are as follow :

Amphi means *two together,* as, amphibie, *amphibious.*
Ana, *going away from,* as, anabaptiste, analyse, *analysis.*
Anti, opposite ; antidote ; antipodes.
Apo denotes *separation,* as, apostat, *apostate.*
Cata, *against* or *near,* as catastrophe, *near the conclusion.*
Dia, *across,* as diagonale, *diagonal.*
Epi, *upon, over,* as, épitète, *epithet over the noun.*
Eu, *well, good,* as, euphonie, *euphony ;* evangile, *good tidings.*
Extra, *beyond,* as, extraordinaire.
Hyper, *beyond,* as, hyperbole.
Hypo, *under,* as, hypocrisie.
Meta, *beyond,* as, metaphysique, *beyond physical objects.*
Mono, *alone,* as, monologue.
Para, *by the side of,* as, parallele.
Penta, *five,* as, pentagone.
Peri, *round about,* as, période, périphrase.
Poly, *several,* as, *polysyllable.*
Syn, *with, together ;* syntaxe, *syntax ;* symétrie, *measured together, symmetry.*

Lists of Terminations, shewing the Words which are both French and English.

There are many words which are alike in both languages, and others which differ only in their terminations.

The words, which are perfectly alike, are particularly those that have the following terminations :

-al *as* animal, cardinal, fatal.
-ble .. capable, fable, &c. bible, eligible, &c. noble, double, soluble, insoluble, &c.
-ace .. chace, face, grimace.
-ance .. chance, complaisance, extravagance.
-ence .. abstinence, conférence, continence.
-ice .. artifice, auspices, édifice.

-acle .. miràcle, oracle, obstacle.
-ade .. ambuscade, cavalcade, brigade.
-age .. âge, adage, bandage.
-ege .. collège, privilège, sacrilège.
-ge .. vestige, doge, barge.
-ule .. globule, ridicule, animalcule.
-ile .. bile, débile, agile.
-ine .. carabine, fascine, doctrine.
-ion .. action, fraction, légion.
-ant .. arrogant, constant, élégant.
-ent .. absent, accident, compliment.

Many other English words require only the change of termination, in the following manner:

-ary	into	-aire	as	*military*	militaire.
-ory	....	-oire	..	*glory*	gloire.
-cy	....	-ce	..	*clemency*	clémence.
-ty	....	-té	..	*beauty*	beauté.
-ous	....	-eux	..	*dangerous*	dangereux.
-our	....	-eur	..	*favour*	faveur.
-or	....	-eur	..	*error*	erreur.
-ine	....	-in	..	*clandestine*	clandestin.
-ive	....	-if	..	*expressive*	expressif.
-ry	....	-rie	..	*fury*	furie.

N. B.—Adjectives in {-eux, -if, -in} have their feminine in {-euse, -ive, -ine}.

Terminations which indicate the Significations of some Words.

Ee, added to a substantive, implies *full*, as *une poignée*, a handful, *une gorgée* a mouthful (of liquid;) *une bouchée*, a mouthful (of substantial food;) une bequetée, a beak full; une enjambée, the space contained between a stride.

Ette is, in familiar discourse, used as a diminutive. Ex. Femmelette, a little woman, brunette, lancette.

Atre corresponds with the English termination *ish*, as *noir*, black, *noirâtre*, blackish, *rougeâtre*, reddish, *blanchâtre*, &c. but it is only applied to colours.

The following Words serve to compound others:

Porte, *as* porte-feuille, *pocket-book*, porte-mouchettes, *snuffer-stand*; porte-crayon, *pencil-case*, *&c.*

Contre, *as* contre-coup, *rebound*; contre-sens, *wrong meaning given to a word or a sentence*; contre-tems, *unlucky accident*, *&c.*

Passe, as passe-partout, *master-key*; passe-droit, *injustice*; passe-port, *a pass-port*, passe-lacet, *bodkin*, *&c.*

Avant, *as* avant-coureur, *fore-runner*; avant-propos, &c.

Garde, *as* garde-manger, *a safe;* un garde-chasse, *game-keeper.*
Tire, *as* un tire-bouchon, a *cork-screw,* un tire-botte, *a boot-jack.*
And a few others.

N.B. Verbs, Prepositions and Adverbs, serving to compound Words, do not take the mark of the plural. Ex. *Des avant-coureurs.* The Substantive alone, if the sense will allow it, takes the *s.* Ex. *Des cure-dents,* but *des brule-tout.*

When a compound word is composed of a *Substantive* and an *Adjective,* or another *Substantive,* both take the mark of the plural, as *une basse-cour, des basses-cours.*

When two Substantives are joined by *de* or *à,* the first takes the mark of the plural. Ex. Des *chefs-d'œuvre, des fers-à-cheval.*

The following Words do not admit of the singular:

Alentours, ancêtres, annales, appas, armoiries, arrérages, atours, ciseaux, décombres, frais, fonts, funérailles, mœurs, nippes, ténèbres, pleurs, vivres, &c.

ONOMATOPEES*, or words thought to be derived from the noise which they are meant to express, forming, as it were, an *echo to the sense.*

Aboyer,	*to bark.*	barboter,	*to dabble.*
achoppement,	*knock against, obstacle.*	bêler,	*to bleat.*
affreux,	*dreadful.*	bégayer,	*to stammer,*
agacer,	*to set (teeth) on edge.*	beugler,	*to low.*
agripper	*to snap.*	meugler,	*to low.*
†grappin,	*grapple.*	bombe,	*a bomb.*
gravir,	*to climb up (with difficulty.)*	bond, bondir,	*a bound, to bound.*
grimper,		bouillir,	*to boil.*
babil,	*prattle.*	bourdon-ner,	*to buz.*
babiller,	*to prattle.*	braire,	*to bray.*
bâiller,	*to yawn.*	bredouiller,	*to gabble.*
s'ébahir,	*to stare (with stupid astonishment.)*	brouhaha,	*confused noise.*
		broyer	*to grind.*
		bruit,	*noise.*
		Cahot-er,	*jolt.*
balbutier,	*to lisp.*	caqueter,	*to cackle.*

* Taken from C. Nodier's *Dictionnaire raisonné des Onomatopées Françaises.* We have extracted only those which are most in use.

† These words, which are indented, are derivatives of the word close above them.

cataracte.	*cataract.*
chat-huant,	*an owl.*
choc, choquer,	*to shock.*
chuchotter,	*to whisper.*
claque,	*a smack.*
cligoter,	*to wink.*
clin-d'œil,	*twinkle.*
clinquant,	*tinsel.*
cliquetis,	*noise of arms.*
coasser,	*to croak.*
coq,	*a cock.*
coucou,	*a cuckoo.*
cracher,	*to spit.*
cran,	*a notch.*
craquer,	*to crack.*
cri-er,	*to cry.*
criailler,	*to bawl.*
cric,	*a jack.*
crincrin,	*a bad fiddle.*
croasser,	*to croke.*
croc,	*a hook.*
accrocher,	*to hook.*
croquer,	*to crunch.*
crouler, *to roll down*, écrouler, *to roll down*,	*like a wall.*
Dégringoler,	*to tumble (down stairs.)*
Eclat-er,	*to burst out.*
éclabousser,	*to splash.*
Ecraser,	*to crush.*
enfler,	*to swell.*
gonfler,	*to swell.*
eternuer,	*to sneeze.*
Fanfare,	*noise of trumpets.*
fifre,	*a fife.*
flanquer,	*to spank.*
fleur,	*flower.*
flairer,	*to smell.*
flot,	*wave.*
fracas, ser,	*noise, to break.*
fredon, ner,	*to hum, to buz.*
frémir,	*to shudder.*
frisson, ner	*to shiver.*
frayeur, effroi,	*fright.*
frétiller,	*to frisk.*
fretin,	*fry, (small fish.)*
frire,	*to fry.*
friser,	*to curl.*
froisser,	*to bruise (by hard rubbing.)*
fróler,	*to graze, to touch lightly.*
fronde,	*a sling.*
frotter,	*to rub.*
galop-er,	*to gallop.*
gargariser,	*to gargle.*
gazouiller,	*to warble.*
glapir,	*to yelp.*
glisser,	*to slide, to slip.*
glouglou,	*noise of liquid coming out of a bottle.*
glouton,	*gluttonous.*
goulot,	*neck (of a bottle.)*
gratter,	*to scratch.*
grêle,	*hail.*
grelot,	*little bell.*
grelotter,	*to shiver (with cold.)*
griffe,	*talons.*
griffonner,	*to scribble.*
gruger,	*to crunch.*
grincer,	*to gnash.*
grogner,	*to grumble, to grunt.*
gromeler,	*to mutter.*
gronder,	*to scold.*
Hache,	*an axe.*
haleter,	*to pant.*
happer,	*to snap at.*
hennir,	*to neigh.*
heurter,	*to knock against.*
hisser,	*to hoist.*
hoquet,	*hick-up,*
horreur,	*horror.*
horrible,	*horrible.*
abhorrer,	*to abhor.*
huée, huer,	*hooting, to hoot.*
humer,	*to sip up.*
hurler,	*to howl.*
Japper,	*to snarl, to bark.*
Lapper,	*to lap up.*
lécher,	*to lick.*
loup.	*a wolf.*

miauler, *to mew.*
moue, *sulk.*
bouder, *to sulk.*
mugir, *to moan.*
murmure, *murmur.*

Oie, *goose.*
oiseau, *bird.*
ouate, *wadding.*

Pâmer (se), *to faint away, (with pleasure.)*
pioche, piocher, *pick-axe.*

Râcler, *to scrape.*
râle, er, *rattling, (in the throat.)*
rauque, *hoarse.*
retentir, *resound.*
rincer, *to rince.*
ronfler, *to snore.*
rossignol, *a nightingale.*
roucouler, *to coo.*
roue, *a wheel.*
rugir, *to roar.*
ruisseau, ruisseler, *a brook, to flow.*

Sangler, *to girt,*
cingler, *to sail, (with a fair wind.)*
saper, *to sap.*
scie, *a saw.*
siffler, *to whistle.*
sillon, *a furrow.*
souffler, *to blow.*
sourd, *deaf.*
sucer, *to suck.*

Tact, *tact.*
tic-tac, *tick-tick.*
tic, *bad habit.*
tâter, *to feel.*
tâtonner, *to grope.*
taffetas, *taffeta.*
tambour, *a drum.*
tinter, tintement, *to sound, (like a bell.)*
tintamarre, *a great noise.*
tocsin, *alarm bell.*
tonner, tonnerre, *to thunder.*
torrent, *a torrent.*
tousser, toux, *to cough.*
tracas, *confusion.*
transir, *to be numbed.*
terreur, *fright.*
tremblement, *trembling.*
tremblotter, *to shake (with cold.)*
trémousser, *to frisk about.*
tressaillir, *to startle.*
tric-trac, *backgammon.*
trompette, *trumpet.*
trot-ter, *trot.*

Vague, *a wave.*
violon, *a violin.*
vîte, *quick.*

Zest, (*interj.*) *pshaw! fiddle-stick!*
zig-zag, *zig-zag.*

Y.

This letter forms a word of two acceptations, and is sometimes a pronoun and sometimes an adverb, as we have already mentioned in Syntax, Nos. 91, 93. In the few following sentences, it is also idiomatically used:

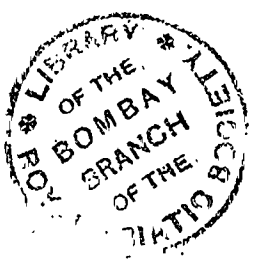
Je vous entends, *j'y* suis, (or) m'y voici.* Y êtes-vous à présent, entendez-vous? *I understand you, I have it. Do you make out.*

* *Y*, in this example, as in all the others, stands for "*de ce sujet,*" "*touchant l'objet* en *question, &c.*"

Eclairez-moi, *je n'y† vois pas. Y voyez-vous* à présent ?	*Light me, for I cannot see. Can you see now ?*
Montrez moi cela, *je m'y connois.*	*Shew me that, I am a judge of it.*
Vous ne vous *y prenez* pas bien.	*You do not set about it the right way.*
Je *m'y prends* mal.	*I set about it badly.*
Il *n'y entend* rien.	*He does not understand any thing about it.*
Ils m'ont poussé à bout, je *n'y tiens* plus.	*They have quite tired me out ; I cannot stand it any longer.*
Il y a livre et livre ; maison et maison.	*All books are not alike : all houses are not alike.*

† Je ne vois pas (without *y*,) would signify, " I cannot see, because I am blind."

THE END.



LONDON:
Printed by Anne Maurice, Fenchurch-street.

00048027

ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY

Acc. No. Class No.

Please return the book on or before the last date stamped. A fine will be charged if the book is not returned in time.

30 SEP 1995

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 02 January, 2016